

Manual for FOMA® N700i '05.2



Contents/Safety
Precautions

Getting Started

Making/Receiving
Phone Calls

Making/Receiving
Video-phone Calls

Using the Phonebook

Tone/Display/Lighting
Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode

Mail

i-αppli

i-motion

Displaying, Editing and
Organizing Files

Other Useful
Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Entering Text

Appendix

Index/Quick Manual

Correction and Apology

We have found errors in the “Manual for FOMA N700i”.

We are sorry for these errors and would like to correct these as follows:

Location	Incorrect	Correct
P.296 Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions Step 2 Mail settings menu 1/2  Receiving display	 Alarm preferred (default setting)  Operation preferred	 Alarm preferred  Operation preferred (<u>default setting</u>)
P.297 Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions Step 2 Mail settings menu 1/2  Attached file	Even if you select “  ” (remove the check from the check box) for “Image-valid”, you will receive large images.	(Delete this description.)

DoCoMo

W-CDMA System

- Thank you for choosing the FOMA N700i.
- Please read this Manual carefully before and during use for effective and correct operation of the FOMA N700i.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- FOMA network operate using radio waves, so phone calls cannot be made in locations where radio waves cannot be received. You cannot use the FOMA terminal in tunnels, underground areas, inside buildings, and outdoor locations where reception is poor, or out of the service areas. You may also experience difficulties making phone calls from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. When reception is good (i.e. the reception level indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, be mindful of not disturbing the people around you.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always the risk of your calls being intercepted by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention for all calls. In this way, even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where signal reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what was actually said.
- It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo shall not be held liable for any loss stored data.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the results of using SSL. Neither NTT DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as to security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain any damage or loss due to the use of SSL, under no circumstances shall either NTT DoCoMo or the certifier be held responsible for any such damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using the Manual (This Document)

● Looking up items from the Table of Contents

Firstly, look in the "Contents" (P. 2). There are tips for such things as operating the phone. You can look up the page with the information you want to know.

● Looking up items from the Index

If you know the key word for the item you are looking for, you find the page you are looking for quickly through the "Index" (P. 579).

● Looking up items by categories

If you search by category, you can search in the "Chapter Guide" (in the front cover of the manual). The chapter page (the first page of each chapter), describes a detailed contents page to look up functions.

● Looking up items from the Features

If you know the function name or the name of FOMA terminal menu item, you can also find what you are looking for on the "Menu Function List" (P. 548).

● Using the Quick Manual

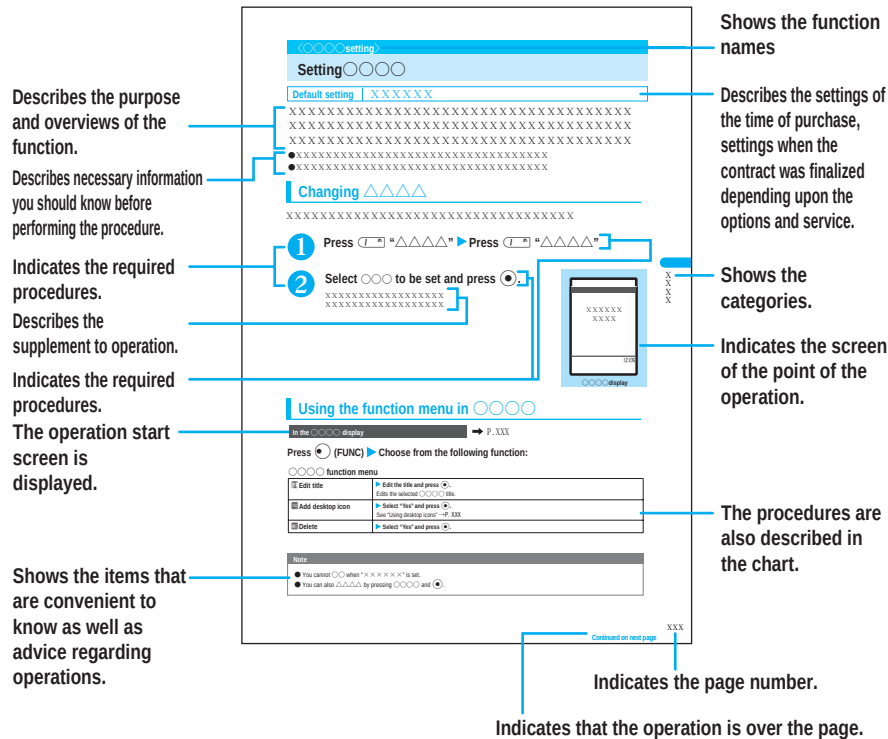
There is a Quick Manual at the rear of this manual. You can tear it out of this manual to use.

- In this Manual for FOMA N700i, the "FOMA N700i" is referred to as the "FOMA terminal".
- This manual describes functions that use the miniSD memory card. To use these functions, you need a miniSD memory card.
See "About miniSD Memory Cards" → P. 392
- Reproduction of any part of this manual without authorized consent is prohibited.
- Parts of this manual may change without prior notification.

How to Use This Manual

About the symbols

The contents shown below is a sample page.



About the display indications

- In this manual, in order to make the screens on the page easy to read, "Stand-by display" has been set to "OFF". Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are zoomed in.
- This manual mainly explains the settings at the time of purchase. Therefore, depending on settings that were changed after the purchase, the displayed contents of the FOMA terminal may be different from those of this manual.
- The screens shown in this manual are screen images and may differ from the actual screens.

The Quick Manual provides brief descriptions of the basic operations and displays. → P. 588

Contents

How to Use This Manual	1
Contents	2
Features of the FOMA N700i	4
Mastering the FOMA N700i !	6
Safety Precautions	8
Handling and Care	18
Intellectual Property Right	20
Main Equipment and Optional Equipment.....	22
Getting Started	23
• Component names and functions	
• How to view the display	
• Selecting the menu • Attaching/removing the battery pack • Charging the FOMA terminal • Select language • Turning the FOMA on/off • Set time • Caller ID notification	
Making/Receiving Phone Calls	47
• Making a call	
• Redial/Dialed calls	
• Notifying/Withholding your caller ID	
• WORLD CALL	
• In-car Hands-free	
• Receiving a call	
• Volume • Answer hold	
• Driving mode • Record message	
Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls ...	75
• Making/Receiving a video-phone call	
• Using “Chara-den” • Remote observation	
Using the Phonebook	91
• Add to phonebook • Group setting	
• Search phonebook	
• UIM operation • Phonebook utilities	
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings	113
• Select ring tone • Vibrator • Keypad sound	
• Mail/Msg. ring time	
• Manner mode • Display setting	
• Display light • Neuropointer	
• Illumination/Illumination in talk	
• Desktop icon	
Security Settings	141
• Security codes used	
• PIN setting • All lock • Remote all lock	
• Secret mode • PIM lock • Keypad dial lock	
• Record display set • Mail security	
• Restrictions • Self mode	
Camera	159
• Photo mode • Movie mode	
• Bar code reader • Access reader	

i-mode 197

- What is i-mode? • i-mode menu
- Viewing a site • My Menu
- i-mode password • Connect to Internet
- Bookmark • Phone To/Mail To/Web To function • Message services • Certificates

Mail 239

- What is i-mode mail? • Mail menu
- Compose message/Send • Deco-mail
- Mail with attached files • Receive option
- Check new message • Chat mail • SMS

i-α ppli 319

- What is an i-α ppli? • Downloading i-α ppli
- Running i-α ppli
- Launching i-α ppli automatically
- i-α ppli stand-by display

i-motion 335

- What is an i-motion?
- Download i-motion

Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files ...339

- Display image • Edit image
- Playing movies/i-motion
- Edit movie • What is Chara-den
- Melody player • miniSD memory card
- Infrared communication function
- OBEX

Other Useful Functions 421

- Multi access • Multi task
- Alarm clock • Schedule • ToDo
- Own number • Call time/charge
- Calculator • Text memo • Dictionary
- Earphone/microphone with switch
- Initialize

Network Services 459

- Voice mail service • Call waiting service
- Call forwarding service • Nuisance call barring service • Caller ID request service
- Dual network service

Data Communication 473

- About data communication
- Setting the PC
- FOMA PC setting software • Executing set data communication • W-TCP settings
- Access point name (APN) settings
- Setting up dial-up network
- AT command list

Entering Text 521

- Entering text
- Switching the text entry method
- Entering kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic/numeric • Copying/cutting/pasting text • Own dictionary
- Download dictionary

Appendix 547

- Menu function list
- Symbols and special characters list
- Pictographs symbols list
- Smiley face symbols list
- Kuten code list
- Options and accessories
- Malfunction checklist • Error message
- Warranty and after-sales service

Index/Quick Manual 579

- Index • Quick manual

Features of the FOMA N700i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

styleplus™

In addition to the standard styleplus, which comes with the product, you can put an optional styleplus on your FOMA terminal. Just like changing your clothing according to your feeling, you can select your favorite styleplus.

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that allows you to send e-mail as well as using the convenient information from the i-mode menu site (program) and i-mode compatible homepage by using the i-mode terminal display.

P.197

Supports packet transmission at speeds of up to 384 kbps, and high-speed data transmission

- Connecting an external device such as a PC to the FOMA terminal enables speedy packet transmission providing a maximum speed of 384 kbps for downloading. The FOMA terminal also supports 64K data communication.
- An external device such as a PC is necessary for data communication.

Compatible with i-mode service and more user-friendly mail service

- You can comfortably use the site (program) connection services, Internet connection, i-apppli and i-motion with the high-speed packet communication capability of up to 384 kbps receiving. Also, SMS (free) used without a specific subscription for the service and i-mode mail used as mail through the internet are available.
- A separate subscription is required for the i-mode service (paid service).

More compatible with multi access and multi task functions

- By multi access that enables the FOMA terminal to handle a voice call and packet transmission at the same time, you can talk while enjoying the i-mode service and exchange mails during a voice call. The FOMA terminal also supports the multi task function that enables multiple applications simultaneously.
- A separate subscription is required for the i-mode service (paid service).
- In addition to multi access, you can also use the SMS at the same time.

Supports the FOMA card (UIM)

- The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that holds your private information such as the phone number. You can use multiple FOMA terminals according to applications by switching your FOMA card (UIM).

Security Settings

You can use the FOMA terminal's many security settings to keep your personal information private through the use of security codes and passwords, and use the Lock/Security function to lock the FOMA terminal's functions from a remote location to prevent unauthorized use of your phone if it is lost or stolen.

P.141

Video-phone

You can talk on the video-phone to the other party with video-phone-capable terminals face to face. During the hands-free mode, you can hear the other party's voice from the speaker. By operating Chara-den instead of displaying your own image, you can enjoy making Chara-den do various actions during a call.

It supports the remote monitor with the camera function to check the behavior of your pet in your home from outside, or observe the local conditions such as factory or operation status from a remote location. Your FOMA terminal can work as a terminal for both sending and receiving remote monitor data.

P.75

Camera

You can take pictures (still images), continuous multiple pictures and movies using the 2 types of cameras, Front camera and Rear camera. The Rear camera has a CCD camera of 1.03 million effective sensor resolution and is capable of taking a large picture of 1160 × 870 dots.

It also loads the "Chance capture" function, which records movies retroactively from the point you end shooting, and the "Picture voice" function, which adds voice to pictures (still images) taken. Movies shot with these functions are saved in the i-motion as movies and can be sent with i-mode mail.

P.159

i-αppli, i-αppli DX

Your enjoyment of i-αppli will increase as you can specify i-αppli as the stand-by screen, receive information in real time using the communication, and access data in the FOMA terminal.

P.319

i-mode mail

You can call up the mail menu by just pressing  (MAIL) while the stand-by display is displayed. You can save up to 1,000 received messages and 400 sent messages on your FOMA terminal.

P.239

Speed photo mail

A still image you shot during a voice call can be easily sent to the other party. This function allows you to send not only still images you took on the spot but also images that are stored in your FOMA terminal.

P.254

i-motion

You can download images and music from sites and the internet. Saved i-motion can be set to the ring tone or the incoming image as "Chaku-motion".

P.335

Deco-mail

You can create and send fully expressive mails by changing the color and size of characters in mails, as well as the color of the background, and inserting Deco-mail pictures and photos taken with the built-in camera.

P.256

i-motion mail

You can send movies recorded with the built-in camera and i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages as an i-mode mail attachment.

P.264

Infrared communication/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a TV remote control.

P.409

Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function and use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.

P.185

Chara-den

During a video-phone call, you can display a pre-installed character or downloaded character instead of yourself. You can add expressions and actions to the character by using the dial keys.

P.83

Rich network services

Dual Network Service (paid service)

- A separate subscription is required.

P.467

Voice Mail Service (paid service)

- A separate subscription is required.

P.460

Call Forwarding Service (free)

- A separate subscription is required.

P.464

Short Message Service (SMS) (free)

- No subscription is required.

P.310

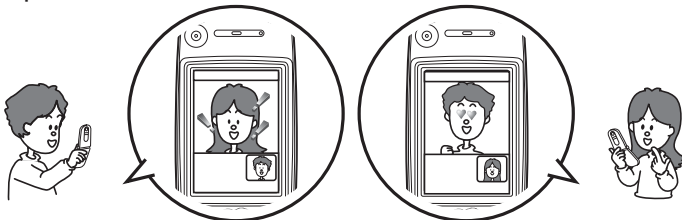
Mastering the FOMA N700i !

■ Visual communication with the FOMA N700i

Expressive communication with a video-phone call stamp.

“Decoration Video-Phone Calls”

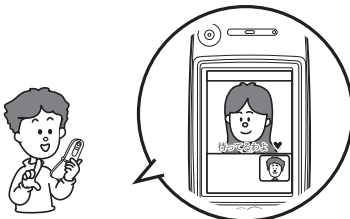
- A stamp that expresses emotions, you can synchronize it to your facial movements during a video-phone call. →P.87



Communicate while looking at the other party's expressions.

“Petit message”

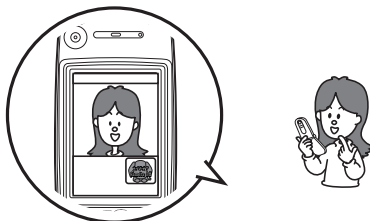
- You can input text and send it to the other party during a video-phone call. →P.87



Check your face during a video-phone call.

“Visual check”

- Even if you receive a sudden video-phone call, you can check your image during the call. →P.86



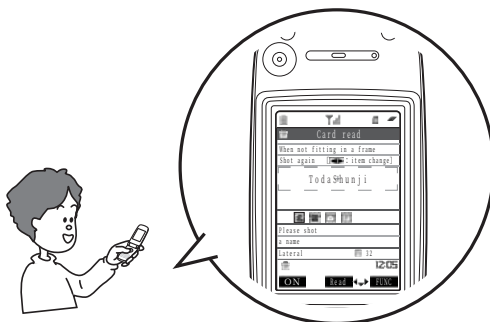
Numbers, English and Japanese compatibility makes it even handier.

“Access reader”

● Communication between functions has improved and become even handier.

→P.189

You can scan business cards and record them into the phonebook, and scan words you don't understand and search for them in the dictionary.



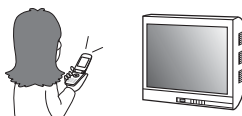
You can use your FOMA terminal as a TV, VCR, and DVD player remote control.

“Gガイド番組表リモコン”

(G Guide Program Table Remote Control)

● Infrared remote control function →P.415

You can use the FOMA terminal infrared function so as to use the FOMA as a TV remote control. It also supports the Electronic Program Guide (EPG).



The information of the program to be broadcast for eight days from the current day and the detailed information of the specified program are downloaded via communication and displayed.

* The screen is an image. The actual screen differs. A TV guide based on the area where you live is displayed.

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read these “Safety Precautions” carefully prior to use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injury and damage to property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.


DANGER

This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use.


WARNING

This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use.


CAUTION

This symbol indicates that bodily injury and/ or property damage may result from improper use.

- The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates a prohibited action.
 No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water, and not to get it wet.
 Do	Indicates a compulsory action for the described direction.
 Unplug	Indicates that the power cord should be unplugged from the power outlet.

- “Safety Precautions” are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (including a Charger) (Common) 9
2. Handling the FOMA Terminal 10
3. Handling the Battery Pack 12
4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger)..... 14
5. Handling the FOMA Card 16
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (including a Charger) (Common)

DANGER



Use only the battery packs and adapters (including a Charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for use with the FOMA terminal.

The use of devices other than those specified by DoCoMo may result in the FOMA terminal and battery pack, other parts leaking, overheating, exploding, catching fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack N08 Desktop Holder N06 FOMA AC Adapter 01 FOMA DC Adapter 01
Data Communications Adapter N01 FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use

For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo service counter.

WARNING



Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal, charger and adapters may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or suffer damage to internal circuitry.



Do not use the FOMA terminal in locations where there is a risk of explosion or fire, such as gas stations.

Use of the FOMA terminal in dusty environments or in locations where there are flammable gases such as propane or gasoline may cause an explosion or fire.



Do not drop, throw or subject the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters to strong force or impacts.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

CAUTION



If the FOMA terminal is used by children, the children's parent or guardian should teach them how to use the FOMA terminal and make sure that they always use the FOMA terminal correctly, as instructed.

Improper usage could result in bodily injury.



Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a sloping or unstable surface.

The FOMA terminal may fall and cause an injury or be damaged.



Do not keep the FOMA terminal in locations that are very humid or dusty or subject to high temperatures.

Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause it to malfunction.



Keep the FOMA terminal out of the reach of young children.

A small child may swallow one of the components or suffer other bodily injury.



Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the devices may become deformed or malfunction.

Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

2. Handling the FOMA Terminal



WARNING



Don't

Never use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe location before using the FOMA terminal or use Driving mode. Following revisions to “道路交通法” (Road Traffic Law), as of November 1 2004, the use of a mobile phone while driving is a punishable offence.



No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause a fire, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Do

Turn the FOMA terminal off in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of electronics devices and electronic medical equipment. Before turning the FOMA terminal off, ensure that the Auto power ON function, if available, is set to “OFF”. Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facility regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, prohibited acts, such as using the mobile phone in an aircraft, may be punishable by law.



Do

If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls. Your heart may be adversely affected.



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.

The FOMA terminal may overheat, catch fire or cause a malfunction.



Don't

Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared communication.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Also, do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards other infrared devices as this may cause the devices to malfunction.



Do

Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic equipment or devices that use weak electronic signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

※ Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, ask the respective manufacturer or vendor about the affection by radio waves.



Don't

If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.

The FOMA terminal is a folding mobile phone and uses magnets to detect that it is closed. Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.



Do

Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance with it when you talk in the hands-free mode with the speaker.

It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.



Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

This will interfere with safe driving and may cause an accident.

**CAUTION**

Do

In some types of vehicle, use of the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal as it might impair safe driving.



Don't

Never swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.

The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



No liquids

Keep the FOMA terminal dry.

Exposing the FOMA terminal to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, malfunction, electric shock or injury. Be careful where and how you use the FOMA terminal.



Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do

Take care when loading or removing the miniSD memory card.

Injury to hands or fingers may occur.



Don't

Do not pour liquid like water or insert a metal piece or any inflammable pieces into the FOMA card insertion slot of the FOMA terminal.

Such actions may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards and other magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal.

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



Do

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering an electric shock.



Do

If the display or camera lens breaks, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display and camera lens are covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching a broken display or camera lens may result in injury.



Don't

Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time.

The light-collecting nature of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Don't

Do not switch the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to your eyes. Take care also not to bring the light close to your eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.

This could cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect your eyes. Accidents such as injury may also happen due to sudden movement from an unexpected occurrence.



Don't

Do not use the light for other use than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be off after approximately 30 seconds of no operation. Using it for purposes outside of shooting with built-in cameras (such as using it as an electronic torch) will cause the light run out suddenly which may lead to an accident.



Do

Use of the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and seek medical treatment.

Metal is used in the following locations.

※ Location used: Material

Front case (display area) :

Magnesium alloy

Metallic silver part between the Rear

camera and the Incoming call/Charge lamp :

Tin

3. Handling the Battery Pack

- Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion



DANGER



Don't

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Don't

Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the battery pack terminals, and do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Don't

If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes and immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the battery pack and do not solder it directly to the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



No liquids

Keep the battery pack dry.

Exposing the battery pack to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the battery pack.

**WARNING**

Do

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.

Overcharging may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.



Don't

If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation, during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal and do not use it again.

Continued use of a faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it as far as possible away from any flame or fire.

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.



Don't

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

The battery pack may leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

**CAUTION**

Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.

Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger)



DANGER



Do

Use only the provided AC power cord or the cord specified by NTT DoCoMo for use with the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use.

The use of devices other than those specified by DoCoMo may result in the FOMA terminal, the battery pack and other devices leaking, overheating, exploding, catching fire or malfunction.



WARNING



Do

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.

Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Also, when using the FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use.
FOMA AC adapter 01:

100V AC (Plug it to 100V AC power outlet for home use in Japan only.)

DC adapter: 12V DC and 24V DC (specific to vehicle with negative ground.)



Don't

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is connected to a power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket in a vehicle. Take care also not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock, bodily injury, or equipment malfunction.



Don't

The DC adapter is only for use in vehicles with a negative ground. Never use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.

Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.



Don't

Never use the AC adapter or the desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.

Doing so may result in an electric shock.



Do

Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug.

Dust may cause a fire.



No liquids

Keep the adapters and the charger dry.

Exposing the adapters and the charger to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the adapters and the charger.



Unplug

Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.

If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet's user manual. Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Do

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.

The use of incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



Unplug

If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Water in the adapter or charger may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the adapters or charger.

Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Don't

Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Take care also not to cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.



Don't

Never use a damaged adapter's or charger's cord or power cord.

Doing so may cause an electric shock, overheating or fire.

**WARNING**

No wet hands

Do not touch the power cords of the adapters and charger or the power outlet with wet hands.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.



Do

When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

**CAUTION**

Unplug

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or socket before cleaning the adapter or charger.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.



Don't

Do not charge the wet battery pack.

The battery pack may overheat, explode or catch fire.



Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the cord or power cord for the adapter or charger.

Doing so may cause an electric shock or fire.



Do

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or socket. Do not pull on the cord itself.

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

5. Handling the FOMA Card



WARNING



Don't

Do not place the FOMA card in cooking appliances such as a microwave oven, or high pressure vessel is such as a pressure cooker.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



CAUTION



Do

Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part).

Your hands or fingers may be injured.



Don't

Do not drop the FOMA card or apply a shock on it.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do

Use the FOMA card with equipment specified by DoCoMo.

If you use a FOMA card with another equipment other than specified, it may lead to the loss of data or equipment malfunction. For specified combinations of a FOMA card and equipment, contact a nearby DoCoMo service counter.



Don't

Do not bend the FOMA card or apply weight on it.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



No liquids

Keep the FOMA card dry.

Exposing the FOMA card to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunction.



No disassembly

Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA card.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.



Don't

Do not scratch the IC part.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



Don't

Do not keep the FOMA card in a dusty place.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Don't

Do not keep the FOMA card in locations subject to direct sunlight, high humidity, or high temperatures.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Don't

Do not incinerate or heat the FOMA card.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



Do

Keep the FOMA card out of the reach of young children.

A small child may swallow the FOMA card or suffer bodily injury.



Don't

Do not tamper or short-circuit the IC part carelessly.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones.



WARNING



Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at a distance of at least 22 cm.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If your FOMA terminal has the Auto power ON function, disable this function before turning your FOMA terminal off.



Do

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves emitted by the FOMA terminal could affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

General Notes

Do not expose to water.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. Note that if the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

Clean only with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that the LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.

- Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging performance, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud.

Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. Such actions may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by your warranty.

Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapters and charger carefully.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal at temperatures between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.

It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm while being used or charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.

Using the FOMA terminal close to ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such items before using the FOMA terminal.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored in your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA terminal.

Take care not to put the FOMA terminal in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Do not fold the FOMA terminal while its strap is caught between the folding parts.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Always fit the earphone/microphone socket cap, external connector cap and miniSD memory card slot cover before use.

- Failure to fit these covers could result in problems caused by dust or water getting into the FOMA terminal.

The Battery Pack

Battery packs have a limited service life.

- If a battery pack does not work despite fully charging, it has reached the period of replacing the battery pack. Replace it with a new battery pack that has the same specifications.

Charge the battery pack in a location within the correct temperature range (5°C to 35°C).

Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.

The available operating time of the battery pack differs depending on the conditions in which you are using it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Do not dispose of used battery packs in the ordinary garbage.

- Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs, and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

Do not charge the battery pack in the following situations:

- Where the ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C.
- In very humid or dusty locations or in locations exposed to strong vibrations.
- Close to appliances such as ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios.

During charging, the adapter (including the charger) may become warm. This is normal, so let the charging continue.

Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.

- Doing so may drain the car battery.

If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet's user manual.

Handling the FOMA Card

When removing the IC part, never apply unnecessary force.

When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, never apply unnecessary force.

During use, the FOMA card may become warm. This is normal, so you can continue using it.

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC card reader or writer. It is the user's responsibility.

Always keep the IC part clean.

Clean the FOMA card with a soft, dry cloth.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA card.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA card.

To preserve the environment take used FOMA cards to a DoCoMo service counter.

Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or switch the FOMA terminal off during miniSD memory card operation.

- Doing so may result in loss of data or FOMA terminal malfunction.

Handling the Camera

If you seriously inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit content such as text, images, music or software that was photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website and that is subject to third-party copyright without the permission of the copyright holder, except where the duplication or quoting of the content for personal use is permitted under copyright law. Note that shooting or recording plays, live performances, and exhibitions may be prohibited even if for personal use.

Also be aware that taking someone's picture with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying someone's picture taken with the FOMA terminal on the internet without his or her permission is breach of portrait copyright.

Trademarks

All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-α ppli", "i-α ppli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Driving mode", "XWave", "i-melody", "i-area", "QUICKCAST", "Multi access", "i-motion", "mopera", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-anime", "i-α ppli search", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Short mail", "Dual network", "FirstPass", "M-stage V-LIVE", "Security Scan", "styleplus" and "FOMA", "i-mode" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- miniSD™ is the trademark of SD Association. 
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- LC Font, LC FONT® and the LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications.
- T9 Text Input® is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol  are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- The Dialog Clarity technology and WOW technology are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is the registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QR Code is the registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- Face stamps use the N-Vision Virtual Accessory engine.
- Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.



Copyright© 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.

- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- NetFront and **NetFront**® are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD in Japan and other countries.
- Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD in Japan and other countries.
- Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- © Disney
- © 2004 DEVILROBOTS
- G-GUIDE Mobile and G guide mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan, and G Guide, G-GUIDE, G guide logo and the G-code are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
- Adobe and Reader are trademarks and registered trademarks of Adobe System Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- McAfee® is a registered trademark of McAfee, Inc. in the United States and/or its affiliates.
- The other company name and brand name which are indicated in this manual are the trademark or registered trademark of each company.

Others

- Macromedia® Flash™ technology from Macromedia, Inc. is used in this product.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and the following purpose below are admitted in individual and the nonprofit purpose.
 - The animation (following and MPEG-4 Video) based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual is recorded.
 - When MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in nonprofit and personal activity is reproduced.
 - When MPEG-4 Video offered by the donor who received the license from MPEG-LA is reproduced.

When you use it for the use of others, such as a promotion, an object for in the company, and the profit purpose, please ask the U.S. corporations MPEG LA, LLC.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
 4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
 5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
 5,710,784 5,778,338
- NetFront v3.0 for FOMA as an Internet function is used in this product.
 NetFront v3.0 is the product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is used in this product as an OBEX function and an infrared communication function.
 IrFront® is the product of ACCESS CO.,LTD.
- The module which Independent JPEG Group developed is contained in a part of software of this product.
- The software licensed by GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL) is included in this product. For more details of the software, refer to "readme.text" in the "GPL・LGPL等について" folder of the CD-ROM for FOMA N700i.
- This product has been subjected to antibacterial treatment.
 The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and the quality control and information management for this product follow the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).
 Treated areas: Mobile phone body (excludes the display, keys/buttons and terminals)



Designation of Windows

- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- In this manual, Windows® 98 and Windows® 98SE are designated as Windows 98.
- In this manual, Windows® 2000 Professional is designated as Windows 2000.
- In this manual, Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition are designated as Windows XP.

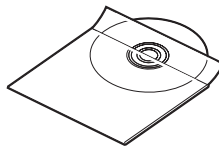
Main Equipment

FOMA N700i

(including warranty card, Back Cover N06)

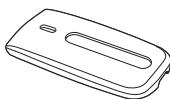


CD-ROM for FOMA N700i



styleplus N01

(including manual)



Manual for FOMA N700i

(this manual)

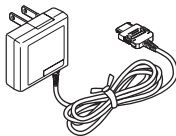


• The Quick Manual starts on → P. 588

Optional Equipment

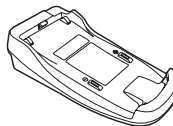
FOMA AC Adapter 01

(including warranty card and manual)



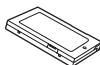
Desktop Holder N06

(including manual)



Battery Pack N08

(including manual)



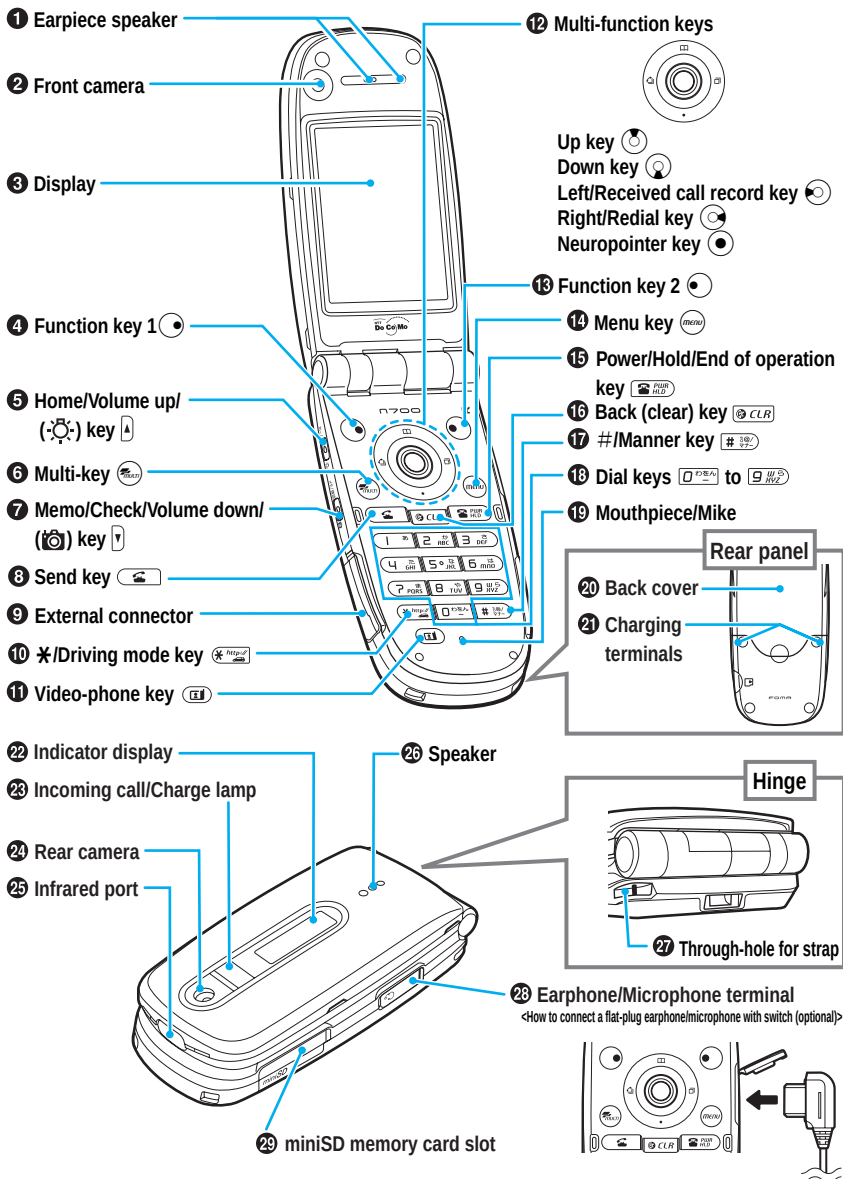
See "Options and Accessories" → P. 558

● Getting Started

Component Names and Functions	24
How to View the Display	27
How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)	30
Selecting the Menu	32
Setting the FOMA Card	36
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack	38
Charging the FOMA terminal	40
Checking the Battery Level	42
Changing to English Display <Select language>	43
Turning the FOMA on/off	43
Setting the Default <Initial setting>	44
Setting the Date and Time <Set time>	45
Notifying the Other Party of your Phone Number <Caller ID notification>	45
Checking Your Own Phone Number <Own number>	46

Component Names and Functions

In this manual, keys are represented as below icons.



• The FOMA N700i terminal has a built-in antenna.

• The styleplus comes with FOMA N700i. For details of styleplus, refer to the manual of styleplus.

Size (mm) *1	Width 48 × Height 102 × Depth 25
Mass (g) *2	Approx. 109

*1: Height and depth are for the FOMA terminal when folded.

*2: When the battery pack is attached.

*1*2: The styleplus is not included.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

■ Functions

1 Earpiece speaker

- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

2 Front camera

- Used to shoot still images and movies or send your video to the other party during a video-phone call.

3 Display

4 Function key 1

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom left side of the display. → P. 26

5 Home/Volume up(-) key

- Connects to the set site easily. → P. 227
- Lights the display light for the indicator display when pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.
- Increases the earpiece volume during a call. → P. 65
- Moves the cursor to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. → P. 522
- Turns the light on when using a camera.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.

6 Multi-key

- Display the task menu. → P. 426

7 Memo/Check/Volume down(/) key

- Sets the "Manner mode" during an incoming call and activates the "Quick message". → P. 72
- Plays recorded messages. → P. 72
- Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded. → P. 69
- Lowers the earpiece volume during a call. → P. 65
- Takes pictures.
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
- () (Home) and () (Memo/Check) are both referred to as side keys in this manual.)

8 Send key

- Makes a voice call. → P. 48
- Answers a voice call. → P. 60
- Answers a video-phone call with the substitute image. → P. 81
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → P. 532

9 External connector

- Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal.

10 */Driving mode key

- Enters "*/", "http://", or other character strings. → P. 524
- Enters the pause (p). → P. 53

11 Video-phone key

- Makes a video-phone call. → P. 77
- Answers a video-phone call. → P. 81
- Switches the substitute image/camera view while making a video-phone call. → P. 82

12 Multi-function keys

Up key

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display upward (towards the reversed direction). Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Scrolls up the display.
- Displays the phonebook menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Down key

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display downward.
- Scrolls down the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Displays the "Search phonebook" menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Left/Received call record key

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.
- Displays the received calls record. → P. 62

Right/Redial key

- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
- Displays the redial record. → P. 50

Neuropointer key

- How to use the Neuropointer. → P. 26

13 Function key 2

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom right side of the display. → P. 26

14 Menu key

- Display the main menu. → P. 32

15 Power/Hold/End of operation key

- Hold down 1 second or more to turn the power on. → P. 43
- Hold down 2 seconds or more to turn the power off. → P. 44
- Ends a call. → P. 48
- Puts a incoming call on hold. → P. 66

16 Back (clear) key

- Goes back to 1 step before.
- Puts a call on hold. → P. 50
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → P. 50, 535

17 #/Manner key

- Enters "H" or other symbols. → P. 524
- Sets the "Manner mode" during an incoming call and activates the "Quick message". → P. 72

18 Dial key to

- Enters phone numbers. → P. 48
- Enters characters and numbers. → P. 530

19 Mouthpiece/Mike

- Convey your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Used as the microphone when the camera is used in the Movie mode and "Picture voice".

20 Back cover

21 Charging terminals

22 Indicator display

- Tells you FOMA terminal condition by displaying messages, icons and animations.

23 Incoming call/Charge lamp

- Flashes when a voice or video-phone call comes in or when mail or Msg. Request, Msg. Free is received.
- The light turns red during charging.

Light

- Can be used to provide light when taking pictures.

24 Rear camera

- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send images such as scenery to the other party during a video-phone call.

25 Infrared port

- Window used for infrared exchange. → P. 409

26 Speaker

- Allows you to hear ring tone and the other party's voice in hands-free mode.

27 Through-hole for strap

28 Earphone/Microphone terminal

- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is plugged in, hands-free operation is available. You can use a conventional earphone/microphone with switch by using the earphone plug adapter.

29 miniSD memory card slot

- Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. → P. 392

Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or more

The functions that are available by holding down each key for 1 second or more are as follows:

Key	Function	See Page	Key	Function	See Page
	Check new message (while the stand-by screen is displayed)	P. 231, 271		Enter "+" (the phone numbers entering screen)	P. 56
	i-app software list display (while the stand-by screen is displayed)	P. 323		Display light on/off	P. 127
	Multi-task switch (during Multi-tasking)	P. 426		Driving mode setting (while the stand-by screen is displayed)	P. 68
	Stand-by screen (during Multi-tasking)	P. 425		Side keys setting (while the main menu is displayed)	P. 150
	Received address list display (while the stand-by screen is displayed)	P. 294		Manner mode setting (while the stand-by screen is displayed, during a call or during an incoming call)	P. 119
	Sent address list display (while the stand-by screen is displayed)	P. 294		Voice memo recording (during a call)	P. 443
	Earpiece volume adjustment (while the stand-by screen is displayed or during a call)	P. 65			

How to use the software keys

To use the software keys, press the corresponding function keys.

■ To run the software key ①

Press to run the software key displayed in ①.

① includes (Mode), (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (), etc.

■ To run the software key ②

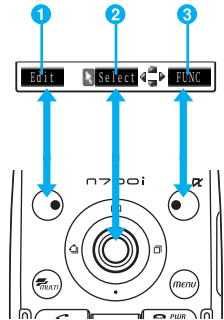
Press to run the software key displayed in ②.

② includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ To run the software key ③

Press to run the software key displayed in ③.

③ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press while (FUNC) is displayed to display the function menu. →P. 35



■ Software key notation

This manual describes how to select a software key as follows:

How to use the Neuropointer

When is displayed at the bottom of the screen, slide the Neuropointer to display the pointer (). Moving the pointer by sliding the Neuropointer enables to quickly select an icon or item. When the list screen or function menu spreads across multiple pages, you can scroll a page up and down with the Neuropointer.

● Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer

- 1 Slide  to display , and then move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range.

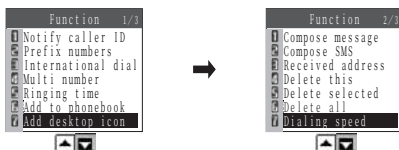
The pointer changes to .

■ When the pointer is moved to the top

The pointer changes to .

- 2 Press .

The "Next page of the function menu" appears.



■ When displaying the previous page of function menu

Slide  to leftward and change  to  and then press .

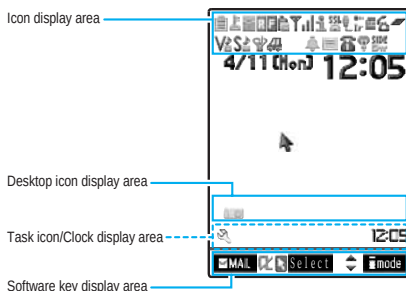
How to View the Display

The symbols (such as , , , etc.) displayed on the display and indicator display are referred to as icons.

● A calendar etc. can be set to a display. → P. 124

● The name of icon can be checked by pressing    (Note that some icons cannot be checked).

■ Display



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level → P. 42		Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time. → P. 148, 151
	All lock is set. → P. 145		Keypad dial lock and PIM lock are set at the same time. → P. 150, 151
	Secret mode is set, Secret only mode is set. → P. 148		You have unread mail. → P. 268
	PIM lock is set. → P. 150		Inbox is full. → P. 268
	Keypad dial lock is set. → P. 151		SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P. 316

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
(Blue)	You have unread mail./SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P. 316	(Blue)	Connected to the USB cable, in Communication mode → P. 475
(Red)	Inbox is full./SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P. 268, 316	(Blue)	Connected to the USB cable, in miniSD mode → P. 404
(Green)	You have unread Message Request. → P. 229	(Blue)	Connected to a hands-free compatible device → P. 59
(Red)	Message Request is full. → P. 229	(Blue)	Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in Communication mode → P. 59
(Purple)	You have unread Message Free. → P. 229	(Blue)	Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in miniSD mode → P. 59
(Red)	Message Free is full. → P. 229	(Blue)	Ir exchange is in progress. → P. 409
(Blue)	You have mail at the i-mode Center. → P. 270, 271	(Blue)	Ir remote control function is used. → P. 415
(Red)	Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. → P. 271	(Blue)	A miniSD memory card is inserted. → P. 392
(Blue)	You have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P. 270	(Blue)	Wrong type of miniSD memory card is inserted. → P. 392
(Green)	You have Message Request at the i-mode Center. → P. 231	(Blue)	The miniSD reader/writer is used. → P. 404
(Red)	Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. → P. 231	(Blue)	During a voice call → P. 48
(Purple)	You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. → P. 231	(Blue)	64K data communication is in progress. → P. 488
(Red)	Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. → P. 231	(Blue)	Displays the connection speed of a video-phone call → P. 77
(Blue)	Radio reception level → P. 43	(Blue)	Multiple functions are activated. → P. 425
(Blue)	The FOMA terminal is either out of the service area or the radio waves are out of reach. → P. 43	(Blue)	A single function is activated. → P. 425
(Blue)	Self mode is set. → P. 157	(Blue)	Vibrator is set. → P. 116
(Blue)	i-mode is activated. → P. 204	(Blue)	"Ring volume" is set to "Silent". → P. 66 Mail/Msg. ring time is set to "OFF". → P. 118
(Blue)	i-mode communication is in progress. → P. 204	(Blue)	Manner mode is set. → P. 119
(Blue)	Packet communication is in progress. → P. 488	(Blue)	Remote observation is set. → P. 88
(Blue)	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) → P. 488	(Blue)	Driving mode is set. → P. 68
(Blue)	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) → P. 488	(Blue)	Alarm function is set. → P. 427
(Blue)	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) → P. 488	(Blue)	Record message is set. → P. 70
(Blue)	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) → P. 488	(Blue)	Displays the number of voice mail messages → P. 460
(Blue)	Displays pages compatible with SSL. → P. 208	(Blue)	Display light is set to "OFF". → P. 127
		(Blue)	Side keys guard is set to "ON". → P. 150

Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
(Blue)	Pasted desktop icons → P. 135

Task icon/Clock display area

Icon	Description
	Task icon → P. 139
Clock display	Displays the date and time → P. 45

Software key display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 1 → P. 26		Displayed when each key of the Multi-function keys is available
	Displayed when the Neuropointer is available → P. 26		Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 2 → P. 26
	Displays the functions of software keys for the Neuropointer key → P. 26		

Neuropointer display

Icon	Description
	Pointer (Blue) → P. 132
	Pointer (White) → P. 132
	Scrolls a page by pointer → P. 27

Indicator display



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level → P. 42		You have unread mail. /SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P. 316
	All lock is set. → P. 145		Inbox is full. /SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P. 268, 316
	Secret mode is set, Secret only mode is set. → P. 148		You have mail at the i-mode Center. → P. 270, 271
	PIM lock is set. → P. 150		Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. → P. 271
	Keypad dial lock is set. → P. 151		You have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P. 270
	Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time. → P. 148, 151		You have Message Request at the i-mode Center. → P. 232
	Keypad dial lock and the PIM lock are set at the same time. → P. 150, 151		Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. → P. 231
	You have unread mail. → P. 268		You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. → P. 231
	Inbox is full. → P. 268		Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. → P. 231
	SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P. 316		

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Radio reception level → P. 43		Connected to the USB cable, in Communication mode → P. 475
	The FOMA terminal is either out of the service area or the radio waves are out of reach. → P. 43		Connected to the USB cable, in miniSD mode → P. 404
	Self mode is set. → P. 157		Connected to a hands-free compatible device → P. 59
	i-mode is activated. → P. 204		Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in Communication mode → P. 59
	i-mode communication is in progress. → P. 204		Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in miniSD mode → P. 59
	Packet communication is in progress. → P. 488		Ir exchange is in progress. → P. 409
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) → P. 488		Ir remote control function is used. → P. 415
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) → P. 488		During a voice call → P. 48
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) → P. 488		64K data communication is in progress. → P. 488
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) → P. 488		Displays the connection speed of a video-phone call → P. 77
	Displays pages compatible with SSL. → P. 208		Manner mode is set. → P. 119
	Side keys guard is set to "ON". → P. 150		
	A miniSD memory card is inserted. → P. 392		
	Wrong type of miniSD memory card is inserted. → P. 392		
	The miniSD reader/writer is used. → P. 404		

Note

- The display for this FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up depending on its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.

How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)

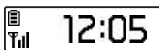
The indicator display notifies you of incoming call/mail or alarm notification in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening your FOMA terminal.

- Setting the Indicator Display Mode → P. 126

About the display

■ Clock display

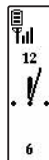
Displays the clock during standby. You can select from the following 5 types of display or "OFF (not displayed)":



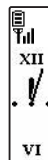
Digital 1



Digital 2



Analog 1



Analog 2



Analog 3

■ During an incoming call display

Displays the phone number of an incoming call. When the caller's phone number is stored in your phonebook, information such as the caller's name appears. If the caller does not send the caller ID, the reason for no number appears.



When the caller sends the caller ID



When the caller's name is stored in your phonebook



When the caller does not send the caller ID

■ During a call display

Displays the type of call during a call. Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



During a voice call



During a videophone call



During remote observation

■ During an outgoing call display

Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



■ Alarm notification

For alarm notification of "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo", an alarm notification animation corresponding to the function appears.



"Alarm clock"



"Schedule"/"ToDo"

■ Receiving a new mail

When "Mail" is set to "ON", after "Received message" is displayed, the sent date and time, the sender and title are displayed.



■ During packet/64K data communication

Displays the type of communication during packet/64K data communication.



Packet communication



64K data communication

■ When you are using the camera



Camera is operating



Movie is being recorded

■ Appears when you are using the FOMA terminal data exchange (infrared exchange or OBEX)



Infrared communication



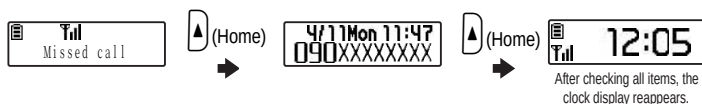
OBEX communication

Checking the caller or sender

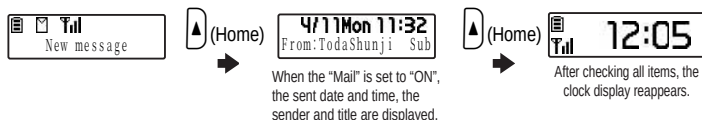
If you press [Home], you can check up to 3 missed calls or new mails.

- When you display the "Missed calls" record or delete the "Missed call" desktop icon, the missed call display in the indicator display disappears.
- When using the tool group function (P. 425), you cannot check missed calls with the indicator display.

■ Missed call display



■ New mail display



Note

- Press [Home] with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the display light up. It is useful for checking the current time in the dark.
- In power save mode, the indicator screen is blank. Press [Home] to display the indicator screen again.

Selecting the Menu

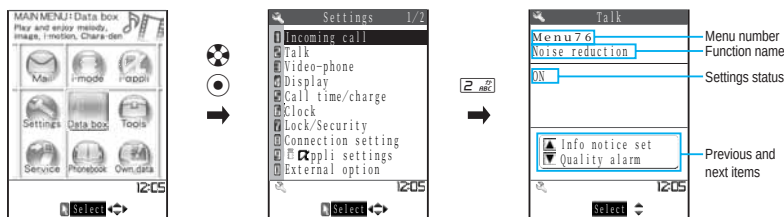
You can display the screen to set or check each function from the main menu or the original menu.

- When you run, set or check the FOMA terminal's functions by pressing , you can either select a function from the main menu or access the function by pressing its menu numbers (P.548). The explanations in this Manual use the menu number method.
- To cancel the menu operation, press  (POWER OFF). The setting operation is canceled and the stand-by display or the previous screen reappears. Depending on the menu, a message asking whether to void the setting being made may appear. In that case, press  (CLR) to clear the message.

Selecting functions from the main menu

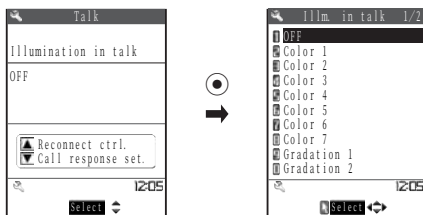
<Example: Sets flashing color of “Illumination in talk”>

- 1** Select  ► Use  to select  (Settings) and then press  ► Press 



- **To scroll items continuously**
Hold down .
- **To use the Neuropointer key**
See "How to use the Neuropointer" → P. 26
- **When the key is not pressed for more than 15 seconds**
The main menu completes and return to the previous screen.

- 2 Use  to select "Illumination in talk", and then press .



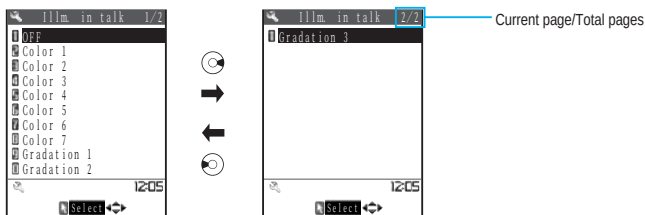
Note

● You can set not to display the guidance of the main menu in "Changing the Menu display". → P. 129

When items appear in multiple pages

- 1 Press  to select the item you want to set.

To scroll the display by page, press  (or ) for the previous page, press  (or ) for the next page.



- 2 Press .

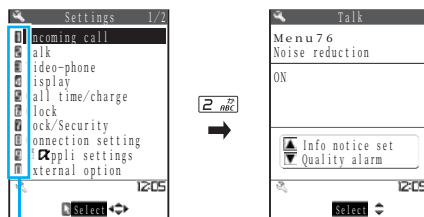
The selected item is set.

- 3 After operation, press .

The menu operation completes and the stand-by display reappears.

Using the dial key to select items

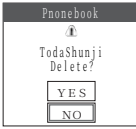
- 1 Press  to  to select items.



The number corresponding to the dial key

Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

- Press  to select "YES" (or "ON") or "NO" (or "OFF"), and then press .



The selected item is set.

Entering a security code

Depending on the function, before the details screen is displayed, a security code screen may be displayed. To display the details screen for that function, enter a security code. → P. 142

- Enter a 4 to 8 digit security code, and press .



The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as "_". The details screen of the function is displayed when the security code is successfully entered.

■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is wrong is displayed. Re-enter the security code from the beginning.

Entering numbers

- Enter numbers by pressing  to , and then press .



The entered numbers are set.

It may be automatically set if you enter numbers for specified digits.

■ To enter a 1-digit number in a 2-digit number entry screen

Press  once and then enter the number.

When you enter a 2-digit or 1-digit number in a 3-digit number entry screen, press  once or twice respectively before entering the number.

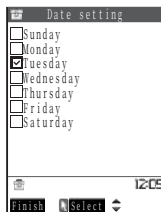
Marking a checkbox

- Press  to select checkbox (☐) to mark and press .

The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☒. This is the status of a selected checkbox.

Press  to toggle ☐ and ☒.

When "Finish" appears as a software key, pressing  (Finish) sets the item selected. When "FUNC" appears as a software key, pressing  (FUNC) allows you to use "Select all" or "Release all".



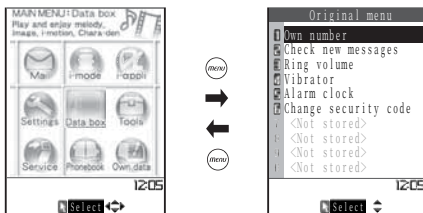
Selecting the function from your original menu

You can easily call up the functions by using the "Original menu".

- The contents of original menu is changed with "Creating an Original Menu". → P. 131
- The original menu is displayed in "List".

1 Press .

Pressing  switches between the main menu and the original menu.

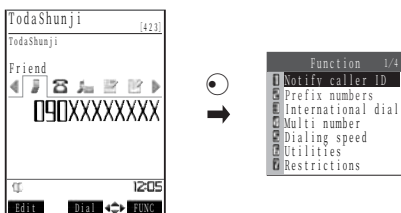


Note

- When you return to the stand-by display from the original menu, or when you return to the stand-by display from the original menu after calling up a function from the original menu and performing operations, the original menu is displayed when you press  next time.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether you store functions to the original menu or not appears.

Function menu

When operating a function that can store, edit or delete, "FUNC" appears as a software key. Press  (FUNC) to display the function menu. Press  to highlight the item which you desire from the function menu, and then press  to select the item.



- When the items appear in multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu. Press  while the top item of the function menu is selected to display the previous page. Press  while the bottom item is selected to display the next page. To scroll the display by page, press  (or ) for the previous page, press  (or ) for the next page.
- The displayed function menu differs depending on the function in operation.
- You may not be able to select some functions due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable functions are grayed out.

Setting the FOMA Card

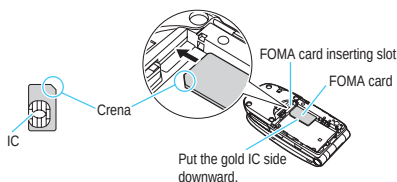
The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number.

Inserting/Removing the FOMA card

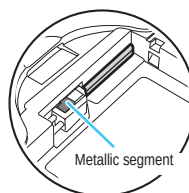
Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), first turn the power off and remove the battery pack.

● Inserting

- 1 Put the IC side downward and put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot as shown in the illustration.



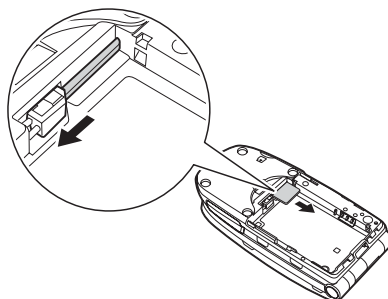
- 2 Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed. Check that the metallic segment on the lock lever is located at the left edge as shown in the illustration.



When properly installed

● Removing

- 1 Slide the lock holding the FOMA card.
- 2 The FOMA card is ejected a little. Carefully pull it out straight.



Note

- Note that using excessive force to load the FOMA card (UIM) could damage the card.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) after removing it from the FOMA terminal.

PIN codes for the FOMA card

You can set 2 PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card (UIM). PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered every time the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered when user authentication is required for online services such as accessing a site or the Internet.

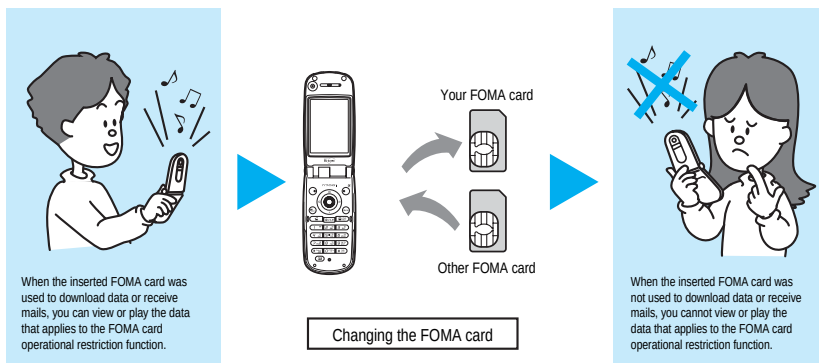
- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is "0000".
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes. → P. 144
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

FOMA Card Operational Restriction Function

The FOMA card operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from sites or Web pages or receive data or files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set. Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or files is inserted.

If you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the "UIM" mark is attached with data and files with this function set.

- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
 - i-α.ppli, melody, image, Chara-den, download dictionary acquired from sites or Web pages
 - i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages
 - Screen memo containing melody, image, i-motion, Chara-den, download dictionary
 - File (melody/image) attached to or pasted in i-mode mail in Inbox
 - File (melody/image/i-motion, except for data created or shot with the FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mail in Outbox/Draft
 - Msg. Request/Free with attached or pasted file (melody/image)
 - Images inserted into the message of Deco-mail
- You can move or delete data and files with this function set even when other FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- Data received via the Infrared communication function, data transmission (OBEX) function or a miniSD memory card and edited images (no file restriction) and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not targeted by this function.



Note

- If FOMA card operational restriction functions are set and then someone else's FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, you will not be able to use settings such as "Display setting" or "Select ring tone" with data or files for which the restriction functions were set.
- When data or a file with this function is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", if you remove your FOMA card (UIM) or replace it with another one, these settings are reset to the default settings.
- Pre-installed i-α.ppli can be subjected to this function when it is upgraded or re-downloaded from a site after deleted.
- If FOMA card operational restriction functions are set, you cannot select items such as highlighted text in an i-mode mail detail display and use them to launch an i-α.ppli.

FOMA Card Functional Differences

There are 2 versions in the FOMA card (UIM). Please note that there are the following functional differences when you use different FOMA cards on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Not available	Available
WORLD WING	Not available	Available
Service Dial	Not available	Available

About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls in overseas countries with the same mobile phone number as you use in Japan by inserting your "FOMA card (green)" in an overseas mobile phone (GSM) for the service.

You need to apply to use WORLD WING. Please consult the back cover of this manual for more details regarding applying.

Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before attaching/removing the battery pack.

Attaching the battery pack

1 Remove the back cover.

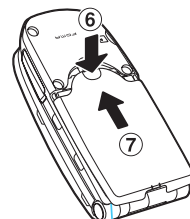
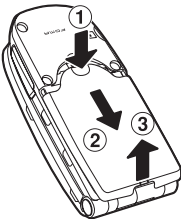
Press in the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② as you lift the back cover in direction ③.

2 Attach the battery pack.

With the battery warnings on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ④. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ⑤.

3 Re-attach the back cover.

Put the back cover spacing about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑥ and slide the back cover in direction ⑦. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.



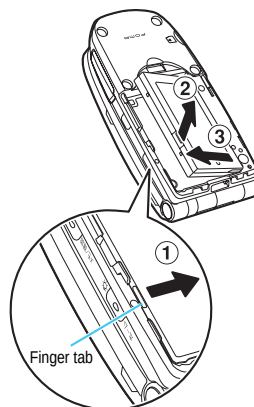
Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) is securely locked.

Removing the battery pack

1 Remove the back cover.

2 Remove the battery pack.

Press the tab on the side of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ② and pull the battery out in direction ③.



Note

- Note that using excessive force to load the battery pack could damage the metal terminals in the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- For details, refer to the manual for Battery Pack N08.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack N08 for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about 1 year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, bring used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, or the recycle shop, etc.

■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- To charge the battery pack using the AC adapter or DC adapter, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if the "Display light" for "Charging" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

If you charge the battery pack for a long period with the FOMA terminal switched on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again for recharging.

Battery usage time

(The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time		Continuous standby time	
Voice call	: Approx. 140 min.	Stationary	: Approx. 430 hours
Video-phone call	: Approx. 90 min.	Moving	: Approx. 350 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly and you move with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting up downloaded i-α ppli and i-α ppli stand-by display will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still, while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Loading the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or the light will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.

Note

- If the battery pack is out of charge or you have removed the battery pack, you may be unable to save images or movies.

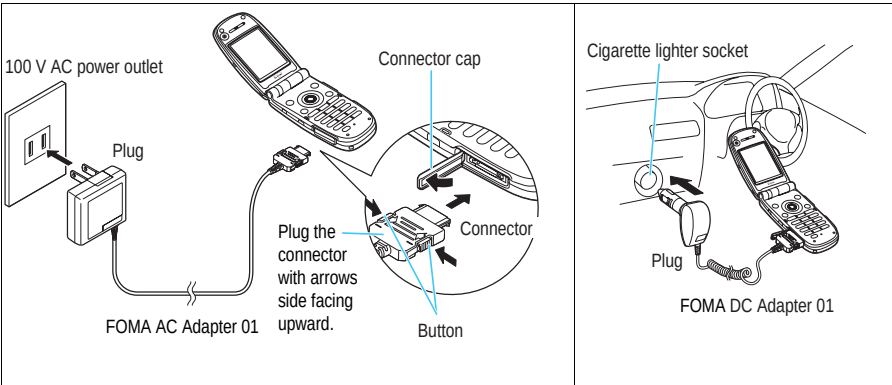
Charging the FOMA terminal

- You can charge the FOMA terminal with the optional AC adapter, DC adapter, or desktop holder.

Charging the battery pack with the AC/DC adapter

AC adapter

DC adapter



- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.
- 2 Plug the AC/DC adapter connector horizontally into the FOMA terminal's external connector.

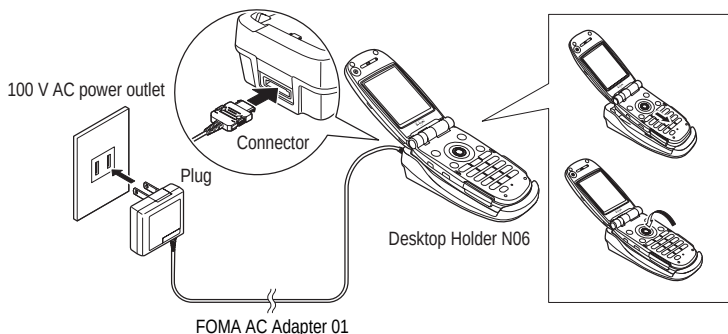
- 3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet or DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car.
Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

- 4 When charging is completed, remove the AC/DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the connector button. Then unplug the AC adapter from the outlet or DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car.

- 5 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder



- 1 Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder.
- 2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet.
- 3 Place the FOMA terminal firmly in the desktop holder as shown above.
Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

- 4 After charging ends, hold down the desktop holder, grip both sides of the FOMA terminal and lift it up in the direction of the arrow from the holder.



Note

- Set the FOMA terminal firmly in its desktop holder. Also, take care not to trap the strap.
- The charge lamp lights red. The charge lamp turns off when charging ends.
- Turning the FOMA terminal on allows you to receive calls even while the battery pack is being charged (This will increase the charging time).
- If you turn the FOMA terminal on, the FOMA terminal sounds the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends.
- The AC adapter is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in the FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out or the power is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not light right away, but the battery charge has started.
- The DC adapter is exclusively for negative-grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Checking the Battery Level

You can check the remaining battery level display. The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed.



-  (Green) : Full charge
-  (Green) : Low charge
-  (Red) : Almost empty

Checking the battery level with sound and animation

The current battery level is indicated by sound and animation.

1

Press   .

The check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level graphics disappears in about 3 seconds.

- "pip-pip-pip" : Full charge
- "pip-pip" : Low charge
- "pip" : Almost empty

Note

- The beeps do not sound when "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF" or in the Manner mode.

When the battery runs out



The screen as shown on the left flashes and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about 1 minute. To stop this alarm, press any key other than  (Home) or  (Memo/Check).

Note

- If the battery runs out during a call, the Recharge battery screen above is displayed and short tones "pip-pip-pip" sounds. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about 1 minute.
- During setting to "Manner mode", when manner mode operation is set to "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "OFF" for "LVA tone" in "Original", no low-voltage alarm sounds.

<Select language>

Changing to English Display

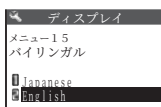
Default settings

日本語 (Japanese)

Use this procedure to switch between English and Japanese as the language used for the functions and messages shown in the display and indicator display.

1 Press "English".

■ To change from Japanese to English display

Press  "English".

Japanese display

■ To change from English to Japanese display

Press  "日本語".

English display

Note

- When "英語 (English)" is selected as the "Select language" setting, "ON" or "OFF" is still shown as the second-level option in "Display" in the "Clock display" setting. Similarly, "ON" or "OFF" is still shown as the second-level option in "Info notice setting".

Turning the FOMA on/off

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery before use. Make sure that you use the specified AC adapter or DC adapter (optional) for charging.
- Date and time are not set when you purchase the FOMA terminal. Set them in "Set time". → P. 45

Turning the FOMA on

1 Hold down for 1 second or more.



Stand-by display

The Stand-by display or Initial setting screen appears.

If you turn the FOMA terminal on right after attaching the battery pack or turning it off, "Wait a minute" may appear for a while.

■ When "圏外" appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as "Y" appears.

The reception level for the FOMA terminal is as follows:



■ When the PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON"

The Enter PIN1 code screen is displayed. Enter the correct PIN1 code to display the stand-by display. → P. 143

■ When the Initial setting screen appears

Perform the initial setting. "Setting the Default" → P. 44

Turning the FOMA off

1 Hold down for 2 seconds or more.

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

Note

- Signal strength is not stable in calls made while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that  is displayed when using the FOMA terminal.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, wait for a while to turn it on.

<Initial setting>

Setting the Default

You can set "Set time", "Change security code", "Keypad sound" and "Neuropointer" ("Simple" only) as initial value after turning the FOMA terminal on.

- After you set a function, that function's setting screen is no longer displayed.
- After you set all functions, the Initial setting screen is no longer displayed. Also, the Initial setting screen does not appear if you run "Reset" when the Initial setting screen is not shown.

1 Initial setting screen appears and select "YES" and press .



Initial setting screen

2 Set time.

See "Set time" → P. 45

3 Change security code.

The default setting is "0000".

See "Change security code" → P. 143

4 Set the keypad sound.

See "Keypad sound" → P. 117

5 Set speed of the neuropointer.

Only the basic settings for the neuropointer settings can be set.

See "Neuropointer" → P. 132

Note

- You cannot specify the initial settings while All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- If specification of the initial settings is interrupted because you receive a call or press the  or  key, the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also specify separate settings for individual functions.

<Set time>

Setting the Date and Time

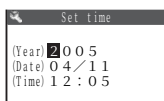
No date or time is set by default. After setting the date and time in "Set time", the date and time you set appears on displays such as the stand-by display and indicator display.

- This function allows you to set the date and time between 00:00 in January 1, 2004 and 23:59 in December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 in December 31, 2037.
- If you set the clock time, you will be able to use functions to manage the date and time such as "Alarm clock" and "Schedule".

<Example: Setting April 11, 2005, 12:05>

1 Press .

2 Enter the year, date and time (24-hour format) and press .



Press to move the highlighted display, and then enter the numbers with the dial keys.

Press , , , , , , , , , , , .

Note

- If you enter the date and time outside the scope of this FOMA terminal, the date and time are not set. Enter the correct date and time again.
- You can set the date and time during a call.
- If you do not set the date and time, you cannot use functions such as the SSL communication (authentication) function, the i-α ppli automatic run function or i-α ppli DX, and you cannot acquire i-motion with restricted and time-limited play.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a built-in backup battery. The date and time you set are retained by the built-in backup battery, so the settings are not lost when you replace the battery pack. However, the date and time may not be held if the battery pack is removed for 2 weeks or more. In this case, charge the battery pack, then set the date and time again. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Caller ID notification>

Notifying the Other Party of your Phone Number

Default setting: OFF

Subscription: Unnecessary

Monthly charge: Free

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a call. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.

- You cannot operate the Caller ID notification service when the icon is displayed.
- This function is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the caller ID.
- When you make a call, if you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set "Caller ID notification" to "ON" and place the call again.

1 Press ► Choose from the following options:

① Activate	► Choose from the following options:	
	About Network security code → P. 142	
	① ON	► Enter the Network security code and then press .
② Status request	② OFF	► Enter the Network security code and then press .
	► Check the "Caller ID notification" setting and press .	

Note

- You can also set the "Notify caller ID" to ON or OFF when you dial a phone number or display it from the "Phonebook", "Redial" or "Received calls".
→ P. 49

<Own number>

Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card (UIM).

- Only own number is displayed at the time of purchase.

1

Press  .



Note

- Your personal data (name, home phone number, home address and mail address, etc.) can be stored. → P. 441
- When your personal data are stored, press  to check the stored data.
- Your i-mode mail address can be checked by selecting "Menu" from the i-mode menu and then press  ▶ Selecting "ENGLISH" and then press  ▶ Selecting "Options" and then press  ▶ Selecting "Mail Settings" and then press  ▶ Selecting "Confirm Mail Address" and then press .

● Making/Receiving Phone Calls

■ Making Phone Calls

Making a Call.....	48
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number <Redial/Dialed calls>	50
Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls	53
Sending Push Signals Quickly <Pause dial>	53
Setting Prefix Numbers <Prefix setting>	54
Making International Calls <WORLD CALL>	55
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls <Sub-address>	58
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection <Reconnect control>	59
Blocking Out Ambient Noise <Noise reduction>.....	59
Making Hands-free Calls in the Car <In-car Hands-free>	59

■ Receiving Phone Calls

Receiving a Call	60
Using the Dial Keys to Receive a Call <Answer setting>.....	61
Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded <Fold setting>	62
Using the Received Calls Record <Received calls>	62
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume <Volume>	65
Adjusting the Ring Volume <Ring volume>	66

■ Settings For When You Cannot Take Calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately <Answer hold>	66
Setting the Hold Tone <Call response setting>	67
Blocking Calls When You Are Driving <Driving mode>	68
Checking Missed Calls <Info notice setting>	69
Having the Caller Leave a Message <Record message>	70
Having Callers Leave a Message During Another Call <Quick message>.....	72
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos	72

Making a Call

Use this procedure to dial a phone number and make a voice call.

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code.

The "Phone number input display" appears.

Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

■ To call a mobile phone

090-xxxx-xxxx

or

080-xxxx-xxxx

■ To call a PHS phone

070-xxxx-xxxx



Phone number input display

2 Press or .

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.

The icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call.

The "In-call display" appears.

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press , wait a while and then try again.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press , wait a while and then try again.

■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the caller ID request service switched to "Activate". Make the call again with caller ID notification enabled.



In-call display

3 To end the call, press .

Note

- You can make calls while the FOMA terminal is in i-mode or you are sending or receiving mails.
- You cannot make a voice call during 64K data communication or during a video-phone call.
- You can make calls with a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → P. 452
- If you viewed a display other than the in-call display during a call, press to return to the in-call display.
- While dialing or during a call, you can switch to hands-free mode by pressing . In hands-free mode, the other party's voice comes through the phone's speakers. Bear in mind that the other party's voice may be heard by others during a hands-free call. Take care to move to a location where your call will not disturb other people before switching to hands-free mode. To cancel hands-free mode, press .
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail). → P. 254
- You can also make a call by reversing steps 1 and 2. In this case, if you make a mistake when entering the phone number, press to erase and re-enter the number.
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make calls while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" are set.
- If the name and phone number of the called party are stored in the phonebook, his or her name and icon are displayed. However, if a still image is stored in the phonebook, the image is not displayed.
- For entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or while PIM lock was activated, the phone number is displayed without the name.

Using the function menu in the phone number input display

In the phone number input display...

➔ P. 48

1  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Phone number input display function menu 1/2

1 Notify caller ID	➔ Choose from the following options: Choose whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
2 Prefix numbers	➔ Choose the prefix title to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" ➔ P. 54	
3 International dial	■ When "+" prefix (a country code) is added ➔ Press  .	
	■ When "+" prefix (a country code) is not added ➔ Select a Country code and then press  ➔ Press  .	
	If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number	See "Multi number" ➔ P. 471	
5 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" ➔ P. 93	
6 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247	
7 Dialing speed	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.

Phone number input display function menu 2/2

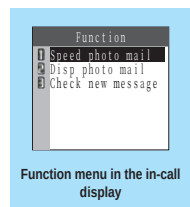
1 Select image	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the current settings of "Me" and "Chara-den".

Using the function menu in the in-call display

In the in-call display...

➔ P. 48

1  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



In-call display function menu

1 Speed photo mail	See "Sending an image you shot during a call" ➔ P. 254
2 Disp photo mail	Displays received speed photo mail.
3 Check new message	Checks for new i-mode messages. ➔ P. 231, 271

When you make a mistake dialing a number

■ To insert a number

Press and move the cursor to the number to the right of the position where you want to insert the number. Then enter the number.

■ To delete a number

Press and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press .

Hold down for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the right of the cursor, including the number in the cursor position.

■ To correct all the numbers

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and hold down for 1 second or longer.

Putting the current call on hold <Holding>

Use the procedure below to put the current call on hold.

1 Press during the call.



The other party hears the on-hold tone.

■ To end the held call

Press .

■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.

2 Press , or to resume the call.

Note

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use "Call response setting" to select the tone used for held calls.
- Provided "End the call" is not selected in "Fold setting", folding the FOMA terminal will also put a call on hold.
- If a setting other than "OFF" is selected for "Illumination in talk", the light also flashes for held calls during a call.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

Using the Redial and Dialed calls records

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls and video-phone calls. The Dialed calls record stores a total of 60 calls, comprising up to 30 voice call or video-phone call entries and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication entries.
- Calls to the same phone number are stored in the redial calls record as a single entry under the most recent call. They are also stored in the dialed calls record as another single entry.
- When the number of redial/dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum number, existing entries are respectively overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- When you make a call by retrieving a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, the call is not stored in the redial/dialed calls record.

1 Press .

The "Redial display (list)" appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

In the stand-by display, press  and then select . Then press  ► Press  "Dialed calls".

The "Dialed calls display (list)" appears.



2 Select the Redial or Dialed calls record entry you want to check. And then press .

The "Redial display (details)" or "Dialed calls display (details)" appears.

In the top right corner of the display, the "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check earlier or later redial/dialed calls record entries

Press  to move to the previous (more recent) number or  to move to the next (older) number.

■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



3 Press or .

■ To make a video-phone call

Press .

4 To end the call, press .

Note

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the redial or dialed calls record. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective records, or select "Record display set" and set "Redial/Dialed calls" to "OFF".
- You can make a voice call (or video-phone call) to the most recent phone number in the Redial record by pressing  (or ) and then  in the stand-by display.
- Records of outgoing 64K data communications are stored only when the FOMA USB cable (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored when you call someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- If the date and time is not set with "Set time", the date and time are not saved.
- Setting "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" erases all the entries stored up to that point in the Redial or Dialed calls record. However, calls made subsequently are stored in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
- During a video-phone call, Redial or Dialed calls cannot be displayed.

Using the function menu in the Redial/Dialed calls display

- For the function menus displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls display, the List display and Details display are the same.

In the redial/dialed calls display (list/details)...

➡ P. 51

1 (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Redial/Dialed calls display function menu 1/2

1 Notify caller ID*	▶ Choose from the following options: Choose whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
2 Prefix numbers*	▶ Select the prefix title to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P. 54	
3 International dial	■ When "+" prefix (a country code) is added ▶ Press ●.	
	■ When "+" prefix (a country code) is not added ▶ Select country code and press ● ▶ Press ●.	
	If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number*	See "Multi number" → P. 471	
5 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → P. 96	
6 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135	
7 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	

*: Functions that can be used only in the Details display.

Redial/Dialed calls display function menu 2/2

1 Compose SMS	See "Composing and Sending SMS" → P. 310	
2 Sent address	Displays the sent address list.	
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Delete selected	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and then press ●.	
5 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. All the redial and dialed call entries are deleted. For information on security code → P. 142	
6 Dialing speed*	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.
7 Select image*	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the current settings of "Me" and "Chara-den".

*: Functions that can be used only in the Details display.

Note

- Use "Compose message" to create a message to be sent to a mail address stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. If a phonebook entry has two or more mail addresses, the first address is used.
- "Delete all" deletes all the entries in "Redial" and "Dialed calls" records. Note that using "Delete this" or "Delete selected" with Redial record entries does not delete the calls from the Dialed calls record. To delete entries in the Dialed calls record, use the Function menu in the Dialed calls display.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

	Indicates a voice call.		Indicates an international video-phone call.
	Indicates an international call.		Indicates a packet communications call.
	Indicates a video-phone call.		Indicates a 64K data communications call.

Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can provide your phone number (caller ID) for display on the other party's phone (display) when you make a voice or video-phone call. Note that your caller ID is important information and care should be taken when providing it to others.

Function	Description	Page
Caller ID notification	Specifies whether other parties are notified of your caller ID whenever you make a call.	P. 45
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P. 53
Notify caller ID	Uses function menu to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P. 49

Adding the "186"/"184" prefix to the other party's phone number

To provide your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix when you dial the phone number. To withhold your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

■ To provide your phone number

- Voice calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) -
- Video-phone calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) -

■ To withhold your phone number

- Voice calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) -
- Video-phone calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) -

Note

- The same effect can be achieved by dialing the "✳31#" prefix instead of "186" and the "#31#" prefix instead of "184".
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" or "✳31#" prefix.

<Pause dial> Sending Push Signals Quickly

By sending push signals from your FOMA terminal, you can send messages to QUICKCAST*, use services such as ticket ordering and send bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data as pause dial record entries

You can store dialing data that you want to send as push signals beforehand as a pause dial record entry. Inserting a pause (p) allows you to send dial data with a pause.

- You can only store 1 dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and ✳ symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 Press .

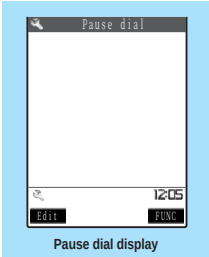
The "Pause dial display" appears.

■ **If there is dialing data already stored**
The stored dialing data appears.

2 Press (Edit) ► Enter the dialing data and press .

Press to enter the dialing data.

■ **To enter a pause (p)**
Hold down for 1 second or longer.



*As of January 2001, the DoCoMo "Pocket Bell" pager service has been renamed as "QUICKCAST".

Using the Pause dial display function menu

In the pause dial display...

➡ P. 53

1 Press Choose from the following options:

Pause dial display function menu

1 Edit	▶ Edit the dialing data and press  .
2 Send pause dial	▶ Enter the destination phone number and press  ▶ Press  . Each time you press  , the dialing data up to the pause (p) is sent.
3 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Using pause dial to send dialing data

1 Press .

2 Press ▶ Dial the destination phone number.

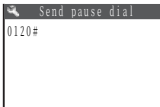
■ To enter a phone number from the phonebook or the Redial calls record or the like

Dial part of the phone number and press  to search for the number.

Press  to choose the search method from the Search phonebook display before searching for the phone number.

Press  to search in the Redial record or  to search in the Received calls record.

3 Press or .



The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and displays the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.

4 Press or to send the dialing data.

Each time you press  or , the dialing data up to the first pause (p) is sent. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call display reappears.

■ To send all the dialing data at once

Hold down  for 1 second or longer ▶ Press  "Send at one time".

It may not be possible to send all the dialing data at once depending on the recipients.

Note

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- To send dialing data to the other party during a call, switch to the pause dial display during the call and press .
- You cannot send push signals during a video-phone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

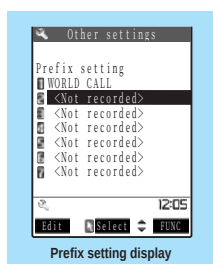
Default setting	"WORLD CALL" (009130010)

Use the procedure below to preset specific, frequently used numbers for future use. You can then use the preset numbers as phone number prefixes when you make calls using "Dial input", "Phonebook" or the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records. It is also useful for setting numbers such as "Caller ID notification".

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset numbers can include numbers from 0 to 9 and the #, *, and + symbols.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press ► “Other settings” ► Select “Prefix setting” and then press .

The “Prefix setting display” appears.



- 2 Select “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit).

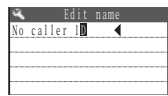
■ To change the details of a previously stored prefix

Choose the prefix title to be changed and press (Edit).

■ To check the details of an already recorded prefix

Press the number of the prefix title to be checked.

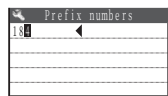
- 3 Enter the name under which you want to store the number and press .



The name can consist of 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.

For information on entering text → P. 522

- 4 Enter the number (prefix) and press .



The number can consist of up to 10 digits.

Using the function menu in the Prefix setting display

In the prefix setting display... ➡ P. 55

- 1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Prefix setting display function menu

1 Edit	Edit the prefix number. See “Entering text” → P. 522
2 Delete this	► Select “YES” and press .
3 Delete all	► Enter your security code and press ► Select “YES” and press .
For information on security code → P. 142	

<WORLD CALL> Making International Calls

Application: Unnecessary	Monthly fee: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service that can be used from DoCoMo mobile phones. FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to WORLD CALL at the same time. (This excludes subscribers who indicated that they did not require the service.)

- WORLD CALL can be used to call around 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included on the bill for your monthly FOMA call charges.

Changes for the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "My Line" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. Consequently, with the introduction of the "My Line" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phones has changed. Note that the previous dialing procedure (the procedure described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back of the manual.

Using dial key to make international calls

1 Dial the number in the following order: 009130-010-(country code)-(area code)-(the other party's phone number).

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing. However, note that calls to a country or region such as Italy may require the initial zero.

2 Press .

3 To end the call, press .

International video-phone calls can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing  to make the call after using the dialing procedure above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo website for information about the countries or the providers that can be connected.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the image of the other party shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international video-phone call or the connection may fail.

Using "+" to make an international call

By using the "+" prefix, you can make international calls without having to dial the international access code (e.g. 009130-010).

- At the time of purchase, "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting" (P. 56) is set to "Auto", so that the FOMA terminal automatically dials the international access code.

1 From the stand-by display, dial + (hold down for 1 second or longer) - (country code) - (area code) - (phone number).

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing. However, note that calls to a country or region such as Italy may require the initial zero.

2 Press or ► Press "Dial".

The FOMA terminal makes the international call.

■ To call by not changing "+" to the international access code

Select  "Original phone No.".

■ To cancel the call

Select  "Cancel".

Making it easier to dial overseas calls <Int'l dial setting>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD Prefix setting: "WORLD CALL" (009130010) Country Code setting: "アメリカ" (country code: 1)

You can change the settings used for dialing overseas calls and store new country codes. The table below lists the available options.

Setting	Explanation
Auto assist setting	When you make an overseas call from Japan, this function automatically replaces the "+" you entered with the preset international access code.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores the international access name and international access code used when you make international calls.
Country Code setting	Stores the country name and country code used when you make international calls.

● Auto assist settings

Use the procedure below to set the Auto assist function for "+" when you make overseas calls.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "Other settings"
► Select "Int'l dial setting" and press .
- 2 Press "Auto assist setting" ► Press "Auto".
■ To disable Auto assist
Press "OFF".
- 3 Select the country name and press .

Note

● If you enter "81" (the country code for Japan) after "+" or an emergency number (110, 119 or 118), the international access code is not added.

● Changing the stored international access code

You can only store 1 international access code.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "Other settings"
► Select "Int'l dial setting" and press .
 - 2 Press "IDD Prefix setting".
The stored IDD Prefix name and IDD Prefix Code appear.
 - 3 Press (Edit) ► Enter an IDD Prefix name and press .
 - 4 Enter the IDD Prefix Code and press .
- You can enter up to 10 digits for the international access code.

● Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "Other settings"
► Select "Int'l dial setting" and press .

- 2 Press **[DEF]** “Country Code setting”.
The “Country Code setting display” appears.
- 3 Select “<Not recorded>” and press **[Edit]**.
 ■ To change the details of a previously stored setting
 Choose the stored setting and press **[Edit]**.
- 4 Enter the country name and press **[Edit]**.
For information on entering text → P. 522
- 5 Enter the country code and press **[Edit]**.
You can enter up to 5 digits for a country code.
See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.



Using the function menu in the Country Code setting display

In the country code setting display... ➔ P. 58

- 1 **[FUNC]** ▶ Choose from the following options:

Country Code setting display function menu

[1] Edit	Edit the setting. See “Entering Text” → P. 522
[2] Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press [Edit] .
[3] Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press [Edit] ▶ Select “YES” and press [Edit] . About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

- You cannot delete the country codes set using “Auto assist setting”.

<Sub-address>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting	ON

This function enables you to set “*” as a marker in a phone number so that the numbers that follow “*” are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are used in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communications devices and to select content in “M-stage V-LIVE”.

- 1 Press **[Menu]** ▶ Select **[Settings]** and press **[Edit]** ▶ Press **[Left Arrow]** ▶ Press **[1/2]** “Other settings”
 ▶ Select “Sub-address” and press **[Edit]** ▶ Select **[1/2]** “ON” or **[2/3]** “OFF”.

Note

- In the following situations, “*” does not function as a sub-address marker, but is recognized as an ordinary phone number that includes the “*” character.
 - Where the “*” is at the beginning of a phone number.
 - Where “*” immediately follows “186”, “184”, “*31#” or “#31#” at the beginning of a phone number.
 - Where “*” immediately follows a number entered using “Prefix numbers”.

<Reconnect control>

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting	No tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call or video-phone call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. You can use this procedure to set the type of alarm sounded by the FOMA terminal when a call is being reconnected by this function.

- The time within which reconnection is possible varies depending on your usage and the signal quality. In general, calls can be reconnected within roughly 10 seconds.
- If the signal quality deteriorates very suddenly, the call may end without an alarm being sounded.

1 Press ► Select "No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone".

Note

- Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
- The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction>

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting	ON

The noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice or video-phone call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 Press ► Select "ON" or "OFF".

Note

- The Noise reduction is always "ON" during a video-phone call.

<In-car Hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in the Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a device that support hands-free operation (such as a car navigation system), you can make and receive voice and video-phone call through the hands-free device.

For information on how to use the hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device.

This function is an optional function that will be available once devices that support hands-free operation are released. As of February 2005, no such devices have been released.

- To operate from a hands-free device, sets "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". →P. 404
- The display and ring tones used for incoming calls and mail are as specified in the FOMA terminal settings.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone will still sound through the hands-free device for incoming mail or voice and video-phone calls even when the FOMA terminal is set to "Manner mode" or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- When the FOMA terminal is set in Driving mode, operation for incoming calls and messages is as specified in the "Driving mode" settings.
- When the FOMA terminal is set in Record message, operation for incoming calls and mail is as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- If you make a video-phone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial function, the dialing speed is determined by the hands-free device. If no dialing speed is set, "64K" is used.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call is as specified in "Fold setting". If the FOMA terminal is set up so that sound is emitted from the hands-free device, "Fold setting" is ignored and folding the FOMA terminal makes no difference to the call status.

Receiving a Call

1 When a call comes in, press or to answer the call.

When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal rings, the call alert indicator flashes and the "Ringing display" appears.
Unless "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also vibrates to alert you to the call.

■ To switch to hands-free operation

Press  ( + ) during the call.

2 To end the call, press .

● Using the hands-free operation

In a hands-free call, it is recommended that you use a FOMA terminal in about 30cm distance. If you step away more than/less than 30cm from the terminal, your voice may be hard to be caught by the other party or may be distorted.



Ringing display

Using the function menu in the Ringing display

In the ringing display... ➡ P. 60

1 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Ringing display function menu

 Call rejection	Deliberately cuts off the call.
 Call forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" setting is "ON" or "OFF". See "Call Forwarding Service" → P. 464
 Voice mail	Connects the caller to the voice mail service center. The call is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice mail" setting is "ON" or "OFF". See "Voice Mail Service" → P. 460

Note

- When "Any key answer" is set to "Answer setting", you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can answer a call by pressing any of the - keys, , , , and (Home) as well as and . However, pressing (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold. When you set "Quick silent" to "Answer setting", you can only stop the ring tone by pressing a key.
- Pressing or (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is ringing switches to Manner mode and also switches the FOMA terminal to "Record message" so that the caller can record a message.
- When you receive a call with a caller ID from someone who is listed in your phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the corresponding phonebook entry, the image is also displayed. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are withheld and only the phone number is displayed. If the caller does not provide a caller ID, that is displayed as the reason (caller ID withheld).
- Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the "Received calls" record. If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed. If a caller who provides a phone number is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are displayed.
- If you subscribe to the "Call waiting", set "Arrival call act" to "Answer" and then activate call waiting, you will hear a short double-beep ("bibip") if someone else calls when you are already on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
 - You can put your current call on hold and answer the new call.
 - If you have subscribed to the "Voice mail" service, you can forward the new call to the voice mail service center.
 - If you have subscribed to the "Call forwarding" service, you can forward the new call to the designated call forwarding number.
 See P. 463 for details.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the call alert indicator does not flash when "Driving mode" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- You can reject calls from numbers that are not stored in your phonebook. → P. 156
- If you receive a call from a number that is not stored in your phonebook, you can specify the period of time from receiving a call and the ring tone beginning. → P. 156
- You cannot receive calls from a number that is specified to "Call rejection". Furthermore, you cannot receive calls from numbers that have not been specified to "Restrictions". → P. 153
- If the caller's phone number is not provided, the reason for the non-notification is displayed. → P. 155

<Answer setting>

Using the Dial Keys to Receive a Call

Default setting

Any key answer

You can use this setting to allow you to quickly turn off the ring tone and answer the phone when you receive a call. Quick silent is very useful when you receive a call in a situation where the ring tone may disturb people around you.

1

Press ► Choose from the following options:

1 Any key answer	When you receive a voice call, as well as or , you can answer the call immediately by pressing any of the - keys or , , , and (Home) (Pressing (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold). Note that this does not apply for video-phone calls.
2 Quick silent	When you receive a voice or video-phone call, opening the FOMA terminal or pressing any of the - keys, , , , and (Home) stops the ring tone and vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. For a voice call, you can answer the call by pressing or . For a video-phone call, press to answer using the camera image or press or to answer using the substitute image.
3 OFF	When you receive a voice call, you can only answer the call by pressing or . For video-phone calls, you can only answer by pressing , , or . (Pressing or answers the call using the substitute image.)

Note

- Even when "Quick silent" is set, the "Any key answer" function is used in "Manner mode".
- Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" is set, holding down for 1 second or longer switches the backlight on and off rather than invoking the "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" operation.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you can accept calls by pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) regardless of the "Answer setting" setting.
- If "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", "Any key answer" and "Quick silent" do not function when you press (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded.

<Fold setting>

Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded

Default setting

End the call

Use this procedure to specify how the FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or video-phone call.

1 Press     ► **Choose from the following options:**

1 No tone	Puts the current call on hold. Mutes the sound for voice calls. For video-phone calls, the sound is muted and the "Substitutive image" is sent to the caller. No hold tone is used. When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status it was in before it was folded. However, if you folded the FOMA terminal when the current voice call or video-phone call was on hold, re-opening the FOMA terminal resumes the voice call and remains the video-phone call on hold.				
2 Tone on	► Choose from the following options: Puts the current call on hold. For voice calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" while the FOMA terminal is folded. You can also select whether the hold tone is played through the speaker of your own FOMA terminal. For video-phone calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" and sees the hold image. When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status it was in before it was folded. However, if you folded the FOMA terminal when the current call was on hold, re-opening the FOMA terminal resumes the call. <table><tr><td>1 Speaker ON</td><td>The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.</td></tr><tr><td>2 Speaker OFF</td><td>The hold tone is only heard by the other party.</td></tr></table>	1 Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.	2 Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
1 Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.				
2 Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.				
3 End the call	Ends the call. Folding the FOMA terminal has the same effect as pressing  .				

Note

- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function is disabled and folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status. However, during a video-phone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the substitute image.
- Even if the "Tone on" setting is selected, folding the FOMA terminal activates the "No tone" setting if you switch the calls using "Call waiting".

<Received calls>

Using the Received Calls Record

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone number and the date and time are stored in the received calls record.

- The received calls record stores a total of 60 calls, comprising up to 30 voice call or video-phone calls and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication calls.
- When the received calls record is full, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.

1 Press     ► **Choose from the following options:**

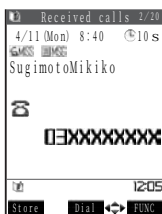
1 All calls	Displays all the call record entries.
2 Missed calls	Displays only the record entries for missed calls. "Unknown calls" shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 **Check the list of received calls.**
The "Received calls display (list)" appears.



Example: Received calls display (list)

3 Select the received call entry you want to check and press .



Example: Received calls display (details)

The "Received calls display (detail)" appears.

In the top right corner of the display, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ To check earlier or later received call entries

Press  to move to the previous (more recent) number or  to move to the next (older) number.

■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.

4 Press or .

■ To make a video-phone call

Press .

5 To end the call, press .

Note

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have received calls from, delete the Received calls record entries or set "Received calls" of "Record display set" to "OFF".
- If you set a call that did not ring long enough not to be recorded in the missed call history in "Ringing time", a call that is shorter than the time you set in "Set mute seconds" is not recorded in the received call history. → P. 156
- You can also retrieve the received calls record by pressing  in the stand-by display.
- You can make a voice call (or a video-phone call) to the most recent phone number in the Received calls record by pressing  (or ) and then  in the stand-by display.
- If the date and time is not set with "Set time", the date and time is not saved.
- Setting "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" erases all the entries stored up to that point in the received calls record. However, calls received subsequently are stored as received call record entries.
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored even when you receive a call from someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- If you receive calls from someone other than the specified phonebook entries when "Restrict dialing" is set, only the phone numbers are stored for those calls.
- If the caller is using "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" number may be displayed.
- During a video-phone call, "Received calls" cannot be displayed.

■ Icons used in the received and missed call records

  	Indicates a received voice call/a missed voice call/a missed voice call for which the details have not been confirmed.	  	Indicates data received via packet communication/ notification of data received via packet communication/notification of data for which the details have not been confirmed received via packet communication.
  	Indicates a received international call/a missed international call/a missed international call for which the details have not been confirmed.	  	Indicates data received via 64K data communication/ notification of data received via 64K data communication/notification of data for which the details have not been confirmed received via 64K data communication.
  	Indicates a received video-phone call/a missed video-phone call/a missed video-phone call for which the details have not been confirmed.		Indicates a received remote observation call.
  	Indicates a received international video-phone call/a missed international video-phone call/a missed international video-phone call for which the details have not been confirmed.		Indicates a voice call in which the caller left a message.

Using the function menu in the received call record display

● The function menu displayed in the Received calls display is the same whether the List display or Detail display is shown.

In the received calls display (list/details)...

➔ P. 62

1 (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Received call record display function menu 1/3

1 Notify caller ID*	➔ Choose from the following options: Choose whether to notify the other party of your caller ID. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 OFF</td><td>Withholds your caller ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 ON</td><td>Provides your caller ID.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Cancel prefix</td><td>Cancels the caller ID notification setting.</td></tr> </table>	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.						
2 ON	Provides your caller ID.						
3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.						
2 Prefix numbers*	➔ Choose the prefix number to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" ➔ P. 54						
3 International dial	■ When "+" prefix (a country code) is added ➔ Press ●. ■ When "+" prefix (a country code) is not added ➔ Select country code and press ● ➔ Press ●. If the area code begins with a zero "0", the zero is automatically deleted.						
4 Multi number*	See "Multi number" ➔ P. 471						
5 Ringing time	Displays the missed call record entries with the ringing times.						
6 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" ➔ P. 96						
7 Add desktop icon	➔ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" ➔ P. 135						

*: Functions that can be used only in the Details display.

Received call record display function menu 2/3

1 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247				
2 Compose SMS	See "Composing and Sending SMS" ➔ P. 310				
3 Received address	Displays the received address list.				
4 Delete this	➔ Select "YES" and press ●.				
5 Delete selected	➔ Use ● to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ➔ Press ● (Finish) ➔ Select "YES" and then press ●.				
6 Delete all	➔ Enter your security code and press ● ➔ Select "YES" and press ●. About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142				
7 Dialing speed*	➔ Choose the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 64K</td><td>Sets to use 64K video-phone call.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 32K</td><td>Sets to use 32K video-phone call.</td></tr> </table>	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.
1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.				
2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.				

*: Functions that can be used only in the Details display.

Received call record display function menu 3/3

① Select image*	▶ Choose the following options:	
	Sets the image used for video-phone calls.	
	① Me	Sets self-portrait.
	② Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	③ Release	Cancels the current settings of "Me" and "Chara-den".

*: Functions that can be used only in the Details display.

Note

- Use "Compose message" to create a message to be sent to a mail address stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. If a phonebook entry has 2 or more mail addresses, the first address is used.
- Data from packet communications or 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose mail.

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting

Level 4

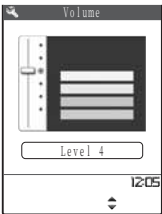
Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to a setting between "Level 1" (quietest) and "Level 6" (loudest) during a call.

- If you adjust the volume during a call or while the FOMA terminal is in stand-by mode, the adjusted setting is retained after you complete the adjustment.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example:During a Voice call>

- 1
- During a call, press (Home) or (Memo/Check) ▶ Press (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume.



The earpiece volume can be adjusted in the same way by holding down or for 1 second or longer during a call.

On the Volume display you can adjust the volume continuously by holding down (Home) or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer. If you do not press any FOMA terminal keys for 2 seconds or longer when the Volume display is shown, adjustment ends and the stand-by display reappears.

Note

- You can also adjust the earpiece volume during a video-phone call or in hands-free mode.
- During a video-phone call, use or to adjust the earpiece volume. You cannot continuously adjust the earpiece volume during a video-phone call by holding down (Home) or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer.

Adjusting the earpiece volume in stand-by mode

- 1
- In stand-by mode, press or for 1 second or longer ▶ adjust the volume with or .

You can adjust the volume continuously by holding down or for 1 second or longer.

If you do not press any FOMA terminal keys for 2 seconds or longer when the Volume display is shown, adjustment ends and the stand-by display reappears.

<Ring volume>

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting

Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of the ring tones the FOMA terminal uses when you receive a voice call, video-phone call, mail, Message Request or Message Free. There are 6 volume settings for each type. You can also make ring tone silent or turn up (step tone).

- You cannot adjust the volume while the FOMA terminal is ringing.
- The ring volume setting specified for "Phone" in this function is also applied to the "Melody", the "Select ring tone" setting for a voice call, the alarm tones for "Schedule" and "ToDo" events and the playback volume for downloaded melodies.
- The volume is retained after setting with this function.

1 Press     Choose from the following options:

1 Phone	▶ Press  or  . Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
2 Video-phone	▶ Press  or  . Adjusts the ring tone volume for video-phone calls.
3 Mail	▶ Press  or  . Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mail and SMS.
4 Chat mail	▶ Press  or  . Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mail.
5 Message Request	▶ Press  or  . Adjusts the ring tone volume for Message Request.
6 Message Free	▶ Press  or  . Adjusts the ring tone volume for Message Free.

■ To set step tones (gradually louder ring tones)

In the Level 6 setting, press .

When you receive a call with step tones set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at level 1 and increasing to level 6.

■ To set a silent ring tone

In the Level 1 setting, press .

When a silent ring tone is set, the FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.

An icon appears in the stand-by display to confirm that a "Silent" ring tone is set.

 : Displayed when "Silent" is set for Phone/Video-phone calls.

 : Displayed when "Silent" is set for Mail, Chat mail, Message Request or Message Free.

 : Displayed when "Silent" is set for Phone/Video-phone calls and Mail, Chat mail, Message Request or Message Free.

Note

- If i-motion with sound is set for a ring tone or incoming call image, it sounds with "Level 2" when "Step" is set for ring volume.
- If "Step" or "Silent" is set for "Phone", the volume for playing "Melody" or a downloaded melody from sites becomes "Level 2".

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When the FOMA terminal rings and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the unanswered call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

- Call charges apply to the caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.

1 Press when the FOMA terminal rings.



The FOMA terminal makes 3 rapid beeps and puts the caller on hold.
The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.
You can set the message played while the call is held in "Call response setting".

■ To hang up while a call is on hold

Press .

■ If the caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.

2 When you are ready to take the call, press or .

If "Any key answer" is selected in "Answer setting", you can answer the call by pressing any of the ,  -  keys or , , , , , ,  (Home) or  (Memo/Check).

In case of video-phone → P. 81

Note

- If "Phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make 3 short beeps when you apply answer hold. However, the beeps do sound if you are using an "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- If you are contracted to receive "Voice mail service" or "Call forwarding service", selecting "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" from the function menu when you receive a call either forwards the call to the voice mail service or the forwarding number.

<Call response setting>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting

On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

When you put a voice or video-phone call on hold or put a call that is already in progress on hold, use this procedure to set the message heard by the other party.

1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press "Talk" ▶ Select "Call response setting" and press ▶ Choose from the following options:

① On hold tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the Guidance when putting a call on hold.	
	① Tone 1	The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't come to the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	② Tone 2	The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't come to the phone just now. Please call again later."
	③ Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P. 444
	④ Voice announce 2*	
② Holding tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the hold tone in talk.	
	① Melody	"For Elise" is played.
	② Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P. 444
	③ Voice announce 2*	

*: Not displayed if no "Voice announce" message has been recorded.

Note

- You can check the selected message by pressing  (Play) in the message selection display.

Blocking Calls When You Are Driving

Driving mode (the in-car messaging function) is an automatic answering service specifically provided to ensure safe driving. When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode, it sends a message to callers saying that you cannot answer the phone because you are driving, and then ends the call.

- Driving mode can only be set or cancelled from the stand-by display. It can also be set or cancelled when the  icon is displayed.
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

1 In the stand-by display, hold down for 1 second or longer.



A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been set and  appears on the stand-by display.

■ To cancel Driving mode

Repeat step 1.

Driving mode is cancelled and  disappears.

Note

- If "Record message" is set to "ON", Driving mode takes precedence and the "Record message" setting is disabled.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to "Manner mode", Driving mode takes precedence and Manner mode is disabled.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, the FOMA terminal cancels Driving mode.
- The following tones do not sound in Driving mode:
 - Ring tone for voice or video-phone calls
 - Ring tone for Msg. Request/Free
 - Alarm clock tone
 - ToDo alarm tone
 - Charging confirmation tone
 - Ring tone for mail
 - Notification tone for chat-mail
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - Low-voltage alarm tone
 - i-α ppli software tone
- Remote all lock can also be set when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

● Handling of received calls in Driving mode

In Driving mode, your FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a voice call or video-phone call. Calls are logged in the "Missed calls" record of "Received calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. There is also no ring tone when you receive mail or 64K data communication. A caller making a voice call hears a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. A caller making a video-phone call sees a message on his or her display saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. However, if the FOMA terminal is switched off or  is shown on the display, the caller is not notified that you are driving and hears or sees the message used when  is displayed.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Driving mode are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode while network services are activated, voice calls and video-phone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a video-phone call is received
Voice mail	The caller hears a message saying that you are driving and is asked to leave a message. ^{*1}	Voice mail cannot be used for video-phone calls. The caller sees a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.
Call forwarding	The caller hears a message saying that you are driving and the call is then forwarded. ^{*2}	Call forwarding can be used for video-phone calls. Call forwarding takes precedence and the received video-phone call is immediately forwarded to the designated number. ^{*3}

Service	When a voice call is received	When a video-phone call is received
Nuisance call barring	- Callers from barred numbers hear a message saying that the call has been rejected and the call then ends. - Callers from other numbers hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.	The Nuisance call barring service can be used for video-phone calls. - When the call is from a barred number, the Nuisance call barring service takes precedence and the call ends without a message saying that the call has been rejected. - Callers from other numbers see a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.
Caller ID request	- Callers who have not provided a caller ID hear a message requesting a caller ID and the call then ends. - Callers who have provided a caller ID hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.	The Caller ID request service can be used for video-phone calls. - When the caller have not provided a caller ID, the Caller ID request service takes precedence and the call ends without a message requesting a caller ID. - Callers who have provided a caller ID see a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for voice mail is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.

*2 : If the ring time for call forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.

*3 : Forwarded video-phone calls are only connected if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible video-phone.

<Info notice setting>

Checking Missed Calls

When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can use this function to have the FOMA terminal use tones, vibration or the call alert indicator to notify you when you have any missed calls or new mail.

- This function notifies you of the reception when the "Missed call", "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon is displayed on the stand-by display.
- You cannot use this function to check for missed calls or new mail in the following situations:
 - When All lock is set.
 - When Side key guard is set to "ON".
 - When PIM lock is set.
 - When the Info notice setting is set to "OFF".

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

Default setting	ON

1 Press ► Select "ON" or "OFF".

Checking for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail

This function allows you to check for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail by pressing (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail		When you have no missed calls, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Call alert indicator color	Sound and vibration	Call alert indicator color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and 1-second vibration.	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in "Phone", "Mail" and "Chat mail" in the "Illumination" settings. When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail, the indicator flashes for 1 second in the respective color*.	"Bibibip" tone and 0.2-second vibration.	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in "Color 12".

*: If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in the "Illumination" settings, the call alert indicator flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mail and "Color 3" for new chat mail.

Note

- The volume for "ON" is determined by the "Phone" setting in "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, "Level 2" is used as the volume. If "Silent" is set, the FOMA terminal makes no sound.
- If "OFF" is selected as the "Phone" setting in "Vibrator", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- In Manner mode, the FOMA terminal emits no tones and notifies you using vibration. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you are using an "Original" manner mode and the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- You cannot use this function to check new mail held at the i-mode Center.
- Opening the FOMA terminal during the notification stops the notification.
- You cannot use this function to check missed calls while the FOMA terminal is open. Pressing  (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is open switches to "Play/Erase msg."

<Record message>

Having the Caller Leave a Message

Default setting

Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or video-phone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal.

- You can record up to 5 messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.

Setting Record message

1 Press Choose from the following options:

 ON	 Choose from the following options: Select the desired type of answer message.	
	 Japanese1	Plays the following Japanese message: "ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーッという発信音の後に20秒以内でお名前とご用件をお話してください。なお、テレビ電話の場合でも音声メッセージのみのお預かりとなります。" ("I cannot answer the phone at the moment. Please leave your name and a short message within 20 seconds after the beep. If this is a video-phone call, please leave a voice message.")
	 Japanese2	Plays the following Japanese message: "せっかく電話をもらったけど、いま出られません。ピーッという発信音の後にメッセージを入れてね。テレビ電話のときも声しか入らないの。ごめんね。" ("Sorry, but I can't take your call just now. Please leave a message after the beep. If it's a video-phone call, just leave a voice message, OK? Thanks.")
	 English	Plays the following English message: "I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. When you call by video-phone, you can leave a voice message."
	 Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
	 Voice announce 2*	See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P. 444
 OFF	Cancels the "Record message" setting.	

*: Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ringing time.

Entering a 3-digit number automatically sets the record message and the  icon appear on the stand-by display.

■ To set the displayed time as shown

Press  without entering a number.

Note

- You can check the selected answer message by pressing  (Play) in the answer message selection display.
- You cannot set the same ringing time for recorded messages and "Remote observation" or "Automatic answer".
- To give precedence to the "Record message" function when "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" are set at the same time, set a shorter ringing time than the time set for Voice mail and Call forwarding.
- The Record message function is disabled when the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode.
- If the ringing start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time set for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the ringing start time.
- You can use "Utilities" to set an answer message for each phone number and group "Utilities" to set an answer message for each group. → P. 107

When you receive a call with "Record message" set to "ON"

Once the set time has elapsed, the Record message function starts up and plays the preset answer message to the caller. For a video-phone call, the "Preparing" image is sent and the answer message is played. The "Recording" image is then sent and recording begins.



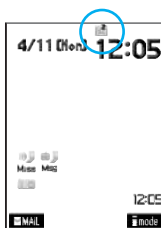
When message recording begins, the Recording display appears. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording. Regardless of the duration of the recording, the recording is counted in terms of the number of recordings when recording begins.

■ To answer a voice call

Press  or .

■ To answer a video-phone call

To answer using the camera image, press . To answer using the substitute image, press .



For a voice call

When recording ends, the original display reappears and the "Missed call" desktop icon and "Record message" desktop icon appears in the stand-by display.

You can check the contents by selecting the one of the desktop icons. → P. 138

Selecting desktop icons → P. 136

When 1 message is recorded,  changes to . It changes to  when 2 messages are recorded or to  when 3 messages are recorded, and so on.

Note

- Voice only messages can be recorded for video-phone calls.
- You cannot receive another call while a message is being recorded. The other caller hears the busy tone.
- When the Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller's voice during the recording.
- Even when "Record message" is not set to "ON", you can record messages from callers by setting an "Original" manner mode in which "Record message" is set to ON. However, if there are already 5 recorded messages, incoming calls are handled as specified in the Manner mode settings.
- Once the number of the recorded messages has reached 5, the FOMA terminal cannot record a message for the next caller and does not play the answer message.
- If "Voice mail" is set to "Activate", once 5 messages have been recorded on the FOMA terminal, you can have additional messages recorded by the Voice Mail Service Center.
- When PIM lock is set, this function is set to "OFF" and the "Missed call" desktop icon is not displayed.

■ Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Having Callers Leave a Message During Another Call

Even when the “Record message” function is not set to “ON”, this function allows you to begin message recording during a call simply by pressing one key.

1 During a call, press or (Memo/Check).

The Record message function starts up and the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode at the same time.

Note

- You cannot set “Record message” to “ON” with this function. To have the FOMA terminal automatically record messages, use the “Record message” setting.
- The Record message function starts up even when Manner mode operation is set to use an “Original” manner mode and “Record message” is set to “OFF” in that mode.
- If there are already 5 recorded messages, “Record message” does not start up and the FOMA terminal operates in accordance with the settings for the Manner mode set in “Manner mode set”.
- The FOMA terminal remains in Manner mode when the call ends. To cancel Manner mode, hold down  for 1 second or longer.
- When “PIM lock” is set, the FOMA terminal does not record messages when set to Manner mode.

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

Use this function to play back and erase voice calls and messages recorded using “Record message” and “Voice memo”.

- You cannot play back recorded messages or voice memos when “OFF” is selected for “Received calls” in “Record display set”.

Playback

The “ PHONE” is displayed for the recorded messages from voice phone calls and the “ PHONE” is displayed for the recorded messages from video-phone calls.

A star “★” is displayed beside recorded voice memo.

- When a recorded message is from a caller who provided a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed during playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name is also displayed.

1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press “Play/ Erase msg.”

The “Play/Erase msg. display” appears.



Play/Erase msg. display

2 Press the number for the item to be played.

The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the message ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

Press (Memo/Check).

Each time you press (Memo/Check), the next most recent message is played.

Voice memos are played last.

■ To interrupt playback

Press or .

■ To call the phone number displayed during playback

Press .

■ To make a video-phone call to the phone number displayed during playback

Press .

■ To erase the message during playback

Press (Erase) ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

● You can also play back messages by pressing (Memo/Check) in the stand-by display.

Using the function menu in the Play/Erase msg. display

In the play/erase msg. display...

➔ P. 72

1 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Play/Erase msg. display function menu

① Play	Plays the message. See "Playback" ➔ P. 72
② Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press .
③ Delete rec. msg.	▶ Select "YES" and press .
	Erases all the recorded messages.
④ Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press .
	Erases all the recorded messages and voice memos.

■ Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

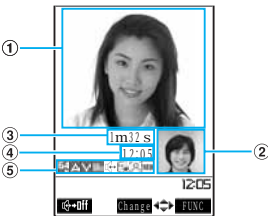
● Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

What is the Video-phone?	76
Making a Video-phone Call	77
Receiving a Video-phone Call	81
Using "Chara-den"	83
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party	83
Setting the Image Displayed During Video-phone Calls.....	86
Remote Observation	88

What is the Video-phone?

- The video-phone function can be used between any 2 phones that support DoCoMo video-phoning, even different types of phone.
- DoCoMo video-phoning conforms to the 3G-324M^{*1} standard set down in the international 3GPP^{*2} standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a video-phone terminal that uses a different system from DoCoMo video-phones.
^{*1} : 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile video-phones.
^{*2} : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
- Video-phone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
 - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64k bps
 - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32k bps

Viewing the video-phone display



- ① Main display. By default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone.
- ② Sub-display. By default, this shows the camera image from your phone.
- ③ Shows the call duration.
- ④ Shows the current time.
- ⑤ Shows the video-phone function settings.

: 64K video-phone call in progress

: 32K video-phone call in progress

: Sending/Receiving voice

: Voice transmission error

: Sending/Receiving video

: Video transmission error

: Sending camera image

: Sending substitute image selected in "Select image"

: Sending Chara-den

: Hands-free OFF

: Hands-free ON

: The state where the motion of a face can be followed → P. 87

: The state where the motion of a face cannot be followed → P. 87

: Visual check in progress

: Photo mode (Portrait)

: Photo mode (Scenery)

: Switch lens (Macro)

: Key operation/DTMF mode*

*: See → P. 81 for information on DTMF.

: Key operation/Whole action mode

: Key operation/Parts action mode

Key	Video-phone call operation
	Changing between front and rear cameras
	Switching the Main display
(H) (Home), (M) (Memo/Check)	Adjusting the volume
	Adjusting the zoom ratio
	Changing to and from hands-free
	Display the function menu
	On hold

Making a Video-phone Call

● Video-phone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service. → P. 55

1 Dial the phone number starting with the other party's area code.

The "Video-phone number input display" appears.

Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

■ To call a mobile phone

090-xxxx-xxxx

or

080-xxxx-xxxx

■ To call a PHS phone

070-xxxx-xxxx



Video-phone number input display

2 Press **[F4]** ▶ When the video-phone connection is established, press **[F4+III]** to switch to hands-free mode.

The "Video-phone in-call display" appears.

Because the other party's voice can be heard by people around you in hands-free mode, you should move to a location where your call will not disturb other people before switching to hands-free mode.

See "Using the hands-free operation" → P. 60



The charge of digital communications starts from this screen.



Video-phone in-call display

■ To send video from the rear camera

Press **[F4]**.

Each time you press **[F4]**, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (Switch camera).

■ To put the current video-phone call on hold

Press **[F4+CLR]**.

The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her video-phone display. To release a held video-phone call, press **[F4]** (answers the held video-phone call using the camera image), or **[F4+CLR]** or **[F4+END]** (answers the held video-phone call using the substitute image).

■ If you connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ If you cannot make video-phone calls → P. 77

3 To end the call, press **[F4+END]**.

■ When a video-phone call fails

If a video-phone call fails, a message appears giving the reason for the connection failure. However, in some circumstances, the explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the called party and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

Display	Reason
Check the number and retry	You dialed the number incorrectly.
Busy	The called party is on another call or using i-mode or packet communication.
Out of service area or power off	The called party is out of signal range or his/her phone is turned off.
Driving mode	The called party's phone is in Driving mode.
Select on for the Call ID Notification	When the call is made without notifying caller ID (When connecting to M-stage V-LIVE or Visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded.
Failed to connect	When you connect with no caller ID: • Set the caller ID notification to "ON". (This message may be displayed for the reason other than the above.)

Note

- The  icon flashes while you are dialing a video-phone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If the call is dialed at the "32K" dialing speed,  flashes.
- During a hands-free call,  is displayed and the other party's voice is played through the FOMA terminal speaker. Pressing  ( Off) again switches hands-free mode off and  changes to .
- Always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear during a hands-free call. Holding the FOMA terminal close to your ear could adversely affect your hearing or damage your ear.
- If an attempted "64K" video-phone call fails to connect when "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", it automatically switches to the "32K" dialing speed. If the video-phone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode. The table below shows how "Voice call auto switch" and automatic connection speed switching operate when a video-phone call fails to connect.

	Dialing speed set to "64K"	Dialing speed set to "32K"
"Voice call auto switch" set to ON	The dialing speed automatically changes to "32K". If the video-phone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice-call mode.
"Voice call auto switch" set to OFF	The dialing speed automatically changes to "32K". If the video-phone call still fails to connect, the video-phone call ends.	Ends the video-phone call.

- If you make a video-phone call to a phone that does not support video-phone calls, or if the called party's phone supports video-phone calls but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support video-phone calls and "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", the call is cut off by the called party before the video-phone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation may not be carried out if you dial the wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN video-phone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as at February 2005). Note that call charge may apply in some cases.
- Once a video-phone is successfully connected, it is not re-dialed as a voice call.
- During a video-phone call with the FOMA terminal, if the call is forwarded, a message appears saying that the call is being forwarded.
- If you make a video-phone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- If the "Recharge battery" battery low alarm appears on the display during a video-phone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later.
- The digital communication charge is required when a substitute image is displayed during a video-phone call.
- A substitute image is displayed if you do not receive any image because of the other party's setting.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a video-phone call. Received mail is held at the i-mode center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" once the video-phone is completed.
- You can receive SMS during a video-phone call.
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make video-phone calls while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" is set.

Using the function menu in the video-phone number input display

In the video-phone number input display...

➡ P. 77

1

 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Video-phone number input display function menu 1/2

1 Notify caller ID	▶ Choose from the following options: Choose whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
2 Prefix numbers	▶ Choose the prefix title to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" → P. 54	
3 International dial	■ When "+" is attached (when a country code is used) ▶ Press ●.	
	■ When "+" is not attached (when no country code is used) ▶ Select country code and press ● ▶ Press ●.	
	If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number	See "Multi number" → P. 471	
5 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93	
6 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	
7 Dialing speed	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.

Video-phone number input display function menu 2/2

1 Select image	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the current settings of "Me" and "Chara-den".

Note

- The Dialing speed setting only applies to 1 (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls records. Also, if you make a voice call after specifying a Dialing speed setting, the setting is ignored.
- If you make a call to the FOMA terminal compatible with the video-phone, the use of the 64K transmission speed will be recommended.
- The "32K" dialing speed allows you to use video-phones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a video-phone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at "32K" bps. However, note that "32K" video-phone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" video-phone calls.
- If there are two or more dialing speed settings, they are given priority as follows, with highest degree of priority to ①:
 - ① Dialing speed setting selected from the function menu when a video-phone call is made
 - ② Dialing speed setting from the Utilities function for the phonebook
 - ③ Dialing speed setting from the Utilities function for groups

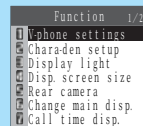
Using the function menu in the video-phone in-call display

In the video-phone in-call display...

➡ P. 77

1

Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Function menu in the video-phone in-call display

Video-phone in-call display function menu 1/2

① V-phone settings	► Choose from the following options: Sets the screen for video-phone call.										
① Image quality* ¹	► Choose from the following options: Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Normal (default setting)</td><td>Standard setting for both quality and movement.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Prefer img qual</td><td>Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Prefer motion spd</td><td>Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.</td></tr> </table>	① Normal (default setting)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.	② Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.	③ Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.				
① Normal (default setting)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.										
② Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.										
③ Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.										
② Brightness	► Press  to adjust the brightness and then press . 5 brightness levels (–2 to ± 0 to +2) are available.										
③ White balance	► Choose from the following options: These options set the image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. → P. 179 <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Auto (default setting)</td><td>Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Fine</td><td>Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Cloudy</td><td>Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.</td></tr> <tr> <td>④ Light bulb</td><td>Select this option when indoors under incandescent lighting.</td></tr> <tr> <td>⑤ Fluorescent light</td><td>Select this option when indoors under fluorescent lighting.</td></tr> </table>	① Auto (default setting)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.	② Fine	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.	③ Cloudy	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.	④ Light bulb	Select this option when indoors under incandescent lighting.	⑤ Fluorescent light	Select this option when indoors under fluorescent lighting.
① Auto (default setting)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.										
② Fine	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.										
③ Cloudy	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.										
④ Light bulb	Select this option when indoors under incandescent lighting.										
⑤ Fluorescent light	Select this option when indoors under fluorescent lighting.										
④ Color mode set* ¹	► Choose from the following options: These options set the image effects. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Normal (default setting)</td><td>Sets the normal image.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Sepia</td><td>Sets a sepia-tone image.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Monochrome</td><td>Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.</td></tr> </table>	① Normal (default setting)	Sets the normal image.	② Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.	③ Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.				
① Normal (default setting)	Sets the normal image.										
② Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.										
③ Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.										
⑤ Photo mode	► Choose from the following options: These options set modes suited to the scene being shot. This option cannot be set for the front camera. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Portrait (default setting)</td><td>The best mode for photographing people.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Scenery</td><td>The best mode for photographing landscapes and scenery.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Close-up</td><td>The best mode for changing to the macro lens and taking close-up shots.</td></tr> </table>	① Portrait (default setting)	The best mode for photographing people.	② Scenery	The best mode for photographing landscapes and scenery.	③ Close-up	The best mode for changing to the macro lens and taking close-up shots.				
① Portrait (default setting)	The best mode for photographing people.										
② Scenery	The best mode for photographing landscapes and scenery.										
③ Close-up	The best mode for changing to the macro lens and taking close-up shots.										
② Chara-den setup	See "Setting "Chara-den"" → P. 81 This function cannot be operated while sending camera images.										
③ Display light	► Choose from the following options: Set lighting of display backlight. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① All time ON (default setting)</td><td>Turns the display backlight on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② 15 seconds ON</td><td>Turns the display backlight on for 15 seconds only.</td></tr> </table>	① All time ON (default setting)	Turns the display backlight on.	② 15 seconds ON	Turns the display backlight on for 15 seconds only.						
① All time ON (default setting)	Turns the display backlight on.										
② 15 seconds ON	Turns the display backlight on for 15 seconds only.										
④ Disp. screen size	► Choose from the following options: Set the screen size. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Actual size</td><td>Displays the image at actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Fit in display (default setting)</td><td>Resizes the image to fit the display size.</td></tr> </table>	① Actual size	Displays the image at actual size.	② Fit in display (default setting)	Resizes the image to fit the display size.						
① Actual size	Displays the image at actual size.										
② Fit in display (default setting)	Resizes the image to fit the display size.										
⑤ Rear camera* ²	Switches between the front and rear cameras.										
⑥ Change main disp.	Changes the main display. Each time the display changes in the following sequence. "Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main display" → "Displays the image from your own camera on your main display" → "Displays only the image from the other party's camera" → "Displays only the image from your own camera".										

☒ Call time disp. (default setting: ☐ ON)	▶ Select ☐ "ON" or ☒ "OFF".

*1 : The settings are held only during calls.

*2 : If you have selected the Rear camera, "Front camera" is displayed.

Video-phone in-call display function menu 2/2

☐ Send DTMF tone *1	Sets/Cancels push signal transmission mode during Chara-den. Except in Chara-den, video-phone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.
☐ Own number	Displays your phone number during video-phone calls.
☐ Petit message	See "Sending messages during video-phone calls (with camera image) <Petit message>" → P. 87
☐ Decoration	See "Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in video-phone calls <Decoration>" → P. 87
☐ Off decoration	Erases the currently displayed message or stamp.
☐ Visual check *2	See "Checking your appearance during a video-phone call <Visual check>" → P. 86
☒ Switch lens (Macro) *3	The lens is switched to the Standard or Macro during shooting with the rear camera. With the lens switched to the Macro, the focus is on an object whose distance from the rear camera is approximately 9 cm. This operation is not applicable to the front camera.

*1 : If you have selected the Send DTMF tone, "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed.

*2 : If you have selected the Visual check, "Visual check off" is displayed.

*3 : For the "Macro," "Switch lens (STD)" is displayed. The lens is set to "STD" at the beginning of a video-phone call.

Setting "Chara-den"

In the video-phone in-call display function menu... ➔ P. 79

1 Press ☒ "Chara-den setup" ▶ Choose from the following options:

☐ Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a character and press ☒ . Select the character to be displayed.
☐ Action list	▶ Check the actions and keys. Use this option to check the available actions and the corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing ☒ .
☐ Change action	Changes the action mode.
☐ Switch image	Displays your own custom image on the other party's display. → P. 84

Receiving a Video-phone Call

Use this procedure to accept an incoming video-phone call. If you cannot answer a video-phone call immediately, you can still receive the call without showing the caller the image from your camera by displaying a substitute image (substitute image).

1 When you receive a video-phone call, press ☒ to answer the call.

■ To answer using the substitute image

Press ☒ or ☒.

The substitute image appears on the caller's display.

After sending the substitute image, you can still change to the camera image by pressing ☒.



Video-phone call reception display

■ When connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

Press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.
You can also answer using the substitute image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers the call using the substitute image once the specified ringing time has elapsed.

■ To switch between the camera image and substitute image

Press .
The same procedure can also be used when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the FOMA terminal.

■ To put a video-phone call on answer hold while the FOMA terminal is ringing

Press .
The "On hold" image appears on the caller's video-phone display. To answer the held call using the camera image, press . To answer using the substitute image, press  or .

2 Once the video-phone call is connected, press to switch to hands-free mode.

Because the other party's voice can be heard by people around you in hands-free mode, you should move to a location where your call will not disturb other people before switching to hands-free mode. "Using the hands-free operation" → P. 60

■ To send video from the rear camera

Press .
Each time you press , the video switches between the front and rear cameras (Switch camera).

■ To put the current video-phone call on hold

Press .
The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her video-phone display. Press  to answer a held video-phone call using the camera image, and  or  to answer a held video-phone call using the substitute image.

■ When connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice in the earphone.

3 To end the call, press .

Using the function menu in the video-phone call reception display

In the video-phone call reception display... ➡ P. 81

1 Press (FUNC) ➡ Choose from the following options:

Video-phone call reception display function menu

 Call rejection	Deliberately ends the call.
 Call forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" setting is "Activate/Deactivate". See "Call Forwarding Service" → P. 464

Note

- Even if "Voice mail" is set to "Activate", incoming video-phone calls are not connected to the Voice mail service center and remain active.
- If "Call forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received video-phone call can only be forwarded if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible (P. 76) video-phone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding.
- If you receive a video-phone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance call barring service, the call is ended without a call rejected message being sent to the caller.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to "Driving mode", it does not ring and the call alert indicator does not flash. Received calls are logged in the Received calls records as missed calls.

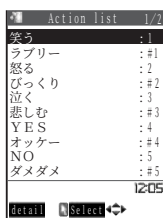
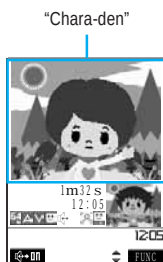
Using “Chara-den”

This function sends a cartoon character instead of your own image when you make a video-phone call. With “Chara-den”, you can make your cartoon character's mouth move in response to sound, move its hands and feet or change its facial expression by pressing keys.

- “What is Chara-den?” → P. 380
- To use “Chara-den”, you must first set “Substitutive image” to “Chara-den”. You can also use “Chara-den” by specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or in the Utilities.
- To switch from the camera image to Chara-den, press .

1 When you receive a video-phone call, press  to accept the call.

2 Control your character by pressing the dial keys.



Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

■ To change the action mode

You can switch between “Whole” and “Parts” in the function menu. → P. 81

“Whole” mode gives you full control over the character's movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Control the character by pressing the  to  or  to  keys.

“Parts” mode gives you partial control over the character's movements (face, hands and feet, etc.). Control the character by pressing the  to  keys.

■ To check an action

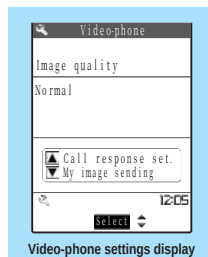
Press  to view the list of actions.

You can also press  to select an action and then perform that action.

Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  .

The “Video-phone settings display” appears.



2 Choose from the following options:

Video-phone settings display menu

Image quality	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	These options set the image quality for video-phone calls.	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	2 Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	3 Prefer motion sqd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Camera image sending	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the image sent to the other party in a video-phone call.	
	1 ON (default setting)	Sends the camera image.
	2 OFF	Sends the substitute image.
Select image	See "Setting the image sent in video-phone calls" → P. 84	
Voice call auto switch	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the operation performed when a video-phone call fails to connect.	
	1 ON	If a video-phone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice-phone call.
	2 OFF (default setting)	A message is displayed stating that you could not connect to a video-phone call, and the display returns to the stand-by display.
Remote observation	See "Remote Observation" → P. 88	
Disp. setting V-phone	See "Setting the Image Displayed During Video-phone Calls" → P. 86	

Note	
<Image quality> ● This can also be set from the function menu during a video-phone call. However, when the video-phone call ends, the settings revert to the values set using this function. ● If the signal quality deteriorates during a video-phone call, the image may become grainy or patchy. <Camera image sending> ● Regardless of the settings in this function, you can switch between the camera image and substitute image during a video-phone call. ● You can change the substitute image sent in "Select image". <Voice call auto switch> ● When a video-phone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call. ● When a call is redialed, only the final dialing is logged as a single entry in the "Dialed calls" record. ● Once a video-phone is successfully connected, it is not redialed as a voice call. ● Even if Voice call auto switch is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as the other party being out of signal range or on another call.	

● Setting the image sent in video-phone calls

Default settings	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed, Substitutive image: Chara-den, Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed

Use the procedure below to select the image sent in place of the camera image.

- The images that can be set using this function are the JPEG-format images in VGA size (640 dots × 480 dots) or smaller. However, if the selected image is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots × 144 dots), it is reduced to Mail (L) (176 dots × 144 dots).
- The setting in this function is retained when video-phoning ends.

1 Select "Select image" and press Choose from the following options:

1 On hold	Sets the image sent for a call on answer hold.
2 Holding	Sets the image sent for a call on hold.
3 Substitutive image	Sets the image sent as the substitute image.
4 Record message	Sets the image sent during Record message recording.
5 Preparing	Sets the image sent during the preparations for Record message recording.
6 Voice memo	Sets the image sent during preparations for a voice memo.

2 Select the image to be sent.

1 Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
2 Original	Sends an image and a message. ■ To change the setting ▶ Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  "Change setting" ▶ Select an image.
3 Chara-den	Only displayed when you are setting "Substitutive image". Sends the "Chara-den" character selected in the "Substitutive image". See "Using the function menu in the Chara-den List display" → P. 382 ■ To change the setting ▶ Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  "Change setting" ▶ Select a Chara-den character.

■ Messages that can be sent

The messages sent are as follows.

- When a call is on answer hold : "On hold"
- When a call is on hold : "Holding"
- When the substitutive image is sent : "Camera Off"
- During Record message recording : "Recording Voice only"
- During Record message preparation: "Preparing"
- During voice memo recording : "Recording Voice only"

Note

- To check an image, select the item you want to check and press  (Play).
- Changing the setting from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den" does not delete the stored image.
- The still image set in Substitutive image, Holding or Voice memo is displayed both on your own FOMA terminal and the other party's phone.
However, the On hold tone, the answer message of Record message are only sent to the other party.
- You cannot delete the "Original" still image. To change the image, use "Set as display" to store a new image in place of the old image. Even if you delete the original image used as the source for the pasted image, the image is still displayed on (sent to) the other party's phone.
- You can send a pre-installed substitutive image when PIM lock is set.
- When the "Chara-den" character set as the substitutive image is deleted and the "Chara-den" substitutive image cannot be displayed, the "Dimo" image is sent. If you delete the "Dimo" image, the pre-installed substitutive image is sent
- If Chara-den settings are duplicated, the precedence is as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① "Select image" → P. 79
 - ② Chara-den set for the Phonebook utilities → P. 107
 - ③ Chara-den set for the Group utilities → P. 109
 - ④ Chara-den on the Phonebook → P. 93
 - ⑤ "Substitutive image" in "Select image"

Checking your appearance during a video-phone call <Visual check>

In the video-phone in-call display function menu...

➡ P. 79

1 Press Press "Visual check".

You can use the image from the front camera to check your appearance.

 is displayed during a visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 Press .

Visual check ends and the image from the front camera is sent to the other party. You can also select "Visual check off" from a function menu to end the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a video-phone call, you can enlarge the image of yourself that is sent to the other party.

- The image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to approx. 2 × (in 2 steps). If you are sending the image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to approx. 5 × (in 8 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a video-phone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When video-phoning ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge the image when you are sending a substitute image.
- You cannot enlarge the other party's image.

1 Press to zoom in or out during a video-phone call.



Enlarged image of yourself

Setting the Image Displayed During Video-phone Calls

Setting the image in the main display and the image size <Disp. setting V-phone>

Default settings	Main display: Other image; Display screen size: Main display size

In the video-phone settings display...

➡ P. 83

1 Select "Disp. setting V-phone" and press Choose from the following options:

1 Main display	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the main image for video-phone calls.	
	1 Other image	Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main display.
	2 Camera image	Displays the image from your own camera on your main display.
	3 Only other image	Displays only the image from the other party's camera on your display.
	4 Only camera image	Displays only the image from your own camera on your display.

② Display screen size	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the screen size for video-phone call.	
	① Main display size	Resizes the image to match the display screen size.
	② Real size	Displays the image at its actual size.

Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in video-phone calls <Decoration>

You can decorate the video-phone call display (Image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

- The FOMA terminal comes with pre-installed stamps that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps of the same type from the “みんなNらんど” i-mode site. For information on “みんなNらんど” → P. 206
- The face stamps may not trace facial movements depending on the image to send.

In the video-phone in-call display function menu...

➡ P. 79

1 Press ▶ Press “Decoration” ▶ Choose from the following options:

① Frame/stamp	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	These options paste fixed (static) decorations into the video-phone display.	
	① Frame	▶ Choose a frame and press . Places a frame around the video-phone display.
② Stamp	▶ Choose a stamp and press ▶ Decide a position and press .	
	Places a stamp in the video-phone display.	
② Facestamp	▶ Choose a stamp and press . Places a stamp that follows facial movements in the video-phone display. If a stamp can follow facial movements, displays “”. If not, displays “”.	

■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Using the function menu in the video-phone in-call display”

In the video-phone in-call display function menu 2/2, “ Off decoration”, → P. 81

Note

- You can check the selected frame or stamp by pressing (Play) in the frame or stamp selection display.
- Because the camera image of yourself is displayed as a mirror image, frames and stamps also appear reversed.

Sending messages during video-phone calls (with camera image) <Petit message>

In the video-phone in-call display function menu...

➡ P. 79

1 Press ▶ Press “Petit message” ▶ Edit the message and then press .

The message is displayed. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

The message can contain up to 16 full-pitch characters.

For information on entering text → P. 522

■ To cancel message input

Delete all the input text and press .

■ To erase the message manually

Press for 1 second or longer.

You can also delete the message by selecting “Off decoration” from the function menu.

Note

- Because the camera image of yourself is displayed as a mirror image, entered text also appears reversed.

Remote Observation

Default settings

Other ID: Not recorded; Ringing time: 5 sec.; Set: OFF

Remote observation is only possible between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with a 3G-324M-compatible video-phone function. This FOMA terminal can be used as either the dialing or receiving phone for remote observation.

- Remote observation can only be carried out when phone number of the observing (receiving) phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote observations and "Remote observation" is set to "ON".

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and the delay until remote observation begins (Ringing time) on the phone performing the remote observation (receiving phone).

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.
- Remote observation cannot be performed when the receiving FOMA terminal is in "Manner mode" or "Driving mode".

In the video-phone settings display...

→ P. 83

- 1 Select "Remote observation" and press ► Enter the security code and press ► Press "Other ID".

The "Other ID display" appears.

About Your Security Codes → P. 142



Other ID display

- 2 Select the <Not recorded> option and press .

■ To change a previously recorded ID

Select the ID to be changed and press .

- 3 Enter the phone number of the other phone and press ► Press .

If returns to the Remote observation display.

- 4 Press "Ringing time" ► Enter the ringing time (003-120 seconds).

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.

■ To set the displayed time as shown

Press without entering a time.

- 5 Press "Set" ► "ON".

■ To turn remote observation off

Press "OFF".

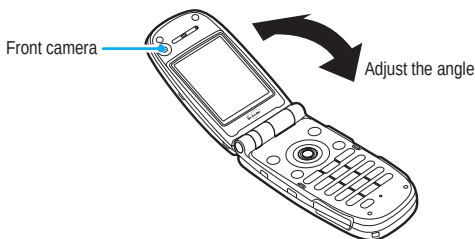


- 6 Position the FOMA terminal.

In remote observation, the image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.

Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the observation position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.

If the FOMA terminal is left folded, remote observation is disabled and incoming signals are rejected.



Note

- When you set Remote observation, " " appears on the stand-by display.
- You cannot set the same ringing time as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ringing time set for Call forwarding on the receiver is shorter than the ringing time set for remote observation, Call forwarding takes precedence. To give precedence to remote observation, set a shorter ringing time than the Call forwarding setting.
- To use Remote observation with Call Forwarding, store the sender's phone number as the other ID and set a 3G-324M-compatible video-phone as the forwarding number.

Using the function menu in the other ID display

In the other ID display...

➔ P. 88

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: These options sets the number of other party.	
	1 Phonebook	Stores a number stored in the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98
	2 Dialed calls	Stores a number stored in the Dialed calls record. See "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number" → P. 50
	3 Received calls	Stores a number stored in the Received calls record. See "Using the Received Calls Record" → P. 62
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press .	
3 Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press . The setting is turned "OFF" if all other IDs are deleted.	

Note

- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you can only call the phone numbers specified in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- When "OFF" is selected for "Redial/Dialed calls" and "Received calls" in "Record display set", you cannot access the "Received calls" or "Dialed calls" records.

Performing remote observation

- To perform remote observation, you should always make a video-phone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When a FOMA terminal is used to receive the remote observation, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a video-phone call to the receiving phone.



Receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote observation begins.

Video images and sound from the receiving phone are played through the dialing phone. If you press to switch to hands-free mode, sound from the receiving phone is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone without switching to hands-free mode.

■ To answer a video-phone call on the receiving phone without triggering remote observation

Answer before the ringing time has elapsed, pressing to answer with the camera image or to answer with the substitute image.

Note

- Neither the dialing phone nor the receiving phone can receive voice calls or video-phone calls during Remote observation. Voice calls or video-phone calls received during Remote observation are stored in the "Received calls" record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
 - If a phone number other than the "Other ID" number is set in "Call acceptance" on the receiving phone, or if "Call rejection" is set for the "Other ID" phone number, the incoming call is rejected and remote observation cannot be performed. When "Reject unknown" is set in the receiving phone and the Other ID is not saved in the phonebook, the remote observation cannot be performed.
- <About receiving a call of remote observation>**
- Calls from the phone number stored in the Remote observation settings can be received when "All lock" is set.
 - If caller ID notification is not provided, the call is received as a normal video-phone call and not as remote observation.
 - Received sound is specifically for Remote observation and cannot be modified.
 - Received sound is played at the volume set in "Ring volume". However, if the ring volume set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the Remote observation volume is set to "Level 2".
 - When remote observation is being received, the flashing color is set to "Gradation" and the flashing pattern is "Standard", regardless of the "Illumination" settings.
 - Answer hold cannot be used while remote observation is being received. Pressing ends the call.
 - When the remote observation setting and the driving mode or manner mode are set at the same time, the remote observation cannot be performed.
 - If Remote observation and Record message are set at the same time, Remote observation takes precedence even when the ringing time set for Record message is shorter than the ringing time set for Remote observation.
 - If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
 - If remote observation is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a video-phone call received from the phone number stored as the "Other ID" is logged in the Received calls record as a Remote observation call. If Remote observation was not triggered by the call, it is logged in the "Received calls record" as "Missed calls" for Remote observation.
 - When you fold the FOMA terminal during remote observation, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in "Fold setting". However, when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Fold setting" specification is ignored and the FOMA terminal sends your substitute image to the other party when it is folded.
 - You cannot switch cameras during remote observation.
 - You cannot receive DTMF (push signals) during remote observation.

Ending remote observation

1 Press .

The call duration is displayed and Remote observation ends.

You can also end Remote observation by pressing on the receiving phone.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. Improper use of the FOMA terminal in ways that constitute a serious public nuisance may be punishable under laws or ordinances intended to prevent such behavior (privacy protection laws, etc.).

Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal	92
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook <Add to phonebook> ...	93
Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook <Add to UIM Phonebook>	95
Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records	96
Renaming Groups <Group setting>	97
Making a Call From the Phonebook <Search phonebook>	98
Editing the Phonebook <Edit phonebook>	103
Deleting a Phonebook Entry <Delete data>	103
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM <UIM operation>	104
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status.....	107
Setting Up Phonebook Utilities <Phonebook Utilities/Group Utilities>	107
Using Dialing Shortcuts <Two-touch dialing>	110
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites <Automatic display>.....	110

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains 2 phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone), for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The 2 phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

Data Stored

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
No. of entry ^{*1}	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Group ^{*2}	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number ^{*3}	The phonebook will hold up to 700 phone numbers with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry.	Only 1 number can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons ( ,  , etc.) for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
e-mail address	The phonebook will hold up to 700 e-mail addresses with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in 1 entry.	Only 1 address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons ( ,  , etc.) for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
Image	1 still image and 1 "Chara-den" character can be stored per entry, up to a total for the whole phonebook of 100 of each.	—
Other data	Each phonebook entry can include the contact's name, reading and 1 postal code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1 : Depending on the amount of data stored in each entry, the number of entries that can actually be stored may be less.

*2 : You can rename "Group 01" to "Group 19" ("Group 01" to "Group 10" in the UIM phonebook). It is often useful to select your preferred group names beforehand. → P. 97

3 : Stored phone numbers can include the numbers 0 to 9, the hash symbol (#), asterisks (), pauses (p) and plus (+). To use a sub-address (P. 58), insert an asterisk.

Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following utility functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (000 to 009) allows you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. → P. 110
- You can use the "Utilities" and "Group Utilities" functions to specify the settings used for dialing and receiving calls by group or by phone number or e-mail address. → P. 107
- You can use "Restrictions" to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. → P. 153
- You can use "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. → P. 148
- You can set a "Secret code". → P. 102

Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This makes the UIM phonebook very useful when you use multiple FOMA terminals in different locations.

Voice and video-phone calls



When you receive a call with caller ID notification from someone who is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's name and phone number.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. phonebook image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, depending on the size and amount of data of the registered image, it may take time for the image to be displayed. The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

i-mode mail and SMS

When you receive i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or you receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the sender's name in the Inbox list display and details display. When you send i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is also shown in the Outbox list display and details display.

The person's name also appears in the "Received address" or "Sent address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the "Name" field. The entry will not be stored in the phonebook unless a name is entered.

1 Press "Add to phonebook" Press "Phone" Enter the name and press .

Edit name	
Toda	

The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.

Names consisting of up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be stored.

For information on entering text → P. 522

2 Check the reading and then press .

■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be used.

"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters and then press (Finish).

 Group	▶ Select a group and press . Select a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group "00".				
 Phone number	▶ Enter the phone number and press . ▶ Select an icon and press . Enter the phone number and select the icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. Once you have stored the first phone number, the " <Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit display. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.				
 Mail address	▶ Enter the e-mail address and press . ▶ Select an icon and press . Enter the e-mail address and select an icon. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the " <Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit display. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.				
 Address	▶ Enter the postal code and press . ▶ Enter the street address and press . Enter the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. Street addresses can be up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.				
 Birthday	▶ Enter the birthday and press . Enter the contact's birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.				
 Memorandums	▶ Enter a memo and press . Enter a memo (short note). Memos can be up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.				
 Image	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. <table border="1"> <tr> <td> Select image</td><td>Selects a still image.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Release this</td><td>Deletes a still image.</td></tr> </table>	 Select image	Selects a still image.	 Release this	Deletes a still image.
 Select image	Selects a still image.				
 Release this	Deletes a still image.				
 Chara-den	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the "Chara-den" character displayed when you receive a video-phone call from the contact. The character is displayed when making and receiving a video-phone call. <table border="1"> <tr> <td> Select Chara-den</td><td>Selects a "Chara-den" character.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Release this</td><td>Deletes a "Chara-den" character.</td></tr> </table>	 Select Chara-den	Selects a "Chara-den" character.	 Release this	Deletes a "Chara-den" character.
 Select Chara-den	Selects a "Chara-den" character.				
 Release this	Deletes a "Chara-den" character.				
 Memory No.	▶ Enter a memory number and press . Memory numbers are automatically assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired.				

Note

- If you enter the "ッ" character (full-pitch, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as "フ" (half-pitch, upper case). Symbols and pictographs are not represented in the reading.
- Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly when operations such as memory transfer are used.
- Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.
e.g. docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- If the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.
- If you store an image or "Chara-den" character in a phonebook entry and then modify or delete the original image or "Chara-den" character, the image or "Chara-den" character in the phonebook entry is also modified or deleted.
- To have a stored image or "Chara-den" character displayed when you receive a call, set "Display phonebook image" to "ON".
- If you receive a call from a number that has an still image stored in the phonebook, and the still image is larger than the image display area of "Calling" in "Display setting", the width and height of the still image or movie is reduced at the same ratio. If it is smaller than the image display area, it is centered on the screen.
- You cannot save to overwrite the memory number saved in Phonebook as secret data.

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

- 1** Press ► Press "Add to phonebook" ► Press "UIM" ► Enter the name and press .

The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

Names consisting of up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be stored.

For information on entering text → P. 522

- 2** Check the reading and then press .

■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using full-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

Up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be used.

"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

- 3** Set the respective parameters and then press (Finish).

Group	► Select a group and press . Select a group number between "00" and "10". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group "00".
Phone number	► Enter the phone number and press . Enter the phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits long on a green FOMA card (UIM). When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	► Enter the e-mail address and press . Enter the e-mail address. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

Note

- If you enter the "ッ" character (full-pitch, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as "ワ" (full-pitch, upper case). However, you can also enter the "ッ" character (full-pitch, lower case) using reading input. Symbols are not represented in the reading.
- Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.
e.g. docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- If the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing was interrupted

- 1** Press ► Press "Add to phonebook" ► Select "Phone" or "UIM".

- 2** Select "Recall" and press .

Phonebook editing may be disrupted when a low-voltage alarm is emitted or when you use the Multi-task function to call a new task of the tool group. However, you can restart the discontinued editing.

When you are re-editing an entry, if you cancel editing without storing the changes, the data being edited is erased.

■ To store a new entry

Select "New" and press .

Note

- When data being edited is stored temporarily, only the most recent entry is stored.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the phonebook entry being edited and answer the call. In the case of a voice call, you can return to phonebook edit display by pressing to display the task menu and then selecting the item that was being edited. In both voice calls and video-phone calls, the original editing display reappears when the call ends.

Important

- The first time you use the FOMA terminal after purchasing it, or if the battery pack is flat or has been removed from the FOMA terminal for around 1 month or longer, the FOMA terminal's internal backup battery needs to be charged. Load the battery pack into the FOMA terminal and charge it. This also charges the internal backup battery.
 - You should back up the information stored in the "Phonebook" onto a miniSD memory card (P. 392) or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 558) and a FOMA USB cable (optional) to back up the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook data on your PC.
 - Even if you remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal, the information stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook will be retained for roughly 1 month. After that time, however, the information may be lost. Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
 - The data for each phonebook entry that can be copied onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility consists of the "First phone number", the "Kana/kanji name", the "Group settings", the "First e-mail address", the "Bookmarks" and the "Secret settings". Depending on the specifications of the new model, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal.
- Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.**
Users should back up phonebook data onto a PC using the Data Link Software.

Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address", "Access reader" records and sites. You can also add phonebook entries after dialing a phone number.

- To add information to an existing phonebook entry, first search the phonebook and retrieve the entry before storing the new information.

<Example: Adding information from the "Received calls" record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

In the received call record display function menu...

➡ P. 64

1

Press "Add to phonebook" ► Press "Phone".

■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

Press "UIM".

2

Press "Add" ► Search the phonebook entry to which the information is to be added.

For information on searching the phonebook → P. 98

■ To store a new phonebook entry

Press "New".

■ To add information to the UIM

Press "New" or "Overwrite".

3

Display the phonebook detail display and press .

The Phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook editing display appears.

For information on editing the phonebook → P. 103

4

After completing the changes, press (Finish).

■ If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data

Select "YES" and press .

Note

- The "Notify caller ID" setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.
- Received addresses to which replies cannot be sent cannot be added to the phonebook.
- Text that exceeds the limit on the number of characters that can be added to the phonebook is deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.
- It is sometimes possible to add data to the phonebook using highlighted information other than the phone number or e-mail address.
- Data in some sites cannot be added to the phonebook.

<Group setting>

Renaming Groups**Default setting**

FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19
UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign your stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Football", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.

The table below shows the groups that you can rename and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Groups for renaming	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch
UIM	Groups 01-10	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch

- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

1

Press .

The "Group setting display" appears.

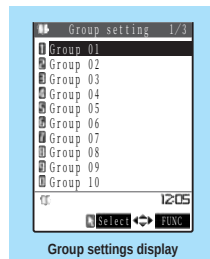
2

Select a group and press . Enter the new group name and press .

The icon appears next to UIM groups.

If the same name is used for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they are displayed as separate groups.

For information on entering text → P. 522

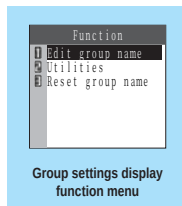
**Using the function menu in the group settings display**

In the group settings display...

→ P. 97

1

(FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

**Group settings display function menu**

Edit group name	Edits the group name. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
Utilities	See "Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook" → P. 109
Reset group name	► Select "YES" and press . The changed group name is reset to the default name assigned at the time of purchase.

Note

- Resetting the group name does not clear the "Utilities" settings specified for that group.
- When the group names are unchanged or have been deleted (reset), "Group 01" to "Group 19" is displayed for the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook while "Group 01" to "Group 10" is displayed for the UIM phonebook.

<Search phonebook>

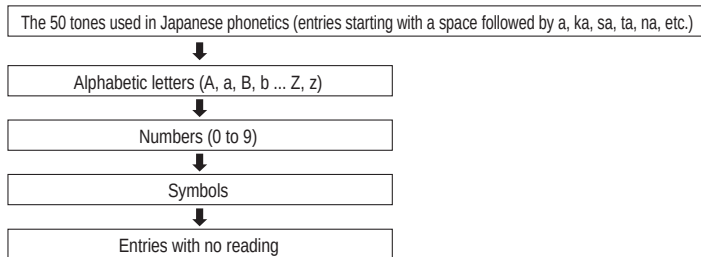
Making a Call From the Phonebook

You can make a call by searching for a phonebook entry using any of 7 search criteria (reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group or "column" in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)).

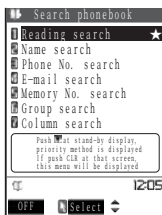
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Viewing the search results

Except for memory number searches, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the reading entered when the entry was stored.



1 Press Select the search method.



■ To display your preferred search method first

Select the search method that you want to have displayed first and then press (Prefer).

A star "★" appears next to the preferred search method.

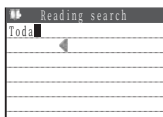
The next time you search the phonebook, pressing in the stand-by display will display the search method selection display with your preferred method shown first.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

Press "Search phonebook" Select the search method with the star "★" and then press (OFF).

2 Search the phonebook.

When the search ends, The "Phonebook list display" that meet the searching conditions appears. " " is displayed for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen. If no phonebook entry that satisfies the search conditions is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

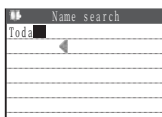


■ Reading search

Enter some of the reading and then press or .

Enter the reading starting with the person's surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire reading for searching.

For information on entering text → P. 522



■ Name search

Enter part of the person's name and then press or .

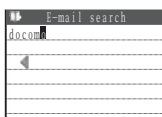
Start with the person's surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name for searching.



■ Phone No. search

Enter part of the person's phone number and then press or .

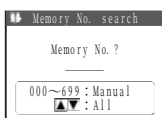
You can search by entering either the first digits in the phone number or any part of the number.



■ E-mail search

Enter part of the e-mail address and then press or .

You can search by entering either the first character or any part of the address.



■ Memory No. search

Enter the 3-digit memory number.

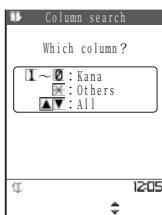
You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.



■ Group search

Select the desired group and press .

Note that the UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.



■ Column search in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)

Press the key for the "column" you want to search.

: Displays only entries that begin with "a" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "ka" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "sa" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "ta" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "na" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "ha" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "ma" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "ya" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "ra" column reading.

: Displays only entries that begin with "wa", "wo" or "n".

: Displays other entries.

■ Listing all the entries stored in the phonebook

Press or without entering any search criteria.

Note that you cannot list all the phonebook entries when "Group search" is selected as the search method.

■ Making a call from the list display

Select the phonebook entry you want to call and press or .

Press to make a voice call and to make a video-phone call. If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

3 Select the desired phonebook entry and press **OK**.
The “Phonebook entry detail display” appears.

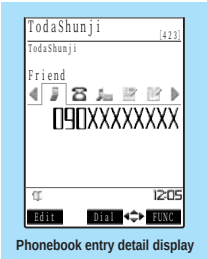
■ If multiple phone numbers are stored for the same entry

Press **Left Arrow** to display a different phone number.

■ To make a call from the phonebook entry detail display

Display the phone number you want to call and press **Call** or **Video Call**.

Press **Call** to make a voice call and **Video Call** to make a video-phone call.



Note
● If you have not set a preferred phonebook search method, pressing **Search** displays the phonebook search display with the last selected search method highlighted.

Using the function menu in the phonebook list display

In the phonebook list display... ➔ P. 98

1 Press **FUNC** ➔ Choose from the following options:

Phonebook list display function menu

1 Sort	➔ Choose from the following options: Sorts the phonebook list display.	
	1 -reading order (default setting)	Sorts the entries by reading.
	2 Name order	Sorts the entries by name.
	3 Memory No. order	Sorts the entries by memory number.
	4 Descending*	Selects the sorting sequence.
2 Export this	➔ Select “YES” and press OK . Exports 1 phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.	
3 Send Ir data	➔ Select “YES” and press OK .	
4 Send all Ir data	See “Sending all data entries” ➔ P. 413	
5 Delete data	➔ Choose from the following options: Delete phonebook entries.	
	1 Delete this	➔ Select “YES” and press OK .
	2 Delete selected	➔ Use Left Arrow to select a checkbox () and press OK ➔ Press OK (Finish) ➔ Select “YES” and press OK .
	3 Delete all	➔ Enter your security code and press OK ➔ Select “YES” and press OK ➔ Select “YES” and press OK . See “Security Code Used on the FOMA terminal” ➔ P. 142

*: If you have selected the Descending, “**4** Ascending” is displayed. The default setting is “Ascending”.

Note
<Delete data>
● You cannot delete phonebook data while “PIM lock”, “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.
<Delete data-Delete all>
● The “Delete all” erases all the phonebook data, including the data in FOMA card (UIM).

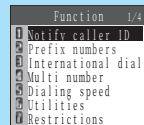
* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. ➔ P. 392

Using the function menu in the phonebook detail display

In the phonebook entry detail display...

➔ P. 100

1 Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Phonebook detail display function menu

Phonebook detail display function menu 1/4

1 Notify caller ID	➔ Choose from the following options: Select whether to provide your phone number to the other party. <table> <tr> <td>1 Don't notify</td><td>Does not provide your phone number.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Notify caller</td><td>Provides your phone number.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Cancel prefix</td><td>Cancels your Notify caller ID setting.</td></tr> </table>	1 Don't notify	Does not provide your phone number.	2 Notify caller	Provides your phone number.	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels your Notify caller ID setting.
1 Don't notify	Does not provide your phone number.						
2 Notify caller	Provides your phone number.						
3 Cancel prefix	Cancels your Notify caller ID setting.						
2 Prefix numbers	➔ Select the prefix name to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" ➔ P. 54						
3 International dial	■ When "+" is attached (country code is attached) ➔ Press . ■ When "+" is not attached (country code is not attached) ➔ Select country code and press  ➔ Press . If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.						
4 Multi number	See "Multi number" ➔ P. 471						
5 Dialing speed	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls. <table> <tr> <td>1 64K</td><td>Sets to use 64K video-phone call.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 32K</td><td>Sets to use 32K video-phone call.</td></tr> </table>	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.		
1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.						
2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.						
6 Utilities	See "Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses" ➔ P. 108						
7 Restrictions	See "Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers" ➔ P. 153						

Phonebook detail display function menu 2/4

1 Edit data	See "Editing the Phonebook" ➔ P. 103
2 Delete data	See "Deleting a Phonebook Entry" ➔ P. 103
3 Add desktop icon	➔ Select "YES" and press . See "Using Desktop Icons" ➔ P. 135
4 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247
5 Compose SMS	See "Composing and Sending SMS" ➔ P. 310
6 Send Ir data	➔ Select "YES" and press  .
7 Send all Ir data	See "Sending all data entries" ➔ P. 413

Phonebook detail display function menu 3/4

1 Automatic disp.	See "Specifying the automatically displayed phone number" ➔ P. 111
2 Export this	➔ Select "YES" and press . Exports a phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.
3 Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into input and other displays. See "Copying Cutting, and Pasting Text" ➔ P. 541
4 Copy phone number ^{*1}	Copies phone numbers stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other displays. See "Copying Cutting, and Pasting Text" ➔ P. 541

5 Secret code	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options: See "Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal" → P. 142	
	1 Set code	See "Setting your secret code" → P. 102
	2 Check code	Confirms the set secret code.
	3 Release code	Cancels the set secret code.
6 Release secret	See "Changing secret data back to normal data" → P. 149	
7 Copy to UIM ^{*2}	Copies the phonebook's data. See "Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM" → P. 104	

- *1 : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, "2 Copy mail add." is displayed.
 - If you have selected a street address, "2 Copy address" is displayed.
 - If you have selected a birthday, "2 Copy birthday" is displayed.
 - If you have selected a memo, "2 Copy memorandums" is displayed.
- *2 : If you have selected the UIM phonebook, "7 Copy from UIM" is displayed.

Phonebook detail display function menu 4/4

1 Select image	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the current settings of "Me" and "Chara-den".

● Setting your secret code

- To send i-mode mail to someone who has a stored secret code, you must add his or her secret code to the e-mail address. Setting a secret code for an e-mail address automatically adds that secret code when you send e-mail to that address.
- For i-mode mail sent to an i-mode phone that uses just the phone number as its e-mail address, you can also set a secret code for the phone number.
 - You can add a secret code only when the destination e-mail address is in the "phone number" or "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format. Secret codes cannot be added to e-mail address with other formats.
 - You cannot set secret codes for entries in the UIM phonebook.
 - You cannot set "0000" as a secret code.

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➡ P. 101

- 1 Press ● ▶ Press ● ▶ Press [5] [M] "Secret code" ▶ Enter a security code, and press ● ▶ Press [1] [M] "Set code".
- Code setting display appears.
For information on security code → P. 142

- 2 Enter a 4-digit secret code ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note
● If a phone number or a mail address that a secret code is added to is saved in the phonebook, you cannot send a mail to the person when secret code is set with this function. Set the secret code with this function after deleting the secret code added to the phone number or the mail address.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing the Phonebook

Use the procedure below to edit phonebook entries.

You can also store an edited phonebook entry as a new entry.

- Even if you change a name, its reading is not changed automatically.

In the phonebook entry detail display...

➡ P. 100

1 Press (Edit) and edit the respective items.

Edit the required items using the procedure used in "Add to phonebook".

For information on adding information to the phonebook → P. 93

■ To store a new memory number

Select  and enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored.

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new phonebook entry with a different memory number.

2 After completing the editing, press (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press .

■ UIM

After pressing , select "Overwrite/Add" and press .

Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.

Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

Note

- You cannot edit the phonebook while "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

Use this procedure to delete information in the phonebook. You can select and delete a phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or "Chara-den" character.

In the phonebook detail display function menu...

➡ P. 101

1 Press ▶ Press "Delete data" ▶ Choose from the following options:

 Erase phone number*	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
 This phonebook	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

*: Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, " Erase mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected a street address, " Erase address" is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, " Erase birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, " Erase memorandums" is displayed.
- If you have selected an image, " Delete image" is displayed.
- If you have selected a Chara-den, " Delete Chara-den" is displayed.

Note

- You cannot delete phonebook data while "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- You can delete phonebook data in the phonebook list display.
- If you delete the first phone number when multiple phone numbers are stored, the next phone number appears.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM

You can use this procedure to transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the UIM (FOMA card). You can also delete SMS data and phonebook entries stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

● You cannot receive voice calls or video-phone calls, or send and receive mail while copying or deleting data. Also other operations cannot be activated.

● You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.

For information on the items and the number of stored entries that can be copied → P. 92

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between your FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM).

● Copying data does not delete or modify the original source data on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the FOMA card (UIM).

● You cannot use this function unless your FOMA terminal is fitted with a FOMA card (UIM).

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► "UIM operation"
► Enter your security code and press .

Once you enter your security code, is displayed and you can no longer receive communication such as incoming calls. If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation procedure ends. For information on your security code → P. 142

- 2 Press "Copy" ► Select "Phone → UIM" or "UIM → Phone".

- 3 Select the item to be copied ► Choose from the following options:

1 Phonebook	► Search the phonebook. Displays the phonebook list display. For information on searching the phonebook → P. 98	
2 SMS	► Choose from the following options: Selects the SMS data.	
	1 Inbox	Shows the Inbox list display.
	2 Outbox	Shows the Outbox list display.

- 4 Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ► Press (Finish) ► Select "YES" and press .

The "UIM operation (copy) display" appears.



Note

- You cannot copy data to the UIM when there is a fault with the FOMA card (UIM).
- If there is data that cannot be copied or the number of digits in the phone number is not compatible with the FOMA card (UIM), a message appears asking whether to copy the data.
- You cannot copy data if the maximum number of entries that can be stored (saved) at the destination has been reached.
- If the maximum number of entries that can be stored (saved) at the destination is reached during copying, a message appears notifying you that the memory used for data storage is full. Delete some unwanted entries from the stored (saved) data and then copy the uncopied data again.
- When phonebook entries are copied from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), names up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters long and readings up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters long are copied. Longer names or readings are truncated.
- Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) is different, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- Because the types of characters that can be used on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) are different, some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- If you copy a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry to the UIM phonebook, any pictographs are converted to spaces.
- You can also copy individual phonebook entries by displaying the phonebook detail display and selecting "Copy to UIM" (or "Copy from UIM" when using the FOMA card (UIM)) from the function menu.
- Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If the same group names are not set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the entries are stored in Group 00.
- You cannot copy just the SMS report. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent messages SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS by box or by folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to the FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the messages on the FOMA card (UIM).
"Replied to" or "Transferred" icons are also changed to "Read".
- If you copied SMS in added folders, i-α ppli mail folders, the "Chat" folder or the "Trash box" folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), those messages can be viewed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- Entries copied from the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone) are copied to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

Using the function menu in the UIM operation (copy) display

In the UIM operation (copy) display...

➡ P. 104

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

UIM operation (copy) display function menu

1 Start copy	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
2 Select this	Selects the data.
3 Select all	Selects all the data.
4 Release this	Deselects the selected data.
5 Release all	Deselects all the data.
6 Detail	Displays the data details.

Deleting phonebook or SMS data

- 1** Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  ▶  "UIM operation"
▶ Enter your security code and press .

For information on your security code → P. 142

- 2** Press  "Delete" ▶ Select  "Phone" or  "UIM".

3 Select the data to be deleted ► Choose from the following options:

1 Phonebook	► Search the phonebook. Displays the phonebook list display. For information on searching the phonebook → P. 98	
2 SMS	► Choose from the following options: Selects the SMS data.	
	1 Inbox	Shows the Inbox list display.
	2 Outbox	Shows the Outbox list display.

4 Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ► Press (Finish) ► Select "YES" and press .

The "UIM operation (delete) display" appears.



Using the function menu in the UIM operation (delete) display

In the UIM operation (delete) display...

➔ P. 106

1 (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

UIM operation (delete) display function menu

1 Start deletion	► Select "YES" and press  .
2 Select this	Selects the data.
3 Select all	Selects all the data.
4 Release this	Deselects the selected data.
5 Release all	Deselects all the data.
6 Detail	Displays the data details.

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

This procedure enables you to check the number of entries stored in the phonebook and the number of entries that can still be added to the phonebook.

1

Press   .

Phone (the phonebook stored on the FOMA terminal)

Phonebook	:	Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook. No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)
Secret	:	Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in Secret or Secret only mode.
Image	:	Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook. No. of stored images/100 (storage limit)
Chara-den	:	Shows the number of "Chara-den" characters stored in the phonebook. No. of stored characters/100 (storage limit)
Rest		Shows the number phone numbers that can still be added.
		Shows the number e-mail addresses that can still be added.

UIM (the phonebook stored on FOMA card (UIM))

Phonebook	:	Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook. No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Phonebook Utilities/Group Utilities>

Setting Up Phonebook Utilities

Default setting

All OFF

The utilities allow you to specify settings such as which answer message is used by the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group or for each phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. This is convenient, for example, when you want to identify the caller by tone alone. You can set the following functions:

	Purpose		Function	Ref. page
Receiving	To identify calls from specific callers using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones ^{*1}	Ring tone	P. 114
		Identify using vibration	Vibrator	P. 116
		Identify using call alert indicator color ^{*1}	Illumination	P. 133
		Identify using image or movie	Image	P. 121
	To change the answer message used when Record message starts up based on who is calling ^{*2}		Answer message	P. 70
	To identify mail from specific senders using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones	Mail ring tone	P. 114
		Identify using vibration	Mail vibrator	P. 116
		Identify using call alert indicator color	Mail illumination	P. 133
Sending	To set the connection speed used for video-phone calls based on who you are calling		Dialing speed	P. 79
Receiving /Sending	To set the "Chara-den" character used for video-phone calls based on who the other party is		Chara-den setting	P. 81

*1 : Identification is also possible for received 64K data communication.

*2 : "Record message" must be set to "ON" beforehand.

- These settings cannot be used for phonebook entries or groups stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
- These settings cannot be used for phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- The "Utilities" or "Group Utilities" functions will only work if the caller provides a caller ID (phone number). You should always use the "Caller ID Request Service (Free)". → P. 466

Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses

The same method is used to set up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses regardless of whether calls and mail are being sent or received. The preset convenient function will let you know the information when you have received a voice call, video-phone call, or SMS from a specified phone number or when you have received an i-mode mail from a specified mail address.

- The FOMA terminal uses the "Mail ring tone" or "Mail illumination" set for a phone number when you receive an SMS or when the sender's e-mail address is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp".

In the phonebook detail display function menu...

➔ P. 101

1 Press **5th mn** "Utilities".



The "Phonebook utilities setting display" appears.

A star (★) appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

Select the function indicated by the star (★) and press **⊙**.

The function is deselected and the star (★) disappears.

2 Choose from the following functions.

1 Ring tone	See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114				
2 Vibrator	See "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P. 116				
3 Illumination	See "Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P. 133				
4 Image	See "Changing the Display" → P. 121				
5 Answer message	See "Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P. 70				
6 Mail ring tone	See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114				
7 Mail vibrator	See "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P. 116				
8 Mail illumination	See "Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P. 133				
9 Dialing speed	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 64K</td><td>Sets to use 64K video-phone call.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 32K</td><td>Sets to use 32K video-phone call.</td></tr> </table>	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.
1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.				
2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.				
10 Chara-den setting	See "Setting 'Chara-den'" → P. 81				

■ When you set a utility...

An icon appears in the phonebook detail display indicating the utility that has been set.



: Indicates that "Ring tone" is set.



: Indicates that "Vibrator" is set.



: Indicates that "Illumination" is set.



: Indicates that "Image" is set.



: Indicates that "Answer message" is set.



: Indicates that "Mail ring tone" is set.



: Indicates that "Mail vibrator" is set.



: Indicates that "Mail illumination" is set.



: Indicates that "Dialing speed" is set to "64K".



: Indicates that "Dialing speed" is set to "32K".



: Indicates that "Chara-den setting" is set.

Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook

In the group settings display function menu... ➔ P. 97

1 Press **[2 P NBC]** "Utilities".



The "Group utilities setting display" appears.
A star (★) appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

Select the function indicated by the star (★) and press **[●]**.
The function is deselected and the star (★) disappears.

2 Choose from the following functions.

[1] Ring tone	See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114				
[2] Vibrator	See "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P. 116				
[3] Illumination	See "Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P. 133				
[4] Image	See "Changing the Display" → P. 121				
[5] Answer message	See "Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P. 70				
[6] Mail ring tone	See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114				
[7] Mail vibrator	See "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P. 116				
[8] Mail illumination	See "Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P. 133				
[9] Dialing speed	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the connection speed used for video-phone calls. <table><tr><td>[1] 64K</td><td>Sets to use 64K video-phone call.</td></tr><tr><td>[2] 32K</td><td>Sets to use 32K video-phone call.</td></tr></table>	[1] 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.	[2] 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.
[1] 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.				
[2] 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.				
[0] Chara-den setting	See "Setting 'Chara-den'" → P. 81				

Note

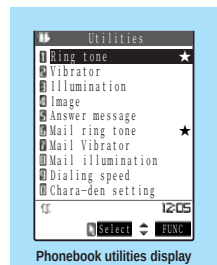
- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" (secret data) and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and entries stored as ordinary data. However, group utility settings are disabled for mail or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- The operation differs depending on whether Utilities settings overlap the settings specified for other functions or mail and Message Request/Free with differing respective settings are received at the same time.

Checking the Utilities settings

You can use the procedure below to check the settings for each of the phonebook and group functions specified in "Utilities".

1 Press **[menu] [6 mnu] [2 P NBC]**.

The "Phonebook utilities display" appears.
A star (★) is used to indicate items for which the functions are set.



Using the function menu in the Phonebook utilities display

Select a function or setting marked with a star (★).

In the phonebook utilities display...

➡ P. 109

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Phonebook utilities display function menu

1 Check settings	▶ Select a function or setting marked with a star (★) and press ▶ Check the phonebook entry or group to which the setting applies.
2 Release	▶ Select "YES" and press . Cancels all the selected function settings.

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers 000 to 009 to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys to and then pressing or (to make a video-phone call).

1 Press to ▶ Press or .

■ To make a video-phone call
Press .

Note

- If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- If a phonebook entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", two-touch dialing can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 is not nominated in the "Restrict dialing" settings, two-touch dialing cannot be used.
- Two-touch dialing cannot be used from the UIM phonebook since it does not use memory numbers.

<Automatic display>

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting

OFF

This function allows you to set up your FOMA terminal so that when you fold the FOMA terminal with the stand-by display on the screen and then open it again, it automatically displays a preset phone number. You can then make a voice or video-phone call to that number simply by pressing or .

- You can only set automatic display for 1 phone number.
- You cannot set automatic display for a phone number stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot set automatic display for a phone number stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode.
- The phonebook set in the automatic display function does not appear if you fold and then reopen the FOMA terminal while using another function or entering text, or while the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode.

Enabling the automatic display function

1 Press ▶ Press "ON" or "OFF".

Specifying the automatically displayed phone number

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➔ P. 101

1 Press  ► Press  ► Press  "Automatic disp".

A star (★) appears next to "Automatic disp" in function menu.

■ To cancel the automatic display setting

Repeat step 1.

The setting is cancelled and the star (★) disappears.

Note

- Press , , ,  while the automatic display phone number is shown to display the stand-by screen.
- The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
 - When All lock is set
 - When PIM lock is set
 - When the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode
 - When Restrict dialing is set for the FOMA terminal, but Restrict dialing is not set for a phone number specified for Automatic display

● Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

■ Tone Settings

Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone <Select ring tone>	114
Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls <Vibrator>	116
Setting the Keypad Tone <Keypad sound>	117
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging <Charge sound> ...	117
Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out <Quality alarm>	118
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail <Mail/Msg. ring time>	118
Switching the Ring Tone to Earphone-only <Earphone>	118
Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone <Manner mode>	119
Modifying Manner Mode <Manner mode set>	120

■ Display/ Lighting Settings

Changing the Display <Display setting>	121
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls <Disp. phonebook image>	125
Setting the Indicator Display Mode <Indicator display>	126
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting <Display light>	127
Changing the Display Color <Display design>	128
Changing the Menu Display	129
Setting the Neuropointer <Neuropointer>	132
Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls <Illumination> ...	133
Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Call Alert Indicator <Illumination in talk>	134
Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls <Call time display>	134
Changing the Font 	135
Setting the Clock Display <Clock display>	135
Using Desktop Icons <Desktop icon>	135
Selecting the Icons in the Stand-by Display <Select icons setting>	138

<Select ring tone>

Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone

Default settings

Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Chat mail: Pattern 2
Message Request: Pattern 3 Message Free: Pattern 3

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different ring tones for voice calls, video-phone calls, e-mail, chat mail and Msg. Request/Free. You can also set specific ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups. → P. 107

- You can set i-motion animations downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites as ring tones.
- If an i-motion that contains an image and sound is set both for the ring tone and the incoming display, the i-motion's image and sound that are set for the ring tone are replayed.
- If anything other than an i-motion that contains an image and sound is set for the ring tone and if an i-motion that contains an image and sound is set for the incoming display, the i-motion's image and sound that are set for the incoming display is replayed.
- An image only i-motion cannot be specified as the ring tone.
- Depending on the i-motion, there may be items that cannot be specified.
- For information on guide to melody list → P. 388
- How to view the List of i-motion → P. 366

1

Press    Choose from the following options:

① Phone	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication.
	② Select calling disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. → P. 121
② Video-phone	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls.
	② Select calling disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming video-phone calls. → P. 121
③ Mail	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication.
	② Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming mail. → P. 121
④ Chat mail	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming chat mail.
	② Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming chat mail. → P. 121
⑤ Message Request	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming Msg. Request.
	② Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming Msg. Request. → P. 121
⑥ Message Free	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming Msg. Free.
	② Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming Msg. Free. → P. 121

2 If you have selected “Select ring tone” in Step 1, choose from the following options:

1 Melody	Chooses a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the “Pre-installed” folder or a melody that was downloaded to the FOMA terminal and stored in the “Inbox” or in a folder you have created.
2 i-motion	Selects a pre-installed i-motion in “Pre-installed” folder, and selects a movie shot with camera or an downloaded i-motion in “Inbox”, “Camera” folder or the folder you have created. When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound for the selected i-motion (Chaku-motion).
3 Voice announce	Chooses the “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2”.
4 Random melody	Select a folder containing saved melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies saved in the selected folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
5 OFF	The FOMA terminal plays no ring tone.

When you highlight a melody, the FOMA terminal plays the melody. Press , , ,  or  to stop the melody.

Once you have set the ring tone, set the receiving display if required.

■ To check the settings

Press  (Play).

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display
Pattern 1-3
Melody 1
Melody 2
Melody 3
Melody 4
Melody 5
Melody 6
Melody 7
Melody 8
Melody 9
Melody 10
Alarm 1
Alarm 2
Alarm 3
Alarm 4
Alarm 5
Alarm 6
Alarm 7
Alarm 8

Recording patent No.: T-04B0058 

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

“ちわわ” is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “i-motion”.

Note

- The volume at which the melody is played back during ring tone selection is determined by the "Ring volume" setting. If "Silent" is set, the melody is not played back.
- For some of the melodies whose title begins with " ", you can replay only the part that is specified beforehand. For this reason, if you set the melody for the ringing tone, only the specified part will be replayed. → P. 388
- If you "Set as ring tone" for "Melody" in Data box, this setting is also set to the same ring tone. → P. 389
- If you "Set as ring tone" for "i-motion" in Data box, this setting is also set to the same ring tone. → P. 368
- Depending on the combination of receiving display, ring tone and precedence setting, either the receiving display or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.
- You can use "Call setting w/o ID" to set a ring tone for voice calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID. The ring tone used for video-phone calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID is determined by the "Video-phone" setting in this function.
- When ring tone settings are duplicated, the precedence for ring tone operation is as shown below. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① Ring tone for the voice/video phone call for Phonebook Utilities → P. 107
 - ② Ring tone for the voice/video phone call for Group Utilities → P. 109
 - ③ Ring tone that is set in "Select ring tone" (Video-phone) → P. 114
 - ④ Ring tone that is set in "Call setting w/o ID" → P. 155
 - ⑤ Ring tone that is set in "Select ring tone" (other than Video-phone) → P. 114Precedence for the Phonebook Utilities and Group utilities is as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① i-motion for the voice/video-phone call
 - ② i-motion for the incoming image
 - ③ i-motion (voice only), melody for the voice/video-phone call
- Even when an i-motion is set for the ring tone, if the "Call Waiting" operates, you will hear Pattern 1 after the in-process voice call is terminated.

<Vibrator>

Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls

Default settings

All OFF

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns to notify you when you receive a voice call, video-phone call, e-mail, Chat-mail or Msg. Request/Free.

1

Press    Choose from the following options:

① Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls and 64K data communication.
② Video-phone	Sets vibration for video-phone calls.
③ Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mail and SMS.
④ Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mail.
⑤ Message Request	Sets vibration for Message Request.
⑥ Message Free	Sets vibration for Message Free.

2

Select the vibration pattern.

① Pattern 1	Vibrates in pattern 1.
② Pattern 2	Vibrates in pattern 2.
③ Pattern 3	Vibrates in pattern 3.
④ Melody linkage	The FOMA terminal vibrates in a pattern matched to the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is set for the melody, or if an i-motion is set as the ring tone, Pattern 2 is used.
⑤ OFF	The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

When you select a vibration pattern, the FOMA terminal vibrates in that pattern.

An icon in the stand-by display shows the current vibrator setting.

 : Shows that the vibrator is set for Phone and/or Video-phone.

 : Shows that the vibrator set for Mail, Chat mail or Message Request, Message Free.

 : Shows that the vibrator is set for Phone/Video-phone and for Mail, Chat mail and Message Request, Message Free.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is set to vibrate, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a cooktop) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.
- When "Ring volume" is not set to "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of received calls. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- The vibrator vibrates at a set strength regardless of the ring volume setting.
- If the vibrator setting is duplicated, the precedence is as follows (where ① has the highest precedence):
 - ① The "Vibrator" setting specified in Utilities
 - ② The "Vibrator" setting specified in Group utilities
 - ③ The "Vibrator" setting

<Keypad sound>

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default settings

ON

- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
 - Warning tones
 - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
 - Battery level tone
 - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The confirmation sound is not limited to this function and sounds in the following operations:
 - When (Memo/Check) is pressed while the FOMA terminal is folded.
 - When a shot is taken with a camera.
 - Start/Finish of memo playback (the sound emanates from the earpiece).
 - Start/Finish of voice memo recording (the sound emanates from the earpiece).
 - When voice announce recording starts/ends (played through the earpiece).
- The keypad sound is fixed at the same level, regardless of the "Ring volume" setting.
- When setting the keypad tone from the "Initial settings" (P. 44), start from step 2.

1 Press .

2 Select "ON" or "OFF".

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging

Default settings

ON

This function allows you to set the FOMA terminal so that it emits a short double-beep ("bibip") when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound in the following situations regardless of the setting specified in this function:
 - When a display other than the stand-by display
 - When a call is being received
 - When the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode
 - During recording of a stand-by voice memo
 - During data communication
 - When "Phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".
 - When a call is being sent
 - During a talk
 - When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode
 - During recording of a voice announce
 - When the FOMA terminal is turned off

1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press ▶ Press "Other settings" ▶ Select "Charge sound" and press ▶ Select "ON" or "OFF".

<Quality alarm>

Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default settings

High tone

The FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice/video-phone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- The call may drop out without a warning tone if the signal quality worsens very quickly.

1

Press ► Select “No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”.

<Mail/Msg. ring time>

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail

Default settings

5 seconds

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive mail, chat mail or a Msg. Request/Free, and if so, the duration of the ring tone.

1

Press ► Choose from the following options:

Mail	Sets the ring duration for i-mode mail and SMS messages.
Chat mail	Sets the ring duration for chat mail.
Message Request	Sets the ring duration for Msg. Request.
Message Free	Sets the ring duration for Msg. Free.

2

Select whether the ring tone will sound.

ON	► Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds). The FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, just press .
OFF	The FOMA terminal does not ring.

Note

- When "OFF" is selected in "Mail", "Chat mail", "Message Request" or "Message Free", the or icon appears in the stand-by display.

<Earphone>

Switching the Ring Tone to Earphone-only

Default settings

Earphone + Speaker

Use this procedure when you are using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) to set the FOMA terminal so that the ring tone does not sound through the speaker.

- Be careful when "Earphone + Speaker" is set in this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal's speaker even if earphone/microphone is connected.
- When "Earphone" is set in this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal's speaker if no earphone/microphone is connected.

1

Press ► Select “Earphone + Speaker” or “Earphone”.

Note

- Even when only "Earphone" is set, the ring tone sounds when a call arrives and after roughly 20 seconds the ring tone is played through both the earphone and the speaker. However, when the ring tone sounds for procedures other than an alarm notification or incoming voice or video-phone call, the ring tone is not played through the speaker after 20 seconds and is only played through the earphone.
- Do not wrap the cord for the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) around the FOMA terminal. Note also that leaving the cord for the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) near the FOMA terminal during a call may cause interference (noise).

<Manner mode>**Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone**

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, this function allows you to stop the FOMA terminal playing ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker with a single touch.

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the following tones are replaced by vibrations:

- Ring tones*¹
- Alarm clock, schedule and ToDo alarm tones*²
- Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded

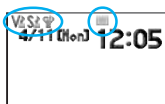
*1: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

*2: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Phone" in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

- In "Manner mode set", you can choose "Manner mode", "Super silent" or "Original" as the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set. → P. 120

1

Hold down  for 1 second or longer while the stand-by display is shown or during a call.



The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and  appears on the display.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is now set.

As well as , the information specified in "Manner mode set" is displayed when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode.



: Indicate that the FOMA terminal will warn you using "Vibrator".



: Indicate that "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".



: Indicate that "Record message" is set to record caller messages. Indicates the number of recorded messages.

■ To cancel Manner mode

When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, hold down  for 1 second or longer while the stand-by display is shown or during a call.

Manner mode is cancelled and  disappears from the display.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is no longer set.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal still plays the shutter sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal's camera.
- If you try to play a melody when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. If you play a melody, it is played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting. If the ring volume is set to "Silent" or "Step", it is played at the "Level 2" volume.

<Manner mode set>

Modifying Manner Mode

Default settings

Manner mode

This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations used in Manner mode.

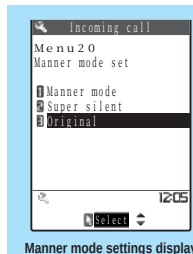
● At the time of purchase, the "Original" manner mode is set up as follows:

- Record msg.: OFF
- Mail vol.: Silent
- Keypad sound: OFF
- Vibrator: ON
- Alarm vol.: Silent
- Mic sensitiv.: Up
- Phone vol.: Silent
- VM tone: ON
- LVA tone: OFF

1 Press .

The "Manner mode settings display" appears.

2 Choose from the following options.



Manner mode settings display

1 Manner mode	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, confirmation tones played through the earpiece (the confirmation tones sounded when (Memo/Check) is pressed to play/erase a voice memo or recorded message) are not muted.
2 Super silent	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and confirmation tones played through the earpiece and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
3 Original	This option allows you to tailor the Manner mode settings to your own preferences. You can specify in advance what volume is set for alarm clock alarm tones and how the FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. "Original manner" → P. 120

Original manner

In the manner mode settings display...

➔ P. 120

1 Press "Original" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Record msg.	▶ Select "ON" or "OFF". Specifies the Record Msg. setting. See "Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P. 70
2 Vibrator	▶ Select "ON" or "OFF". Sets the vibrator. See "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P. 116
3 Phone vol.	▶ Use to adjust the volume and then press . Sets the ring tone volume for voice and video-phone calls. See "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P. 66
4 Mail vol.	▶ Use to adjust the volume and then press . Sets the ring tone volume for mail, chat mail and Msg. Request/Free. See "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P. 66
5 Alarm vol.	▶ Use to adjust the volume and then press . Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. → P. 430
6 VM tone	▶ Select "ON" or "OFF". Sets confirmation tones such as "Record message" and "Voice memo".
7 Keypad sound	▶ Select "ON" or "OFF". Sets the keypad tone. See "Setting the Keypad Tone" → P. 117
8 Mic sensitiv.	▶ Select "Normal" or "Up". Sets the microphone sensitivity during calls.
9 LVA tone	▶ Select "ON" or "OFF". Sets the battery low alarm. See "When the battery runs out" → P. 42

2 After completing the settings, press (Finish).

■ When you set Manner mode

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (shows the Original manner mode settings)
Record message activation	OFF		"Record message" setting.
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" setting.
Ring volume for voice and video-phone calls	Silent		"Phone vol." setting.
Ring volume for mail, chat mail and Msg. Request/Free	Silent		"Mail vol." setting.
Alarm clock alarm volume	Silent		"Alarm vol." setting.
Schedule/ToDo alarm volume	Silent		"Phone vol." setting.
Activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" setting.
Keypad tones	OFF		"Keypad sound" setting.
Microphone sensitivity during calls*	Up		"Mic sensitiv." setting.
In-call hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting. For settings other than "Silent", the in-call hold tone sounds at Level 1.
On hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting. For setting in "Step", the on hold tone sounds at Level 2.
Battery low alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" setting. Even when set to "ON", the battery low alarm sounds at Level 1 if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" in this function.
Missed call/New mail confirmation tone when the FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." setting. Sounds at a set volume when "Step" is set.
Reading out received mail	"Phone vol." setting. Mail is read out at Level 2 volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.		

*: If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of the voice heard by the other party is increased when you speak quietly during the call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

Note

- If the FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls when Manner mode is set, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a cooktop) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.
- The ringing time used for recorded messages is the time set in "Record message" (P. 70). However, if "OFF" is set in "Record message", a ringing time of 8 seconds is used here.

<Display setting>

Changing the Display

Default settings

Stand-by display: Sea
 Wake-up display: Dice Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard
 VP Dialing: Standard VP Calling: Standard
 Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard
 Check new message: Standard

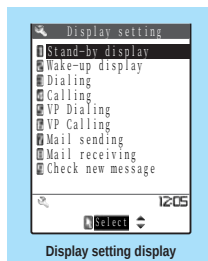
Use this procedure to display shot still images or downloaded images on the Stand-by display or the Send/Receive display and so on.

- If an i-motion that contains an image and sound is set for both the ring tone and the incoming display, the i-motion's image and sound that are set for the ring tone are replayed.
- If anything other than an i-motion that contains an image and sound is set for the ring tone and if an i-motion that contains an image and sound is set for the incoming display, the i-motion's image and sound that are set for the incoming display is replayed.
- A sound only i-motion (an i-motion, such as a singer's vocal, without any movie) cannot be specified as the ring image.
- Depending on the i-motion, there may be items that cannot be specified.

1 Press .

The "Display setting display" appears.

If an option other than i-motion is set in the calling display, set the ring tone as required.



2 Choose from the following Options:

1 Stand-by display	See "Changing the stand-by display image" → P. 124	
2 Wake-up display	1 OFF	No images are displayed.
	2 Message	▶ Enter a message and press  .
		The message can contain up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters.
	3 My picture	▶ Choose from the following options:
		Selects an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
3 Dialing	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the image displayed when you make a voice call.	
	If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
4 Calling	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Allows you to set the ring tones and display for received calls.	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone used when you receive a voice call. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114
	2 Select calling disp.	See "Select a calling display or mail receiving display" → P. 123
5 VP Dialing	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the display shown when you make video-phone calls.	
	If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
6 VP Calling	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Allows you to set the ring tones and calling display for received video-phone calls.	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone used when you receive a video-phone call. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114
	2 Select calling disp.	See "Select a calling display or mail receiving display" → P. 123

⑦ Mail sending	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image displayed when you send i-mode mail or SMS. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	① Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	② Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	③ Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	④ Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
⑧ Mail receiving	▶ Choose from the following options: Allows you to set the ring tones and calling display.	
	① Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone used when you receive i-mode mail or SMS. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114
	② Select receiving disp.	See "Select a calling display or mail receiving display" → P. 123
⑨ Check new message	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image displayed when you send a message checking for new messages. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	① Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	② Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	③ Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	④ Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.

● Select a calling display or mail receiving display

<Example: Select a calling display for the calling>

In the display setting display...

→ P. 122

① Press **4** **GH** "Calling" ▶ Press **2** **nm** "Select calling disp." ▶ Choose from the following options:

① My picture	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	① Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	② Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	③ Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	④ Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
② i-motion*1	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects an i-motion. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. You may not be able to set some i-motion.	
	① Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	② Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	③ Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.

*1 : "i-motion" is not displayed when "Select receiving disp." is selected.

Note

- When ring tone settings are duplicated, image display precedence is as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① Phonebook utilities setting → P. 108
 - ② Group utilities setting → P. 109
 - ③ Image stored in the phonebook → P. 93
 - ④ i-motion set in "Select ring tone" → P. 114
 - ⑤ Display setting → P. 121
- Precedence for the Utilities and Group utility functions is as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① i-motion for the voice/video-phone call
 - ② i-motion and still image for the incoming image
- When display settings are duplicated, the precedence is as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① Automatic display
 - ② i-α.plli stand-by display
 - ③ Display setting
- Flash movies can be set in the "Calling display" or "Mail receiving display", but the ring tone used is the tone set in "Select ring tone".

Changing the stand-by display image

- "Calendar" can only be selected if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- The 10 pre-installed images are shown below.



Dice



Mickey & Minnie's
Date 1



Mickey & Minnie's
Date 2



Sheep



Chair



Penguin



Sea
© YONEO MORITA



Tropical Flower



Coconuts Sky



Kitchen

In the display setting display...

→ P. 122

1

Press  "Stand-by display" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 OFF	No images are displayed.	
2 Calendar	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Selects a calendar.	
	1 Background	▶ Choose from the following options:
	Selects and sets the background image for the calendar. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	4 No background	Displays the calendar only.
3 My picture	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Selects an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
4 i-motion	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Selects an i-motion. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. You may not be able to set some i-motion.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the i-motion downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
5 i-α ppli display	2 Camera	Sets an i-motion shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
Sets the i-α ppli stand-by display. When the i-α ppli stand-by display is set, a star (★) is displayed. See "Setting the i-α ppli Stand-by Display" → P. 332		

■ When you set the calendar in the stand-by display

A calendar appears in the stand-by display. Dates set as "Holiday" on "Schedule" appear in red.

■ To check the adjacent months on the calendar

Press  in the stand-by display or slide your finger over  so that the pointer moves over the calendar so that the calendar month can be selected. Then press  again or select the calendar month with the pointer and press  to display the previous month or  to display the next month.

If there are any desktop icons added to the desktop, pressing  selects the desktop icon or calendar month selected previously. If a desktop icon was selected, select the calendar and then press  again or select the calendar with the pointer and press  to display the previous month or  to display the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

With the calendar selected, press  to launch the schedule function and store a scheduled event for the displayed month.

Note

- If there is a movie or i-motion set in the stand-by display, the movie or i-motion is played when you open the FOMA terminal. Press , , , , , , , ,  to stop playback. When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, only the image is played.
- The image size of 240 dots wide × 345 dots high (full screen) can be set as the stand-by display only when JPEG-format image is selected. GIF-format images of 240 dots wide × 345 dots high or Flash movies cannot be set.
- If "Automatic display" is set, the "Automatic display" setting has precedence and no image is displayed when you open the FOMA terminal.
- If "i-α.ppli display" has been used to set the i-α.ppli stand-by display, the "i-α.ppli display" setting has precedence.
- The melody set to the Flash movies of the stand-by display is not played.
- While "PIM lock" is set, the "Holiday" display set on "Schedule" is shown regularly, not in red, if calendar is set to the stand-by display.

<Disp. phonebook image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default settings

ON

Use this procedure to specify whether an image is displayed when you receive a voice or video-phone call from a phone number that is stored in the phonebook and a still image is also stored in that phonebook entry.

- 1 Press  ► Select  and press  ► Press  "Incoming call" ► Select "Disp. phonebook image" and press  ► Press  "ON" or  "OFF".

Note

- When incoming call/mail settings are overlapped, precedence is assigned as mentioned in Note (P. 123) under "Changing the Display".
- The incoming display or ring tone may operate with the default setting depending upon a combination or precedence of the incoming display and ring tone.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data are not displayed.

<Indicator display>

Setting the Indicator Display Mode

Default settings

Setting: Display information

Clock type: Digital1 Phone number: ON Mail: OFF

Connection: ON (Display light: OFF)

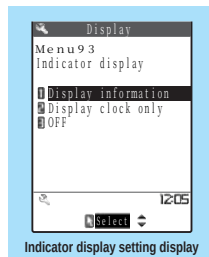
Use this procedure to set the type of clock or message displayed in the indicator display.

- Clock type for "Display clock only" is set to "Digital 1".

1 Press     .

The "Indicator display setting display" appears.

2 Choose from the following options:



Indicator display setting display

1 Display information	▶ Choose from the following options: Displays text and information.	
	1 Clock type Selects the clock type.	▶ Choose from the following options:
		1 Analog 1 Sets the analog 1 clock.
		2 Analog 2 Sets the analog 2 clock.
		3 Analog 3 Sets the analog 3 clock.
		4 Digital 1 Sets the digital 1 clock.
		5 Digital 2 Sets the digital 2 clock.
	2 Phone number	▶ Select  "ON" or  "OFF". Specifies whether to display the caller's phone number when you receive a voice call.
	3 Mail	▶ Select  "ON" or  "OFF". Specifies whether to display the sender's e-mail address, subject and the arrival date and time when you receive mail.
	4 Connection	Specifies whether to display an image showing the connection status while you are dialing a voice or video-phone call, during the call itself, and during infrared or data communication. See "Setting the image display during a call" → P. 127
2 Display clock only	▶ Choose from the following options: Displays the clock only.	
	1 Clock type Selects the clock type.	▶ Choose from the following options:
		1 Analog 1 Sets the analog 1 clock.
		2 Analog 2 Sets the analog 2 clock.
		3 Analog 3 Sets the analog 3 clock.
		4 Digital 1 Sets the digital 1 clock.
		5 Digital 2 Sets the digital 2 clock.
	3 OFF	No text or clock is displayed.

Note

- When the indicator display is set to "OFF", nothing will be displayed, except for the camera-in-operation condition and some of the alarm notices.
- If you select "Digital 2" in "Clock type", this also applies to the "Display" setting in "Clock display".
- The time displayed when "Analog 1-3" is set is an approximate guide only.
- Even if you set "Mail" display to "ON", the mail sorted into a folder to which mail security has been set is not displayed.

Setting the image display during a call

In the indicator display setting display...

➔ P. 126

1 Press **[1-9]** "Display information" ➔ Press **[4-#]** "Connection" ➔ Choose from the following options:

[1] ON	➔ Select [1-9] "ON" or [2-#] "OFF". Displays the state under a call and sets the backlight to "ON".
[2] OFF	Does not display the state under a call.

<Display light>

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default settings

Lighting: ON (lit) + Saver (5-minute delay) Charging: Standard
Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

Use this procedure to specify the lighting settings for the display and keypad.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[PQRS]** **[0-9*/#]** ➔ Choose from the following options:

[1] Lighting	➔ Choose from the following options: Selects the normal lighting settings for the backlight.	
[1] ON	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the Power saver mode options.	[1] ON ➔ Enter a delay time (02-20 minutes). Once the specified delay has elapsed, the stand-by display and indicator display turn off (Power saver mode). Set the delay before the FOMA terminal switches to Power saver mode. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press [0] .
[2] OFF	Disables Power saver mode.	
[2] OFF	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the Power saver mode options.	[1] ON ➔ Enter a delay time (02-20 minutes). Once the specified delay has elapsed, the stand-by display and indicator display turn off (Power saver mode). Set the delay before the FOMA terminal switches to Power saver mode. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press [0] .
[2] OFF	Disables Power saver mode.	
[2] Charging	➔ Selects [1-9] "Standard" or [2-#] "All time ON". Selects the lighting settings for the backlight during charging.	
[3] Area	➔ Choose from the following options: Selects the area that is backlit.	
[1] LCD+Keys	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel and keypad.	
[2] LCD	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel only.	
[4] Brightness	➔ Selects [1-9] "Level 3", [2-#] "Level 2" or [3-0] "Level 1". Selects the brightness.	

Note

- You can also turn the backlight on or off by holding down  for 1 second or longer.
- When "Standard" is set for "Charging", the FOMA terminal is performed according to the "Lighting" setting.
- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight turns on when a call is received and lights for roughly 15 seconds when you turn the FOMA terminal on, press one of the FOMA terminal keys, and fold or unfold the FOMA terminal. The backlight also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select "OFF", the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight turns on during movie shooting regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- When "Lighting" is set to "OFF",  appears in stand-by display.
- When "Lighting" is set to "All time ON" and the battery pack is charged, the backlight is turned to be "Level 1" for the efficiency of charging if there is no operation for about 15 seconds.
- Even if the setting of "Charging" is set to "All time ON", the setting for "Lighting" become effective when the charging is completed and the charging lamp goes out.
- When the body of a mail or a Message Request/Free is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- If the FOMA terminal switches to Power saver mode while it is unfolded,  and  flash at intervals of roughly 5 seconds. Press any of the FOMA terminal's keys to cancel Power saver mode.
- When "Indicator display" is set to "Display clock only" and the FOMA terminal is folded, it does not switch to the Power saver mode even if the set light time elapses.

<Display design>

Changing the Display Color

Default settings

Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background1: OFF
Background2: Pattern 1

Use this procedure to change the design of the text, background, the upper and lower sections of the display, and the software keys.

1 Press    ► Choose from the following options:

1 Color pattern	► Choose from the following options: Selects the color pattern. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.	
	1 Pattern 1	Sets pattern 1.
	2 Pattern 2	Sets pattern 2.
	3 Pattern 3	Sets pattern 3.
	4 Pattern 4	Sets pattern 4.
	5 Pattern 5	Sets pattern 5.
2 Background1	► Choose from the following options: Selects the pattern used for background 1 (the background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display). The selected pattern appears on the display during selection.	
	1 OFF	Sets no pattern (not displayed). The whole of image will be displayed if the JPEG-format image of 240 dots wide × 345 dots high (Full screen) is set as a stand-by display.
	2 Pattern 1	Sets pattern 1.
	3 Pattern 2	Sets pattern 2.
	4 Pattern 3	Sets pattern 3.
	5 Pattern 4	Sets pattern 4.
	6 Pattern 5	Sets pattern 5.
	7 Pattern 6	Sets pattern 6.
	8 Pattern 7	Sets pattern 7.
3 Background2	► Selects  "Pattern 1",  "Pattern 2" or  "Pattern 3".	
	Selects the pattern used for background 2 (the background pattern for the software keys). The selected pattern appears on the background for the software keys during selection.	

Note

- Changing the color in this function does not change the color of icons and images. There are also some types of data and functions that are not affected by changes to the settings in this function, such as the screens for i-Mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode <Menu display set>

Default settings	Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: Detail Theme: Like Sweets

This feature allows you to specify whether the guidance display for main setting icons selected in the main function selection display and for minor settings (functions) in the “Settings” menu is shown in detail or as a list. You can also use this procedure to set the background and icons in the main settings selection display.

● Original menus are displayed as lists, regardless of the setting in this function.

Guidance displays

Picture & Text

Text

OFF

Menu displays

Detail

List

Themes

For Like Sweets

For アクアリウム

1 Press **Menu** **5** **5** **7** **PARS**.

The "Menu display settings menu display" appears.



2 Choose from the following options:

Menu display settings menu

1 Guidance	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the guidance display for the main settings.	
	1 Picture & Text	Displays the guidance using pictures and text.
	2 Text	Displays the guidance using text.
	3 OFF	No guidance is displayed.
2 Menu display	▶ Select 1 Detail or 2 List . Sets the display mode for the minor settings.	
3 Theme	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the background and icons used in the main settings selection display.	
	1 Like Sweets	Sets Like Sweets.
	2 アクアリウム	Sets アクアリウム.
	3 Original theme	See "Changing the main menu display" → P. 130

Note

● When "アクアリウム" is selected on "Theme", characters displayed on the menu are in Japanese even if "Select language" is set to "English".

Changing the main menu display

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image used in the main setting selection display (main menu).

In the menu display settings menu display...

→ P. 130

1 Press **3** **DEF** "Theme" ▶ Press **3** **DEF** "Original theme".

The "Original theme display" appears.



2 Choose from the following options and select an image.
Select an image from "Inbox", "Camera", and "Pre-installed" folders and a folder you created in "My picture".

Original theme menu

1 Mail	Sets the mail icon image.
2 i-mode	Sets the i-mode icon image.

i-α ppli	Sets the i-α ppli icon image.
Settings	Sets the settings icon image.
Data box	Sets the data box icon image.
Tool	Sets the tool icon image.
Network service	Sets the network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets the phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets the own data image.
Background image	Sets the background image. This can also be used to set the color of the multi-task group frame. See "Multi tasking" → P. 425

■ To set the multi-task group frame

Select "Background image" ► (Play) ► (Frame) ► Press and select a color from the color palette, then press .
When you are selecting the color, pressing (Change) switches the colors between 16 colors and 256 colors.

Note

- You can check the image for the selected setting by pressing (Play) in the selection display.
- You can set a JPEG-format, GIF-format or animated GIF-format image with a file size of 100 KB or less and an image size of up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.
- An animated GIF-format image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animated GIF-format image set as the background image will not run as an animation.
- If even one image that is subject to the FOMA card operational restriction functions is set as a menu icon or background image, the theme will revert to the default theme set at the time of shipment if you change or remove the FOMA card (UIM).

Using the function menu in the original theme display

In the original theme display...

➡ P. 130

1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Original theme display function menu

Reset	► Select "YES" and press .
All reset	► Select "YES" and press .

Creating an Original Menu <Original menu>

Default settings	Own number, Check new message, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

- You can store up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be included in the original menu are the main settings for "Mail", "i-mode" and "i-α ppli", and the medium and minor settings for "Settings", "Data box", "Tool", "Network service", "Phonebook" and "Own data".
- You cannot store the same function twice.

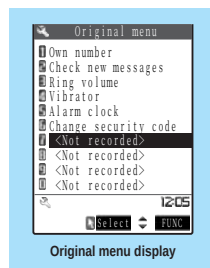
1 Press .

The "Original menu display" appears.

2 Select an "<Not recorded>" entry and press ► Use

■ To change a function added previously

Select the entry for the added function and press .



3 Select the function to be added and press .

■ When the selected category is “i-mode”

You can only select the main settings for “Mail”, “i-mode” or “i-α ppli”.

Note

● If you attempt to add an entry (function) that has already been added, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.

Using the function menu in the original menu display

In the Original menu display...

➡ P. 131

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Store original menu entry display function menu

 Add to org. menu	Stores an entry in the original menu.
 Add desktop icon	▶ Select “YES” and press  . See “Using Desktop Icons” → P. 135
 Reset org. menu	▶ Select “YES” and press  . Restores the default entries set at the time of purchase.
 Release	▶ Select “YES” and press  .
 Release all	▶ Select “YES” and press  .

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

Default settings

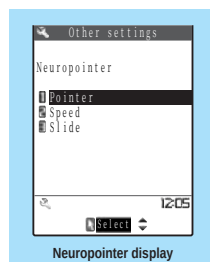
Pointer: ON Simple: Normal

To make the pointer ( : Blue or  : White) controlled by the neuropointer key () easier to use, you can use this procedure to turn the pointer on or off and set the speed of pointer movement.

- When setting the neuropointer speed from the initial settings (P. 44), select either “ Normal” or “ High” in “Simple” (P. 133).
- The pointer can be used when  appears on the display.
- When the pointer is  (Blue), moving the pointer automatically selects the item. When the pointer is  (White), moving the pointer will not automatically select the item. The pointer is  (White) on the i-motion preview and title list screen. → P. 366

1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press ▶ Press “Other settings” ▶ Select “Neuropointer” and press .

The “Neuropointer display” appears.



2 Choose from the following options:

Neuropointer menu

 Pointer	▶ Selects  “ON” or  “OFF”. Sets the pointer display.

Speed	See "Adjusting the pointer movement speed" → P. 133	
Slide	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the slide.	
Adjust	▶ Select "YES" and press ▶ Slide your finger over the neuropointer key as instructed by the on-screen guidance.	
Reset	▶ Select "YES" and press .	

Adjusting the pointer movement speed

In the neuropointer display...

→ P. 132

1 Press "Speed" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Simple	▶ Selects "Normal" or "High" ▶ Select "YES" and press . Chooses from 2 speed settings.	
Detail	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the speed settings for each display.	
Standard	▶ Use to select "Initial speed area", "Low speed area" or "High speed area" ▶ Use to adjust the speed ▶ Select "OK" and press . The speed can be adjusted from level 0 (left end) to level 11 (right end). Move the key to the right to increase the speed and to the left to decrease the speed.	
MainMenu		
T9/Prediction		
Software*		
Reset	▶ Select "YES" and press .	

*: This setting may be not applicable depending on an i-α ppli software.

<Illumination>

Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls

Default settings	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 Message Request: Color 1 Message Free: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flashing pattern) in which the call alert indicator flashes when you receive voice or video-phone calls, mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free.

- You can set different flashing colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from specific phone numbers, e-mail addresses and groups. → P. 107
- The way and flash has the same setting as the incoming call lamp, but orange is the only color you can use.

1 Press ▶ Choose from the following options:

Set color	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the color for the call alert indicator. The selected color appears on the display during selection.	
Phone	▶ Select a color and press . Selects the flashing color respectively. Color 1 to 12: Each color blinks. Gradation: The color 1 to 12 blinks in order.	
Video-phone		
Mail		
Chat mail		
Message Request		
Message Free		

② Set pattern	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the call alert indicator flashing pattern.	
	① Standard	Sets the standard flashing pattern.
	② Melody linkage	Sets a melody-linked flashing pattern.
③ Adjust color	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the color.	
	① Edit color name	▶ Select the color and press ● ▶ Enter the color name and then press ●. The color name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
	② Adjust color tone	▶ Select the color and press ● ▶ Use 🎛️ to adjust the color tone and then press ●.

Note

- If "Pattern 1-3" is selected in the Ring tone setting, the call alert indicator flashes in time to the melody regardless of the setting specified in this function.
- If the illumination setting is duplicated, the precedence is as follows (where ① has the highest precedence):
 - ① The illumination setting specified in Utilities
 - ② The illumination setting specified in Group Utilities
 - ③ The "Illumination" setting
- If "Melody linkage" is set and there is no vibration pattern stored for melody linkage in the ring tones, the call alert indicator flashes in the "Standard" pattern.
- If an i-motion is selected in "Select ring tone", the call alert indicator flashes in the "Standard" pattern.

<Illumination in talk>

Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Call Alert Indicator

Default settings	OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the call alert indicator flashes during a voice or video-phone call.

1 Press ▶ Select and press ● ▶ Press "Talk" ▶ Select "Illumination in talk" and press ● ▶ Select the color and press ●.

OFF :The call alert indicator for incoming call is not blinked.

Color 1 to 7 :Each color blinks.

Gradation 1to 3 :The color 1 to 7 blinks in order.

Note

- While recording "Record message", playing the answer message or while on answer hold, the call alert indicator flashes in the same pattern as during a call.

<Call time display>

Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls

Default settings	ON

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal displays the call time during voice and video-phone calls.

- If the call time exceeds "19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the count restarts from "0 seconds".
- The displayed call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- No call time is calculated during i-mode or packet communication.

1 Press ▶ Select "ON" or "OFF".

Changing the Font

Default settings

Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

Use this procedure to change the text shown in the display and indicator display to your preferred font (typeface).

1

Press ► Choose from the following options:

① Type	► Select "Font 1" or "Font 2". Selects the font. A sample of the selected font appears at the bottom of the display.
② Thickness	► Select "Thin", "Medium" or "Bold". Selects the thickness. A text sample in the selected thickness appears at the bottom of the display.

Note

- You can only change to "Font 2" for alphabetic letters (full-pitch or half-pitch), numbers (full-pitch or half-pitch), hiragana and katakana (full-pitch or half-pitch) and some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. Kanji and all other characters are displayed in "Font 1". The text used for phone number input and clock display also cannot be changed to "Font 2".
- Thickness of font on the indicator display does not change regardless of the settings on this function.

<Clock display>

Setting the Clock Display

Default settings

Display: ON Size: Big

1

Press ► Choose from the following options:

① Display	► Select "ON" or "OFF".
② Size	► Select "Big" or "Small". Sets the clock size.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Adding frequently called phone numbers and frequently used functions to the stand-by display as desktop icons provides a quick and simple way of accessing those numbers and functions.

- The following can be added into the stand-by display as desktop icons:
 - Phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, movies/i-motion, Chara-den, i-α ppli software
 - The camera, ToDo list display, access reader, bar code reader, infrared receive, dictionary and original menu functions
- You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the stand-by display.
- Original animations and melodies or images that were pre-installed cannot be added as desktop icons.

Adding desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the display of the function you want to add, the data list display, or the details display.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

See “ Add desktop icon” in the “Phonebook detail display function menu 2/4” table in “Using the function menu in the phonebook detail display” ➡ P. 101



Titles of added desktop icons

Displayed icon	Type	Title
	Phone number	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	e-mail address	Name stored in the phonebook (e-mail address if no name is stored)
	SMS address	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	URL	Page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if no title is stored)
	Melody	Melody title (“Melody” if no title is stored)
	Image	Image file name (“Image” if no file name is stored)
	Movie/i-motion	Movie or i-motion title (“i-motion” if no title is stored)
	Chara-den	Chara-den title (“Chara-den” if no title is stored)
	i-α ppli software	Software name
	Camera	The respective function name
	ToDo	
	Access reader	
	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data	
	Dictionary	
	Original menu	

Note

- When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters of the title are displayed.

Using desktop icons to retrieve data or functions

1 In the stand-by display, press .

The “Desktop icon display” appears.
The title of the icon in the current cursor location is displayed.

2 Select the desktop icon you want to retrieve.

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored

The  icon is shown on the left or right of the display. You can use  to scroll through the icons.

3 Press .



Using the function menu in the desktop icon display

In the desktop icon display...

➡ P. 136

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Desktop icon display function menu

① Edit title	▶ Enter a title and press  . The title can contain up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
② Reset desktop	▶ Select "YES" and press  . The desktop reverts to its default status at the time of purchase ("Camera" only).
③ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
④ Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Checking desktop icon information

- 1** Press   .
The "Desktop display" appears.

- 2** Select a desktop icon title and press .



Note

- In the desktop icon information display for URLs, you can use  to scroll the display and check all the URLs.

Using the function menu in the desktop display

In the desktop display...

➡ P. 137

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Desktop display function menu

① Edit title	▶ Enter a title and press  . The title can contain up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
② Reset desktop	▶ Select "YES" and press  . The desktop reverts to its default status at the time of purchase ("Camera" only).
③ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
④ Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Desktop icons that provide information

Icon	Information provided	Subsequent display/Activation details
 New	Notifies you of received mail, including mail received while you were out of signal range.	Shows the list display for the Inbox folder containing your latest mail.
 CHAT	Notifies you of received chat mail.	Shows the Chat display.
 Miss	Notifies you of missed calls.	Displays the "Missed calls" record.
 Msg	Notifies you of recorded messages.	Launches "Play/Erase msg.".
 VM	Notifies you that you have recorded messages at the Voice Mail Service Center.	Launches "Voice mail".
 Miss	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm clock, scheduled event or ToDo alarm.	Displays the information for the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
 Not run	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to automatically launch an i-α ppli software.	Shows the "Auto start" display.
 APPLI	Notifies you that the i-α ppli stand-by display shut down due to an error.	Displays the security error history.
 UPDATE	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Shows the update results display after you enter your security code.

Note

- You cannot make a call before completing the procedure for displaying the confirmation display from a desktop icon notifying you of information. When "Operation preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting", no alarm notification is provided. Press  or  to return to the stand-by display before performing the operation.
- Even when there is no "New mail" icon displayed, there may still be new mail at the i-mode Center that has not been received on the FOMA terminal. Similarly, there may still be recorded messages at the Voice Mail Service Center even when there is no "Voice mail" icon displayed.
- Desktop icons that notify you of information are deleted once the respective functions are launched. To clear all the icons, hold down  for 1 second or longer.
- If you select "Not display" for "Missed calls display" in the "Ringing time" setting, when you missed calls from the phone number that is not saved in the phonebook during the time taken for the FOMA terminal to start ringing, the "Missed calls" icon does not appear.

<Select icons setting>

Selecting the Icons in the Stand-by Display

Default settings

ON

You can use this procedure to select the display icons, date or time in the stand-by display using the neuropointer.

1

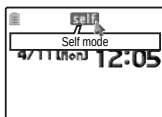
Press  ► Select  and press  ► Press  ► Press  "Other settings" ► Select "Select icons setting" and press  ► Press  "ON".

■ To make icons not selectable

Press  "OFF".

Selecting a display icon with the neuropointer

- 1 In the stand-by display, slide your finger over  to display the neuropointer  and move the cursor to the icon you want to check.



The icon title appears.
You can also select the date or time.
You can also use  to select an icon.

- 2 Press .

Selective icon	Status after being selected
	Displays "PIM lock".
 / 	Displays "Keypad dial lock".
	Shows the "Keypad dial lock" and "PIM lock" selection display.
 (Blue) /  (Red) /  /  (Blue) /  (Red)	Displays the "Inbox".
 (Green) /  (Red)	Displays "Message Request".
 (Purple) /  (Red)	Displays "Message Free".
 (Blue) /  (Red) /  (Green) /  (Red) /  (Purple) /  (Red)	Displays "Check new message".
	Displays "Receive option".
	Displays "Self mode".
	Displays "Task menu".
 /  / 	Displays the "Vibrator" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection display.
 /  / 	• Normal Mode (when not in manner mode) "Ring volume" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens are displayed. • Manner Mode, Super silent Mode A message stating it cannot be set is displayed. • Original Manner Mode "Original" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens are displayed.
	Displays "Manner mode set".
	Displays "Remote observation".
 / 	Displays "Alarm".
	A message stating that nothing was recorded is displayed.
 /  /  /  / 	Displays "Play/Erase msg."
 /  /  /  /  /  /  /  /  / 	Displays "Voice mail".

Selective icon	Status after being selected
	Displays "Display light".
	Displays "Side keys guard".
Date	Displays "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Displays "Alarm clock". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
	Switches and displays the task in operation.

Note
● Even if Voice Mail has 11 or more record messages, the icon's title shows "10 Voice mail."

● Security Settings

■ About Your Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal	142
Changing Your Security Code <Change security code>	143
Setting Your PIN Codes <PIN setting>	143
Release PIN lock	145

■ Restricting the Phone Controls and Functions

Lock Functions	145
Preventing Others From Using Your FOMA Terminal <All lock/Remote all lock>	145
Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule <Secret mode/Secret only mode>	148
Hiding Your Personal Information <PIM lock>	150
Disabling the Side Keys <Side keys guard>	150

■ Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls and Transmissions

Locking the Keypad <Keypad dial lock>	151
Setting the Redial and Received Calls Record Displays <Record display set>	152
Preventing Unwanted Mail Display <Mail security>	152
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers <Restrictions>	153
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers <Call setting w/o ID>	155
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook <Ringing time>	156
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook <Reject unknown>	156
Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc. <Self mode>	157

■ Other Security Settings

Other "Security Settings"	158

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal

To make the FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, security codes are needed for some functions. In addition to the security codes for the operation of various terminals, there are network security codes used for accessing network services and codes such as your i-mode password. Take care to use the appropriate access code when using your FOMA terminal.

FOMA Terminal Security Code

The security code is set to "0000" (four numerical zeros) in the default setting, but you can freely change it if desired.
→ P. 143

- If you forget your security code, you are required to bring your FOMA terminal*, your FOMA card (UIM), and your identification (such as a driver's license) to the sales representative of DoCoMo shop to confirm that you were the subscribed person.

*: If the phone is bought by other than the subscriber, the request may not be accepted.

Network security code

The security code is a 4 digit number that you specify when you apply to use DoCoMo e-sites or use various network services and is set at the time of subscription.

- If you forget the network security code, contact the "Inquiries" on the back cover of this Manual. DoCoMo shop and other contacts will deal procedures after confirming that you are the subscribed person by checking documents such as a driver's license. You can also apply for e-sites from your PC if you have a "user ID" and "Password".

* See the back cover of this manual for detail regarding "DoCoMo e-site".

PIN1 code, PIN2 code

The two security codes (PIN1 code and PIN2 code) can be set in the FOMA card (UIM).

When you subscribe, "0000" (four numerical zeros) is set for these codes, but you can change the numbers freely if desired.

The PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) to confirm the user each time the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted into the FOMA terminal or each time the FOMA terminal is turned on to avoid the use of the third party without permission. Entering the PIN1 code allows you to make/receive calls and operate your terminal.

The PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that is required when using the user certificate, applying the issuance or resetting the call duration.

About PIN1 code and PIN2 code → P. 143

i-mode password

Your i-mode password is a 4-digit password that is required for operations such as adding and removing My Menu entries and subscribing to or unsubscribing from the message services and other i-mode fee-based services.

The i-mode password is set to "0000" (four numerical zeros) when you subscribe, but the numbers can freely be changed if desired. (In addition to this, some service providers set their own passwords.)

- If you forget your i-mode password, note that you are required to bring your identification (such as a driver's license) to the sales representative of DoCoMo shop to confirm that you were the subscribed person.

Note

- To prevent improper use of your terminal, change your security code, PIN1 and PIN2 codes and i-mode password to the numbers of your choice after subscription. Make a separate record of security codes that were set in order not to forget.
- Do not use numbers like the last 4 digits of your phone number that other people can easily guess.

<Change security code>

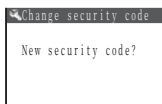
Changing Your Security Code

Default setting	0000 (4 zeros)

Use the procedure below to change your FOMA terminal security code (4-8 digits) so as to make your FOMA terminal easier to use and protect important data stored on the FOMA terminal.

- To change your security code from the "Initial setting" (P. 44), you need not press in step 1.

- 1 Press ► Enter your security code and then press .



- 2 Enter a new security code of between 4 and 8 digits and press ► Select "YES" and press .

Note

- The setting in this function changes the security code used for the FOMA terminal functions.

<PIN setting>

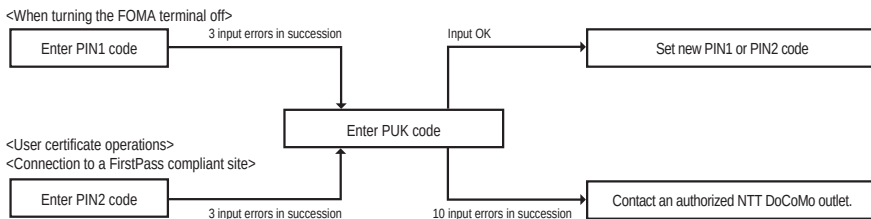
Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF

The PIN1 code is a number between 4 and 8 digits long that you enter when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM).

The PIN2 code is a number between 4 and 8 digits long that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access. On the FOMA terminal, your PIN2 code is required to connect to FirstPass compliant sites and for user certificate operations (your user certificate is issued for access to FirstPass).

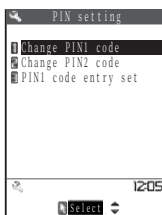
- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1 code entry set are saved in the FOMA card (UIM). If you buy a new FOMA terminal and transfer your current FOMA card (UIM) to the new phone, you can continue using your existing PIN1 and PIN2 codes.
- When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", inputting PIN1 code is required when turning the power on. Because the settings for "PIN1 code entry set" are saved in the FOMA card (UIM), inputting PIN1 code is required when turning the power on even if the FOMA card (UIM) that "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON" is replaced by the FOMA terminal that is set to "OFF".
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in succession, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use your PIN codes. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- Your FOMA service contract (customer copy) gives your PUK code. The PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock a locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK (PIN unlock) code incorrectly 10 times in succession, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked. Keep your FOMA service contract (customer copy) in a safe place to ensure that you do not lose it.
- If you forget the PUK (PIN unlock) code or your FOMA card (UIM) is completely locked, you are required to bring the FOMA terminal, the FOMA card (UIM) in use and your identification (such as a driver's license) to the sales representative of DoCoMo shop to confirm that you are the subscribed person.



Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code number

● To change your PIN1 code, select “ON” in “PIN1 code entry set”.

1 Press ► Select and press ► Press “Lock/Security” ► Select “PIN setting” and press ► Enter your security code and press .



The “PIN setting” display appears.
About Your Security Codes → P. 142

2 Choose from the following options:

① Change PIN1 code	► Enter your current PIN1 code (4-8 digits) and press ► Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN1 code and press ► Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN1 code again and press . Changes the PIN1 code.
② Change PIN2 code	► Enter your current PIN2 code (4-8 digits) and press ► Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN2 code and press ► Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN2 code again and press . Changes the PIN2 code.
③ PIN1 code entry set	► Select “ON” or “OFF”.

Entering your PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is turned on

When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code input display appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 Turn on the FOMA terminal.

2 Enter your PIN1 code (4-8 digits) and press .



If the PIN1 code is correct, the stand-by display appears.

Release PIN lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in succession, a message appears notifying that the PIN1 or PIN2 code is automatically locked and the input display for the PUK (PIN unlock) code appears. If this occurs, you must unlock the locked PIN code and then set a new PIN code.

- More information on your PUK code, refer to the FOMA service contract (customer copy) that you received when you subscribed to FOMA.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

- 1 Enter your 8-digit PUK code and press .



- 2 Enter a new 4-8-digit PIN1 code and press .

- 3 Enter the new PIN1 code again and press .

Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Ref. page
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	All lock/Remote all lock	P. 145
To prevent others from viewing data in your "phonebook" or "schedule"	Secret mode/Secret only mode	P. 148
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	PIM lock	P. 150
To prevent inadvertent use of the side keys	Side key guard	P. 150
To prevent private calls	Keypad dial lock	P. 151
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Record display set	P. 152
To use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice or video-phone calls	Self mode	P. 157

<All lock/Remote all lock>

Preventing Others From Using Your FOMA Terminal

Default setting	OFF

You can set "All lock" either using the FOMA terminal or remotely.

- When All lock is applied, none of the FOMA terminal's keys can be used except for turning the FOMA terminal on/off and calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118). You cannot dial or receive voice calls or video-phone calls, but you can receive Remote observation.
- "All lock" is not released even when the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Using the FOMA terminal to set All lock

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press “Lock/Security” ► Select “All lock” and press ► Enter your security code and press .



All lock is set and “All lock” and appears on the display.
Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal → P. 142

Setting Remote all lock

Default setting

Remote all lock: OFF Monitoring (minutes): 3 Recv. calls (times): 5

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal from a pay phone or other phone.

- Remote all lock allows you to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal when it receives the number of missed calls set in “Received calls” from the phone number set in “Accept phone No.” within the time set in “Monitoring”.
- Either voice calls or video-phone calls can be used to set the All lock function.
- Calls received during another call do not trigger the start of the monitoring time and are not counted as received calls.

- 1 Press ► Enter your security code and press ► Press “ON” ► Press “Accept phone No.”.

The “Store accept phone number display” appears.

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

- 2 Select “<Not recorded>” and press .

■ To change the currently stored accept phone number

Select the option for the accept phone number and press .

- 3 Enter the phone number and press ► Press (Finish).

You can store up to 3 accept phone numbers.



- 4 Press “Monitoring” ► Enter the monitoring time (01-10 minutes).

Sets the monitoring period during which Remote all lock can be set once a call from the accept phone number has been missed. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, just press .

- 5 Press “Received calls” ► Enter the number of received calls (03-10 times).

Sets the number of calls from the accept phone number that will set the Remote all lock function. Enter a 2-digit number as the number of calls. To set the number currently shown, just press .

- 6 Press (Finish).

Using the function menu in the store accept phone number display

In the store accept phone number display...

→ P. 146

- 1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Store accept phone number display function menu

① Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: Uses other functions to browse for a number.	
	① Phonebook	Browses the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98
	② Dialed calls	Browses the dialed calls record. See "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number" → P. 50
	③ Received calls	Browses the received calls record. See "Using the Received Calls Record" → P. 62
② Pay phone	Sets calls from a pay phone as the accept phone number. "Pay phone" is displayed as the accept phone number.	
③ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	
	Deletes 1 accept phone number. If there are no accept phone numbers stored, the Remote all lock function is set to "OFF".	
④ Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	
	Deletes all the accept phone numbers. The Remote all lock function is set to "OFF".	

Setting All lock remotely

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal by calling the FOMA terminal by using a voice call or video-phone call from a phone set as an "Accept phone No."

- Set "Remote all lock" to "ON" beforehand.
- All lock that has been set remotely can be released as described in "Using the FOMA terminal to release All lock".
→ P. 148
- Releasing All lock does not release Remote all lock setting.

1 Call the FOMA terminal from a phone number set as an "Accept phone No."

2 Wait for the busy tone, etc. and then hang up (missed call).

Repeat steps 1 and 2 within the time set in "Monitoring" until you have logged the total number of missed calls set in "Received calls".

3 Listen to the answer message and then hang up.

The FOMA terminal is set to "All lock".

Note

- When the phone number set as an "Accept phone No." or a payphone is set in "Call rejection", calls from that number are still counted as calls in Remote all lock.
- If you manually reject a call from the accept phone number or forward the call to the Voice Mail Service Center or the call forwarding number, it is still counted as a call in Remote all lock.
- When a call from the accept phone number has been missed, only calls from that number are counted as incoming calls until the monitoring time has elapsed (calls from any other accept phone numbers are not counted). When you set Remote all lock, make a call to the FOMA terminal from one of the specified accept phone numbers.
- If the FOMA terminal is turned off or answer the call from the accept phone number, the received call count is reset.
- You can make remote all lock calls while the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.
- All lock cannot be released remotely.

Setting All lock

- While All lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive voice or video-phone calls. When you release All lock, the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- While All lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" is reached. When you release All lock, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- While All lock is set, you can still receive i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail, Message Request, or Message Free, but no incoming call display or call results display appears. When you release All lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the display.
- If there are pasted desktop icons, setting All lock removes the icons from the display. When you release All lock, those icons reappear.

Using the FOMA terminal to release All lock

- If you fail to correctly release All lock 5 times in succession, the FOMA terminal turns itself off. However, it can still be turned on again.

- 1 In the display shown when All lock is set, enter your security code and press .**

All lock is released and  no longer appears on the display.
About Your Security Codes → P. 142



<Secret mode/Secret only mode>

Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: OFF Secret only mode: OFF

This function allows you to prevent others from accessing "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" while the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.

In Secret mode, you can retrieve all the data stored in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule", including secret data. Secret only mode allows you to retrieve only those "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries that are stored as secret data.

- If you receive a voice or video-phone call in Secret or Secret only mode, the current mode is cancelled.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off cancels Secret or Secret only mode.

Storing Phonebook or Schedule Entries as Secret Data

- The procedures for using the "Phonebook" and "Schedule" in Secret or Secret only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

- 1 Press    Enter your security code and press .**



Secret mode is set and  appears on the display. If "Keypad dial lock" is set at the same time,  appears.
About Your Security Codes → P. 142

■ To cancel Secret mode

Press .

Secret mode is cancelled and  no longer appears on the display.

- 2 Store the information in the "Phonebook" or "Schedule".**

The entry is stored as secret data.

See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93

See "Adding schedule entries" → P. 434

Note

- "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries stored as secret data can be retrieved, modified or deleted only in Secret or Secret only mode. When the FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of "Schedule" events stored as secret data by an alarm, but no alarm message is displayed.
- If a "Phonebook" entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", "Two-touch dialing" can be used to call that number only when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- When a caller who is stored in the phonebook as secret data calls and provides a caller ID, the phone number, not the stored caller name, is displayed while the FOMA terminal is not in Secret or Secret only mode. The caller's phone number is also logged in the "Received calls", but the name stored in the phonebook is not recorded. When the mail is sent, the sender's name is not displayed and the mail address appears. It is not saved in "Received address".
- The following functions cannot be set for "Phonebook" entries stored as secret data:
 - Automatic display → P. 110
 - Restrictions → P. 153
 - Utilities → P. 107
- If you modify your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" in Secret mode, the modified data become secret. Even if you modify only 1 phone number or e-mail address in Secret mode, all the phone numbers and e-mail addresses stored under the modified memory number become secret data.
- Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when you press , when you make a call or when you receive a call. You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret only mode by pressing    or   .
- If "All lock" is set at the same time as "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", releasing "All lock" also cancels "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- If you press  or  in Secret mode or Secret only mode, the FOMA terminal reverts to the stand-by display without dialing a call and Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled.
- If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule or while viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret only mode, Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled and when you return to the phonebook or schedule display and resume the procedure you were using, the security code entry display appears. When you enter your security code, Secret mode or Secret only mode is set and you can then continue the procedure.

Viewing just secret data <Secret only mode>

- 1 Press    Enter your security code and press .



Secret only mode is set and  flashes on the display along with the number of entries stored as secret data. If "Keypad dial lock" is set at the same time,  flashes. The stand-by display reappears after about 2 seconds. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

■ To cancel Secret only mode

Press .

Secret only mode is cancelled and  no longer appears on the display.

- 2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule.

See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98

See "Checking schedule details" → P. 436

Note

- When you make a call by retrieving secret data, it is not recorded in the "Dialed calls" or "Redial".

Changing secret data back to normal data

In Secret or Secret only mode, retrieve the phonebook entry or scheduled event that you want to make non-secret.

See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98

See "Checking schedule details" → P. 436

<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>

In the phonebook detail display function menu...

→ P. 101

- 1 Press  Press  Press  "Release secret".

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the flashing  icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ Scheduled events

See "Release secret" in "Schedule list display function menu 1/2" in "Using the function menu on the Schedule List display" → P. 436

<PIM lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information

Default setting

OFF

Set this function to lock access to FOMA terminal features such as "Phonebook", "Schedule", "Mail", "Camera" and "My picture" so as to prevent other people from viewing, altering or adding new personal information and from changing the FOMA terminal's settings. Once PIM lock is set, all FOMA terminal operations are disabled except for procedures such as incoming/outgoing calls, menu operations or viewing pre-installed data that do not affect stored data.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press "Lock/Security" ► Select "PIM lock" and press ► Enter your security code and press .



PIM lock is set and appears on the display. If "Keypad dial lock" is set at the same time, appears.

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

■ Releasing PIM lock

Repeat step 1.

PIM lock is released and no longer appears on the display.

Note

- When you set PIM lock, all the entries left up to that point in the "Redial", "Dialed calls records" and "Received calls records", "sent address list" and "received address list" are deleted. However, the records of incoming or outgoing calls after PIM lock is set are retained.
- You cannot delete desktop icons while PIM lock is set. Desktop icons such as "New mail", "Missed alarm", "Phone number", "e-mail address" and "URL" are not displayed while PIM lock is set. However, these icons reappear when PIM lock is released.
- While PIM lock is set, the FOMA terminal cannot play or view the following data: i-motion, Chara-den, non-preinstalled melodies and My Picture. If your FOMA terminal already has such data as a ring tone or set in the stand-by display, it plays according to the default setting while PIM lock is set.
- If you have set the calendar in the stand-by display, the calendar is displayed. However, the schedule function cannot be activated by selecting the calendar.
- While PIM lock is set, you cannot view missed calls or incoming mail by pressing (Memo/Check) with your FOMA terminal folded.
- While PIM lock is set, the substitute image sent to the other party during a video-phone is the "Pre-installed" substitute image.
- If you set "All lock" while PIM lock is set, is replaced by .
- When you have set PIM lock and All lock simultaneously, you first need to release All lock and then release PIM lock. Releasing All lock does not cause PIM lock to be released.
- While PIM lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" is reached. Once you release PIM lock, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- While PIM lock is set, you can still receive i-mode mail, chat mail, SMS or Message Request/Free, but neither the incoming call display nor the call results display appears. Once you release PIM lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the stand-by display.

<Side keys guard>

Disabling the Side Keys

Default setting

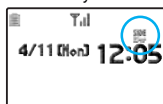
Enabled when folded

This function allows you to disable the FOMA terminal's side keys to prevent the keys from being accidentally pressed when the FOMA terminal is folded and put in a bag, etc.

- In the situations listed below, the side keys are enabled regardless of the setting specified here.
 - When the FOMA terminal is unfolded
 - When the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal
 - When a PC or similar device is connected to the external connection port and is shown on the display

1 Press Press (for 1 second or longer).

The side keys are disabled (disabled when the FOMA terminal is folded) and  appears on the display.



■ To enable the side keys when the FOMA terminal is folded

Repeat step 1.

The  icon disappears and you can operate the side keys.

<Keypad dial lock>

Locking the Keypad

Default setting

OFF

This function prohibits anyone from making voice or video-phone calls by dialing a phone number or sending i-mode mail and SMS on the FOMA terminal. This means that calls can only be made using "Phonebook" entries stored before the keypad is locked or using the "Dialed calls" or "Redial" or "Sent address" entries logged after the keypad was locked.

In situations where the FOMA terminal is being used for business purposes for example, you can prevent private calls or mail by storing the required work numbers and mail addresses in the "Phonebook" beforehand and then setting this function.

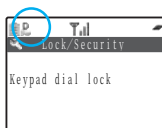
● While the keypad is locked, you cannot use the following functions or procedures to make voice or video-phone calls, compose i-mode mail or SMS:

- Keypad entry
- Received calls record
- Received address
- Mail member
- Desktop icons
- Access reader
- Bar code reader
- Recorded message playback

● The following are not possible while the keypad is locked:

- Adding, editing or deleting phonebook entries
- Using the "Phone To", "AV Phone To" and "Mail To" functions
- Sending and receiving phonebook data using infrared communication
- Copying and editing phonebook entries using "UIM operation"
- Importing phonebook entries from a miniSD memory card
- Sending the AT command

1 Press Select and press Press "Lock/Security" Select "Keypad dial lock" and press Enter your security code and press .



Keypad dial lock is set and  appears on the display. If Secret or Secret only mode is set at the same time,  appears. If "PIM lock" is set at the same time,  appears. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

■ Releasing Keypad dial lock

Repeat step 1.

Keypad dial lock is released and  no longer appears on the display.

Note

- Setting the Keypad dial lock deletes all pre-existing entries in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address" and "Chat member". However, all the entries logged in those records after the keypad dial lock is set are retained. When the FOMA terminal is set to save both the address and message for mail, the address is deleted and only the message is retained. When the FOMA terminal is set to save only the address, the mail is deleted.
- You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the keypad is locked.

<Record display set>

Setting the Redial and Received Calls Record Displays

Default setting

Received calls: ON Dialed calls: ON

You can use this function to prevent the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" from being displayed. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls.

- Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "Other settings" ► Select "Record display set" and press ► Enter your security code and press ► Choose from the following options:

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

1 Received calls	► Select "ON" or "OFF". Specifies the display setting for the Received calls record.
2 Redial/ Dialed calls	► Select "ON" or "OFF". Specifies the display setting for the Redial or Dialed calls record.

Note

- Even when "Received calls" is set to "OFF", the "Missed calls" icon still appears on the stand-by display when you have missed a call. However, when you try to view the Received calls record from the "Missed call" desktop icon, a message appears notifying you that record display is set to "OFF" and the desktop icon remains on the display. To clear the "Missed call" desktop icon, hold down for 1 second or longer.
- You cannot play recorded messages when "Received calls" record display is set to "OFF".
- The Redial record only stores the most recent data. If you make 2 or more calls to the same number, only the most recent call is stored and the older call records are deleted.
- When a call is made to a previously dialed number, the call is logged as a new entry in the Dialed calls record and the previous entries are not deleted.

<Mail security>

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display

Default setting

No security

This function allows you to apply security measures to your Inbox, Outbox and Draft mailbox so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Boxes with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- The icon appears next to mailboxes with security set.
- If you set security for the Outbox or Inbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address list or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

- Press (MAIL) ► Press ► Press "Mail settings" ► Press "Mail security" ► Enter your security code and press .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

- Use to select a checkbox (☐) and then press .



The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect a ticked mailbox, select it again.

3 After completing the settings, press (Finish).

Setting security for individual folders

You can also set security for specific folders. Folders with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- For folders with security set, icons such as  or  appear before the folder name in the folder list display.

In the Inbox/Outbox list display function menu...

➔ P. 284

1 Press "Mail security" ➔ Enter the security code and press ➔ Select "YES" and press .

About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142

■ To release the security setting

Repeat Step 1

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting

All OFF

- You can specify up to 20 phone numbers in each function.
- You cannot set restrictions for phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- Restrictions are only effective when the caller provides a caller ID. Restrictions should always be set in conjunction with the "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance for the same phone number, or Call forwarding and Voice mail for the same number.
- Restrictions cannot be set for phonebook entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- If you set restrictions for a phone number and then modify or delete that phone number, the restrictions on the selected functions are released. However, you cannot modify or delete a phone number while "Restrict dialing" is set.

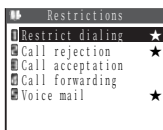
Setting restrictions on dialing and receiving for phone numbers

The same method is used to set restrictions on both dialing and receiving for phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

In the phonebook detail display function menu...

➔ P. 101

1 Press "Restrictions" ➔ Enter your security code and press ➔ Select the desired function.



About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142

A star (★) appears next to the selected function.

■ To release the restriction on a restricted function

Select a function marked with a star (★).

The restriction is released and the star (★) no longer appears.

■ To set restrictions on dialing and receiving for multiple phone numbers

Press  to return to the phonebook detail display and then use  to display the desired phone number and repeat step 1.

Once you press  to return to the stand-by display, you can no longer add further restrictions. To add more restrictions, lift the restrictions that have already been set for the phone number and then set the restrictions again including the unrestricted phone number.

Note

<Restrict dialing>

- Once you set Restrict dialing for a phone number, you can no longer correct or add to the corresponding phonebook entry, copy data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) entry and the FOMA card (UIM), use "UIM operation" to work with the phonebook entry, or make calls from any of the dialing or received call record entries that include that phone number.
- Setting Restrict dialing deletes the "Dialed calls" and "Redial".
- Even when the Restrict dialing is set, you can make an emergency call (110, 119, and 118).
- To use "Automatic display" at the same time as Restrict dialing, set this function for phonebook entries for which "Automatic display" has already been set.
- Only the phone number specified for Restrict dialing is displayed in the phonebook while Restrict dialing is set.

<Call rejection> <Call acceptance>

- Call rejection and Call acceptance are only valid for calls where the caller provides a caller ID. These functions should always be set in conjunction with the "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the settings for these functions.
- Setting "PIM lock" disables the Call rejection and Call acceptance functions.
- If you receive a call from a number for which Call rejection is set or from a number for which Call acceptance is not set, the number is recorded as "Missed calls" in the Received call history and the "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed on the stand-by display.
- If you receive a call from a phone number for which Call rejection is set or from a phone number other than the number for which Call acceptance is set, the call is rejected even when the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" services are "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding services" is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of signal range, the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding service". Note that when this occurs, the received phone number is not logged in the "Received calls" and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- You can still make calls when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.
- Deleting all the data in the phonebook cancels the "Call rejection" and "Call acceptance".

<Call forwarding> <Voice mail>

- Setting "PIM lock" disables Call forwarding and Voice mail.
- If you receive a call from the specified phone number, the FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the designated call forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- If no call forwarding number is designated or if you have not subscribed to the "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail", calls from the specified phone number are handled as missed calls.

Checking the restriction settings

Use this procedure to check the function settings for a phone number for which "Restrictions" is set. You can also lift the restrictions while checking them.

1

Press     ► Enter your security code and press .

The "Phonebook restrictions display" appears.
About Your Security Codes → P. 142



Phonebook restrictions display

Using the function menu in the Restrictions display

In the phonebook restrictions display...

➡ P. 154

1

Select a function marked by a star (★), and press  (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Restrictions display function menu

1 Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the selected function is set.
2 Release	► Select "YES" and press . Lifts the restrictions on all the selected function settings.

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting

Accept all/Same as ring tone

This function allows you to accept or reject calls and video-phone calls from callers who do not provide a caller ID based on the reason given.

1

Press    ► Enter your security code and press  ► Choose from the following options:

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

❶ Not supported	► Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to provide a caller ID, such as calls from overseas or from pay phones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may also provide caller IDs in some cases.	
	❶ Accept	► Choose from the following options: Accepts received calls.
	❷ Reject	Rejects received calls.
❷ Payphone	► Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies whether to accept calls dialed from pay phones.	
	❶ Accept	► Choose from the following options: Accepts received calls.
	❷ Reject	Rejects received calls.
❸ User unset	► Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies whether to accept calls made by callers who deliberately withhold their caller IDs.	
	❶ Accept	► Choose from the following options: Accepts received calls.
	❷ Reject	Rejects received calls.

Note

- The ring tone you select with this function is the ring tone for a no caller ID voice phone call. If you receive a video-phone call with no caller ID, the ring tone is the same as that specified in "Video-phone" for "Select ring tone".
- If you select "Reject", the FOMA terminal displays the "Missed call" icon when you receive a call without playing the ring tone (The caller hears the busy tone).
- Even if you have activated "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", calls from callers set for rejection who give the reason for withholding their caller ID are not connected to the respective services. However, if the ringing time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds or if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the i-mode service area, "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is enabled.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the settings on this function.

<Ringing time>

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting

Set mute seconds: 0 Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the period for which the ring tone for a call from a voice or video-phone call not stored in the phonebook or an incoming voice or video-phone call without caller ID is muted before starting up (notifying you of the call). You can prevent accidentally dialing numbers, such as nuisance calls that only ring for a short period, from your call history.

- This function is enabled if even during voice and video-phone calls you receive a call.

1Press    ► Choose from the following options:

 Set mute seconds	► Enter a muted time (00 to 99 seconds). Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, just press .
 Missed calls display	► Select  "Display" or  "Not display" Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the missed calls record.

Note

- Ringing operations on the FOMA terminal include playing the ring tone, vibrating and lighting or flashing the call alert indicator.
- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret data, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- Even when the incoming call is from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook with the "186" or "184" prefix, the FOMA terminal starts ringing as soon as the call is received.
- If the muted time is longer than the ringing time for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the muted time. The same applies to the ringing times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting

Accept

Use this procedure to specify whether the FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- Only available for numbers that send caller ID. It is also recommended that it is used in conjunction with "Caller ID request service" and "Call setting w/o ID".

1

Press  ► Select  and press  ► Press  "Lock/Security" ► Select "Reject unknown" and press  ► Enter your security code and press  ► Press  "Reject".

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

- To receive a call from callers who are not listed in the phonebook

Press  "Accept".

Note

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret data, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If this function is set at the same time as "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" in "Restrictions", "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" has precedence.
- When "Reject" is selected in this function and you receive a call from a phone number that is not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a "Missed call" in the "Received calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. Even if you have activated "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", the caller hears the busy tone. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the i-mode service area or if the ringing time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center or the forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number for the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" and is not displayed on the stand-by display as a "Missed call" desktop icon.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the setting of this function.

<Self mode>

Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc.

Default setting

OFF

Use this function to set the FOMA terminal so that it cannot make or receive voice or video-phone calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mail. This is useful when you want to use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice or video-phone calls.

- If you receive a voice call when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, the caller hears a message saying that the FOMA terminal is out of signal range or is turned off. In case of video-phone call, the caller sees the message "Out of service area or power off".
- While in Self mode, the FOMA terminal does not use desktop icons such as "Missed call" to notify you of calls.
- Data communication using external equipment or infrared communication is not possible in Self mode.
- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode. Note that making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1

Press  Select  and press  Press  "Lock/Security" Select "Self mode" and press  Select "YES" and press .

Self mode is set and **self** appears on the display.

■ To cancel Self mode

Repeat step 1.

Self mode is canceled and **self** no longer appears on the display.

Note

- Message Request/Free and i-mode mails sent in Self mode are held at the i-mode Center, and SMS are held at the SMS Center.

Other “Security Settings”

In addition to the functions described in this manual, the functions and services of Security settings are available as follows.

Aim	Function/Services	Ref. page
To avoid nuisance phone calls such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls.	Nuisance Call Barring Service	P. 466
To ignore calls that have no caller ID.	Caller ID Request Service	P. 466
To send data securely by using the user certificate service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass.	FirstPass	P. 235
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary.	Software Update	P. 570
To protect the FOMA terminal against malicious data.	Scanning function	P. 575
To accept only necessary i-mode mail	Receive option	P. 270
To save information about the well-being of yourself or check information about the well-being of others in a time of disaster by using i-mode.	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual"
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept mail from specified domain only	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To accept/reject mail only from a specified mail address	Receive Selected Mail Reject Selected Mail	
To accept/reject i-mode mail only	Receive only i-mode mail Reject only i-mode mail	
To reject large amounts (over from 200th mail) of i-mode mail from 1 i-mode terminal in 1 day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisement mail	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject short messages (SMS)	Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings	
To check the status of the mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To restrict the size of received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

Note

- Be careful when returning calls from numbers you do not know. In particular sending your caller ID to the other unknown party may cause unnecessary problems.
- When the nuisance call barring functions are duplicated, the precedence is as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① Nuisance call barring service
 - ② Call rejection
 - ③ Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID
 - ④ Ringing time

Camera

Before Using the Camera	160
Shooting Still Images <Photo mode>	166
Shooting Movies <Movie mode>	175
Changing the Photography Settings	183
Using the Bar Code Reader <Bar code reader>	185
Scanning Text <Access reader>	189

Before Using the Camera

You can use the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot still images and movies.

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. → P. 392

Looking after the camera

- The camera in your FOMA terminal uses a CCD imaging element and is made using extremely high-precision technology. Even so, images may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Noise such as points of a random color may also appear on photographed images, particularly in very poorly lit locations.
- Before taking a picture, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Finger marks or grease spots on the lens can prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding the FOMA terminal as this could damage the lens.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left for a long period in a hot location.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight for long periods or shoot directly into the sun or a powerful lamp. This can cause discoloration of photographed images and other camera faults.

Notes on taking pictures

- The color tones and brightness levels in still images and movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual subject.
- If you try to shoot pictures directly into a bright light source such as the sun or a lamp, the image may appear dark or distorted.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not obstruct the lens when you are taking pictures.
- During picture taking, the camera uses large amounts of battery charge. Always turn the camera off immediately after you finish taking pictures. The screen may become dark or blurred if you take pictures when the battery is low.
- If any of the events listed below occurs while you are shooting a movie or taking consecutive photos, your FOMA terminal stops taking pictures and shows the respective display. Once you exit the display, the camera display reappears so that you can save the images or movies shot before you received the call or alarm, etc. If one of these events occurs while you are adjusting the camera zoom or brightness, the adjusted setting is confirmed and the camera menu reappears. If the auto timer is running when the event occurs, the auto timer stops.
 - You receive a voice call, video-phone call, or 64K data communication.
 - The FOMA terminal notifies you of an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm.
 - You use another FOMA terminal function.
- Camera operation is not cancelled in the following situations:
 - If you receive mail or a Message Request/Message Free while using the camera (including while the shooting display is displayed), the FOMA terminal continues taking pictures and does not display the reception results display, regardless of the setting specified in "Receiving display" (P. 296).
 - Select "Operation preferred" in "Alarm setting" (P. 427) to ensure that the FOMA terminal continues operating and does not stop taking pictures, cancel the camera settings or stop the auto timer when the time for a scheduled alarm is reached.
- The volume of the shutter sound and the Auto timer starting tone is fixed regardless of the "Ring volume" setting.
- Even when "Manner mode" or "Driving mode" is set, the FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound and Auto timer starting tone. When "Earphone" is selected in the "Earphone" setting and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds are still played through the speaker.
- Moving the FOMA terminal while taking a picture will blur the image. Hold the FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move while you are taking pictures, or use the Auto timer.
- When you shoot a still image, the FOMA terminal captures the image after you press . After you hear the shutter sound, keep the FOMA terminal steady so that it does not move until it finishes capturing the image and displays the checking mode display.
- After you display a shooting screen, switch the Camera or change the camera settings, there may be a short delay before image features such as the brightness or color tones are displayed optimally.
- When you save images or movies shot using the camera onto a miniSD memory card, you can specify the folder where the files are saved by setting the save destination folder before shooting. Note that if you turn the FOMA terminal off, the save destination changes to the last folder created when you switch it on again.
- With this FOMA terminal folded, the startup and shooting of the camera function are impossible.
- You cannot activate the Camera function while "PIM lock" is set.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Copyright Information

- Images or recordings made using your FOMA terminal should not be duplicated, modified or otherwise used in ways that infringe copyright laws, nor should images of other people be used or modified in ways that infringe the image rights of the people concerned. Note also that the photographing or recording of some stage performances, entertainments or exhibits may be prohibited, even when intended purely for personal enjoyment.



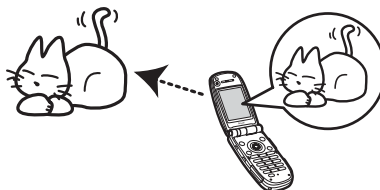
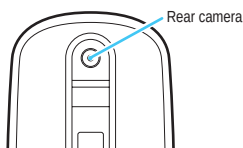
Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Using the camera

To switch between the front and rear cameras, press  (FUNC) in the shooting display, select "Rear camera" or "Front camera" from the function menu and then press .

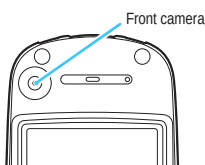
Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking pictures of other people, animals and scenery. The subject appears on the display just as in real life. (Normal display: Objects are photographed as seen on the display.) You can also use the rear camera for close-up shots by switching to the macro lens.



Front camera

Use this camera to take pictures of yourself. The image is displayed just as if you were looking in the mirror. (Mirror display: Objects are photographed as mirror images of what appears on the display.)



Note

- You cannot use the front and rear cameras at the same time.
- The rear camera uses mechanical shutter. Although a machine noise may sound while mechanical shutter is being operated, this is not a failure.

Taking a close-up shot

To take a close-up shot by using a rear camera, press  (Macro) on the shooting screen or switch the lens to the macro lens by selecting "Switch lens (Macro)" in the function menu. Switching to the macro lens enables the camera to focus on an object that lies about 9 cm away from the rear camera lens.

When you start a bar code reader or access reader, a macro lens will be set.

Still photography

- You can use either of the following modes to shoot still images:
Photo mode: Use this mode for still images.
Continuous mode: Use this mode to shoot up to 20 still images serially.
- The zoom can be adjusted from 1× to approx. 5× in 8 steps on the rear camera. The maximum zooming magnification for 1M (1160 × 870) is approx. 2× and approx. 3.6× for VGA (640 × 480). The front camera zoom can be adjusted from 1× to approx. 2× in 2 steps. However, the zoom cannot be adjusted for CIF (352 × 288).
- You can also use the camera's light to take indoor photos or in other situations where there is insufficient natural light.
- The FOMA terminal offers a range of photography modes for different shooting conditions and types of subject, such as scenery or night scenes.
- Selecting the macro lens allows you to take focused close-up shots.
- By saving your photos onto a miniSD memory card, you can then use them on PCs and other devices.
- You can also send your photos as attachments with i-mode mail.
- You can add icons or stamps to your photos, or place decorative frames on them.

Still image sizes and numbers of still images stored

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 360 still images. However, depending on the image format or the number of images downloaded, it may not be possible to store the maximum of 360 images.
- The table below shows the approximate storage limits for the different image types.

Format	Camera		Storage setting	Storage limit		
	Rear camera	Front camera		FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
					16MB	32MB
1M (1160 ×870) 1160 dots wide ×870 dots high	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 23	Approx. 48
			Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 27	Approx. 58
			Normal	Approx. 5	Approx. 44	Approx. 92
VGA (640 ×480) 640 dots wide × 480 dots high	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 27	Approx. 58
			Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 126	Approx. 264
			Normal	Approx. 32	Approx. 221	Approx. 462
CIF (352 ×288) 352 dots wide ×288 dots high (default setting)	○	○	Super Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 27	Approx. 58
			Fine	Approx. 32	Approx. 221	Approx. 462
			Normal	Approx. 45	Approx. 295	Approx. 616
Screen (240 ×345) 240 dots wide × 345 dots high	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 126	Approx. 264
			Fine	Approx. 32	Approx. 221	Approx. 462
			Normal	Approx. 45	Approx. 295	Approx. 616
Stand-by (240 ×320) 240 dots wide ×320 dots high	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 126	Approx. 264
			Fine	Approx. 32	Approx. 221	Approx. 462
			Normal	Approx. 45	Approx. 275	Approx. 616
Mail(L) (176 ×144) 176 dots wide ×144 dots high	○	○	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 126	Approx. 264
			Fine	Approx. 90	Approx. 442	Approx. 922
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 877	Approx. 1830
Mail(S) (128 ×96) 128 dots wide ×96 dots high	○	○	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 126	Approx. 264
			Fine	Approx. 90	Approx. 442	Approx. 922
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 877	Approx. 1830

Movie photography

- The FOMA terminal offers the following camera modes for shooting movies:
 Movie mode : Use this mode for movies. You can also shoot video only or sound only in this mode.
 Chance capture : Use this mode to avoid missing important scenes.
 Picture voice : Use this mode to make movies consisting of still images with voiceover. You can shoot such movies either by shooting new still images or by using saved images.
- The zoom can be adjusted from 1× to approx. 5× in 8 steps on the rear camera. The front camera zoom can be adjusted from 1× to approx. 2× in 2 steps.
- You can also use the camera's light to take indoor photos or in other situations where there is insufficient natural light.
- The FOMA terminal offers a range of photography modes for different types of subject, such as portrait shots or scenery.
- Selecting the macro lens allows you to take focused close-up shots.
- You can shoot pictures for a long time directly saving movies in the miniSD memory card.
- You can send your movies as attachments with i-mode mail.
- You can also trim individual frames off your movies as still images and send them as attachments with i-mode mail.

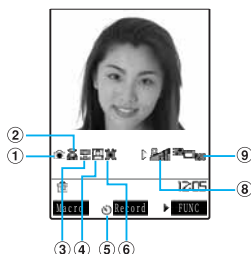
Movie sizes and numbers of movies stored

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 100 movies. However, depending on the image format or the number of i-motion downloaded, it may not be possible to store the maximum of 100 movies.
- At the time of purchase, the default movie length is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies depending on factors such as the type of subject and the amount of data involved.
- Because the amount of data stored varies according to the movie shooting time, the storage limit also changes.
- The table below shows the approximate movie storage limits and shooting times.

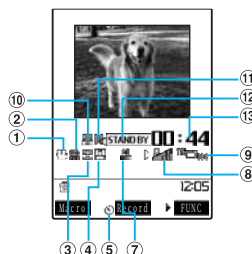
Format	File size setting	Movie type set	Storage limit		
			FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
				16 MB	32MB
Large (176 × 144) 176 dots wide × 144 dots high	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	—	Approx. 1*	Approx. 1*
		Video	—	Approx. 1*	Approx. 2*
		Voice	—	Approx. 2*	Approx. 5*
Small (128 × 96) 128 dots wide × 96 dots high	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	—	Approx. 1*	Approx. 2*
		Video	—	Approx. 1*	Approx. 2*
		Voice	—	Approx. 2*	Approx. 5*

*: Shows the approximate number of movies when the total available shooting time (approx. 60 minutes) is used.

Photo mode shooting display



Movie mode shooting display



Function	Icon	Description	Reference Page
① CHG camera-mode		Photo mode	Photo mode is set.
		Continuous mode	Continuous shooting mode is set.
		Movie mode	Movie mode is set.
		Chance capture	Chance capture mode is set.
		Picture voice	Picture voice mode is set.
② Storage setting/ File size setting		Super Fine	P h o t o m o d e Saved as a large-sized file when saving shot images.
		Fine	Saved as a medium-sized file when saving shot images.
		Normal	Saved as a small-sized file when saving shot images.
		Restricted(Short)	M o v i e m o d e Shows that you can shoot up to 290KB.
		Restricted(Long)	Shows that you can shoot up to 490KB.
		Local playback	Shows that you can shoot up to 800KB.
		Long time	Shows that you can shoot for a long time.
③ White balance		Auto	Automatically compensates the color balance.
		Fine	For shooting images outside on a sunny day.
		Cloudy	For shooting images outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
		Light bulb	For shooting images using an incandescent light.
		Fluorescent	For shooting images using a fluorescent light.
④ Photo mode		Portrait	For shooting images of people.
		Scenery	For shooting images of scenery.
		Close-up	For shooting images close up with the macro lens.
		Night mode	For shooting night scenery.
⑤ Auto timer/Number		Auto timer	Shows that the auto-timer is set.
		Shot number	Shows the number of continuous images (manual shooting) shot.
⑥ Image quality		Auto correction	When automatic compensation of image quality is "ON".
⑦ Brightness*			Shows the image brightness (-2/-1/+0/+1/+2).

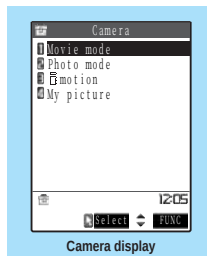
Function	Icon	Description		Reference Page
⑧ Zoom		Shows the zoom settings.		P. 183
⑨ Select size	 1M	Photo mode	1M (1160×870) is set.	P. 162
	 VGA		VGA (640×480) is set.	
	 CIF		CIF (352×288) is set.	
	 Screen		Screen (240×345) is set.	
	 Stand-by		Stand-by (240×320) is set.	
	 Mail(L)		Large mail (176×144) is set.	
	 Mail(S)	Small mail (128×96) is set.	P. 163	
	 Large	Large size (176×144) is set.		
	 Small	Small size (128×96) is set.		
⑩ Storage setting	 Normal	Shoots movies with a standard image quality.		P. 178
	 Fine mode	Shoots movies with image quality as top priority.		
	 Long dur. mode	Shoots movies with movie length as top priority.		
	 Move mode	Shoots movies with movement as top priority.		
⑪ Movie type set	 Normal	Shoots movie with both image and sound.		P. 178
	 Video	Shoots movie with image only.		
	 Voice	Shoots movie with sound only.		
⑫ Shooting status	 Recording	Shows that movie shooting is in progress.		P. 175
	 Stand-by	Shows that movie shooting is in standby mode.		
⑬ Remaining photography time		Shows the remaining time (in minutes and seconds) of a movie.		

Shooting Still Images

Use this procedure to take pictures with the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.

- You can save your images directly onto a miniSD memory card.
- You can also have the FOMA terminal automatically save your images after you shoot them by selecting the save destination folder beforehand.

- 1 Use  and then press .**
The "Camera display" appears.



Camera display

- 2 Press  "Photo mode".**
The "Photo mode display" appears.
See "Changing the Photography Settings" → P. 183



Photo mode display

- 3 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press  or .**
The "Image checking display" appears.

■ To retake the shot

Press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .

- 4 Press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select .**
"Phone" or  "miniSD".

■ When "Phone" is selected as the save destination

Select the save destination folder.

■ When "miniSD" is selected as the save destination

Images are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 408).



Image checking display

Note

- Follow the procedure below to display Photo mode display.
• Press Select and press Press "Camera" Press "Photo mode".
- When you shoot a still image, the image after pressing is captured. Hold the FOMA terminal firmly not to move until the capture is completed and the confirmation screen appears.
- The image quality may be poorer in some image formats. When images are shot in the Mail(L) (176 x 144) or Mail(S) (128 x 96) format with "Fit in display" selected in the Display screen size setting, the images are shown enlarged in the image checking display and may appear coarse as a result.
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while data is being saved to the card as this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- When the battery level is low, the FOMA terminal may be unable to save photographed images.
- While you are storing a file, take care not to turn off the power supply or remove the battery pack. Otherwise, the file may be stored incorrectly.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card, remove the miniSD memory card or use the FOMA terminal as miniSD reader/writer, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. When you create or edit a folder in the miniSD memory card using a PC and the like, the save destination folder may be changed. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 408).
- The call alert indicator flashes red during shooting, and turns green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the Camera display

In the camera display...

➔ P. 166

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Camera display function menu

1 Add desktop icon	➔ Select "YES" and press .
See "Using Desktop Icons" ➔ P. 135	

Using the function menu in the Photo mode display

In the camera display...

➔ P. 166

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

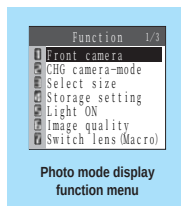


Photo mode display function menu 1/3

1 Front camera ¹	Switches the front camera and rear camera. The camera can be switched only when "Select size" is set to "CIF (352 × 288)", "Mail (L) (176 × 144)" or "Mail (S) (128 × 96)".	
2 CHG camera-mode	➔ Choose from the following options: Changes the camera mode.	
	1 Movie mode	Used for shooting movies. See "Shooting Movies" ➔ P. 175
	2 Chance capture	See "Capturing important scenes" ➔ P. 181
	3 Picture voice	See "Adding voiceover to images" ➔ P. 182
	4 Photo mode	Used for shooting still images. See "Shooting Still Images" ➔ P. 166
	5 Continuous mode	Used for shooting a rapid series of consecutive still images. See "Continuous shooting" ➔ P. 170
	6 Access reader	Starts up the access reader. See "Scanning Text" ➔ P. 189
3 Select size	7 Bar code reader	See "Using the Bar Code Reader" ➔ P. 185
	Sets the format (image size). See Image sizes (formats) ➔ P. 162	

④ Storage setting	See "Setting the file size during saving" → P. 169												
⑤ Light ON*2	Turns on and off a light. This operation is impossible if you have selected the front camera.												
⑥ Image quality	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the quality of images. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Auto correction (Default: ① ON)</td><td> ▶ Select (1) "ON" or (2) "OFF". If you select "ON", shot images are automatically adjusted to the highest image quality. Selecting "OFF" allows you to adjust the brightness or set the white balance. </td></tr> <tr> <td>② Brightness</td><td> ▶ Use to adjust the brightness and then press . The brightness of shot images can be adjusted through 5 levels (-2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is adjusted automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on. The brightness cannot be adjusted when "Auto correction" is set to "ON". </td></tr> <tr> <td>③ White balance</td><td> See "Setting the white balance" → P. 179 The white balance cannot be adjusted when "Auto correction" is set to "ON". </td></tr> <tr> <td>④ Color mode set</td><td>See "Setting effects in photographed images" → P. 179</td></tr> <tr> <td>⑤ Photo mode</td><td>See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" → P. 179</td></tr> <tr> <td>⑥ Image tuning</td><td> See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" → P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera. </td></tr> </table>	① Auto correction (Default: ① ON)	▶ Select (1) "ON" or (2) "OFF". If you select "ON", shot images are automatically adjusted to the highest image quality. Selecting "OFF" allows you to adjust the brightness or set the white balance.	② Brightness	▶ Use to adjust the brightness and then press . The brightness of shot images can be adjusted through 5 levels (-2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is adjusted automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on. The brightness cannot be adjusted when "Auto correction" is set to "ON".	③ White balance	See "Setting the white balance" → P. 179 The white balance cannot be adjusted when "Auto correction" is set to "ON".	④ Color mode set	See "Setting effects in photographed images" → P. 179	⑤ Photo mode	See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" → P. 179	⑥ Image tuning	See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" → P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera.
① Auto correction (Default: ① ON)	▶ Select (1) "ON" or (2) "OFF". If you select "ON", shot images are automatically adjusted to the highest image quality. Selecting "OFF" allows you to adjust the brightness or set the white balance.												
② Brightness	▶ Use to adjust the brightness and then press . The brightness of shot images can be adjusted through 5 levels (-2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is adjusted automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on. The brightness cannot be adjusted when "Auto correction" is set to "ON".												
③ White balance	See "Setting the white balance" → P. 179 The white balance cannot be adjusted when "Auto correction" is set to "ON".												
④ Color mode set	See "Setting effects in photographed images" → P. 179												
⑤ Photo mode	See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" → P. 179												
⑥ Image tuning	See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" → P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera.												
⑦ Switch lens (Macro)*3	Switches the lens to Auto or Macro. This operation is impossible if you have selected the front camera.												

*1 : If you have selected the Front camera, "Rear camera" is displayed. The default setting is the Rear camera.

*2 : When the light is lit, "Light OFF" is displayed.

*3 : When you use a macro lens, "Switch lens (Auto)" is displayed. When starting a camera, "Auto" is displayed.

Photo mode display function menu 2/3

① Auto timer	See "Using the Auto timer" → P. 184				
② Select frame	See "Shooting framed images" → P. 174				
③ Auto save set	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the method used for saving shot images. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td> ▶ Press (1) "Phone" or (2) "miniSD". Sets the FOMA terminal to automatically save shot images. If you select "Phone", images are saved in the Camera folder in My picture in the Data box. If you select "miniSD", images are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 408). </td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF (default setting)</td><td>Cancels automatic saving.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	▶ Press (1) "Phone" or (2) "miniSD". Sets the FOMA terminal to automatically save shot images. If you select "Phone", images are saved in the Camera folder in My picture in the Data box. If you select "miniSD", images are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 408).	② OFF (default setting)	Cancels automatic saving.
① ON	▶ Press (1) "Phone" or (2) "miniSD". Sets the FOMA terminal to automatically save shot images. If you select "Phone", images are saved in the Camera folder in My picture in the Data box. If you select "miniSD", images are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 408).				
② OFF (default setting)	Cancels automatic saving.				
④ File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> </table>	① File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	② File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
① File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
② File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
⑤ Display size	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the display mode for images smaller than Stand-by size (240 × 320). This option can only be set when the image format is Mail(L) (176 × 144) or Mail(S) (128 × 96). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>① Actual size (default setting)</td><td>Displays the image at its actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the image to fit the display.</td></tr> </table>	① Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.	② Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
① Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.				
② Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.				
⑥ Memory info	▶ Check the available size and press . Use this option to check the amount of saved data and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.				
⑦ Interval/Number	See "Setting the shooting interval and number of shots" → P. 171				

Still image shooting screen function menu 3/3

① Shutter sound (Default setting: ① Sound 1)	▶ Select (1) "Sound 1", (2) "Sound 2" or (3) "Sound 3". Sets the shutter sound.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Note

<Switch lens>

- When "Auto" is selected, the exposure is adjusted appropriately by switching the diaphragm (distant view/close view) automatically.

<File restriction>

- You can also change the file restriction setting after saving the image.

<Shutter sound>

- The shutter sound does not sound when the phone is in manner mode.

Setting the file size during saving

In the photo mode display function menu...

→ P. 167

1 Press "Storage setting" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Format	1M (1160 × 870)	VGA (640×480)	CIF (352×288)	Screen (240×345) Stand-by (240×320)	Mail(L) (176×144) Mail(S) (128×96)
Storage Setting					
1 Super Fine	Max. 595 KB	Max. 495 KB	Max. 495 KB	Max. 95 KB	Max. 95 KB
2 Fine (default setting)	Max. 495 KB	Max. 95 KB	Max. 50 KB	Max. 50 KB	Max. 15 KB
3 Normal	Max. 300 KB	Max. 50 KB	Max. 35 KB	Max. 35 KB	Max. 9,000 bytes

* The sizes listed above are for images sent as mail. After you save the image, the size increases up to 5 KB from above sizes.

Using the function menu in the Image checking display

In the image checking display...

→ P. 166

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Image checking display function menu 1/2

1 Save	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
2 Mirror save	▶ Select "YES" and press  Saves the image mirrored (inverted left-right).
3 Compose message	"Composing a message with an Image attached" → P. 175
4 Edit image	▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press  "Phone" or  "miniSD" ▶ If you selected "Phone", select a folder and press  ▶ Edit the image. Adds a frame or other effect to the image. See "Editing Images" → P. 359 Images in formats of 1M (1160 × 870) or VGA (640 × 480) cannot be edited.
5 Set as display	■ To set the stand-by, sending calls, or incoming calls display or something ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press  "Phone" ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select a display and press . ■ To set video-phone displays (except for sending video-phone calls and incoming video-phone calls) ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press  "Phone" ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select a display and press  ▶ Select an image and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press . Sets a shot image in the stand-by or other display. If the image format is 1M (1160 × 870) or the file size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288) that is larger than 100K bytes, you cannot attach them.

 Change frame	See "Changing the frame" → P. 174
 Mirror display*1	Switches the image from mirror display to normal displays.

*1 : If you have selected the Mirror display, " Normal display" is displayed.

Images shot using the front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" allows you to view the image as it was actually shot.

Image checking display function menu 2/2

 Display size	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the display mode for images smaller than Stand-by size (240 ×320). This option can only be set when the image format is Mail(L) (176 ×144) or Mail(S) (128 ×96). <table> <tr> <td> Actual size (default setting)</td><td>Displays the image at its actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the image to fit the display.</td></tr> </table>	 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.	 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.				
 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.				
 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions. <table> <tr> <td> File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td> File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.</td></tr> </table>	 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.	 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.
 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.				
 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.				
 Cancel	▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes the shot image and retakes the shot.				

Note

<Compose message>

- You can also compose an i-mode mail message with a shot image attached by pressing  ( MAIL) in image checking display.

<Edit image>

- Selecting "Edit image" changes the image display for photos taken with the built-in camera to normal display.
- If the image size is 1M (1160×870) or VGA (640×480), you cannot edit the photos.

<File restriction>

- You can also change the file restriction setting after a file is saved.

Continuous shooting <Continuous mode>

Default setting	Continuous mode: Auto Format setting: CIF (352×288) Interval: 0.5 seconds Number: 4

Continuous mode allows you to shoot a series of up to 20 rapid consecutive still images. You can use continuous shooting in either Auto or Manual mode.

- In Auto mode, once you set the number of images to be shot and the interval between shots, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots the remaining number of images at the specified interval.
- In Manual mode, the FOMA terminal takes the specified number of shots each time you press the shutter release key.
- Images can be shot in the CIF (352 ×288), Screen (240 ×345), Stand-by (240 ×320), Mail(L) (176 ×144) and Mail(S) (128 ×96) formats.
- Images shot in Continuous mode can also be stored as an original animation and made into an animated cartoon.
- You can have the FOMA terminal automatically save images shot in Continuous mode by setting the save destination folder beforehand.
- Folding the FOMA terminal or opening and closing slowly during shooting terminates continuous shooting.

In the photo mode display function menu...

➡ P. 167

 Press  "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press  "Continuous mode" ▶ Press  "Auto" or  "Manual".

2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press or ().

The "Continuous shooting checking display" appears and 4 images are listed on the display.

■ To stop the continuous shooting

Fold the FOMA terminal.

The shooting terminates and the continuous shooting confirmation screen appears.

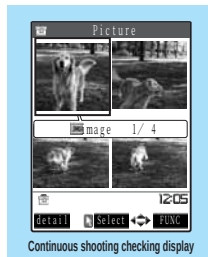
■ To select images for saving

Use  to select an image and then press .

A check () appears next to selected images.

Repeat this step to select images.

To deselect a selected image, select the image to be deselected and press .



Continuous shooting checking display

■ To check images in detail

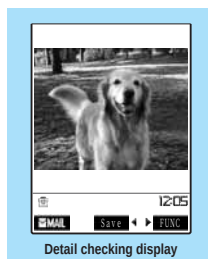
Use  to select an image and press  (detail).

Use  to check another image.

Press  to return to the list display.

■ To save details of a still image

Press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press  "Phone" or  "miniSD" ▶ When selecting "Phone", select a folder and then press .



Detail checking display

3 Select the save method.

See "Using the function menu in the Continuous shooting checking display" → P. 172

Note

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message is shown on the display.
- When CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image format, the number of shots is automatically fixed at 4 and cannot be changed.
- If the following occurs during the continuous shooting, the shooting terminates and the continuous shooting checking display appears.
 - The FOMA terminal has been folded or it has been opened or closed slowly.
 -  has been pressed. (during manual shooting)
 - There has been an incoming voice call. (An incoming call screen appears.)
 -  has been pressed. (A task menu appears.)
 -  has been pressed. (A main menu or original menu appears.)
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while data is being saved to the card. This could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- When the battery level is low, the FOMA terminal may be unable to save shot images.
- While you are storing a file, take care not to turn off the power supply or remove the battery pack. Otherwise, the file may be stored incorrectly.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card, remove or insert the miniSD memory card, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. Using a PC to create or edit folders on the miniSD memory card may also change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 408).
- The call alert indicator flashes red during manual shooting and glows red during automatic shooting. The call alert indicator glows green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

In the photo mode display function menu...

➔ P. 167

1 Press ▶ Press "Interval/Number" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Default settings are "Interval: 0.5 seconds, Number: 5" for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail(L) (176 × 144) and Mail(s) (128 × 96) formats.

① Shot interval	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the shooting interval. This cannot be set in Manual mode.	
	① 0.5 seconds	Shoots images at 0.5-second intervals.
	② 1.0 seconds	Shoots images at 1-second intervals.
	③ 2.0 seconds	Shoots images at 2-seconds intervals.
② Shot number	▶ Enter the number of images to be shot (2 digits). Enter a 2-digit number between "05" and "20" (5 to 20 images). The default setting is 5. The number changes according to the image format. When you enter a 2-digit number, the number of shots is set automatically. To set the number shown, simply press  .	

2 After completing the settings, press .

Note

- If you select a format other than CIF (352 × 288) when the image size is set to CIF (352 × 288), the number setting changes to 5.
If you select the CIF (352 × 288) format when the number of shots is set to 5, the number setting changes to 4.
If you select the Screen (240 × 345) format or the Stand-by (240 × 320) format when the number of shots is set to 11 or more, the number setting changes to 10.

Using the function menu in the Continuous shooting checking display

In the continuous shooting checking display...

➡ P. 171

1 Press ▶ Choose from the following options:

Continuous shooting checking display function menu 1/2

① Store selection	▶ Choose from the following options: Saves the selected still image.	
	① Save (default setting)	▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select  "Phone" or 
	② Mirror save	"miniSD" ▶ If you selected "Phone", Select a folder and press  .
② Store all	▶ Choose from the following options: Saves the all shot images.	
	① Save (default setting)	▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select  "Phone" or 
	② Mirror save	"miniSD" ▶ If you selected "Phone", Select a folder and press  .
③ Store all & anime	▶ Choose from the following options: Saves the all shot images and register them to anime	
	① Save (default setting)	▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select  "Phone" ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select the number of anime and press  .
	② Mirror save	
④ Select this	Selects the current image.	
⑤ Select all	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Selects all the images.	
⑥ Release this	Deselects the selected images.	
⑦ Release all	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deselects all the selected images.	

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Continuous shooting checking display function menu 2/2

1 Mirror display*¹	Switches the image in checking display from mirror display to normal displays.				
2 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets restrictions on the currently selected shot image files. <table> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.				
3 Restriction all	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets restrictions on all the photographed image files. <table> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.				
4 Cancel	▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes all the shot images and retakes the shots.				

*1 : When you have selected the Mirror display, "1 Normal display" is displayed.

The images shot using the front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" allows you to view the image as it was actually shot.

Note

<Store all & anime>

- You cannot select "Store all & anime" when only 1 image has been shot or when 1 or more of the shot images has already been saved.
- You cannot save the images in the miniSD memory card.

<File restriction> <Restriction all>

- You can also change the file restriction setting after a file is saved.

Using the function menu in the Detail checking display

In the detail checking display...

➔ P. 171

1

Press  (FUNC) ▶ **Choose from the following options:**

Detail checking display function menu

1 Save	Saves the displayed image.				
2 Mirror save	Saves the displayed image mirrored (inverted left-right).				
3 Compose message	"Composing a message with an image attached" → P. 175				
4 Mirror display*¹	Switches the image in checking display from the mirror display to the normal display.				
5 Display size	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the display mode for images smaller than Stand-by size (240 × 320). This option can only be set when the image format is Mail(L) (176 × 144) or Mail(S) (128 × 96). <table> <tr> <td>1 Actual size (default setting)</td><td>Displays the image at its actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the image to fit the display.</td></tr> </table>	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.				
2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.				
6 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions. <table> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				

*1 : When you have set Mirror display, "4 Normal display" is displayed.

The images shot using the front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" allows you to view the image as it was actually shot.

Note

<Compose message>

- You can also compose an i-mode mail message with a shot image attached by pressing in Detail checking display.

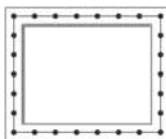
Shooting framed images <Framed photography>

This function allows you to add decorative frames to images in the CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail(L) (176 × 144) and Mail(S) (128 × 96) formats.

- You can use either the frames pre-installed on the FOMA terminal or downloaded frames.
- You can download frames from the site. → P. 206
- The 4 frames shown below are pre-installed.



Mickey & Minnie's Date



Smart



Bubble



Country

In the photo mode display function menu...

➔ P. 167

- 1 Press ▶ Press "Select frame" ▶ Select a frame and press .
- To cancel framed photography
Select "OFF" and press .

- 2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press or ().

- 3 Use the procedure described in "Shooting Still Images" (P. 166) to check and save the photographed image.

You can change the frame before storing the photographed image. → P. 174

Note

- In the frame selection display, you can press (Play) to check the selected frame.
- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message is shown on the display.
- Framed shots taken using the front camera are displayed mirrored. When the images are saved, they are automatically saved as normal images. In this case, the frame is also inverted left-right.
- The frame size that is different from the image size to be shot cannot be selected.
- The frame is removed when you quit the Camera function.

Changing the frame

You can change frames before saving them.

In the image checking display function menu...

➔ P. 169

- 1 Press "Change frame" ▶ Select a frame and press .

You cannot deselect the frame.

- 2 Check the reframed image and then press .

The Image Checking display reappears.

■ To cancel a selected frame

Press (Cancel).

Note

- You can also set or cancel a frame by pressing (FUNC) in the new frame checking display, selecting "Set" or "Cancel" and pressing .

● Composing a message with an image attached

If you have selected "Compose message" from the function menu for an image format of Screen (240 ×345) or larger, use this procedure to choose whether to send the image at its current size or resize the image. If the image is Stand-by (240 ×320) or smaller, the Compose message display appears without the size selection display appearing first.

<Example: When "Compose message" is selected in the Image checking display>

In the Image checking display function menu...

➡ P. 169

1 Press "Compose message" ▶ Choose from the following options:

 Attach mail	Sends the photographed image at its current size without resizing it first.
 QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or less while retaining the image's aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.

2 Compose the message.

For more information on composing and sending i-mode mail → P. 247

Note

- When a large image (a still image between 10,001 bytes and 500 KB in size) is attached to i-mode mail, the image to be sent is saved in the Camera folder in My picture.
- Images with file sizes larger than 10,000 bytes are deemed to be large images. When a large image is sent to the FOMA terminal, it is converted to an appropriate size for reception by i-mode terminals at the i-shot Center.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situation when there are already 20 draft messages.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use this procedure to shoot movies with sound using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.

- Folding the FOMA terminal or opening and closing slowly during shooting terminates Movie mode.
- If File size setting is set to "Long time" you can save your images directly onto a miniSD memory card.
- The available shooting time varies according to the subject and shooting conditions.

1 Use , press ▶ Press "Movie mode".

The "Movie mode display" appears.

To change the settings during shooting → P. 183



2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press or ().



The FOMA terminal starts shooting.

You can adjust the zoom during shooting.

A guide to the remaining shooting time appears on the display.

3 Press or ().

Shooting ends and the "Movie checking display" appears.

If you have set File size setting to "Long time", the "Movie checking display" is not displayed. The movie is automatically saved to the miniSD memory card and shooting ends.

■ To play back the movie you shot for checking

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  (Play).

■ To reshoot the movie

Press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .



4 Press ▶ Select "YES" and press ▶ Edit the title and press .

5 Select "Phone" or "miniSD".

■ When "Phone" is selected as the save destination

Select the save destination folder.

■ When "miniSD" is selected as the save destination

The movie is saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 408).

Note

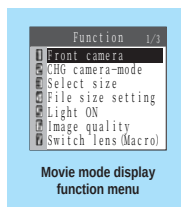
- You can also use the following procedure to view the Movie mode display:
 - Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  "Camera" ▶ Press  "Movie mode".
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while data is being saved to the card. This could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- If you operate a key during shooting, the operation sounds may be recorded.
- Shooting automatically stops and return to the movie checking display in the following situations:
 - When the available recording capacity is exceeded
 - When the specified file size setting is exceeded
 - When you receive a call during shooting (the incoming call display appears)
 - When the battery runs out of charge (Recharge battery display appears)
- When the battery level is low, the FOMA terminal may be unable to save shot images.
- While you are storing a file, take care not to turn off the power supply or remove the battery pack. Otherwise, the file may be stored incorrectly.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use Check miniSD, format the miniSD memory card, remove or insert the miniSD memory card, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. Using a PC to create or edit folders on the miniSD memory card may also change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 408).
- The call alert indicator flashes red during shooting. It turns green and remains lit while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot shoot a movie during a call.

Using the function menu in the Movie mode display

In the movie mode display...

➔ P. 175

1 Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Movie mode display function menu 1/3

1 Front camera^{*1}	Switches the front camera and rear camera.														
2 CHG camera-mode	➔ Choose from the following options: Changes the camera mode. <table> <tr> <td>1 Movie mode</td><td>Used for shooting movies. See "Shooting Movies" ➔ P. 175</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Chance capture</td><td>See "Capturing important scenes" ➔ P. 181</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Picture voice</td><td>See "Adding voiceover to images" ➔ P. 182</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 Photo mode</td><td>Used for shooting still images. See "Shooting Still Images" ➔ P. 166</td></tr> <tr> <td>5 Continuous mode</td><td>Used for shooting a rapid series of consecutive still images. See "Continuous shooting" ➔ P. 170</td></tr> <tr> <td>6 Access reader</td><td>Starts up the access reader. See "Scanning Text" ➔ P. 189</td></tr> <tr> <td>7 Bar code reader</td><td>See "Using the Bar Code Reader" ➔ P. 185</td></tr> </table>	1 Movie mode	Used for shooting movies. See "Shooting Movies" ➔ P. 175	2 Chance capture	See "Capturing important scenes" ➔ P. 181	3 Picture voice	See "Adding voiceover to images" ➔ P. 182	4 Photo mode	Used for shooting still images. See "Shooting Still Images" ➔ P. 166	5 Continuous mode	Used for shooting a rapid series of consecutive still images. See "Continuous shooting" ➔ P. 170	6 Access reader	Starts up the access reader. See "Scanning Text" ➔ P. 189	7 Bar code reader	See "Using the Bar Code Reader" ➔ P. 185
1 Movie mode	Used for shooting movies. See "Shooting Movies" ➔ P. 175														
2 Chance capture	See "Capturing important scenes" ➔ P. 181														
3 Picture voice	See "Adding voiceover to images" ➔ P. 182														
4 Photo mode	Used for shooting still images. See "Shooting Still Images" ➔ P. 166														
5 Continuous mode	Used for shooting a rapid series of consecutive still images. See "Continuous shooting" ➔ P. 170														
6 Access reader	Starts up the access reader. See "Scanning Text" ➔ P. 189														
7 Bar code reader	See "Using the Bar Code Reader" ➔ P. 185														
3 Select size	Sets the format (image size). About image size ➔ P. 163														
4 File size setting	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the file size for shooting. <table> <tr> <td>1 Restricted (Short)</td><td>Allows you to shoot movies up to 290 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a standard movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Restricted (Long)</td><td>Allows you to shoot movies up to 490 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a large movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Local playback</td><td>Allows you to shoot movies up to 800 KB in size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 Long time</td><td>Saves the movie onto a miniSD memory card while shooting.</td></tr> </table>	1 Restricted (Short)	Allows you to shoot movies up to 290 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a standard movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.	2 Restricted (Long)	Allows you to shoot movies up to 490 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a large movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.	3 Local playback	Allows you to shoot movies up to 800 KB in size.	4 Long time	Saves the movie onto a miniSD memory card while shooting.						
1 Restricted (Short)	Allows you to shoot movies up to 290 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a standard movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.														
2 Restricted (Long)	Allows you to shoot movies up to 490 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a large movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.														
3 Local playback	Allows you to shoot movies up to 800 KB in size.														
4 Long time	Saves the movie onto a miniSD memory card while shooting.														
5 Light ON^{*2}	Turns on and off a light. This operation is impossible if you have selected the front camera.														
6 Image quality	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the image quality for movies. <table> <tr> <td>1 Brightness</td><td> ➔ Use  to adjust the brightness and then press . The brightness of shot images can be adjusted through 5 levels (-2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is set automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on. </td></tr> <tr> <td>2 White balance</td><td>See "Setting the white balance" ➔ P. 179</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Color mode set</td><td>See "Setting effects in photographed images" ➔ P. 179</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 Photo mode</td><td>See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" ➔ P. 179</td></tr> <tr> <td>5 Image tuning</td><td>See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" ➔ P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera.</td></tr> </table>	1 Brightness	➔ Use  to adjust the brightness and then press . The brightness of shot images can be adjusted through 5 levels (-2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is set automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on.	2 White balance	See "Setting the white balance" ➔ P. 179	3 Color mode set	See "Setting effects in photographed images" ➔ P. 179	4 Photo mode	See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" ➔ P. 179	5 Image tuning	See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" ➔ P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera.				
1 Brightness	➔ Use  to adjust the brightness and then press . The brightness of shot images can be adjusted through 5 levels (-2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is set automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on.														
2 White balance	See "Setting the white balance" ➔ P. 179														
3 Color mode set	See "Setting effects in photographed images" ➔ P. 179														
4 Photo mode	See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" ➔ P. 179														
5 Image tuning	See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" ➔ P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera.														
7 Switch lens (Macro)^{*3}	Switches the lens to Macro or Standard. This operation is impossible if you have selected the front camera.														

*1 : If you have selected the Front camera, " Rear camera" is displayed. The default setting is the Rear camera.

*2 : When the light is lit, " Light OFF" is displayed.

*3 : When you use a macro lens, " Switch lens (STD)" is displayed. When starting a camera, "STD" is displayed.

Movie mode display function menu 2/3

1 Auto timer	See "Using the Auto timer" → P. 184	
2 Movie type set	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the movie shooting mode.	
	1 Normal (When launching Camera)	Shoots a movie with both image and sound.
	2 Video	Shoots a movie with image only.
	3 Voice	Shoots a movie with sound only.
3 Auto save set	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the method for saving your movies.	
	1 ON	▶ Select 1 "Phone" or 2 "miniSD". Sets the FOMA terminal to automatically save your movies. If you select "Phone", movies are saved in the Camera folder in i-motion in the Data box. If you select "miniSD", movies are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 408).
	2 OFF (default setting)	Cancels automatic saving.
4 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
5 Display size	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
6 Memory info	▶ Check the available size and press 9 CLR . Uses this option to check the amount of saved data and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
7 Storage setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image quality and shooting time.	
	1 Normal (Set to default settings)	Shoots with the normal quality and shooting time.
	2 Fine mode	Select if you want to shoot with higher quality. The shooting time is shorter than the normal time.
	3 Long dur. mode	Select this mode if you want to prolong the shooting duration. The quality is lower than that of the normal mode.
	4 Move mode	Select this mode if you want to shoot a moving object. The shooting time is shorter than that of the normal mode.

Movie mode display function menu 3/3

1 Shutter sound (Default setting: 1 Shutter sound 1)	▶ Select 1 "Sound 1", 2 "Sound 2" or 3 "Sound 3". Sets the shutter sound.

Note

<Auto save set>

- You cannot specify the Auto save set when "Long time" is selected in "File size setting".

<File restriction>

- You can also change the file restriction setting after a file is saved.
- When Long time is set for File size setting, it cannot be set.

<Shutter sound>

- No confirmation shutter sound is played when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode.

● Setting the white balance

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu...

➡ P. 167, 177

- 1** Press **[5 min]** “Image quality” ➡ Select “White balance” and press **[OK]** ➡ Choose from the following options:

1 Auto (default setting)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under normal shooting conditions. This may result in slightly reduced color intensity if colors in the image are distorted.
2 Fine	Because no color correction is performed, these settings produce better results and more vivid colors under the selected light source than the Auto setting.
3 Cloudy	
4 Light bulb	
5 Fluorescent	

● These settings are also applied to video-phone calls. ➡ P. 80

● Setting effects in photographed images

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu...

➡ P. 167, 177

- 1** Press **[5 min]** “Image quality” ➡ Select “Color mode set” and press **[OK]** ➡ Choose from the following options:

1 Normal (When launching camera)	Select this option for normal color photography.
2 Sepia	Select this option to shoot sepia-tone images.
3 Monochrome	Select this option to shoot monochrome (black and white) images.

● Selecting the right photography mode for the shot

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu...

➡ P. 167, 177

- 1** Press **[5 min]** “Image quality” ➡ Select “Photo mode” and press **[OK]** ➡ Choose from the following options:

1 Portrait (When launching camera)	This mode is best for shots of people, etc.
2 Scenery	This mode is best for shots of landscapes and other scenery. This mode cannot be set for the Front camera.
3 Close-up^{*1}	Uses this mode when you switch to Macro lens for close-up shots. This mode cannot be set for the Front camera.
4 Night mode^{*2}	This mode is best for shots in dark locations, such as night scenes.

*1 : Not displayed in Movie mode or Continuous mode.

*2 : Cannot be set in Movie mode or Continuous mode.

Note

- If camera shake occurs when you shoot in Night mode, select another mode.
- The Close-up mode cannot be set when a lens is set to Auto. If you change the lens to Macro on the Photo mode display, the photo mode will be switched to the Close-up mode. In Macro, the Night mode can be set other than the Close-up mode.
- The Portrait mode reappears if:
 - You have switched to the front camera in the Close-up mode.
 - You have switched the lens to Auto in the Close-up mode.
 - You have switched to the Movie mode in the Night mode.
 - You have switched to the Continuous mode in the Night mode.

● Suppressing flicker in photographed images

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu...

➔ P. 167, 177

- 1** Press  "Image quality" ➔ Select "Image tuning" and press  ➔ Choose from the following options:

1 Auto (default setting)	Flicker is suppressed automatically.
2 Mode 1 (50Hz)	Select this mode when shooting in regions where the power supply frequency is 50 Hz.
3 Mode 2 (60Hz)	Select this mode when shooting in regions where the power supply frequency is 60 Hz.

Using the function menu in the Movie checking display

In the movie checking display...

➔ P. 176

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Movie checking display function menu

1 Play	Plays a movie you have shot.				
2 Save	Saves a movie you have shot.				
3 Compose message	➔ Edit the title and press  ➔ Compose the i-mode mail message. Composes an i-mode mail message with the movie you have shot attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247 You cannot attach movies larger than 490 KB.				
4 Set as stand-by	➔ Select "YES" and press  ➔ Edit the title and press  ➔ Select  "Phone" ➔ Select a folder and press . Sets the movie you have shot as the stand-by display.				
5 Display size	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode. <table> <tr> <td>1 Actual size (default setting)</td><td>Displays the movie at its actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the movie to fit the display.</td></tr> </table>	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the movie at its actual size.	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the movie to fit the display.
1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the movie at its actual size.				
2 Fit in display	Enlarges the movie to fit the display.				
6 File restriction	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions. <table> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
7 Cancel	➔ Select "YES" and press . Deletes the movie you have shot for reshoot.				

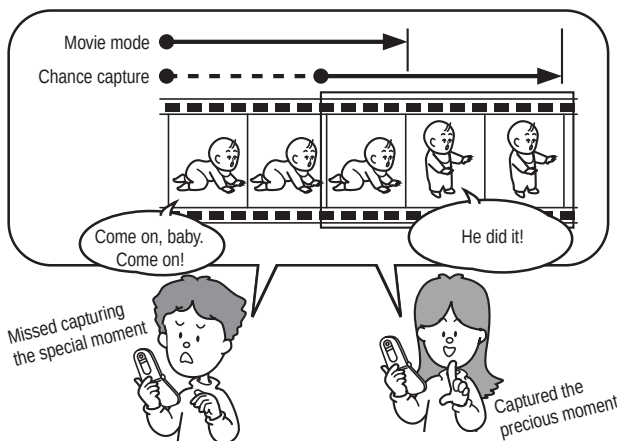
Note

<Compose message>

- The movie attached to an i-mode mail is saved to Camera folder in "i-motion".
- You can also compose an i-mode mail message with a movie you have shot attached by pressing  in the Movie checking display.

Capturing important scenes <Chance capture>

When you are using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot a movie, this function allows you to shoot additional scenes even when the available shooting time has been exceeded. This is extremely useful for capturing important scenes that you would otherwise miss.



- The FOMA terminal saves just the last part of the movie you shot, starting from the available shooting time (approx. 45 seconds in the default setting) prior to the time you stopped shooting. Footage you shot before that starting point is discarded.
- If you stop shooting before the available shooting time is exceeded, the entire movie from the start to the end of shooting is saved, as in "Movie mode".

In the photo/movie mode display function menu...

➔ P. 167, 177

1 Press **[2] [7P] [REC]** "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press **[2] [7P] [REC]** "Chance capture".

2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press **[O]** or **[D] ([CAM])**.



The FOMA terminal starts shooting the movie.

You can adjust the zoom during shooting.

Once you exceed the available shooting time, the remaining time counter reverts to "00:00" and starts flashing.

3 Press **[O]** or **[D] ([CAM])**.
Shooting ends.

4 Use the procedure described in "Shooting Movies" (P. 175) to check and save your movie.

Adding voiceover to images <Picture voice>

This function allows you to create movies by adding voice over to the still images in Mail(L) (176 ×144) or Mail(S) (128 ×96) format.

<Example: Taking pictures and adding voiceover>

In the photo/movie mode display function menu...

➔ P. 167, 177

1 Press **[2 REC]** "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press **[3 DEF]** "Picture voice".

2 Select **[1 AS]** "Photo mode" and press **[OK]** ▶ Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press **[OK]** or **[DOWN] (CAM)**.

The FOMA terminal shoots a still image.

About shooting still images ➔ P. 166

The "Recording start display" appears.

You can set file size including the recorded voice data by selecting "File size setting" before recording voice.

■ To add voiceover to images in My picture

Press **[2 REC]** "My picture" and press **[OK]** ▶ Select a folder and press **[OK]** ▶ Select an image and press **[OK]**.



3 Press **[OK]** (Record) or **[DOWN] (CAM)**.



Audio recording begins.

A guide to the remaining recording time appears on the display.

4 Press **[OK]** or **[DOWN] (CAM)**.

Audio recording stops.

5 Use the procedure described in "Shooting Movies" (P. 175) to check and save your movie.

Note

- You can also add voiceover to still images by pressing **[FUNC]** (FUNC) in the Photo mode display ▶ Press **[2 REC]** "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press **[3 DEF]** "Picture voice".

Using the function menu in the Recording start display

In the recording start display...

➔ P. 182

1 Press **[FUNC]** ▶ Choose from the following options:

Recording start display function menu

1 File size setting	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the file size for audio recording.	
	1 Restricted (Short) (when launching camera)	Allows you to record up to 290 KB in size. Select this option to send a standard movie as an i-mode mail attachment.
	2 Restricted (Long)	Allows you to record up to 490 KB in size. Select this option to send a large movie as an i-mode mail attachment.

Changing the Photography Settings

Use the procedures described in this section to specify settings such as the zoom, auto timer and the image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom (Tele/Wide) allows you to adjust the image being shot to the desired size.

- The zoom for shooting still images can be adjusted from 1× to approx. 5× in 8 steps on the rear camera. However, the maximum zooming magnification for 1M (1160 × 870) is approx. 2× and approx. 3.6 × for VGA (640 × 480). The front camera zoom can be adjusted from 1× to roughly 2× in 2 steps. Note that the zoom cannot be used with CIF (352 × 288).
- You can also adjust the zoom setting while shooting a movie.
- The FOMA terminal's zoom is digital.

In the photo/movie mode display...

➡ P. 166, 175

1

Use  to adjust the zoom.

 (Tele) : Zooms in by 1 step each time you press the key.

 (Wide) : Zooms out by 1 step each time you press the key.

Hold down  or  to zoom in or out continuously.

Note

- If you operate a key during shooting, the operation sounds may be recorded.
- The zoom is set to "1×" when the Camera function starts up and reverts to "1×" when you change camera mode.
- The image quality may change slightly if you adjust the zoom.

Using the light

When you are shooting in situations where there is insufficient light, such as indoors, you can use the FOMA terminal's light to make the subject brighter.

- If you turn on the light and do not take any pictures for around 30 seconds, the light automatically turns off.
- With the use of the function menu for the still shooting and movie shooting screens, you can turn on or off the light.

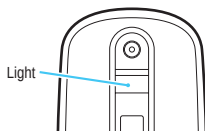
In the photo/movie mode display...

➡ P. 166, 175

1

Press .

To turn the light off, press .



Note

- You cannot turn on the light when shooting a movie with sound only.

Using the Auto timer

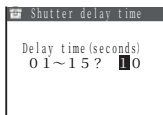
Setting the Auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding the FOMA terminal.

- The Auto timer can be used to shoot both still images and movies.
- Once you have taken the shot, the Auto timer setting reverts to "OFF" and has to be set again each time it is used.

In the photo/movie mode display function menu...

➡ P. 167, 177

- 1** Press ▶ Select "Auto timer" ▶ Press "ON" ▶ Enter the Auto timer delay (2 digits).



Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" as the Auto timer delay.

Once you enter a 2-digit number, the Auto timer is automatically set. To set the time shown, simply press .

The default setting is 10 seconds.

When you set the Auto timer

The icon appears on the display to indicate that the Auto timer is set.



When you press or (📷), the FOMA terminal emits the Auto timer startup tone and the timer starts running.

The and keys and the icon flash, and the Indicator display is changed.

Roughly 5 seconds before the shot, the countdown tone sounds and the call alert indicator and the and keys start flashing rapidly.

You can also take the shot manually while the Auto timer is running by pressing or (📷).

■ To cancel the Auto timer setting

In the Photo mode/Movie mode display function menu, press ▶ Press "Auto timer" ▶ Press "OFF".

■ To stop the timer while it is running

Press (Quit) or (CLR).

Note

- The Auto timer cannot be used when continuous shooting is set to Manual mode.
- The Auto timer turns "OFF" in the following situations:
 - When Auto timer shooting ends
 - When you switch from automatic to manual photography in continuous mode
 - When you exit the Camera function

Using the Bar Code Reader

The FOMA terminal can use its built-in camera to scan JAN codes and QR codes. The scanned data can then be used for displaying, copying and pasting text, it can be stored in the Phonebook or as a bookmark, or used in functions such as Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and i-α ppli To. You can even use the FOMA terminal's camera to scan images and melody files to play and save.

- The FOMA terminal can store up to 5 scanned codes.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during scanning. You can reduce shaking by holding the bottom of the FOMA terminal with your hand or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- It may be difficult to read in a dark place. If so, please turn the light on and perform the reading.
- For quicker and easier access to the bar code reader, add its desktop icon to the stand-by display.

■ JAN codes and QR codes



4942857113068

● What is a JAN code?

This is a bar code that uses vertical lines (bars) of varying thicknesses and spacings to represent numbers. The FOMA terminal can scan both 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* When the JAN code on the left is read with the FOMA terminal, "4942857113068" appears.



● What is a QR code?

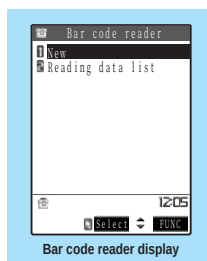
QR codes are a type of two-dimensional code that uses horizontal and vertical patterns to represent numbers, letters, kanji characters, kana characters and pictographs. Some QR codes handle images or melody data, and some QR codes are split among 2 or more QR codes.

* When the QR code on the left is read with the FOMA terminal, "株式会社 N T T ドコモ" appears.

Scanning codes

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "Bar code reader".

The "Bar code reader display" appears.



Bar code reader display

- 2 Press "New".

The "Bar code reader scanning display" appears.

- 3 Position the JAN code or QR code in the recognition field.



Bar code reader scanning display

The recognition field is arranged in , , and .

Focus the image and center the JAN code or QR code so that it falls entirely inside the recognition field.

Use the rear camera lens approximately more than 9 cm away from the barcode. If the lens is closer than this, it will be difficult to read. Adjust with the zoom when the barcode is small.

■ To adjust the zoom

- : Zooms in
- : Reverts to normal

■ To use the light

Press (ON) or (OFF).

To turn the light off, press (OFF) or .

4 Press ► Confirm the scanned data.

Scanning may take some time.

■ To cancel scanning

Press  ► Press .

■ To scan data split among multiple QR codes

Press  ► Repeat step 3 and 4.

It can scan multiple QR codes that have been divided in 16.

■ To discard the scanned data

Press  ► Select "YES" and press .

5 Press (FUNC) ► Press "Save" ► Select "YES" and press ► Press "OK" and .

Note

- The FOMA terminal cannot scan codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- If there is a character that cannot be displayed in the scanned data, it is converted to a space (blank).
- You cannot store JPEG-format images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or GIF-format images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot store progressive JPEG-format images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. For more information on progressive JPEG-format images → P. 221
- Depending on the condition of codes such as scratch, stain, damage, print quality, light reflection, or the QR code version, FOMA terminal may fail to recognize codes.
- If there are already 5 stored items of data when you press  "New", a confirmation message appears asking whether to replace the oldest existing entry. Select "YES" and press  to overwrite the oldest data with the downloaded data.
- If a voice call, a video-phone, the arrival of 64K data communication or the Alarm notifications such as an Alarm clock, a schedule or ToDo take place on the way to scan the divided multiple QR code data, the corresponding screens appear. When finishing these functions, a message appears to confirm whether or not you continue a scan. To continue it, select "YES" and then press . If you select "NO" and press , the scanned data is discarded and the "Bar code reader display" reappears.
- You can also start up the bar code reader from a text editing display. In this case, the scanned data is then entered in the text editing display.
- You cannot activate the Bar code reader when "PIM lock" is set.
- You may be unable to scan some sizes and types of bar code.
- You cannot save the downloaded data on a miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the Bar code reader display

In the bar code reader display...

➡ P. 185

1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Bar code reader display function menu

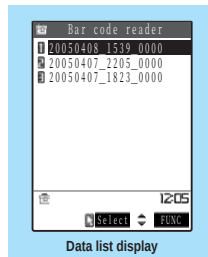
 Add desktop icon

► Select "YES" and press .

See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press ► Press "Bar code reader" ► Press "Reading data list".

The "Data list display" appears.



Data list display

- 2 Select the data and press .

The "Data details display" appears.

■ For the scanned data containing "Add to phonebook"

If you select "Add to phonebook" and press , the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address and memo can be stored in the phonebook at once. → P. 93

■ For the scanned data containing "Compose message"

If you select "Compose message" and press , an i-mode mail with the address, subject and message entered in the respective fields can be composed. → P. 247

■ For the scanned data containing "Add bookmark"

If you select "Add bookmark" and press , the URL and title name entered in the scanned fields can be added. → P. 216

■ For the scanned data containing "Start i-α ppli"

If you select "Start i-α ppli" and press , i-α ppli specified in the scanned data can be launched by using the i-α ppli To function. → P. 330

■ For the presence of icons for melodies

If you select a melody icon and press , the melody can be replayed. → P. 387

■ Other cases

If you select a phone number and press , you can make a call or video-phone call by using the Phone To/AV Phone To function. → P. 224

If you select an e-mail address and press , you can compose an i-mode mail by using Mail To function. → P. 225

When you select a URL and press , you can connect to the Web site for the URL. → P. 225



Data details display

Note

- The titles of downloaded data are as follows.

If the date and time has been set.

- Title: yyyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4 digits)

If the same date and time is set more than once, the 4 digits are listed in numerical order up to "9999".

If the date and time has not been set.

- Title: 00000000_0000_xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits)

The 4 digits are listed in numerical order up to "9999" and if "9999" is reached, they return to "0000".

- The playing volume for melody is the volume set for "Ring volume" for "Phone".

- Melody cannot be played during a call.

Using the function menu in the Scanned data list display

In the data list display...

➡ P. 187

- 1** Select scanned data and press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Scanned data list display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Enter a title and press  . Edits the selected title of the scanned data. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Result	Shows the scanned data details display.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  . About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Using the function menu in the Scanned data details display

In the data details display...

➡ P. 187

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Scanned data details display function menu 1/2

1 Save	Stores the scanned data.
2 Display list	Shows the scanned data list display. If the displayed data has not been saved, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the data.
3 Internet	If a URL is selected, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" → P. 225
4 Compose message	Selecting "Compose message" composes an i-mode mail message with the scanned data used in the addressee, subject and message fields. If the e-mail address is selected, an i-mode mail message is composed with the selected address used in the addressee field. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247
5 Dialing	If the phone number is selected, the FOMA terminal calls that number. See "Phone To function" → P. 224
6 Add to phonebook	Selecting "Add to phonebook" adds the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address and memo to the phonebook all at once. Selecting the phone number adds that phone number to the phonebook. If the e-mail address is selected, that address is added to the phonebook. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93 See "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P. 95
7 Add bookmark	Selecting "Add bookmark" adds the URL and title in the information to your list of bookmarks. If a URL is selected, that URL is added to your list of bookmarks. See "Adding bookmarks" → P. 216

Scanned data details display function menu 2/2

1 Save image	▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select an item and press  . The selected image is saved in My picture in Data box. If you do not want to set the image in the display, select "NO" after selecting the folder and press  .
2 Save melody	▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select an item and press  . The selected melody is saved in Melody in Data box. If you do not want to set the melody as a ring tone or other tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder and press  .
3 Start i-α ppli	Launches the i-α ppli specified in the data. See "Launching software from the Bar code reader" → P. 331
4 Copy	Copies text included in the scanned data. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541

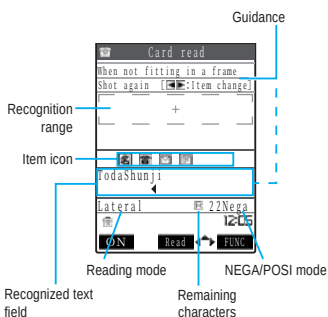
■ Limits on readable text

The number of characters that can be scanned varies according to the type of item being scanned, as shown below.

Scanned item		Maximum readable characters
Card read	Name	Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters
	TEL	Up to 26 half-pitch numbers Hash symbols (#), asterisks (*), plus symbols (+) and pauses (p) can be entered in text editing.
	E-mail	Up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
	Memo	Up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters
Compose message	Receiver	Up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
	Subject	Up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters
	Message	Up to 128 full-pitch or 256 half-pitch characters
URL		Up to 256 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
Mail address		Up to 256 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
Phone number		Up to 256 half-pitch numbers
Free memo		Up to 128 full-pitch or 256 half-pitch characters
Dictionary	Japanese	Up to 32 full-pitch or 64 half-pitch characters
	English	Up to 64 half-pitch characters

■ Guide to the scanner display

The illustration below shows how to read the information in the scanner display using Card read mode display as an example.

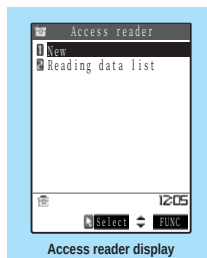


- Guidance : Shows the current operation.
- Recognition range : Shows the recognition area.
- Item icon : Shows the item being scanned.
- Card read mode: Name/Phone number/E-mail address/Memo.
Compose message mode: Receiver/Subject/Message
- Recognized text field : Shows the scanned text.
- Reading mode : Shows the recognition mode for scanning (Kanji (lateral writing or vertical writing)/Phone number/e-mail address/URL).
- Remaining characters : Shows the number of remaining half-pitch characters that can be scanned.
- NEGA/POSI mode : Shown when "Negative fix" is selected in the "NEGA/POSI mode" setting.

<Example: Scanning text in Card read mode>

- 1 Press  Select  and press  Press  Press  Press  "Access reader".

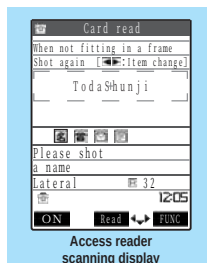
The "Access reader display" appears.



Access reader display

- 2 Press  "New".
The "Scanning mode selection display" appears.
See "About the Reading modes" → P. 189

- 3 Press  "Card read".
The "Access reader scanning display" appears.



Access reader scanning display

- 4 **Display the text in the recognition range.**

Focus the image and position the text so that the characters are entirely inside the recognition range.

If the text to be scanned will not all fit in the recognition range, read in multiple scans.

Use the rear camera lens approximately more than 9 cm away from characters. Note that it will be difficult to read if the lens is closer than this.

■ To adjust the zoom

: Changes from "Standard" to "Small".

: Changes from "Small" to "Standard".

■ To use the light

Press  (ON) or .

To turn the light off, press  (OFF) or .

5 Press .

The FOMA terminal scans the text and recognized text appears in red.

If the scanned text does not all fit in the display, press  or  (Home) and  (Memo/Check) to scroll the display and check the remaining text.

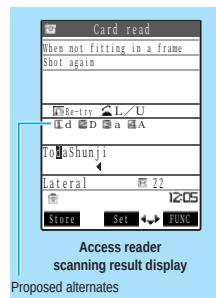
The scanned text can be corrected in either of the ways described below.

■ Selecting character to correct

Use  to move the cursor to the character to be corrected ▶ Press the number for the correct proposed character.

For characters that can be switched between upper and lower case, press

 to switch between upper case and lower case.



■ Correcting the text by editing

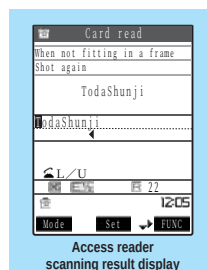
Press  (FUNC) ▶  "Edit" ▶ Edit the text and press .

Use this method to correct scanned text using ordinary text editing.

To return to proposed candidate selection, press  (FUNC) and then press

 "Select recog. data".

After completing the correcting, proceed to step 6.



6 Press .

The data is set as text.

■ To scan remaining text

Repeat steps 4 to 6.

When continuing, ensure that the last 2 characters in the last text scanned are included in the recognition area.

■ To scan another item

Use  to select the item to be scanned ▶ Repeat steps 4 to 6.

In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 e-mail addresses.

7 Press (Store).

The details display for the scanned text data appears. Press  (CLR) to return to the text data list display.

Note

- The FOMA terminal will scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic characters (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. Note that it cannot scan some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters.
- The FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. The FOMA terminal may also fail to recognize text in faxed or photocopied documents, text that is printed in decorative fonts or at irregular intervals, and text that does not stand out clearly from the background. Also, depending on conditions such as the ambient lighting, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize some characters correctly.
- If there are already 8 stored items when you select  "New", a confirmation message appears asking whether to replace the oldest existing entry. Select "YES" and press  to select and replace stored data.
- You can also start up the access reader from a text editing display. In this case, the scanned data is then entered in the text editing display.
- When the access reader is started up from the dictionary, select "Dic. (Japanese)" or "Dic. (English)" scanning mode.
- If you do not press any of the keys for 3 minutes or longer before starting to scan text, the access reader display reappears and if you do so after scanning, the text data details display appears.
- If you scan some text and then receive a voice or video-phone call or 64K data communication, or you are notified of an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm, or you use another FOMA terminal function before saving the scanned text data, the scanned text is briefly saved and then those displays appear. Later, when you have completed the operation, the text data details display reappears.

Using the function menu in the Access reader display

In the access reader display...

➡ P. 191

1 Press  (FUNC) ➡ Choose from the following options:

Access reader display function menu

1 Add desktop icon	➡ Select "YES" and press  .
See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135	

Using the function menu in the Access reader scanning display/Access reader scanning result display

In the access reader scanning/scanning result display...

➡ P. 191, 192

1 Press  (FUNC) ➡ Choose from the following options:

Access reader scanning display function menu 1/2

1 Edit	Edits the scanned text data. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
2 Store	Saves the scanned text data.	
3 Internet	For text data in URL mode, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" → P. 225	
4 Compose message	The following takes place according to the scanned mode. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	
	Scanned data in Compose message mode	An i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data all entered in the respective fields.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	An i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	An i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned text entered as the message.
5 Dialing	For text data in Phone number mode, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.	
6 Add to phonebook	The following takes place according to the scanned mode. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93 See "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P. 95	
	Scanned data in Card read mode	The scanned data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	The scanned e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Phone number mode	The scanned phone number is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	The scanned data is stored in the phonebook as a memo.
7 Add bookmark	For text data in URL mode, this option adds the scanned URL to your bookmarks. See "Adding bookmarks" → P. 216	

Access reader scanning display function menu 2/2

1 Search phonebook	Uses the scanned text data to search the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98 You cannot search when you are in Card read mode or Compose message mode.	
2 Add to memo	The following takes place according to the scanned mode. See "Composing a Text Memo" → P. 447	
	Scanned data in URL mode	The scanned URL is stored as a text memo.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	The scanned e-mail address is stored as a text memo.
	Scanned data in Phone number mode	The scanned phone number is stored as a text memo.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	The scanned data is stored as a text memo.

*1 : Access reader is started from the dictionary, items that you can select are "1 Dic.(Japanese)" and "2 Dic.(English)".
 *2 : If you have selected the Guidance OFF, "5 Guidance ON" is displayed.
 *3 : If you have selected the Vertical writing, "6 Lateral writing" is displayed.

- When you scan data in URL mode, the "http://" or "https://" prefix is added to the scanned text in the following situations:
 - If the scanned text does not include "://", "http://" is added to the beginning of the text. However, if the text begins with "r" or "l", the "r" or "l" is converted to "http://".
 - If the scanned text already includes "://", the "://" is converted to "http://". However, if the "://" is preceded by "s" (s://) or "S" (S://), the "://" is converted to "https://".

1 Press ► Select and press ► Press



Access reader

- 1 docomo taro. ABCabc@doco
- 2 http://www. ABCabc. co. j
- 3 03XXXXXXXX
- 4 090XXXXXXXX

12:05

MAIL Select FUNC

Reading data list display

The “Reading data details display” appears.

"Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, phone number, e-mail address and memo to the phonebook all at once. → P. 93, 95

"Compose message" : Composes an i-mode mail message with the address, subject and message entered in the respective fields. → P. 247

Selecting an item such as the phone number or e-mail address and pressing enables you to edit the respective data.



The screenshot shows the 'Access reader' interface. At the top, it says 'Access reader'. Below that, the title 'Add to phonebook' is highlighted. The contact details are as follows:

- Name: TodaShunji
- TEL: 03XXXXXXXX
- E-mail: docomo.taro.△Abc@docomo.ne.jp
- Memo: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

At the bottom, there is a 'Select' button with a dropdown arrow and a 'FUNC' button. The time '12:05' is displayed in the top right corner.

● In the Reading data details display, selecting an item and pressing enables you to edit the scanned data.

Using the function menu in the Reading data list display

In the Reading data list display...

➡ P. 194

- 1** Select the Reading data and press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Reading data list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit	You cannot edit the text in the list display.	
2 Internet	For text data in URL mode, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" → P. 225	
3 Compose message	The following takes place according to the scanned mode. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	
	Scanned data in Compose message mode	An i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data all entered in the respective fields.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	An i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	An i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned text entered as the message.
4 Dialing	For text data in Phone number mode, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.	
5 Add to phonebook	The following takes place according to the scanned mode. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93 See "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P. 95	
	Scanned data in Card read mode	The scanned data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	The scanned e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Phone number mode	The scanned phone number is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	The scanned data is stored in the phonebook as a memo.
6 Add bookmark	For text data in URL mode, this option adds the scanned URL to your bookmarks. See "Adding bookmarks" → P. 216	
7 Search phonebook	Uses the scanned text data to search the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98 For text data in Card read mode or Compose message mode, this option uses the displayed information to search the phonebook.	

Reading data list display function menu 2/2

1 Add to memo	Stores the selected text data as a text memo. See "Composing a Text Memo" → P. 447 Data cannot be stored in Card read mode or Compose message mode.
2 Display detail	Shows the Reading data details display.
3 Copy	Copies the text data. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541
4 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
5 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
About Your Security Codes → P. 142	

Using the function menu in the Reading data details display

In the Reading data details display...

➡ P. 194

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Reading data details display function menu 1/2

① Edit	Edits the text data for the selected option. See "Entering Text" → P. 522 The text cannot be edited when "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message" is selected.	
② Internet	For text data in URL mode, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" → P. 225	
③ Compose message	The following takes place according to the scanned mode and selecting items. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	
	Scanned data in Card read mode	When an e-mail address is selected, an i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed.
	Scanned data in Compose message mode	When "Compose message" is selected for data scanned, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data entered in the respective fields. When the recipient, subject or message body is selected, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data entered in the respective field.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	An i-mode mail message address to the scanned address is composed.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	An i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned text entered as the message.
④ Dialing	The following takes place according to the scanned mode and selecting item.	
	Scanned data in Card read mode	When a phone number is selected, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.
	Scanned data in Phone number mode	The FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.
⑤ Add to phonebook	The following takes place according to the scanned mode and selecting item. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93	
	Scanned data in Card read mode	When "Add to phonebook" is selected, the scanned data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook. When the name, phone number, e-mail address or a memo is selected, the selected data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Compose message mode	When an e-mail address is selected, the selected e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Mail address mode	The scanned e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Phone number mode	The scanned phone number is stored in the phonebook.
	Scanned data in Free memo mode	The scanned data is stored in the phonebook as a memo.
⑥ Add bookmark	For text data in URL mode, that URL is added to your list of bookmarks. See "Adding bookmarks" → P. 216	
⑦ Search phonebook	Uses the selected text data to search the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98 No search is conducted if "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message" is selected.	

Reading data details display function menu 2/2

① Add to memo	Stores the selected text data as a text memo. See "Composing a Text Memo" → P. 447 Data cannot be stored if "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message" is selected.
② Display list	Shows the Reading data list display.
③ Copy	Copies the selected text data. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541
④ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
⑤ Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<Dialing>

- The characters that can be used when making calls are half-pitch numbers and half-pitch symbols (#, *, , +). Other characters cannot be used to make calls.
- The video-phone image set for this function is only valid for the current call.
- An emergency call cannot be made by scanning "110" "119" "118".
- You cannot make calls while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is set.

i-mode

What is i-mode?	198
Displaying the i-mode Menu <i-mode menu>	204
 Viewing Sites	
Viewing a Site	206
Viewing and Using Sites	210
Adding My Menu Entries <My Menu>	213
Changing Your i-mode Password <Change i-mode Password>	213
Viewing Internet Websites <Connect to Internet>	214
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly <Bookmark>	215
Saving Site Content <Screen memo>	218
 Downloading Images and Melodies from Sites	
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages <Save image>	221
Downloading Melodies from Sites <i-melody>	221
Downloading "Chara-den" Characters from Sites	222
Downloading Data Files from Sites	223
 i-mode Utility Functions	
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions	
<Phone To/Mail To/Web To function>	224
 Specifying Your i-mode Settings	
Specifying Your i-mode Settings	226
 Using the Message Services	
When You Receive a Message <Receive message>	229
Checking for Messages <Check new message>	231
Viewing Messages in the Message Box <Message Request/Free>	232
 Using Certificates	
Using SSL Certificates	235
Setting FirstPass	235
Changing Your Certificate Host	237

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as Site (program) connection, Internet connection and i-mode mail.

■ Site (program) connection

You can use various online services such as the weather, the news, etc. that the IP (Information Provider) offers by selecting the Menu List on i-mode menu. Besides, you can download games and stand-by images to enjoy.

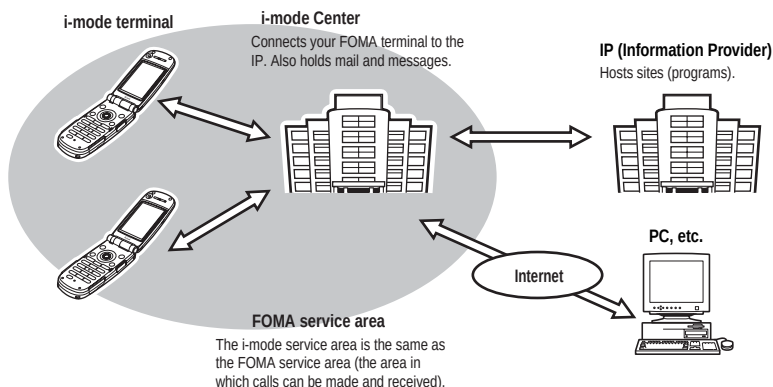
■ Internet connection

You can browse various i-mode compatible home pages by directly entering a home page address (URL) in the i-mode terminal.

■ i-mode mail

In addition to mutual interchange between i-mode terminals, you can send/receive e-mails up to 5,000 full-pitch characters per mail to/from anyone who has an Internet e-mail address. Besides, you can send/receive e-mails pleasantly such as Deco-mails, still images or movies.

Service Configuration



i-mode is a paid service to which you must subscribe. For information on subscribing to i-mode, refer to the back cover of the Manual.

Note

- New subscribers to FOMA services can access all the services as of the day of their subscription.
- If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to a FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" information used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this event, you will need to re-register. For information on which sites will maintain your "My Menu" data, refer to "お知らせ & ヘルプ (News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- The i-mode service charges are based on the amount of information (the number of packets) you send and receive. This Instruction Manual does not provide any specific information on the charges. For information on usage charges, refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.
- The i-mode service details are subject to change. Refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Site (program) connection

You can use simple key operations to connect to sites provided by IPs to use their various online services. For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve concert tickets, read news, use online dictionaries, or download ring tones.

● Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode Center, the iMenu display appears first. From this display, you can access a variety of other sites (programs) such as the “週刊iガイド (What's New!!)”.

See “Viewing a Site” → P. 206



The above is a screen image. The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on your settings.

Item	Description
① マイメニュー (My Menu)	By adding a frequently visited site to My Menu, you can make it easier and quicker to visit the site again next time (P. 213). Web sites to be charged in iMenu are registered automatically. Up to 45 items can be registered.
② 週刊iガイド (What's New)	This site provides information on new or recommended sites. Updated daily between Monday and Friday.
③ メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all the sites by category and area for your convenience. Select an interesting site and connect to it from here.
④ とくするメニュー (Tokusuru menu)	Interesting sales campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information are featured here. This information is updated weekly (Provided by: D2 Communications).
⑤ iエリア (i-area)	Provides quick access to information on the area you are currently in and its surroundings, including weather reports, maps and local facilities.
⑥ かんたん検索 (Simple search)	Using a keyword, for example, you can easily search for a website from categories such as “Games” and “Stand-by”. • i-α ppli search Introduces i-α ppli sites by categories, such as free sites and game sites. • Useful site search Introduces daily and useful sites from Menu List by purpose of use.
⑦ マイボックス (My Box)	A service aimed at members that provides quick access to pre-registered sites or stores that provide services.
⑧ オプション設定 (Options)	Set your i-mode mail preferences or i-mode password here.
⑨ お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)	Announcements from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and rules for using i-mode are available here.
■ 料金&お申込 (Fee & application)	Go here to check and pay your i-mode charges and to change or upgrade your subscription.
ENGLISH	Can be used to display the iMenu in English.

Note

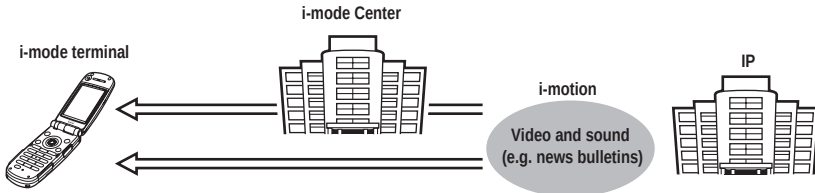
- The sent information “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers” is used by the IP to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.
- The sender's mobile phone information “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers” is sent to the IP via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender, are not disclosed to the IP, etc.
- You need to pay information charges with some websites, such as the charged i-mode site.
- You may have to subscribe separately to use some of the services provided by IPs.
- Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, no packet communication charges apply if you are not exchanging data with the i-mode Center.
- If you subscribe to the “Dual Network Service”, part of the iMenu display differs.

Other Features and Functions

i-motion

This service allows you to download videos and sounds to an i-mode terminal from i-mode sites and then view the video or set it in your stand-by display. → P. 336

- To download an i-motion → P. 336
- To play an i-motion → P. 336
- To set an i-motion for automatic replay → P. 338



You can download an i-motion using either packet communication via the i-mode Center or directly using digital communication.

Chaku-motion

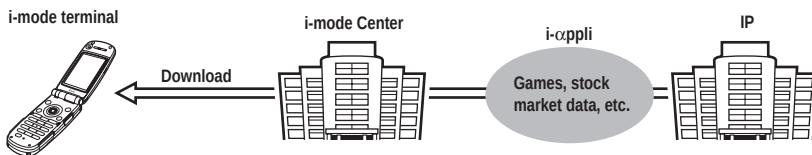
This allows you to download an i-motion to your i-mode terminal from an i-mode site and then set that i-motion as the ring tone played and image shown when you receive a call. You can use this to set not just a melody, but a song sung by your favorite artist, as your ring tone. (You cannot set some incompatible i-motion to Chaku-motion.)

- To set a Chaku-motion → P. 114

i-α ppli

By downloading an i-α ppli from websites, you can make your i-mode terminal even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal or download an i-α ppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There is also a mapping i-α ppli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth.

- To download an i-α ppli → P. 321
- To run an i-α ppli → P. 323
- To launch an i-α ppli automatically → P. 329



i-α ppli stand-by display

This function allows you to set an i-α ppli as your stand-by display, making it possible to receive mail and make calls directly from the stand-by display. This provides you with the means to set up an even easier-to-use stand-by display, with quick and easy access to the latest news and weather information, as well as allowing you to set your favorite characters for various mail and alarm notification functions.

- To set the i-α ppli stand-by display → P. 124, 332

i-α ppli DX

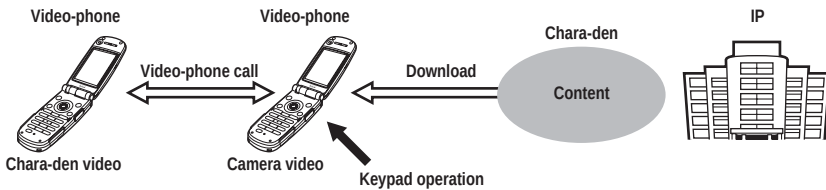
i-α ppli DX links up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mail, the Dialed/Received Calls record and phonebook data) to make i-α ppli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mail in your favorite cartoon character display, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking up with mail functions to provide real time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

- See "What is an i-α ppli DX?" → P. 320

■ Chara-den

When you are making or receiving a video-phone call and you do not want to send an image of yourself to the other party, "Chara-den" provides you with an alternative in the shape of a cartoon character. You can even make the "Chara-den" character's mouth move in time with sounds and control its movement using your phone's keypad. You can even download your favorite character, shoot it as a still image or movie file and set it in the stand-by display or send it as a mail attachment. (Note that you cannot send an image or movie file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it to phones other than FOMA terminals.)

- To download a Chara-den character → P. 222
- To display a Chara-den character → P. 380
- To set a Chara-den character → P. 382, 383
- To control a Chara-den character → P. 381
- To record a Chara-den character → P. 384

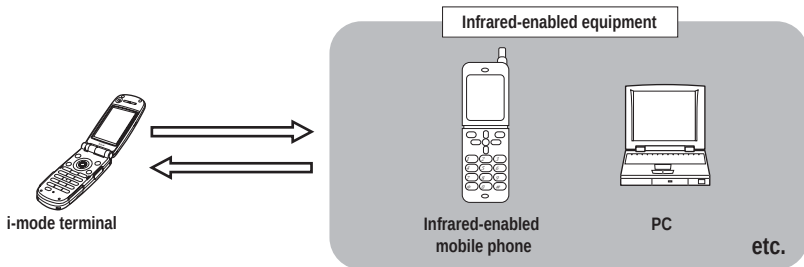


■ Infrared communication function

Mobile phones equipped with infrared functions can exchange information such as phonebook entries, mail and bookmarks with personal PC and other devices.*

Using an i-α ppli in conjunction with the Infrared Communication function allows you to link up with other devices equipped with infrared communication functions, expanding the range of uses for your FOMA terminal. For example, you can use your cellphone as the TV remote control or membership card.

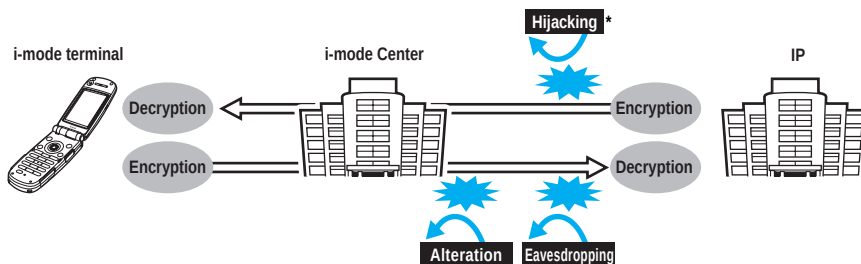
- * : Depending on the equipment used by the other party, it may not be possible to exchange data even where the equipment is infrared-enabled.
- To use the Infrared Communication function → P. 409



■ SSL transmission

SSL is an abbreviation for Secure Sockets Layer, and is an authentication/encryption technology that is used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from an SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping, site hijacking*, or altering the data, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information safer. There are 2 types of SSL communication. In one, SSL certification authority (CA) (SSL certificates) in the i-mode terminal are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) without requiring the user to perform any special procedures. In the other, user certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages). The type of certificate used depends on the site. → P. 208, 235

- To view sites using SSL certificates stored in the i-mode terminal → P. 208
- To use FirstPass user certificates → P. 235



* Hijacking: Where a site is mimicked by a third-party site to allow unauthorized parties access to confidential data.

■ FOMA card operational restriction function

These functions place restrictions on files such as melodies, still images and movies loaded from mail or downloaded from sites when you load a FOMA card (UIM) containing your data (such as phone numbers and some phonebook data) into an i-mode terminal. When you insert a different FOMA card (UIM) or turn the phone on without inserting the FOMA card (UIM), these functions prevent the obtained files from being played or viewed.

[Files that have card operational restrictions]

- Still images files
- Images inside screen memos (including Flash movies)
- Movie files
- Files attached to Message Request and Message Free messages
- Melody files
- Files attached to or pasted in i-mode mail
- Chara-den
- Images inserted into the body of Deco-mails
- i-α ppli
- Download dictionaries

* Still images and movies shot with the camera function, and files saved in the i-mode terminal from outside memory sources are not subjected to this function.

* If the files are set (for example ring tone or standby screen settings) in i-mode terminals, these settings are reset by this function.

■ i-melody

You can download the latest songs or your favorite tunes from sites to an i-mode terminal and then use them as ring tones. → P. 221

■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animation from sites to your i-mode terminal and use it for the stand-by display or incoming call display.

■ Flash™

Flash is an animation technique that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download Flash movies to an i-mode terminal and set them in the stand-by display. → P. 221

Some Flash movies allow you to refer to the terminal information for your i-mode terminal. The used data is as follows:

- Battery Level
- Radio reception level
- Clock Time
- Ring Volume Setting
- Select language Settings
- Model Information

■ Download dictionaries

You can download dialect or specialist dictionaries from sites to an i-mode terminal and set them as the kanji-conversion dictionary. → P. 223

■ Message service

Message services allows you to have information (message) that you need automatically delivered to your i-mode terminal.

The message services consist of the Message Request and Message Free services.

Message Request	If you subscribe to a site that offers a message service, the desired information is automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal.
Message Free	The messages are delivered free via packet communication.

• For information on using message services → P. 229, 231

As of October 1, 2004, Message Free is set to “受信する”(ON) as the default setting for all subscribers who signed a new FOMA contract and at the same time applied for i-mode. If you don't want to receive Message Free, you have to set Message Free to “受信しない”(OFF).

*For those subscribers other than the above, to receive Message Free you have to change the settings in “オプション設定”(Options) settings. The default setting is “受信しない”(OFF).

If you cannot receive messages because your FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of range ( displayed), Message Request and Message Free are held at the i-mode Center.

• The table below shows the numbers of messages held at the i-mode Center and the periods for which they are held. If the limit on the holding number or period is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest message.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message Request	300	72 hours
Message Free	300	72 hours

• Use “Check new message” to retrieve Message Request and Message Free held at the i-mode Center. → P. 231

■ トクだねニュース便 (Read it and Reap News) (Japanese only)

This is a service offered by DoCoMo which uses the Message Request function to send information such as news and weather updates to i-mode terminals.

トクだねニュース便 (Read it and Reap News) (Japanese only) is a paid service to which users must subscribe. Once you have completed the subscription, the service is automatically added to your My Menu list and you can then view the same information by accessing the service from My Menu.

• See “Viewing the Message Request and Message Free List Display” → P. 231

● i-mode password

You have to enter an “i-mode password” to add or delete sites in My Menu, specify your i-mode mail settings, or subscribe to pay i-mode sites. At the time of purchase, the i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) by default, but you should change this number to a 4-digit number of your choice. → P. 213

Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.

Connecting to the Internet

You can use your FOMA terminal to connect to the Internet and view i-mode-compatible websites simply by entering the URL of the website that you want to visit.

For information on viewing Internet websites → P. 214

Note

- Internet web pages that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly. The i-mode-compliant websites means websites that are written using i-mode-compliant tags.
- Sites may appear different to the way they appear on PCs.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to display some Internet websites with URLs longer than 256 half-pitch characters.

When you display pages stored in cache

- Cache refers to an area of memory on the FOMA terminal itself in which data from i-mode sites or Internet websites you have visited is temporarily stored. If you press  to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or Internet website, the FOMA terminal displays the page stored in cache rather than connecting to the i-mode Center and accessing the page on the actual site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal connects to the site even when you press . Also, even when the page is stored in the cache, if the date and time information for that page has been updated, the FOMA terminal connects to the site and displays the latest data.
- When site data is loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits are not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the message indicating that the SSL page will be displayed appears.

Notes on Using i-mode

- The information on sites (programs) or Internet websites (pages) is normally protected by copyright laws. The downloading of documents, pictures, and other data from these sites or Internet websites to your i-mode terminal is permitted only when intended for your personal use only. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without the consent of the copyright holder.
- Note that all data saved (mail, Message Request, Message Free, screen memos, i-α ppli and i-motion) or stored (bookmarks, etc.) in your i-mode terminal is retained for about 1 month even if the battery pack is removed or is completely discharged. However, data may be lost after that period. Note also that the information stored in your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. We recommend you to take copies of important data and information stored on your terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs or other work performed on your i-mode terminal, data downloaded in i-mode, i-α ppli or i-motion will not be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. Note also that when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on without card inserted, still images, movies, melodies, attached files (still image, movie, melody) sent/received by mails, screen memos, Message Request/Free messages, etc. cannot be viewed or played depending on the terminal.
- If a file with restrictions on viewing and playback imposed by the FOMA card (UIM) is set as the stand-by display or a specified ring tone, those settings revert to the default settings if the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

■ Important

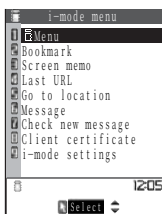
The details of stored bookmarks can be lost as a result of faults, repairs, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data, and you should make a note of the details of stored bookmarks as a precautionary measure or back them up onto a miniSD memory card (P. 392). If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 558) and a FOMA USB cable (optional) to back up the details of bookmarks onto your PC.

<i-mode menu>

Displaying the i-mode Menu

Starting up i-mode

1 Press (i-mode).



The "i-mode menu display" appears. The i-mode menu consists of 9 items.

■ When is displayed

You are outside the service area or in a location where signal reception is poor. Move around until a signal level icon such as  appears.

■ When is flashing

If you try to connect to an i-mode site (P. 206) or Internet website (P. 214) or send i-mode mail (P. 247) while you are in the service area but you are not already using the i-mode service, the  icon flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ When is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode),  flashes.

Item	Description	Ref. page
1 iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you connect to the i-mode Center. You can access various sites (programs) and “週刊iガイド (What's New)” from this page.	P. 199, 205
2 Bookmark	Allows you to store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	P. 215
3 Screen memo	Shows the displays for i-mode sites stored in your i-mode terminal.	P. 218
4 Last URL	Displays the last site or Internet website you visited.	P. 210
5 Go to location	Allows you to connect to an i-mode-compatible site on Internet by directly entering the site address.	P. 214
6 Message	Displays received Message Request/Free. The message service automatically delivers requested information to your FOMA terminal.	P. 232
7 Check new message	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode Center to check for new mail or Message Request/Free.	P. 231
8 Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to perform operations such as downloading data or requesting user certificates.	P. 235
9 i-mode settings	Enables you to specify the i-mode settings for your FOMA terminal.	P. 226

Note

- You can also launch i-mode as follows:
 - Press ► Select and press .
- The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- The i-mode menu can still be displayed when you are outside the service area but you cannot send or receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

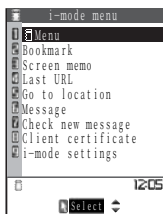
Viewing the iMenu display

1 Press (Fmode) ► “iMenu”.

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the “iMenu display” (the first i-mode display) appears.

■ To cancel page retrieval

Press or (Quit).



i-mode menu display



iMenu display

Exiting i-mode

1 While using i-mode, press ► Select “YES” and press .

flashes and then disappears.

Note

- Holding down for 2 seconds or longer turns the FOMA terminal off.

Viewing a Site

Use the procedure below to access the services provided by an IP (information provider). (You may need to subscribe.)

1 Press (i mode) ▶ “iMenu” ▶ Select “ENGLISH”.

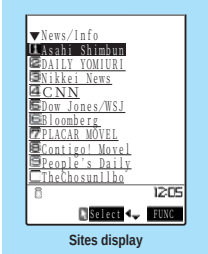
2 Press “Menu List” ▶ Select a site and press .

● About “みんなNらんど”

You can download and save i-α.ppli, dictionary, face stamp, Deco-mail template from the site “みんなNらんど” of iMenu and use them for a number of reasons.

The procedure for connecting to a site “みんなNらんど” is as follows:

Select “iMenu”→“メニューリスト”→“ケータイ電話メーカー”→“みんなNらんど” in order.



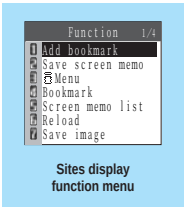
Note

- You cannot display a site while “PIM lock” or “Self mode” is set.
- Some sites may require you to submit an application by a separate form before using the site.
- Some sites may require you to provide additional information fee in order to use the site.
- You may be unable to view images displayed on some sites.
- If an image cannot be obtained, the icon appears.
- You can still make and receive calls while you are connected to a site (P. 422). You can also send and receive mails. However, you cannot receive video-phone calls during i-mode communication.
- You can use to scroll the display even while the “Receiving Page” message is displayed.
- You can select any of the underlined sites on the Sites display. When selected, the item becomes highlighted.
- The information on the site display cannot be updated automatically. Perform “Reload” from the function menu to display the latest information.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. For this reason, the site may not appear as intended.
- Depending on i-mode-compatible Internet websites, some characters may be difficult or impossible to see.

Using the function menu in the Sites display

In the sites display... ➔ P. 206

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Sites display function menu 1/4

1 Add bookmark	Adds the URL for the currently displayed page to your list of bookmarks. See “Adding bookmarks” → P. 216
2 Save screen memo	Saves the currently displayed page as a screen memo. See “Saving a screen memo” → P. 218
3 iMenu	Shows the iMenu display.
4 Bookmark	Shows the Bookmark folder list display. See “Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or Internet website” → P. 216
5 Screen memo list	Shows the Screen memo list display. See “Displaying a screen memo” → P. 219

6 Reload	Updates the current page.
7 Save image	See "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P. 221

Sites display function menu 2/4

1 Refer dic.	Uses a dictionary from the current page. See "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P. 451						
2 Enter URL	▶ Press ▶ Enter the URL and press ▶ Select "OK" and press ▶ Press . The FOMA terminal connects to the Internet website with the entered URL.						
3 Add to phonebook	See "Adding phone numbers and e-mail addresses to the phonebook" → P. 212						
4 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135						
5 Compose message	▶ Choose from the following options: Allows you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Attach URL</td><td>Composes i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Attach mail</td><td>▶ Select an image to be attached and press . Composes i-mode mail with the selected image attached to the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Insert dec. mail</td><td>▶ Select an image to be pasted and press . Composes Deco-mail with the selected image inserted into the message. See "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P. 256</td></tr> </table>	1 Attach URL	Composes i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	2 Attach mail	▶ Select an image to be attached and press . Composes i-mode mail with the selected image attached to the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247	3 Insert dec. mail	▶ Select an image to be pasted and press . Composes Deco-mail with the selected image inserted into the message. See "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P. 256
1 Attach URL	Composes i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247						
2 Attach mail	▶ Select an image to be attached and press . Composes i-mode mail with the selected image attached to the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247						
3 Insert dec. mail	▶ Select an image to be pasted and press . Composes Deco-mail with the selected image inserted into the message. See "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P. 256						
6 Save schedule	Allows you to store a scheduled event by browsing the currently displayed page. See "Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries" → P. 431						
7 Set as home URL	▶ Select "YES" and press . Stores the URL of the currently displayed page as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.						

Sites display function menu 3/4

1 Display home	Displays the page stored as your home URL.				
2 Title	▶ Check the title ▶ Select "OK" and press . Checks the title of the currently displayed page.				
3 URL	▶ Check the URL ▶ Select "OK" and press . Displays the URL for the currently displayed page.				
4 Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the currently displayed page supports SSL.				
5 Change CHR code	If the current page is not displayed correctly, this option reloads the page using a different character set.				
6 Set image display	▶ Choose from the following options: Specifies the image display setting for the page. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 ON</td><td>Displays images.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 OFF</td><td>Does not display images. is displayed instead of the image which cannot be displayed.</td></tr> </table>	1 ON	Displays images.	2 OFF	Does not display images. is displayed instead of the image which cannot be displayed.
1 ON	Displays images.				
2 OFF	Does not display images. is displayed instead of the image which cannot be displayed.				
7 Sound effect	▶ Select "ON" or "OFF". Specifies the settings for Flash movie sound effects.				

Sites display function menu 4/4

1 Retry	Plays the Flash movie or animation on the currently displayed page again from the beginning.

Note

<Compose message>

- You can paste URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long into a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>

- If you have already set a home URL, a message appears asking whether to replace the current home URL. Select "YES" to replace the current URL or "NO" to retain the current URL.

- Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid/Invalid" setting for "Home URL".

<Display home>

- "Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".

- If an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch in the stand-by display will also display the site set as the home URL.

<Title>

- You cannot edit the displayed title.
- You can display titles up to 128 half-pitch characters long.

<URL>

- You cannot edit the displayed URL.
- When all the URL is not displayed, press then press to check the URL. Pressing and selecting "OK" returns to the page screen.

<Certificate>

- This setting displays up to 4 certificates. If you have multiple certificates, you can use to view previous and subsequent certificates.
- When certificates are displayed, the display scrolls 1 line at a time regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>

- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. Note that when you perform the procedure four times, the site is displayed in the original character code setting.
- Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when the character code change is repeated.
- If you change the character code when a site is displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- "Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>

- Selecting this option during playback restarts playback of the Flash movies and animations from the beginning.

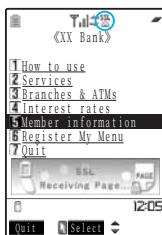
Displaying SSL pages

To display an SSL-compatible page, following certificates are needed.

- CA (Certification Authority): A certificate issued by a certifier, and saved in the FOMA terminal when you purchase it.
- DoCoMo CA Certificate : A certificate that is needed to connect to FirstPass Center and saved in a green FOMA card (UIM).
- User Certificate : A certificate downloaded from the FirstPass Center by selecting "Client Certificate" in i-mode menu (P. 235) and saved in a green FOMA card (UIM).

1

Display an SSL page.



SSL page display

The SSL page appears and the icon is displayed.

■ To cancel display during authentication

Press .

■ To cancel page loading after authentication

Press (Quit).

2

Move from the SSL page to non-SSL page ▶ Select "YES" and press .

SSL communication ends and the icon no longer appears.

Note

- If a message appears saying, "This site is not certified Do you connect?" when you display an SSL page, the SSL certificate for the site has expired or you are attempting to display a page that is using a different SSL certificate from that used by the FOMA terminal. When this happens, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES", but you should note that you may not safely send personal information such as your credit card number or contact information. To cancel page display, select "NO", then the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, and press to return to the original display.
- To display an SSL-compatible page, set the date and time in "Set time" beforehand.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a web page, Message Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or a list will not fit on the display, you can scroll up or down to view the rest of the text.

■ Scrolling 1 line at a time

Press  to scroll down 1 line to view the next list item or line of text.

Press  to scroll up 1 line to view the previous list item or line of text.

You can also set the number of lines scrolled each time you press  or . → P. 226

■ Scrolling 1 screen at a time

Press  (Memo/Check) to scroll down 1 screen to view the next part of the list or text.

Press  (Home) to scroll up 1 screen to view the previous part of the list or text.

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press .



2 Select "ENGLISH" then press .



Select "日本語" to return to the Japanese display.

Note

- The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- とくするメニュー (Tokusuru menu), iエリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) and 料金&お申込 (Fee & application) are not shown on the English iMenu.
- Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New.

FOMA terminal/FOMA Card (UIM) Manufacturer numbers

If an i-mode site or Internet web page is displayed on the FOMA terminal and you select an item and press , a message may appear notifying you that the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. To send the information, select "YES" and press . To cancel the transmission, select "NO" and press . Press  (Return) or  to return to the previous display.

- The disclosure notification message is always shown before the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent. Such information is never sent automatically.

Note

- The transmitted "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" are used by your IP (information provider) to identify you and to provide information tailored to your needs. It is also used to determine whether content provided by your IP (information provider) can be used on your FOMA terminal.
- Disclosed mobile phone information "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" are sent via the Internet to your IP (information provider) and is subject to possible interception by third parties. This procedure does not provide personal information such as your phone number, address, age or gender to your IP (information provider).

Reconnecting to the Last Displayed Page <Last URL>

When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last website displayed is stored by the "Last URL" function. You can use this function to reconnect to the last website you visited.

1

Press  (i mode)  "Last URL".

Note

- Each time you display a page, the "Last URL" setting is updated to the URL of the currently displayed page.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes the operations you can perform while viewing i-mode or web sites.

Image display

Pages at i-mode sites and Internet websites often display images.

- Your FOMA terminal will display GIF-format and JPEG-format images and Flash movies (P. 212). However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to display some images regardless of the format used.
- The  (with color) appears while an image is loading and the image itself appears when loading is completed.
- You can specify whether or not images are displayed in the "Set image display" setting (P. 226). If you change the "Set image display" setting in the function menu from "OFF" to "ON" while a page on a website is loading and then use "Reload" (P. 212), the  (with color) appears. If you changed the setting from "ON" to "OFF", loaded images remain displayed as images.

■ Displayed image icons

 (color) : Displayed while an image is loading or when "OFF" is selected in the "Set image display" setting.

 : Displayed when image loading failed.

 (B/W) : Displayed for image that cannot be loaded.

Selecting links and other options

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform operations such as those described below.

- Refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

● Links

Displayed pages may include links to related pages.

- You can use the same procedure with links that are set in images.

● Radio buttons

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options. The  icon indicates a selected radio button.

● Checkboxes

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options. The  icon indicates a selected checkbox.

● Text boxes

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text input display appears.

● Pull-down menus

Pull-down menus allow you to choose one of a range of options. Pull-down menus originally show a part of those options. When you select the pull-down menus, a list of other hidden options is displayed.

Note

● Depending on how the site was constructed, pull-down menus may include multiple available options. Each time you use  to select an option and press , the option is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press  (Finish) or  to end the procedure.

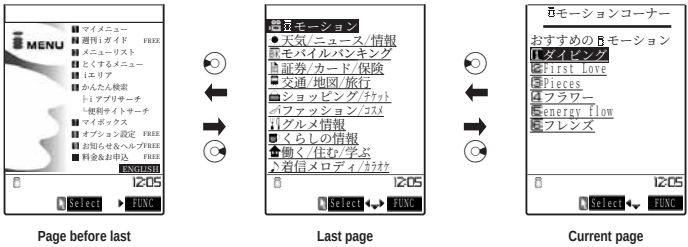
● Selection boxes

Selection boxes allow you to choose from a list of options. On some sites, you can see the part of options.

Jumping to previous pages

Use this procedure to jump forward or back to a page that has been stored in the FOMA terminal's cache.

1 Press  to jump back to the previous page or  to jump forward to the next page.



Note

● You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing . However, when you have pressed  to return to an earlier page (from C to B) and then gone from that page to another page (from B to D), pressing  twice from page D will not display page C, but will take you back to B and then to page A from D (see below).

■ When the page display sequence is A → B → C → B → D

● For information on the cache → P. 204

Reloading data

Use this procedure to update the currently displayed page.

In the sites display function menu...

➡ P. 206

1 Press  "Reload".

Note

- If you use "Reload" to view a site after you have entered text or entered your ID or password, etc., a message may appear asking whether to resend the data. (This message will appear even without "Reload" being used on sites that reload automatically.) Select "YES" to update the site.
- If you use "Reload" in the final completion display for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message appears asking whether to resend the data. Note that selecting "YES" may resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone numbers and e-mail addresses to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

Use this procedure to add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a telephone number displayed on a site page>

In the sites display function menu...

➡ P. 206

1 Press  ▶ Select  "Add to phonebook" ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Add to phonebook.

See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to telephone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with telephone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

Working with Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the stand-by display.

- Some Flash movies vibrate the FOMA terminal during playback. Note that it vibrates, even if the vibrator setting has set to "OFF".
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when  does not appear at the bottom of the display.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image display".
- Selecting "YES" in "Use saved data" (P. 228) allows you to use set data (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

Note

- To launch a Flash movie again, select "Retry" from the Function menu. → P. 207
- Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash image without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" in the Function menu and then select the "OFF" setting. When the vibrator is set to "Melody linkage", the FOMA terminal's vibrator may fail to vibrate when sound effects are played.
- Sound effects for Flash movies set in the screen display are not played.
- Some Flash movies vibrate as their vibrator settings are set to ON. If you set them to incoming call display, incoming video-phone call display or incoming mail display, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the settings of the "Vibrator" or "Manner mode set". However if you set them to stand-by or wake-up display, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- If you do not press any key for about 2 minutes while playing the Flash movie, the movie will be paused.
Press , , , , , , , , , ,  to play it again.
- When some Flash movies are saved or saved as a screen memo, part of the images may not be saved or they may otherwise differ from the way they appear on the site.
- An error occurred during Flash movie play prevents successful completion of the saving.

Adding My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can store up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be added to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to an Internet website, use "Bookmark" (P. 215).

In the sites display...

➡ P. 206

- 1 Select "Add to My Menu" and press .
- 2 Select the "Input password" box and press  ▶ Enter your 4-digit i-mode password and press .
 "Input password display" appears
 For information on your i-mode password → P. 213
- 3 Select "OK" and press .

Note

- Pay sites in the Menu List under the iMenu are automatically added to My Menu upon subscription.
- If you changed from mova service (i-mode) to FOMA service, you can check "My Menu"-compatible site by in "お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)" in the iMenu. → P. 199

Viewing sites stored in My Menu

- 1 Press  () ▶  "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶  "My Menu" ▶ Select the number for the site.

Note

- To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be added to My Menu.
- Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries added on their mova terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries added on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

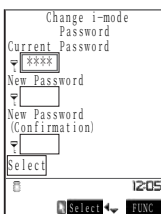
You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to add or remove sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe to message services or paid i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take great care to keep your i-mode password private.
- If you forget your i-mode password, note that you are required to bring your identification (such as a driver's license) to the sales representative of NTT DoCoMo to confirm that you were the subscribed person and the i-mode password is needed to reset to "0000".

- 1** Press (F-mode) ► “iMenu” ► “ENGLISH” ► “Options” ► “Change i-mode Password”.



- 2** Select the “Current Password” box and press ► Enter your current i-mode password and press .



The entered password is displayed as “*”.

- 3** Select the “New Password” box and press ► Enter the new password and press .

Enter 4 digits as your i-mode password.

- 4** Select the “New Password (Confirmation)” box and press ► Enter your new i-mode password again and press .

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

- 5** Select “Select” and press .

■ If you enter your “Current Password” incorrectly

A message appears saying that your i-mode password is incorrect.

■ If you enter different numbers in “New Password” and “New Password (Confirmation)”

A message appears saying that your i-mode passwords do not match.

<Connect to Internet>

Viewing Internet Websites

This function allows you to view any Internet website simply by entering its URL.

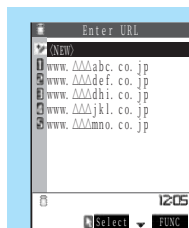
- Internet websites that are not i-mode-compatible may not be displayed correctly.
- The FOMA terminal operations available in Internet websites are the same as those available in ordinary i-mode sites.

- 1** Press (F-mode) ► “Go to location” ► “Enter URL” ► Select “<NEW>” and press .

The “Enter URL display” appears.

For information on “Entering Text” → P. 522

- 2** Enter the URL and press .



Enter URL display

3 Select “OK” and press .

A message appears warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL. Press  or  to connect to the Internet website with the entered URL.

■ If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with “http://” or “https://”

A message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.

Note

- Some Internet sites may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing .
- You can add the displayed page to a bookmark, a screen memo, desktop icon or home URL.
- To enter a URL while a page is displayed, select “Enter URL” from the Function menu and enter the URL.
- You can enter URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long including “http://” or “https://”.

Viewing Sites From the URL History

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 Press () “Go to location” “Enter URL”.

2 Select a URL number Select “OK” and press Press .

■ To edit the selected URL

Select the “Internet address” box, press  and edit the URL.

Note

- Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
- When you enter URLs and connect to sites, visits to the same URL are logged as separate entries.
- The URL history displays URLs up to 22 half-pitch characters long, not including the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

Using the function menu in the Enter URL display

In the enter URL display...

➔ P. 214

1 Press (FUNC) Choose from the following options:

Enter URL display function menu

1 Add desktop icon	 Select “YES” and press  . See “Using Desktop Icons” → P. 135
2 Compose message	Allows you to compose i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted into the message. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P. 247
3 Set as home URL	 Select “YES” and press  . Stores the selected URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
4 Delete	 Select “YES” and press  .
5 Delete selected	 Use  to select a checkbox () and press   Press  (Finish)  Select “YES” and press  .
6 Delete all	 Enter your security code and press   Select “YES” and press  .

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change the titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each stored bookmark can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

In the sites display function menu...

➔ P. 206

- 1 Press  "Add bookmark" ➔ Select "YES" and press  ➔ Select a folder number.

■ If there are already 100 bookmarked sites

A message appears asking whether to delete a bookmark before adding the new site. To bookmark the new site, select "YES" and then select the folder and the bookmark to be deleted.

Note

- Bookmark titles can consist of up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. Longer titles are truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").
- Even if the items are entered in the radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, pull-down menus, selection boxes when saving bookmarks, those items are not entered when the sites are displayed from the saved bookmarks.
- You cannot add or display bookmarks while "PIM lock" is set.

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or Internet website

- 1 Press  () ➔  "Bookmark".

The "Bookmark folder list display" appears.



Bookmark folder list display

- 2 Select a folder number.

The "Bookmark display" appears.

- 3 Select a bookmark number.



Bookmark display

Note

- Page titles in the Bookmarks list are shown in the order they were used.
- If you view a site from a bookmark, the information may not be automatically updated. "Reload" the site if the information isn't automatically updated.

Using the function menu in the Bookmark Folder List display

You cannot rename or delete the "Bookmark" folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

In the bookmark folder list display...

➔ P. 216

1 Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Bookmark folder list display function menu

1 Add folder	➔ Enter a folder name, and press . You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters as the folder name. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Edit folder name	➔ Enter a folder name and press . You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters as the folder name. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
3 No. of bookmarks	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
4 Send all Ir data	Sends all your bookmarks via infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413
5 Delete folder	➔ Enter your security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press . About Your Security Codes → P. 142
6 Delete all	➔ Enter your security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press . About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

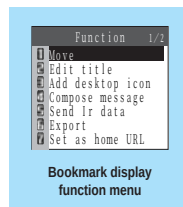
- You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.
- <Add folder>
 - If you do not enter the folder name, you cannot add the folder.
 - The newly created folder is added to the bottom of the folders.
- <Edit folder name>
 - You can add a folder with the same name as an existing folder.
- <Delete all>
 - This function can be operated even when no bookmark is stored.
 - Deletes all the bookmarks. However, the folders are not deleted.

Using the function menu in the Bookmark display

In the bookmark display...

➔ P. 216

1 Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Bookmark display function menu 1/2

1 Move	➔ Select the folder number ➔ Select a checkbox (☐) and press , then press  ➔ . ➔ Select "YES" and press .
2 Edit title	➔ Enter the title and press . You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters as the bookmark title. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
3 Add desktop icon	➔ Select "YES" and press . Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
4 Compose message	Allows you to compose i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247
5 Send Ir data	➔ Select "YES" and press  .

Export	▶ Select “YES” and press .
Set as home URL	▶ Select “YES” and press . Stores a bookmarked URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.

Bookmark display function menu 2/2

Copy URL	▶ Highlight the head of text to copy by using and press ▶ Use to Highlight the last of text to copy and press . Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
Delete	▶ Select “YES” and press .
Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ▶ Press (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press .
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ▶ Select “YES” and press .

Note

<Edit title>

- If you delete the title and press , the URL is added excluding the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

<Delete all>

- “Delete all” deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

In the sites display function menu...

➡ P. 206

1

Press “Save screen memo” ▶ Select “YES” and press .

■ If the memory for saving screen memos is full

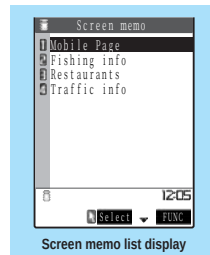
A message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted screen memos before saving the new screen memo. To save the new screen memo, select “YES” and press , then select the screen memo to be deleted.

Note

- When you save a screen memo of an SSL page, the SSL certificate for that page is also saved.
- Titles for saved screen memo can be up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters long. Longer titles are truncated.
- If you save the same page twice, at the 2nd time it is saved as a new screen memo and does not replace the earlier save.
- The URL for the page saved in Screen memo can be saved up to 256 half-pitch characters. However, the URL for the data download completion display cannot be saved.
- If the Data acquisition display is saved, the data for that display is saved to the screen memo along with the display (Data acquisition displays for i-motion with set playback period cannot be saved.). The Data acquisition display may not be saved as screen memos.
- Even if the items are entered in the radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, pull-down menus, selection boxes when saving site screens in the screen memo, those items are not entered in the saved screen memos.

Displaying a screen memo

- 1 Press  (i-mode) ▶ Press  DEF "Screen memo".
The "Screen memo list display" appears.



- 2 Select a screen memo number.
The "Screen memo (Screen memo detail display)" appears.



Note

- The information in a screen memo is the information of the time the memo was saved and may not reflect the latest information.
- If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the Screen Memo List display as "No title".

Using the function menu in the Screen Memo List display

In the screen memo list display...

➡ P. 219

- 1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Screen memo list display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Enter the title and press  . You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters as the screen memo title. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo.
3 No. of memos	Shows the total number of saved screen memos.
4 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
5 Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () and press  ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
6 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  . About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<Protect ON/OFF>

- You can protect up to 50 screen memos, but the number that can actually be protected varies depending on the amount of data in each memo.

<Edit title>

- If you delete the title and press , the screen memo is stored as "No title".

<Delete>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos. Remove the protection before deleting the screen memo.

<Delete selected>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos.

<Delete all>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos. Remove the protection before deleting the screen memos.

Using the function menu in the Screen Memo Detail display

In the screen memo detail display...

➔ P. 219

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Screen memo detail display function menu 1/2

 Save image	Saves the image displayed in a screen memo. See "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" ➔ P. 221
 Add to phonebook	Stores the phone number and e-mail address shown in the screen memo in the phonebook. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" ➔ P. 93
 Refer dic.	Uses a dictionary from the screen memo. See "Using dictionaries from other functions" ➔ P. 451
 Edit title	➔ Enter a title and press . You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" ➔ P. 522
 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo.
 Compose message	➔ Choose from the following options: Allows you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL displaying in the screen memo pasted into the message or the image attached/pasted.
 Attach URL	Compose i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displaying page pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247
 Attach mail	➔ Select an image to be attached and press . Compose i-mode mail with the selected image attached to the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247
 Insert dec. mail	➔ Select an image to be pasted and press . Compose Deco-mail with the selected image inserted into the message. See "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" ➔ P. 256
 Save schedule	Allows you to store a scheduled event by browsing the screen memos. See "Adding schedule entries" ➔ P. 434

Screen memo detail display function menu 2/2

 URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
 Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo contains an SSL page.
 Sound effect	➔ Select  "ON" or  "OFF". Specifies the settings for Flash movie sound effects.
 Retry	Plays the Flash movie or animation in the screen memo from the beginning.
 Delete	➔ Select "YES" and press .

Note

<URL>

● You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

● Selecting this option during playback restarts playback of the Flash movies and animations from the beginning.

<Delete>

● You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memo. Remove the protection before deleting the screen memo.

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

Use this function to save an image displayed on the current site or sent to you in Message Request/Free and then set the saved image in the stand-by display or another display.

- If you save an image or animation attached to or displayed in i-mode mail, screen memos or sites, it can be set in the stand-by display or as the wake-up display.

<Example: Saving an image displayed on a site>

In the sites display function menu...

➔ P. 206

1

Press "Save image" ➔ Select image and press ➔ Select "YES" and press ➔ Select a folder number.



Position the frame () over the image to be saved.

To set the image in the stand-by or other display, proceed to step 2.

■ If the FOMA terminal's memory for saved images is full

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted image before saving the current image. To save the image, select "YES" and press . Then select the image to be deleted.

2

Select "YES" and press ➔ Select an option and press .

■ To skip setting the image in a display such as the stand-by display

Select "NO" and press .

Note

- Some images cannot be saved.
- The following images cannot be saved:
 - JPEG-format image that is larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high
 - GIF-format image that is larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
 - Progressive JPEG-format image that is larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If there is no file name specified, the part between the last "/" and "." of the URL from where the file was downloaded becomes the file name. However, if there is nothing in between "/" and ".", the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).
- If "Image display" is set to "OFF", you cannot save the image. The image can not be saved either if is displayed.
- If you try to save an image while you are receiving a large image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while downloading a large file.
- Images that meet the following all requirements are saved as frames or stamp images.
 - Transparent GIF file which is not an animation GIF file.
 - The file extension is ".lrm".
 - A frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), Screen Horiz. (345 × 240), Screen (240 × 345), QVGA (320 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), Sub-QCIF (128 × 96), Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128), and a stamp that is an image other than a frame that is smaller than 240 dots wide × 240 dots high.

■ Progressive JPEG-format images

The progressive JPEG format is an image format for images to be used on i-mode sites or Internet websites, etc. Initially displayed coarsely (at low resolution) and then displayed clearly as more data arrives.

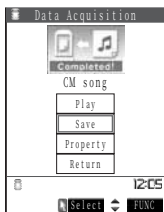
Downloading Melodies from Sites

Use this function to set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached/pasted to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

In the sites display...

➡ P. 206

1 Select a melody and press .**2** Select "Save" and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select a folder and press .

■ If the FOMA terminal's memory for saved melodies is full

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted melody before saving the current melody. To save the melody, select "YES" and press . Then select the melody to be deleted.

■ To play the melody

Select "Play" and press .

■ To view the melody information

Select "Property" and press .

3 Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select an option and press .

■ To skip setting the melody as a ring tone

Select "NO" and press .

Note

- You may not be able to download melodies from some sites.
- Downloaded melodies may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on the FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- The URL in the Data acquisition display is not stored in "Last URL". In this situation, the URL for the page displayed just prior to the Data acquisition display is stored as the last URL.
- Downloaded melodies may not play correctly in some cases.
- If you attempt to save a melody while receiving a large image, a confirmation message appears notifying you that you cannot perform that operation while receiving a large file.
- If the file name of the saved melody consists of only half-alphanumeric letters, the file name can be saved up to 36 half-pitch characters. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. If there is nothing between the slash and the period, the melody is saved as "melodyXXX" (XXX = 3-digit number).
- The playing volume for melody is the volume set for "Phone" in "Ring volume".
- You cannot play a melody during a call.

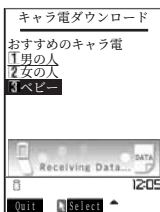
Downloading "Chara-den" Characters from Sites

Use this procedure to download your favorite "Chara-den" cartoon characters from i-mode sites.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed characters.

In the sites display...

➡ P. 206

1 Select a Chara-den character and press .

- 2 Select "Save" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.



- If the FOMA terminal's memory for saved Chara-den characters is full
A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted Chara-den before saving the current Chara-den. To save the Chara-den, select "YES" and press ●. Then select the Chara-den to be deleted.
- To view the "Chara-den" character
Select "Play" and press ●.
For information on controlling Chara-den characters → P. 381
- To view the "Chara-den" information
Select "Property" and press ●.

Downloading Data Files from Sites

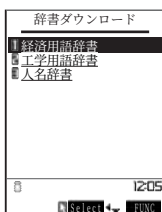
You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

In the sites display...

→ P. 206

- 1 Select the data file and press ●.



- 2 Select "Save" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select an option and press ●.



- To view the dictionary information
Select "Property" and press ●.
- When the 5 dictionaries are already registered
Select the dictionary you want to delete and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
The selected dictionary is overwritten and the new dictionary is registered.

Note

- Templates with no decorations at all or that contain images that it is prohibited to be output to devices other than a FOMA terminal cannot be saved.
- If a file is attached to the template, the attached file is deleted.
- "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the file name (where YYYY = year, MM = month, DD = day, hh = hour, mm = minute).
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (XX = 01 to 45).
- Some data files cannot be downloaded from some sites.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making calls, sending mail and viewing Internet websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in mail or on a site.

- The Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To functions may be unable to be used if mails are sent from PC, etc.

Phone To function

Use this function to make a call to a phone number displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

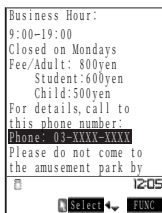
- When used for video-phone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can use up to 26-digit as phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

In the sites display...

➔ P. 206

1 Select the phone number and press .



2 Press "Voice phone".



■ To make a video-phone call

Press  "32K V-phone" or  "64K V-phone".

3 Press "Dial".



■ To withhold your caller ID when "Caller ID notification" is set to "ON"

Press  "Notify caller ID" ➔ Press  "Don't notify".

■ To provide your caller ID when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF"

Press  "Notify caller ID" ➔ Press  "Notify caller".

Note

- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function to make voice calls or video-phone calls while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is set.
- You can return to the original display and continue the i-mode procedure by holding down  for 1 second or longer during a call.
- It is sometimes possible to use the Phone To/AV Phone To function with highlighted information other than a phone number.
- You can also use this function to make calls to phone numbers provided as mail sender or recipient addresses and to phone numbers included in e-mail addresses with the "[phone number]@..." format.

Mail To function

Use this function to send mail to an e-mail address displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

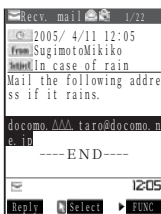
- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages prepared.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- This function only supports e-mail addresses up to 50 half-pitch characters long.

<Example: Sending mail from the received mail detail display>

In the received mail detail display...

➡ P. 281

1 Select the e-mail address and press .



2 Compose and send the i-mode mail.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 247.

Note

- You cannot use the Mail To function to send mail when "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is set. When Self mode is set, you can compose mails but cannot send any mails.
- If you have entered the e-mail address incorrectly, correct the address before sending the mail.
- It is sometimes possible to use the Mail To function with highlighted information other than an e-mail address.

Web To function

Use this function to view the site with a URL displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 half-pitch characters as a URL.

<Example: Displaying a web page from the received mail detail display>

In the received mail detail display...

➡ P. 281

1 Select the URL and press .



Note

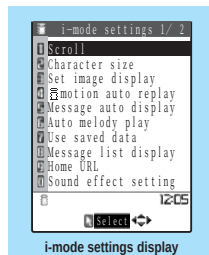
- When Self mode is set, you cannot use the Web To function.
- The URL display differs depending on the site.
- In some cases, you can also use the Web To function by highlighting information other than a URL.

Specifying Your i-mode Settings

1 Press (i-mode) "i-mode settings".

The "i-mode settings display" appears.

2 Choose from the following options:



i-mode settings display 1/2

1 Scroll (default setting: 1 line)	▶ Select  "1 line",  "3 lines" or  "5 lines". Sets the number of scrolling lines in the detail display for a screen memo, Message Request/Free or a page on an i-mode site.	
2 Character size (default setting: Standard)	▶ Select  "Standard",  "Small" or  "Large". Changes the character size of the site screen or the Message Request/Free details screen.	
3 Set image display	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the image display setting for the Detail display for Message Request/Free messages, screen memos and pages on i-mode or Internet sites.	
	1 ON (default setting)	Displays images.
	2 OFF	Does not display images. An icon () appears in the place of the image.
4 i-motion auto replay	See "Specifying whether an i-motion is played automatically" → P. 338	
5 Message auto display	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets for the messages automatically be displayed.	
	1 Msg. Req. preferred (default setting)	Gives preference to automatic display of Message Request.
	2 Msg. Free preferred	Gives preference to automatic display of Message Free.
	3 Msg. Request only	Displays only Message Request automatically.
	4 Msg. Free only	Displays only Message Free automatically.
6 Auto melody play	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening the Message Request/Free.	
	1 ON (default setting)	Automatically plays melodies.
	2 OFF	Does not automatically play melodies.
7 Use saved data	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects whether saved data is used during Flash movie playback.	
	1 YES (default setting)	Sets the FOMA terminal to use saved data during Flash movie playback.
	2 NO	Sets the FOMA terminal to not use saved data during Flash movie playback.

③ Message list display	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the number of the message list screen lines.	
	① 2 lines (default setting)	Displays 2 lines for each message.
	② 1 line	Displays 1 line for each message.
⑤ Home URL	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets for the home URL display function.	
	① Invalid (default setting)	Disables the home URL display setting.
	② Valid	Enables the home URL display setting. Select the Home URL field and enter the URL to be stored. Up to 256 half-pitch can be entered to the URL.
② Sound effect setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets whether play the sound effect for the Flash movies in the site or screen memo.	
	① ON (default setting)	Plays the sound effects for Flash movies.
	② OFF	Does not play the sound effects for Flash movies.

i-mode setting display 2/2

① Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
② Reset last URL	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Resets the last URL stored. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL.
③ Reset	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  . Returns the "i-mode settings" to the default values set at the time of purchase. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<Scroll>

- When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll 1 line at a time regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Set image display>

- Even if "ON" is selected, the images may not be downloaded. In this case,  is displayed.
- If "OFF" is set,  is displayed and data is not received.

<Home URL>

- If "Valid" is selected, the home URL site entered to the home URL field is displayed with pressing  (Home) in standby mode.

<Sound effect setting>

- Even if sound effects are set to "ON", some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>

- When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or the last URL, selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu display.

Setting the Connection Timeout <Set connection timeout>

Default setting	60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

- 1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  "Connection setting"
▶ Select "Set connection timeout" and press  ▶ Choose from the following options:

① 60 seconds	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response after 60 seconds.
② 90 seconds	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response after 90 seconds.
③ Unlimited	Does not automatically stop trying to connect.

Note

- Even when you select "Unlimited", the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Changing the host (ISP connection) <Host selection>

There is normally no need to change this setting.

Default setting

i-mode

Use this procedure to select a different host when you are using a service other than i-mode. If you change to a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts other than "i-mode".

1 Press      ▶ Select "<Not recorded>" and press  (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Choose from the following options:

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

See "Entering Text" → P. 522

1 Title	Sets the title. The title can consist of up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
2 Host name	Sets the host name. The name can consist of up to 30 half-pitch characters.
3 Host address	Sets the host address. The address can consist of up to 99 half-pitch characters.

2 After completing the settings, press  (Finish).

Note

- To change your host, select the host to be changed and press .
- You cannot change your host while you are using i-mode. Exit i-mode and then change the host.
- Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the "Pake-Houda" deal.
- To change a stored User defined host, use the procedure for storing the host.
- If you delete a stored User defined host, select the host to be deleted and select "Delete" from the Function menu. Enter your security code, select "YES" and press .
- If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to "i-mode".

Specifying Whether to Use Stored Data in Flash movies <Use saved data>

Use this function to specify whether saved data is used when a Flash movie is running.

- The saved data may be used depending on the particular Flash movie. In order for the Flash movie to use the saved data, you need to set "Use saved data" of "i-mode settings" to "YES". The default setting is "YES". The saved data is follows:

- Battery level
- Reception level
- Date and time information
- Ring volume setting
- Bilingual setting
- Model information

In the i-mode settings display...

➡ P. 226

1 Press   "Use saved data" ▶ Choose the following options:

1 YES	Sets that the FOMA terminal data is used by Flash movie.
2 NO	Sets that the FOMA terminal data is not used by Flash movie.

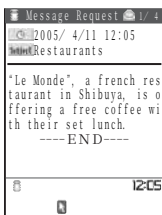
When You Receive a Message

While the FOMA terminal is within signal range, Message Request and Message Free are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received Message Request and Message Free respectively. However, the number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for Message Request and between 10 and 100 for Message Free depending on the amount of data in each saved message.
- You can set your own choice of ring tone for incoming Message Request and Message Free in "Select ring tone" (P. 114) and vary the flashing pattern used by the call alert indicator in "Illumination" (P. 133).

Displaying New Messages

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto display" (P. 226).



The **R** (Green) or **F** (Purple) icon flashes and the "Message Request Receiving" or "Message Free Receiving" message is displayed.

- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop reception while a message is being received, hold down **END CLR** for 1 second or longer. Note that depending on the timing of the cancellation, you may still receive the message.
- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and Message Request/Free received are displayed in the reception results display for roughly 15 seconds. You can change the display period using "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 118).
- To view the Message Request list display or Message Free list display, select "Message Request" or "Message Free" and press **OK**.
- If you have received a message while the FOMA terminal is in stand-by mode, the contents of the received Message Request or Message Free are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the stand-by display was retrieved from the Task menu while any of the menu functions was being used, messages are not automatically displayed. Message Requests or Message Frees are not displayed automatically if they are received when the Stand-by display is not displayed.
- If you use operations such as scrolling while a Message Request or Message Free is displayed, the contents of the message continue to be displayed.
- If none of the FOMA terminal keys are used for 15 seconds, the stand-by display reappears.

■ If you disable automatic display

This enables you to continue using the FOMA terminal without being interrupted by a message reception display when a Message Request or Message Free is received. You are notified that a Message Request or Message Free has been received by the **R** (Green) or **F** (Purple) icon but there is no ring tone, call alert indicator display, vibration or flashing backlight.

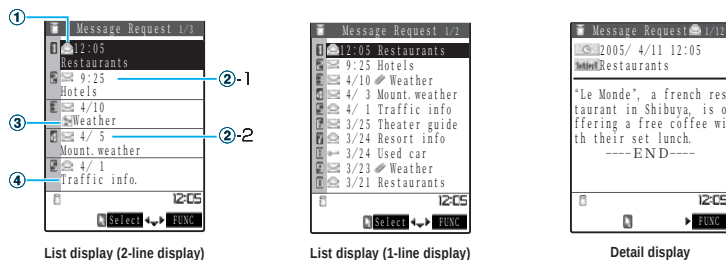
Note

- Automatic display for Message Request or Message Free can be selected in "Message auto display". If you do not want messages to appear automatically, select "OFF".
- When a new Message Request/Free arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with any Message Request or Message Free or i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center.
- Received Message Request or Message Free are not automatically displayed if the current display is not the stand-by display, if i-α.ppli software is running, if the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, or if PIM lock or All lock is set.
- If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of Message Request or Message Free when you receive a Message Request/Free, the oldest Message Request/Free that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.
- While the  (Red) or  (Red) icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal can receive no further Message Request or Message Free. Remove the protection (P. 233, 234) or read the unread Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Message Request and Message Free that have been already read or unprotected are overwritten when received, starting with the oldest message.
- If the  (Green) or  (Purple) icon appears on the FOMA terminal's display, there is a Message Request/Free held for you at the i-mode Center. Read some of your unread Message Request or Message Free or unprotect some messages and then check for new messages.
- If the  (Red) or  (Red) icon appears on the FOMA terminal's display, the space for your Message Request/Free at the i-mode Center is full. Use "Check new message" to download your Message Request/Free.
- After automatic display, messages are still marked as unread in the Message Request or Message Free list display. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling the screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read in the Message Request or Message Free list display.
- If you simultaneously receive multiple i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail or Message Request or Message Free, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and illumination pattern set for the chat mail.
- If you receive a Message Request or Message Free when a display other than the stand-by display is shown and "Operation preferred" is selected in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal rings and the Received result display appears.
- If you receive a Message Request or Message Free when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed on the indicator display.
- If you receive a Message Request or Message Free during i-motion playback, the video and sound may be interrupted.

Viewing the Message Request and Message Free List Display

The Message Request and Message Free list displays appear as shown below.

- Some of the icons displayed in the Message Request and Message Free list displays are also shown in the Message Request and Message Free detail displays. Note that some of the icons are not displayed.



List display (2-line display)

List display (1-line display)

Detail display

- ① Shows the Message Request/Free status.

- : Unread Message Request/Free
- : Read Message Request/Free
- : Unread and protected Message Request/Free
- : Read and protected Message Request/Free

- ② Shows the message arrival time and date.

- ②-1 Only the time is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived today.
- ②-2 The date is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived yesterday or earlier.

- ③ Shows any attached or pasted file.

- : Indicates an attached melody.
- : Indicates multiple attached melodies, one or more of which is corrupted.
- : Indicates that all the attached melodies are corrupted.

- : Indicates an attached image.
- : Indicates multiple attached images, one or more of which is corrupted.
- : Indicates that all the attached images are corrupted.
- : Indicates multiple pasted data items.

The following icons are displayed when 1-line display is selected in a list display:

- : Indicates an attached file.
- : Indicates multiple attached files, one or more of which is corrupted.
- : Indicates that all the attached files are corrupted.

- ④ Shows the subject.

<Check new message>

Checking for Messages

Default setting

Check for all (Mail, Message Request and Message Free)

- Message Request and Message Free delivered to the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode Center:
 - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When is displayed
 - When the Messages Request or the Messages Free are full
 - During a video-phone call or remote observation
 - When "Self mode" is set
- Use "Set check new message" (P. 299) to specify which items are checked for.

1 Hold down (MAIL) for 1 second or longer.

The checking new message display appears.

The checking new message is done in order "Mail" → "Message Request" → "Message Free".

The message icons ( (Blue),  (Green) and  (Purple)) flash, and the "Checking..." message appears on the display while the FOMA terminal downloads your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.

The number of the new received i-mode mails, Message Requests, and Message Frees is displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

Hold down  for 1 second or longer during inquiry.

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive i-mode mails or Message Request/Free.

2 Check the number of new i-mode mail and Message Request/Free you have received.

Note

● You can also use the following procedures to check new message:

- Press  (i-mode) ►  "Check new message"
- Press  (MAIL) ►  "Check new message"

● If the  (Green) or  (Purple) icon was displayed, you have Message Request/Free held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your Message Request/Free is full, the  (Red) or  (Red) icon is displayed.

● If icons such as  (Red),  (Red),  (Red) and  (Red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail and Message Request/Free or read or unprotect (P. 233, 234) your unread or protected mail and Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Mail, a Message Request, and a Message Free which are read, or the protection is canceled are overwritten sequentially from the oldest one at the time of reception.

● The table below shows the numbers of Message Request/Free held at the i-mode Center and the periods for which they are held.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message Request	300	72 hours
Message Free	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest message.

● Even if a Message Request or Message Free is stored at the i-mode Center, the  (Green) or  (Purple) may not be displayed if the FOMA terminal is turned OFF, or if  is displayed when the message reached at the i-mode Center.

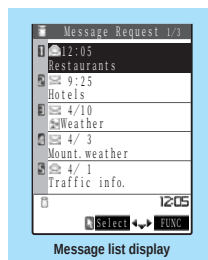
<Message Request/Free>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

● When a Message Request/Free from the i-mode Center arrives on the FOMA terminal, the  (Green) or  (Purple) icon appears at the top of the display.

1 Press (i-mode) ► "Message" ► "Message Request" or "Message Free".

The "Message list display" appears.



Message list display

2 Select the message to be displayed and press .

The "Message detail display" appears.

To display the next or previous message in the Message Detail display, press .

In the Message Detail display, press  to return to the Message List display.



Note

● Buttons such as "OK" and "Cancel" may appear in a Message Request/Free. In such cases, the buttons can be used in the same way as buttons in a site.

Using the function menu in the Message List display

In the message list display...

➔ P. 232

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Message list display function menu 1/2

 Display all	Returns from a sorted or filtered display to the original display (all items shown in reverse chronological order).										
 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Arranges the Message Request/Free in chronological or reverse chronological order. <tr> <td> Chronological ↑</td><td>Arranges Message Request/Free in reverse chronological order.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Chronological ↓</td><td>Arranges Message Request/Free in chronological order.</td></tr>	 Chronological ↑	Arranges Message Request/Free in reverse chronological order.	 Chronological ↓	Arranges Message Request/Free in chronological order.						
 Chronological ↑	Arranges Message Request/Free in reverse chronological order.										
 Chronological ↓	Arranges Message Request/Free in chronological order.										
 Filter	▶ Choose from the following options: Displays only the Message Request/Free that meet the specified criteria. <tr> <td> Unread</td><td>Displays only unread messages.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Read</td><td>Displays only read messages.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Protected</td><td>Displays only protected messages.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Melody</td><td>Displays only messages with attached/pasted melodies.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Image</td><td>Displays only messages with attached images.</td></tr>	 Unread	Displays only unread messages.	 Read	Displays only read messages.	 Protected	Displays only protected messages.	 Melody	Displays only messages with attached/pasted melodies.	 Image	Displays only messages with attached images.
 Unread	Displays only unread messages.										
 Read	Displays only read messages.										
 Protected	Displays only protected messages.										
 Melody	Displays only messages with attached/pasted melodies.										
 Image	Displays only messages with attached images.										
 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects Message Request/Free.										
 Unprotect all	▶ Select "YES" and press . Remove the protection from all protected Message Request/Free.										
 No. of messages	Displays the number of saved Message Request/Free and the number of unread and protected messages.										
 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press .										

Message list display function menu 2/2

 Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press  ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
 Delete read	▶ Select "YES" and press .
 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press . About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142

Note

<Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread messages in chronological order, select "Unread" in the Filter menu and then "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list in the Sort display and then exit the display, when you display the respective list displays again the list will revert to showing all the messages.

<Filter>

- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list using the Filter function and then exit the display, when you display the respective list displays again the list will revert to showing all the messages.
- If "OFF" is selected in "Set image display", you cannot select "Image".
- Selecting "Delete read" or "Delete all" when a list of filtered Message Request/Free is displayed deletes all the currently displayed read or unprotected messages respectively.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- If the Message Requests and Message Frees saved at the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum allowable number (P. 229), the oldest Message Requests and Message Frees that are already read and not protected at the time of their reception are overwritten with the receiving messages.

<Delete>

- This option can be used to delete unread Message Request/Free also.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected Message Request/Free.

<Delete selected>

- This option can also be used to delete unread Message Request/Free.
- You cannot use this option to select protected Message Request/Free.

<Delete read>

- You cannot use this option to delete read Message Request/Free that are protected.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete read" deletes only the unprotected and read Message Request/Free shown in the current list display.

<Delete all>

- This option deletes unread Message Request/Free also.
- This option does not delete protected Message Request/Free.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete all" deletes only the unprotected Message Request/Free shown in the current list display.

Using the function menu in the Message Detail display

In the message detail display...

➔ P. 233

1

Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Message detail display function menu 1/2

① Add to phonebook	Stores the phone number and e-mail address shown in the Message Request/Free in the phonebook. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" ➔ P. 93
② Save melody	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Saves the melody attached to or pasted into a Message Request/Free.
③ Save image	Saves the image attached to a Message Request/Free. See "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" ➔ P. 221
④ Reload image	Reloads an image in the message body when image loading has failed.
⑤ Protect ON/OFF	Turns ON/OFF the protection of Message Request/Free.
⑥ Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Note

<Save melody>

- To play the specified melody, highlight the attached melody and press .
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- When you save a melody, it is saved under its title, not under the file name. If the melody is untitled, it is stored under the file name.
- Saved melodies may not be played correctly in some cases.

<Reload image>

- Some images may not be displayed correctly even when reloaded.
- Only images in the message body can be reloaded. You cannot reload attached images. It does not reload when  is displayed.

<Delete>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected Message Request/Free.

Using SSL Certificates

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set to valid/invalid.

- 1 Press **(menu)** ▶ Select **Settings** and press **(enter)** ▶ Press **[8 F.W.]** "Connection setting" ▶ Select "Certificate" and press **(enter)**.



- 2 Select a certificate and press **(enter)** ▶ Check the certificate.

■ Validating and invalidating SSL certificates

Select the SSL certificate and press **(enter)** (FUNC) ▶ **[2 md]** "Valid/Invalid".

Note

- All the certificates are set to "Valid" at the time of purchase.
- The **[Valid]** icon appears when you select "Valid" and the **[Invalid]** icon appears when you select "Invalid".
- If you select "Invalid", you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- DoCoMo Certificate 2 is always set to "Valid" and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

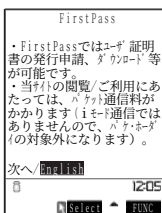
User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Operating the user certificates.

- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with the blue FOMA card (UIM).
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, you must first set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. → P. 45
- The displays and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

- 1 Press **(enter)** (**FirstPass**) ▶ **[8 F.W.]** "Client certificate" ▶ Select "English" and press **(enter)**.



2 Select an option and press .



■ If you are using FirstPass for the first time

Select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the information provided.

■ To request a certificate

Select "Request your certificate" and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

Enter your PIN2 code in the PIN2 code entry display.

For information on your PIN2 code → P. 143

■ To download your certificate

Select "Download your certificate" and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

■ To apply for an invalidation

Select "Other settings" and then select "Revoke your certificate".

Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Press ► Select "YES" and press .

Note

- Note that packet communication charges incurred while you are downloading or completing the application for a FirstPass user certificate are not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal. However, packet communication charges incurred while you are accessing FirstPass compliant sites during i-mode communication are covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulations (Japanese only)" and read the information carefully.
- You cannot use the following functions while connecting to the FirstPass Center:
 - Making or receiving video-phone calls (making and receiving voice calls is permitted)
 - Sending or receiving i-mode mail (sending and receiving SMS is permitted)
 - Check new message (Check new SMS is permitted)
 - Sending or receiving Speed photo mail
 - Receiving Message Request/Free
 - Downloading i-motion
 - Web To function
- You cannot consecutively send a user certificate request, download the certificate and request that the certificate be invalidated. After each step is completed, you must briefly press  and disconnect to the FirstPass Center.
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- To use FirstPass after invalidating your certificate, send a user certificate request and download the certificate again.
- To check a downloaded user certificate, see "Using SSL Certificates" (P. 235).

Using a User Certificate to Connect to a Site

In the sites display...

➡ P. 206

1 Confirm user certificate transmission ► Select "YES" and press ► Enter your PIN2 code.

Note

- To connect to a FirstPass compliant site using a downloaded user certificate, you must enter your PIN2 code.
- If you connect to a FirstPass compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You can still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting "YES", but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press  to return to the original display. Download a user certificate from the FirstPass Center before reconnecting to the site.

■ Notes on Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's digital authentication service. When you use FirstPass, the site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates so that both parties can each conduct client authentication by checking the certificate provided the other party.
- FirstPass can be used either when the FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the CD-ROM bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the PDF-format "FirstPassManual" contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only).
To view the PDF-format "FirstPassManual", you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended). If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download one of the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass ご利用規則" (FirstPass usage regulation) shown on your display before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you will need to enter your PIN2 code (P. 143). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated at an NTT DoCoMo service counter.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing Your Certificate Host

There is normally no need to change this setting.

Default setting

DoCoMo

Use this procedure to select a different host when you are downloading a user certificate.

- Press ► Select and press ► Press "Connection setting" ► Select "Certificate host" and press .
- Press "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit) ► Enter your security code and press ► Choose from the following options:

See "Security code" → P. 142

Default URL	Sets the URL for the host in the initial display. The name can consist of up to 100 half-pitch characters.
Host address	Sets the host address. The address can consist of up to 99 half-pitch characters.

- After completing the settings, press (Finish).

Note

- To change a stored User setting host, use the procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored User setting host, select "Delete" from the Function menu, enter your security code and select "YES".

● Mail

What is i-mode mail?	240
Displaying the Mail menu <Mail menu>	246
■ Composing i-mode mail	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail <Compose message/Send>	247
Composing and Sending Deco-mail <Deco-mail>	256
Creating Deco-mail using Templates	260
Attaching Files <Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail>	264
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later <Save i-mode mail>	265
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists	267
■ Receiving and Using i-mode Mail	
When You Receive i-mode Mail <Auto receive mail>	268
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively <Receive option>	270
Checking for i-mode Mail <Check new message>	271
Replying to i-mode Mail <Reply to mail>	272
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients <Forward mail>	274
Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook	275
Loading Melodies from i-mode Mail <Save melody>	276
Loading Images in Image Mail <Receive image mail>	276
Loading i-motion from i-motion Mail <i-motion mail>	277
■ Using Mailboxes	
Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox <Inbox/Outbox>	277
■ Using the Mail Records	
Using the Mail Records <Received address/Sent address>	294
■ Specifying Your Mail Settings	
Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions <Mail setting>	296
■ Using Chat Mail	
Composing and Sending Chat Mail <Compose chat/Send>	302
■ Using SMS	
Composing and Sending SMS <Compose SMS/Send>	310
When You Receive an SMS <Receive SMS>	313
Checking for SMS <Check new SMS>	315
Specifying Your SMS Settings <Set SMS>	315
Saving SMS to Your FOMA card (UIM) <UIM operation>	316

What is i-mode mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS. To use i-mode mail, you must first subscribe to the "i-mode" service. For more information on how to send and receive i-mode mail → P. 247, 268.

- You can send and receive SMS (text message) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode. For information on how to send and receive SMS → P. 310, 313

About i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet.

Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

New i-mode subscribers

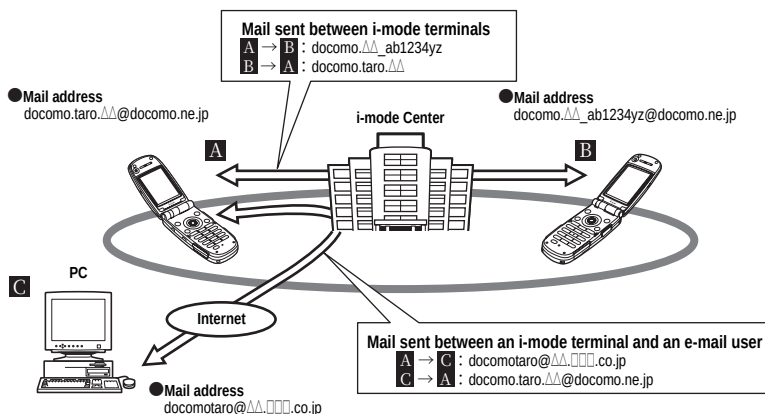
The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To check your own e-mail address>

Menu display ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ Press (4) "Options" ▶ (I) "Mail Settings" ▶ "Confirm Mail Address"

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode-terminals (including mova), only the part before the @ symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive a mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including "@docomo.ne.jp", must be used.



- For information on sending i-mode mail → P. 247
- For information on receiving i-mode mail → P. 268

Receiving mail selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before downloading your mail. → P. 270

Specifying your mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>

Menu display ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ Press (4) "Options" ▶ (I) "Mail Settings" ▶ Each setting

* For details, refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing your mail address <Change Mail Address>

For example, if your address is "docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp", you can change the part that precedes the @ symbol to your preferred name.

■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>

When your phone number is used as your mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

■ Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Reset Mail Address>

Use this feature to reset your mail address to "[your phone number]@docomo.ne.jp".

■ Confirming your mail address <Confirm Mail Address>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ Mail accept/reject settings

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

- ① Domain-selective reception <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Mail from Selected Domains>
 - Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among au, Vodafone, TU-KA and WILLCOM.
 - Also accepts only mail from specified domains when the mail is not from one of the above providers.
 - * You continue to receive all mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode and i-shot services and the Charge Notice service, as well as e-billing invoice notifications and M-stage Visualnet mail.
- ② Address-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Selected Mail/Reject Selected Mail>
 - This feature allows you to accept or reject mail from specified addresses among all the mail you receive.
- ③ i-mode mail-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive only i-mode mail/Reject only i-mode mail>
 - Use this feature to accept or reject only mail from other i-mode subscribers (rejects mail sent via the Internet).
- ④ Restricting mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
 - This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including mova) once you have received 200 messages from that sender in 1 day. The default setting is "Reject", so you can reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders simply by leaving this setting unchanged.
- ⑤ Unsolicited advertising ※ mail rejection <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
 - This feature lets you receive/reject mail marked as "未承諾広告※" at the top of the title field that is sent to you for advertising without your consent. The FOMA terminal's default setting is "Reject", so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising.
(Senders are legally required to include "未承諾広告※" (6 full-pitch Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)
 - * You cannot set "Domain-selective reception", "Address-specific reception", "Address-specific rejection", "i-mode mail-specific reception" and "i-mode mail-specific rejection" at the same time.
- ⑥ Reject SMS <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings>
 - This function allows you to reject all SMS or only SMS with no caller ID, and to confirm status.

■ Checking your mail settings <Confirm Settings>

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

■ Restricting mail size <Limit Mail Size>

Use this option to limit the size of acceptable mail to a preset size.

■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

Use this option to stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

■ Preventing nuisance mail

Changing mail address and setting Address-specific reception/rejection are the effective ways of preventing nuisance mail.

Note

<Register a Secret Code>

- You may not receive such an error message as "Invalid address" when you send an i-mode mail to other than DoCoMo address.

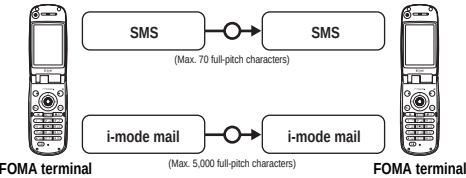
● Your SMS address

Your SMS address is your "subscriber mobile phone number".

● Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

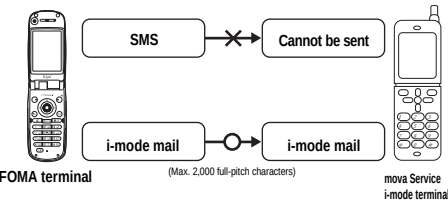
FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal

You can only exchange SMS with other FOMA terminal users.



FOMA terminal-to-mova Service i-mode terminal

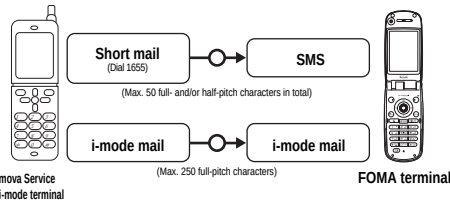
To send messages from the FOMA terminal to a mova Service i-mode terminal, use i-mode mail.



*: You cannot send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to a mova Service i-mode terminal.

mova Service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova Service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



- *: Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.
- Short Mail cannot be sent from a FOMA terminal. Dialing 1655 does not enable you to send Short Mail from your FOMA terminal.
 - On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova Service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

● Numbers of characters that can be sent/received

The table below shows the limits on the number of characters that you can send or receive using i-mode mail and SMS.

■ i-mode mail

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana, etc.)
Subject	15	30
Mail address	—	50
Message	5,000*	10,000*

*: The number of characters in the message that you can send or receive decreases if a file (melody, image or i-motion) is attached to the message. Note also that the number of characters that can be sent in Deco-mail is no more than half the numbers shown above.

SMS

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana* ¹ , etc.)
Phone number	—	20 (numbers only)* ²
Message	70	160* ³

*1: A half-pitch katakana is counted as one full-pitch character.

*2: When you entered "+" at the beginning, 21 characters can be entered.

*3: Only half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols (excluding 。 「 」 { } [] \、・・° ° ^ ` ~). (Up to 70 characters when other characters are included.)

Note

- You can send and receive i-mode mail where the message body contains up to 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes), but the number of characters that can be sent and received is reduced depending on the amount of data in any attached files. You cannot send or receive files that are incompatible with i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
(The "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is included in the count of the number of characters that can be received.)
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "r" or "l" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- When you send i-mode mail to a mova Service i-mode terminal, the message body can contain up to a maximum of 2,000 full-pitch characters. When you send an attached file other than i-shot, that file will be deleted.
- If the number of characters in the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, all characters that exceed the limit are automatically deleted.
- Except for mail to be exchanged between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the messages as they may not be displayed to the recipient properly.

If the i-mode terminal cannot receive mail

When mail is delivered to the i-mode Center, it is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, if your i-mode terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, or if you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 297), the mail is stored at the i-mode Center.

While mail is held at the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times over a set period of time. Using the other setting, you can select and download your mail at the i-mode Center.

Note

<i-mode mail>

- The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

- Mail that is left at the i-mode Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- The limit on the number of messages that can be held differs depending on the mail file sizes. When the amount of held mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode Center no longer accepts incoming mail and any new mail is returned to the sender together with an error message. When this happens, the  (Red) icon appears on your i-mode terminal's display.
If you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 297),  (Red) does not appear on your i-mode terminal when the limit is exceeded.
- You can receive mail held at the i-mode Center to your i-mode terminal using "Check new message" (P. 271) or "Receive option" (P. 270). When the new mail arrives on your i-mode terminal, other held mail and messages are also received at the same time.
- All the mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted once it has been received on your i-mode terminal. The received mail is saved on your i-mode terminal. → P. 268
- Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- If you use Suspend Mail function, new mail is not held at the i-mode Center.

<SMS>

- SMS are held at the SMS Center for a maximum of 72 hours. You can set the holding period for sent SMS using "SMS validity period" (P. 297, 312).
- SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period are automatically deleted.
- You can receive SMS held at the SMS Center on your FOMA terminal using "Check new SMS" (P. 315).
- SMS held at the SMS Center are deleted once they have been received on your FOMA terminal. The received SMS are saved on your FOMA terminal.
- SMS received on your FOMA terminal can be moved or copied to your FOMA card (UIM). → P. 316

Attachments

Attached melodies

You can attach melody files that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melody files. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with an attached melody → P. 264
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached melody → P. 276

Attached images

Still images that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet website or retrieved from external memory can be attached to i-mode mail and then sent and received on your FOMA terminal. (Note that you cannot attach still images when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited. If you send mail other than i-shot mail with an image attached to a mova terminal, the attached image is deleted.)

- To send i-mode mail with an attached image → P. 264
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached image → P. 276

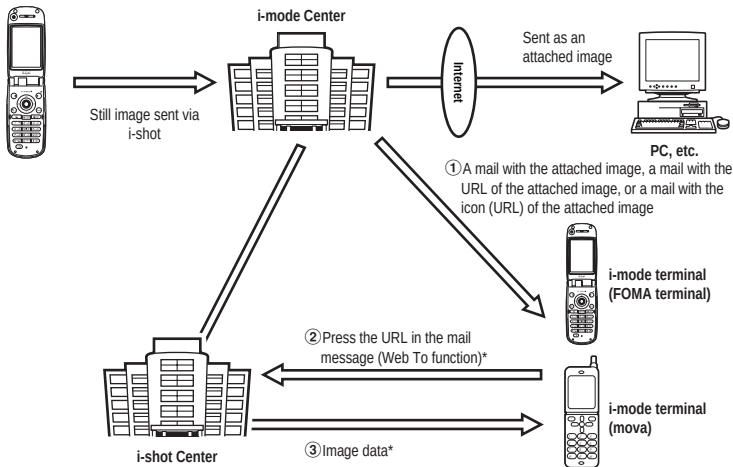
i-shot

You can use i-shot to exchange still images shot using the terminal with camera function as attached files with i-mode terminals (including mova), PC or third-party mobile phones. The attached file format or the URL (or icon) to view the image and the storage expiration date of the image is automatically sent to the recipient, and clicking the URL can download the image.

The maximum number of full-pitch characters in the message body in mail to a mova Service i-mode terminal is 184 (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files, the files are deleted and only the message arrives.

- To send i-mode mail with an attached image → P. 264
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached image → P. 276

i-mode terminal (FOMA terminal)



*: If you receive a mail with the URL of the attached image.

Images are held for up to 10 days at the i-shot Center, after which they are automatically deleted.

An i-mode terminal can receive up to 500 KB image. And, the size of the downloaded image will be automatically adjusted to the screen of the i-mode terminal.

i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites with i-motion mail supporting phones, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

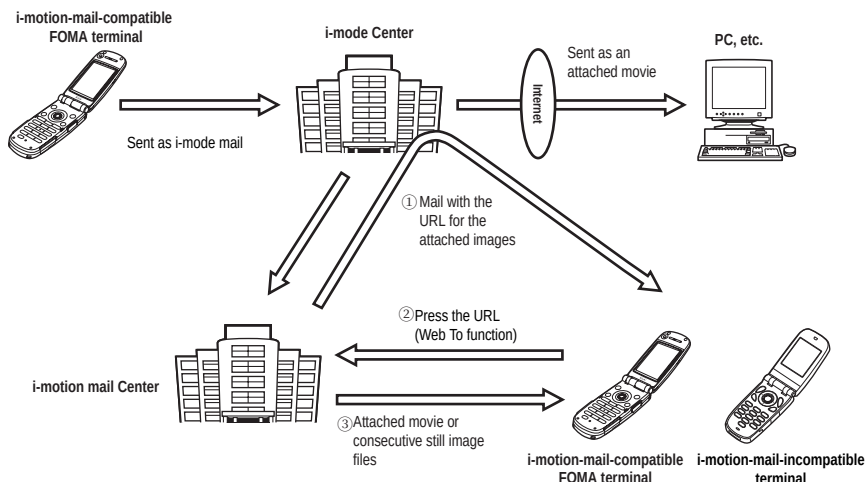
- To send i-motion mail → P. 264
- To receive i-motion mail → P. 277

■ How the service works

Movie files attached to i-motion mail are sent to the i-motion mail Center where they are saved. (If the mail is sent to a PC, the data is sent directly as an attached file.)

When i-motion mail is received by a phone that supports i-motion mail, the URL appears in the message body of the mail and the recipient can then download the movie by pressing the URL.

If you send i-motion mail to a phone that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted into consecutive still images and the recipient receives a mail message containing the URL for the images. The recipient can then download the images by pressing the URL displayed in the mail.



Movies are stored at the i-motion mail Center for up to 10 days. If this storage period is exceeded, the movies are automatically deleted.

An i-motion-mail-compatible terminal can receive up to 500 KB movie. And, the size of the downloaded movie will be automatically adjusted to the screen of the i-motion-mail-compatible terminal.

■ Deco-mail (Decoration mail)

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by allowing you to vary the text size or change the background color, etc. when editing mail, or by pasting images into the message body. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.)

If Deco-mail is sent to a terminal that is not compatible with Deco-mail, it is received as a message containing URL. The recipient can then view the Deco-mail by pressing that URL.

- See "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P. 256
- Compatible phones: 70Xi series, 90Xi series
880iES (only for viewing received Deco-mail)

■ Broadcast mail

This feature allows you to send the same i-mode mail message to up to 5 addresses at once. → P. 251

■ Cc/Bcc sending and receiving

As on a PC, you can select recipients in "To", "Cc" and/or "Bcc" when editing i-mode mail.

However, if there is no address in the "To" field, the mail cannot be sent.

See "☐ Change rcv. type" in "New mail display function menu 1/3" in "Using the function menu in the New mail display" → P. 250

■ Chat mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

Note

<Attached melodies/images>

- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send photos shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- If you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal (excluding all the 501 models, R691i, and R209i), you can only send 1 JPEG-format image as an attachment.

<i-motion mail>

- When you send i-motion mail to the i-mode terminal, i-motion can be loaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing i-motion that is saved at i-motion mail Center. If you have loaded over 50 times, i-motion cannot be loaded any more.
- Even if "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send movies shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- To play an i-motion on a PC, you must have compatible software. See the DoCoMo website for details.

<Broadcast mail>

- The call charges are the same as if 1 message were sent. However, you are charged for the amount of data in the additional recipient addresses.

<Chat mail>

- Communication charges for multiple recipients are the same as for the broadcast mail.

Important

You may lose the contents of your received, sent, and draft mails through damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss. We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and draft mails, or store them on the miniSD memory card (P. 392). If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using a FOMA USB cable (optional) and Data Link Software (P. 558).

<Mail menu>

Displaying the Mail menu

1 Press  (.

Mail menu 1/2

 Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder list display. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-α.ppli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS. → P. 277
 Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder list display. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-α.ppli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS. → P. 277
 Draft	Shows the Draft mail list display. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. → P. 265
 Compose message	Shows the display used for composing i-mode mail.
 Chat mail	Shows the display for using Chat mail. → P. 304
 Compose SMS	Shows the display used for composing SMS.
 Check new message	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and downloads any i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center.
 Receive option	Use this option to check the subjects of i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center and then select the i-mode mail to be received or delete i-mode mails from the i-mode Center.
 Check new SMS	Sends an inquiry to the SMS Center and downloads any SMS held at the SMS Center.
 Template	Shows the Templates display. → P. 263

Mail menu 2/2

 Mail settings	See "Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions" → P. 296

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- To attach a melody, image, movie or i-motion → P. 264
- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. For more information on Deco-mail → P. 256
- For information on entering text → P. 522

- 1 Press  (MAIL)  "Compose message".**
The "New mail display" appears.



- 2 Select  and press .**
The "Address entering display" appears.



- 3 Enter the address and press .**
See "Using the function menu in the Address/Subject entering display" → P. 252

- 4 Select  and press .**
The "Subject entering display" appears.



- 5 Enter the subject and press .**
The subject can consist of up to 15 full-pitch characters or 30 half-pitch characters.
See "Using the function menu in the Address/Subject entering display" → P. 252

- 6 Select  and press .**
The "Message entering display" appears.



7 Enter the message body and press .

The message body can consist of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character and shown as “↵”. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

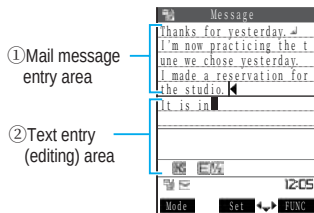
See “Using the function menu in the message entering display” → P. 253

You can compose and send the Deco-mail. → P. 256

You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. → P. 260

■ Display shown when you enter an i-mode mail message

The display when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.

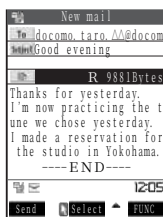


① Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.

② Text entry (editing) area: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it. You can use the Word Prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area.

→ P. 529

8 Check the message and then press (Send).



An animation is displayed while the i-mode mail is being sent. Press  to return to the Mail Menu display.

■ To interrupt transmission

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.

Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent anyway.

● Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook display



Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press  (.

For information on searching the phonebook → P. 98

The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the New mail display.

● Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail

Select “Save” from the Function menu on the New mail display while composing the message.

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all. Once you have 20 draft i-mode mail messages stored, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail or SMS. You can subsequently send i-mode mail saved in the Draft mailbox.

Note

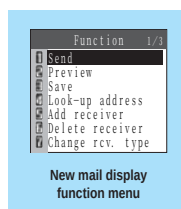
- If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS messages) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail is not replaced.
- If "Keypad dial lock" is set, you cannot enter the address directly.
- When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- If you press the  or  key without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing display. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original display without discarding the text.
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Select "NO" to return to the original display.
- You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,).
- You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses. However, you must set an address in the "To" field to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- If you enter and address that was stored in the phonebook with a "Secret code" assigned (P. 102), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not saved in the record of sent mail addresses.
- Secret codes are only added to addresses comprised of phone numbers or that use the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format.
- Provided the recipient is an i-mode subscriber, you can also send i-mode mail from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- Spaces (blanks) are also counted in the same way as characters.

Using the function menu in the New mail display

In the new mail display...

→ P. 247

1 Press  (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:



Mail

New mail display function menu 1/3

1 Send	Sends i-mode mail.								
2 Preview	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message.								
3 Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. See "Saving i-mode mail" → P. 265								
4 Look-up address	► Choose from the following options: Enters the address by browsing the phonebook, records or mailing lists. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Enters a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Searching for an address in the phonebook" → P. 251</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Sent address</td><td>Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Received address</td><td>Enters a mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 Mail member</td><td>Enters mail addresses from a mailing list. See "Entering mailing list member addresses" → P. 252</td></tr> </table>	1 Phonebook	Enters a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Searching for an address in the phonebook" → P. 251	2 Sent address	Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.	3 Received address	Enters a mail address from the Received address list.	4 Mail member	Enters mail addresses from a mailing list. See "Entering mailing list member addresses" → P. 252
1 Phonebook	Enters a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Searching for an address in the phonebook" → P. 251								
2 Sent address	Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.								
3 Received address	Enters a mail address from the Received address list.								
4 Mail member	Enters mail addresses from a mailing list. See "Entering mailing list member addresses" → P. 252								
5 Add receiver	► Choose from the following options: Adds the address from the phonebook, records or mailing list. See "Adding addresses" → P. 251 <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Adds a mail address by searching the phonebook.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Sent address</td><td>Adds a mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Received address</td><td>Adds a mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 Enter address</td><td>Adds a mail addresses directly entering each characters.</td></tr> </table>	1 Phonebook	Adds a mail address by searching the phonebook.	2 Sent address	Adds a mail address from the Sent address list.	3 Received address	Adds a mail address from the Received address list.	4 Enter address	Adds a mail addresses directly entering each characters.
1 Phonebook	Adds a mail address by searching the phonebook.								
2 Sent address	Adds a mail address from the Sent address list.								
3 Received address	Adds a mail address from the Received address list.								
4 Enter address	Adds a mail addresses directly entering each characters.								

⑥ Delete receiver	▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes an added address. If a recipient's address has been entered after the deleted address, it is moved back left and displayed. You cannot delete the recipient's address if only one recipient's address has been entered.						
⑦ Change rcv. type	▶ Choose from the following options: Select address and changes the address type. <table> <tr> <td>① To</td><td>The recipient's address. Mail addresses entered in the To field are also displayed to the other recipients.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Cc</td><td>Broadcast address. Mail addresses entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Bcc</td><td>Broadcast address. Mail addresses entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.</td></tr> </table>	① To	The recipient's address. Mail addresses entered in the To field are also displayed to the other recipients.	② Cc	Broadcast address. Mail addresses entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.	③ Bcc	Broadcast address. Mail addresses entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
① To	The recipient's address. Mail addresses entered in the To field are also displayed to the other recipients.						
② Cc	Broadcast address. Mail addresses entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.						
③ Bcc	Broadcast address. Mail addresses entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.						

New mail display function menu 2/3

① Template	You can use templates to create Deco-mail. See "Creating Deco-mail using Templates". → P. 260				
② Attach file	▶ Choose from the following options: Attaches a melody, image or i-motion file to an i-mode mail message. See "Attaching Files" → P. 264				
③ Activate camera	▶ Choose from the following options: Activate camera function. "Shooting Still Images" → P. 166 "Shooting Movies" → P. 175 <table> <tr> <td>① Photo mode</td><td>Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or Mail (S) (128 × 96). Storage setting is Normal.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Movie mode</td><td>Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot a movie. The movie sizes you can shoot are Large (176 × 144) or Small (128 × 96). File size setting is Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long).</td></tr> </table>	① Photo mode	Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or Mail (S) (128 × 96). Storage setting is Normal.	② Movie mode	Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot a movie. The movie sizes you can shoot are Large (176 × 144) or Small (128 × 96). File size setting is Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long).
① Photo mode	Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or Mail (S) (128 × 96). Storage setting is Normal.				
② Movie mode	Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot a movie. The movie sizes you can shoot are Large (176 × 144) or Small (128 × 96). File size setting is Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long).				
④ Delete att. file	▶ Select "YES" and press .				
⑤ Del all att. files	▶ Select "YES" and press .				
⑥ Add header	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.				
⑦ Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.				

New Mail display function menu 3/3

① Erase message	▶ Select "YES" and press . Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
② Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

Note

<Change rcv. type>

- You cannot send i-mode mail with no address set in the "To" field.
- Mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

<Add header> <Add signature>

- If you select the "Insert" checkbox in "Header/Signature", the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message.
- If the combined size of the text (including attached melodies or images) and the pasted header and/or signature exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters, you will not be able to paste the header and/or signature into the mail.
- When you paste the header or signature, the header is decorated according to the color and size of the first character in the message text and the signature is decorated according to the last character.

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter an address by searching for mail addresses in the phonebook.

In the new mail display function menu display...

➔ P. 249

- 1 Press **[4] [F1]** "Look-up address" ▶ Press **[1] [F1]** "Phonebook" ▶ Select the search method and press **[OK]**.

Searching the phonebook → P. 98

- 2 In the Phonebook Detail display, select the mail address and press **[OK]**.

- 3 Edit the subject and message body and send it.

For more detailed procedure after this step, see step 4 to 8 in P. 247.

Note

- If the phone number or mail address is already entered, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing data. Select "YES" to overwrite the previous recipient or "NO" to retain the previous recipient.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you can only retrieve phone numbers nominated in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- When "Redial/Dialed calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF", "Dialed calls" or "Sent address" cannot be displayed. When "Received calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF", "Received calls" or "Received address" cannot be displayed.
- When "(Change)" is displayed, press **[Change]** (Change) to switch between the Sent address and Redial list, or between the Received address and the Received calls list.

Adding addresses

You can enter additional addresses so that an i-mode mail message is sent to multiple addresses at the same time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses. If you have already entered 5 addresses or no addresses are entered, the "Add receiver" option is no longer available in the Function menu.

<Example: Looking up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

In the new mail display function menu display...

➔ P. 249

- 1 Press **[5] [F1]** "Add receiver" ▶ Press **[1] [F1]** "Phonebook" ▶ Select the search method and press **[OK]**.

Searching the phonebook → P. 98

- 2 Select the mail address in the Phonebook details display and press **[OK]**.

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.

■ To change the entered address

Select the address you want to change and re-enter the mail address.

You can also change (overwrite) the address by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu.



3 Edit the subject and message body and send it.

For more details, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 247.

Note

- If mail could not be sent to a recipient, a message appears notifying you that mail could not be sent to an address.
- If you try to send an i-mode mail message with the same address entered more than once, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated address. Select "YES" to delete the duplicated address. Select "NO" to cancel sending.

Entering mailing list member addresses <Mail member>

Using "Mail member" allows you to add multiple addresses at once.

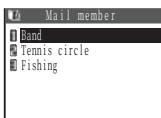
To use "Mail member", you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand. → P. 267

In the new mail display function menu display...

➡ P. 249

1 Press  "Look-up address" ▶ Press  "Mail member".

2 Select the mail member and press .



Select the mail member to enter it into the recipient field.

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it.

For more details, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 247.

Note

- When "Keypad dial lock" is set, you cannot browse and enter address from mailing lists.
- If a recipient has already been entered and you specify a recipient from a mail member, a message is displayed asking you whether you want to overwrite the recipient. Select "YES" if you want to overwrite the recipient. Select "NO" if you do not want to overwrite the recipient.

Using the function menu in the Address/Subject entering display

In the address/subject entering display...

➡ P. 247

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Address/Subject entering display function menu 1/4

 PI-SB input mode	See "Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P. 534
 Upper case ^{*1}	See "Switching between upper case and lower case" → P. 532
 Full pitch ^{*2}	See "Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P. 524
 Copy	See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
 Cut	See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
 Paste	See "Pasting text" → P. 542
 Common phrases	See "Entering common phrases" → P. 538

*1: In the subject entering display  Lower case" is displayed.

*2: In the subject entering display  Half pitch" is displayed.

Address/Subject entering display function menu 2/4

① Space	See "Inserting a space (blank)" → P. 533
② Line feed	See "Inserting a line feed" → P. 533
③ Symbols	See "Inserting symbols" → P. 534
④ Pictograph	See "Entering pictographs" → P. 534
⑤ Kuten code	See "Entering Kuten Codes" → P. 542
⑥ Overwrite*1	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry.
⑦ Quote phonebook	See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538

*1: If you have selected the overwrite, "Insert" is displayed.

Address/Subject entering display function menu 3/4

① Quote own number	See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538	
② Access reader	Paste text information gathered with the "Access reader". See "Scanning Text" → P. 189	
③ Bar code reader	Paste text information gathered with the "Bar code reader". See "Using the Bar Code Reader" → P. 185	
④ Refer dictionary	Start the dictionary. See "Using Dictionaries" → P. 448	
⑤ Prediction ON ^{*1}	Specify whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF.	
⑥ CHG input method	▶ Switch the input method. Switch the input method.	
	① Mode 1(5-touch)	The character input method switches to "5-touch method".
	② Mode 2(2-touch)	The character input method switches to "2-touch method".
	③ Mode 3(T9 input)	The character input method switches to "T9 Input method".
⑦ T9 Kanji CHG mode ^{*2}	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. When "T9 change mode" is set to "T9 Kanji change mode," "T9 Kana CHG mode" is displayed. Conversely when "T9 change mode" is set to "T9 Kana change mode," "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is displayed. When you switch conversion modes while entering characters on the character input (edit) screen, the converted mode is effective only with the current screen. Once you have finished entering the characters and the next character input screen is displayed, it returns to the setting specified in "Character input method".	

*1: In the subject entering display "Prediction OFF" is displayed.

*2: If you have selected the T9 Kanji CHG mode, "T9 Kana CHG mode" is displayed.

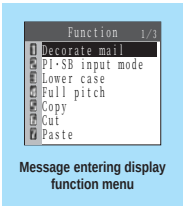
Address/Subject entering display function menu 4/4

① Jump	▶ Choose from the following options: Move the cursor quickly.	
	① To beginning	Jumps to the top of the page.
	② To end	Jumps to the bottom of the page.

Using the function menu in the message entering display

In the message entering display... ➡ P. 247

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Message entering display function menu 1/3

① Decorate mail	See "Decorating a message" → P. 257
② Pl+SB input mode	See "Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P. 534
③ Lower case	See "Switching between upper case and lower case" → P. 532
④ Half pitch	See "Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P. 524
⑤ Copy	See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
⑥ Cut	See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
⑦ Paste	See "Pasting text" → P. 542

Message entering display function menu 2/3

① Common phrases	See "Entering common phrases" → P. 538
② Space	See "Inserting a space (blank)" → P. 533
③ Line feed	See "Inserting a line feed" → P. 533
④ Symbols	See "Inserting symbols" → P. 534
⑤ Pictograph	See "Entering pictographs" → P. 534
⑥ Quote phonebook	See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538
⑦ Quote own number	See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538

Message entering display function menu 3/3

1 Refer dictionary	Uses the dictionary. → P. 448	
2 Jump	▶ Choose from the following options: Moves the cursor around quickly.	
	1 To beginning	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the message.
	2 To end	Moves the cursor to the end of the message.
3 Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.	
4 Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.	
5 Preview	Displays a preview of the message.	
6 Change window	When you are replying to mail while referring to the original message, this option switches between the reference display and the message entry display. See "Changing the Active Display" → P. 545	

Note

<Undo>

- After you press "Undo" and return the text or message decoration to its state 1 step ago, you cannot cancel "Undo".
- When you return to the New mail display by pressing (●) from the message body input screen, if you press (●), return to the new mail screen, and then go back to the message body input screen, you cannot "Undo". (On message entering display, if you select "Preview" after preview display appears, you are able to return.)

<Preview>

- When you put a phone number, e-mail address, URL or an indication to launch i-α.ppli in an i-mode mail message in the mail text, it is shown underlined in the preview display. However, the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and i-α.ppli To functions cannot be used.

Sending an image you shot during a call <Speed photo mail>

This function allows you to send the picture shot during voice call or the picture saved in your FOMA terminal to the other party.

- To use Speed photo mail, the phone number and e-mail address of the person you are talking to must be stored in the same phonebook.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

In the In-call display function menu...

➔ P. 49

1 Press  "Speed photo mail" ▶ Press  "Photo mode".

■ To send an image already saved on the FOMA terminal

Press  "Speed photo mail" ▶  "My picture".

Images that cannot be sent are grayed out and cannot be selected.

You can only send "Mail (L)" or "Mail (S)" images that are 9,000 bytes or less in size.

2 Press  or  to take the picture.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound as it takes the picture.

You can use the Camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. ➔ P. 164

The "Speed photo mail display" appears.



3 Press  ▶ Press .



A send confirmation message appears.

■ If multiple e-mail addresses are registered

Select the e-mail address of the intended recipient.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Note

- This function cannot be used in the following situations:
 - When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are not stored in the phonebook
 - When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode"
 - When the called party has not provided a caller ID (unwilling or unable to notify, etc.)
 - When "Restrict dialing" is set and the other party's phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings
 - When "PIM lock" is set
 - During packet communication (PPP)
 - When the draft mail is 20 messages
 - During call waiting
 - When the call was made during software updating
- If there are multiple e-mail addresses stored for the other party, the addresses shown in the send confirmation display are highlighted in the following order of precedence (where ① has the highest precedence):
 - ① i-mode address (where the "@" symbol is followed by "docomo.ne.jp")
 - ② Phone numbers or addresses without domains (the domain name is the part that follows the "@" symbol)
 - ③ The first address stored in the phonebook
- Mail sent using this function is stored in the Outbox with your phone number as the subject.
- If "1M (1160 x 870)", "VGA (640 x 480)", "CIF (352 x 288)", "Screen (240 x 345)", or "Stand-by (240 x 320)" is selected in "Select size", the setting reverts to "Mail (L) (176 x 144)" when this function is launched.
- If you change the format setting by "Select size" while this function is running, only the "Mail (L)" (176 x 144) and "Mail (S)" (128 x 96) formats can be selected.
- If you deselect "Image-valid" of "Attached file" in "Mail settings", you will be unable to receive Speed photo mails.

Using the Function menu in the Speed photo mail image checking display

In the speed photo mail image checking display...

➔ P. 255

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Speed Photo Mail Image checking display function menu

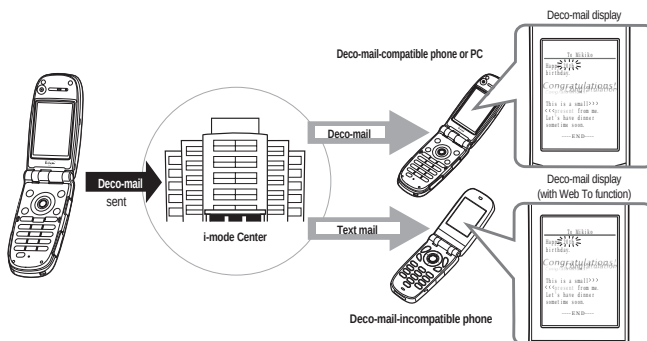
1 Save & send	➔ Press "YES" and press  ➔ Select "Phone" or "miniSD" ➔ If selected "Phone", select Folder ➔ Press . Saves the photographed image in My picture and then sends it as Speed photo mail.				
2 Compose message	➔ Select mail address and press . Sends the photographed image as Speed photo mail without saving it.				
3 Set as display	Saves and pastes the photographed image before sending it as Speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as "3 Set as display" in "Using the function menu in the Image Checking display". ➔ P. 169				
4 File restriction	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
5 Cancel	➔ Select "YES" and press . Deletes the photographed image and so you can retake the shot.				

<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, changing the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.
- Using Deco-mail to add decorative features to your mail decreases the number of characters that you can enter in the message in text mail.
- If you send Deco-mail to a phone that does not support this function, the recipient receives the mail as a message containing the URL. The recipient can then view the images with the Web To function by pressing the URL. Depending on the recipient's terminal model, this message may be invalid or may not be displayed at all.



Note

- If you use "Reply with quote" or "Forward" with the received Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images appear as quoted in the message.
- If you use "Reply with quote" or "Forward" with Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.
- Decoration may not be displayed properly when exchanging mails with other than Deco-mail-compatible i-mode terminals, such as PCs.
- If you send a Deco-mail to a Deco-mail-incompatible phone, it is held at the i-mode center for up to ten days, and it is deleted automatically after the holding term expired.

Decorating a message

In the message entering display function menu...

➔ P. 253

1 Press  "Decorate mail" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1  	▶ Use  to select a color and press  ▶ Enter the message and press . Selects the color of the entered text from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time  (Change) is pressed.						
2  	▶ Choose from the following options ▶ Enter the message and press . Selects the size of the entered text. <table> <tr> <td>1 </td><td>Sets large text.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 </td><td>Sets standard-size text.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 </td><td>Sets small text.</td></tr> </table>	1 	Sets large text.	2 	Sets standard-size text.	3 	Sets small text.
1 	Sets large text.						
2 	Sets standard-size text.						
3 	Sets small text.						
3  	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the image to be inserted. <table> <tr> <td>1 </td><td>Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. → P. 343</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 </td><td> Launches the Camera function so you can shoot the image to be inserted. → P. 166 The image size you can shoot is Mail (S) (128 x 96). </td></tr> </table>	1 	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. → P. 343	2 	Launches the Camera function so you can shoot the image to be inserted. → P. 166 The image size you can shoot is Mail (S) (128 x 96).		
1 	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. → P. 343						
2 	Launches the Camera function so you can shoot the image to be inserted. → P. 166 The image size you can shoot is Mail (S) (128 x 96).						
4  	▶ 1  ▶ Enter the message and press  ▶ Press  ▶  "Decorate mail" ▶ 2  ▶ . Makes the entered text flash. <table> <tr> <td>1 </td><td>Sets the point at which blinking starts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 </td><td>Sets the point at which blinking ends.</td></tr> </table>	1 	Sets the point at which blinking starts.	2 	Sets the point at which blinking ends.		
1 	Sets the point at which blinking starts.						
2 	Sets the point at which blinking ends.						
5  	▶ 1  ▶ Enter the text to be used as the subtitle and press . Displays the entered text as subtitles. <table> <tr> <td>1 </td><td>Sets the point at which ticker starts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 </td><td>Sets the point at which ticker ends.</td></tr> </table>	1 	Sets the point at which ticker starts.	2 	Sets the point at which ticker ends.		
1 	Sets the point at which ticker starts.						
2 	Sets the point at which ticker ends.						
6  	▶ 1  ▶ Enter the text that is to swing and press . Makes the entered text swing. <table> <tr> <td>1 </td><td>Sets the point at which swinging starts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 </td><td>Sets the point at which swinging ends.</td></tr> </table>	1 	Sets the point at which swinging starts.	2 	Sets the point at which swinging ends.		
1 	Sets the point at which swinging starts.						
2 	Sets the point at which swinging ends.						
7  	▶ Choose from the following options ▶ Enter the message and press . Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text. <table> <tr> <td>1 </td><td>Sets left-justified text.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 </td><td>Sets centered text.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 </td><td>Sets right-justified text.</td></tr> </table>	1 	Sets left-justified text.	2 	Sets centered text.	3 	Sets right-justified text.
1 	Sets left-justified text.						
2 	Sets centered text.						
3 	Sets right-justified text.						
8  	Inserts a line.						
9  	▶ Use  to select a color and press . Selects the background color from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time  (Change) is pressed.						
X  	See "Changing the decorations" → P. 258						

▶ Select "YES" and press .

Deletes all the decorations.

Note

- The last 5 colors of the 256-color palette selected are displayed at the bottom of the 25-color palette.
- If you move the cursor to text set to a different color, the text color setting changes to that color.
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, release the color setting.
- If you move the cursor to text set to a different size, the text size setting changes to that size.
- You can insert JPEG-format or GIF-format images up to a total size of 10,000 bytes including the message.
- You can insert up to 10 images. However, if there are too many images to display, a message saying you have run out of memory may appear before 10 images are reached. When the memory-low warning appears, select "YES" and press .
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save a mail once and then edit the mail and insert the image again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit display, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image (This remains valid during re-editing).
- If you insert an animation, the animation stops after a set time has elapsed.
- You cannot insert an image when it is prohibited to output that image to devices other than a FOMA terminal or send that image as an attachment.
- Flashing, subtitling or swinging stops once a set time has elapsed.
- If you used "Add header" or "Add signature" in the Compose Message display, the pasted header and signature take the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and end of the message respectively. To change the decorations used for the header or signature, select "Decorate mail" and "Edit" after pasting them into the message.
- The URL may not be clearly visible depending on the background color of it as it falls on the color of the URL characters of its original image or i-motion.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you deleted the text by holding down for 1 second or longer, both the text and the decoration data is deleted.

Changing the decorations

In the message entering display function menu...

➔ P. 253

1

Press "Decorate mail" ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Use to select a starting point and press ▶ Use to select an ending point and press ▶ Choose from the following options:

1	▶ Use to select a color and press .
Changes the color of the text that the range is specified. Selects the color of the text to be changed from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time (Change) is pressed.	
2	▶ Choose from the following options:
Changes the size of the text in the specified area.	
1	Changes to large text.
2	Changes to standard-size text.
3	Changes to small text.
3	Inserted images cannot be modified. Delete the image in the text entry display and then insert the correct image.
4	▶ Choose from the following options:
Changes or cancels flashing for the text in the specified area.	
1	Changes the blink setting.
2	Cancels blink.
5	▶ Choose from the following options:
Changes or cancels subtitling for the text in the specified area.	
1	Changes the ticker setting.
2	Cancels ticker.
6	▶ Choose from the following options:
Changes or cancels swinging for the text in the specified area.	
1	Changes the swing setting.
2	Cancels swinging.

	► Choose from the following options: Changes the position of the text in the specified area.	
1 	Changes to left-justified text.	
2 	Changes to centered text.	
3 	Changes to right-justified text.	
	Inserted lines cannot be changed. Delete the line in the text entry display and then insert the line again.	
	The specified background color cannot be changed. In the message entry display, press  (FUNC) and change the background color by selecting  "Decorate mail" ►  "Background" in that order.	
	Cancels decorations to text such as "Text color", "Font size", "Blink", "Ticker" and "Swing" in the specified area.	
	Returns to the message entry display.	
	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.	

Deco-mail images

The Deco-mail picture below is saved in the "Decomail-picture" folder in "My picture".

- To insert the Deco-mail picture in the message text, in the message body input display, select  (FUNC) →  →  →  →  → "Decomail-picture".
- The depictions of Deco-mail shown here may differ slightly from what actually appears on the display.



Mickey & Minnie's Date 1



Mickey & Minnie's Date 2



Mickey & Minnie's Date 3



Mickey & Minnie's Date 4



Mickey & Minnie's Date 5



HELLO



GOOD NIGHT



Yo-ho!



How Are You? 1



Cheer Up! 1



Enjoy!



Please Send Mail



Let's Go Together



Love Love



Thank You! 1



Sorry



Congratulations 1



Wrestling



Angry! 1



Happy Birthday



Congratulations 2



Congratulations 3



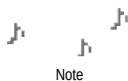
Roar!



A-Chooo!



Heart 1



Note



Twinkle 1



Trouble



Heart 2



Twinkle 2



Bleah!



Cheers!



Bummer



Not Fair!



Happy



Fantastic!



Surprise!



I Love You



Thank You!



How Are You?



Smile



Shock! 1



Cheer Up! 2



Cold Sweat



Angry! 2



Congratulations 4



Shock! 2



ZZZ



Dash!



Fine

©BVIG

Creating Deco-mail using Templates

You can create Deco-mail by using pre-installed templates. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

For information on the templates stored at the time of purchase → P. 263

● You can download templates from sites. To download a data file from a site → P. 223

● You can edit a template on the template preview screen. → P. 263

● The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number of characters that can be entered may be fewer than that for text mail.

● When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to discard the edited content in the message:

- When text is already entered in the mail message
- When the header or signature is automatically inserted
- When there is an attached file

● You cannot select a template that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail.

● For information on entering text → P. 522

- 1** Press ▶ Press "Template" ▶ Press "Load template" ▶ Select a template and press .

■ **To display a preview of the template**

Highlight the template and press (Play).

- The "Template preview Display" appears.
- During preview display, use to display other templates.
- If the template will not fit into a display, use to scroll the display.
- To select the template from the Preview display, press .

- 2** Press , and edit the message.



After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use "Decorate mail" (P. 256) to add a range of decorative features.

©BVIG

- 3** Press .



This confirms the edited i-mode mail message and returns to the New mail display.

When there is a phone number, mail address, URL or an indication to launch an i-app in the i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview display. However, the "Phone To/AV Phone To", "Mail To" and "Web To" functions cannot be used.

©BVIG

- 4** Edit the subject and message and press (Send).

Please refer to the operation from step 4 to step 8 of P. 247.

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates.
- If the message has any attachments or pasted files other than inserted images, those attachments or pasted files are deleted when the template is saved.
- Text-only mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.

- 1** Press ▶ Press "Template" ▶ Press "Save template" ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

- The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).

Viewing the templates list

- 1** Press (MAIL) ► Press "Template".
The "Template display" appears.



Template display

Using the function menu in the template display

In the template display...

➡ P. 262

- 1** Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Template display function menu 1/2

1 Compose message	You can use templates to create and send Deco-mail. See "Creating Deco-mail using Templates" → P. 260	
2 Sort	► Choose from the following options: Arranges the templates according to the specified criteria.	
	1 Chronological ↑	Arranges the templates in reverse chronological order by save date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges the templates in chronological order by save date/time.
	3 By title ↓	Arranges the templates in ascending order by title.
	4 By title ↑	Arranges the templates in descending order by title.
3 Edit title	► Enter title and press . Edits the template titles. Titles can consist of up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
4 Info	Displays the template save date, size and whether or not it includes images.	
5 Memory info	Shows the number of saved templates.	
6 Delete	► Select "YES" and press .	
7 Delete selected	► Select a template and press ► Press (Finish) ► Select "YES" and press .	

Template display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	► Enter your security code and press ► Select "YES" and press .
About Your Security Codes → P. 142	

Note

<Compose message>

- If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

In the template display...

➡ P. 262

- 1 **Select a template and press** .

The "Template preview display" appears.



Using the function menu in the Template Preview display

In the template preview display...

➡ P. 263

- 1 **Press**  **(FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Template preview display function menu

 Compose message	You can use templates to create and send Deco-mail. See "Creating Deco-mail using Templates" → P. 260
 Edit	Edits the template.
 Save insert image	▶ Select the image and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select an item and press  . Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not want to set the image in the display, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

Note

<Compose message>

- If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

- The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Year/Month/Day hour:minute).
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where XX=01 to 45).
- If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

Pre-installed templates

- Actual displayed templates may differ slightly from those shown here.



Mickey&Minnie'sDate1



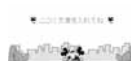
Mickey&Minnie'sDate2



Mickey&Minnie'sDate3



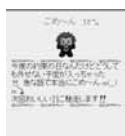
Mickey&Minnie'sDate4



Mickey&Minnie'sDate5



Thank You! 1



Sorry



Cheer Up!



Happy!



Shock!



Happy Birthday



How Do You Do?



Invitation to dinner



The Blues



Heart



Good Night



Flower



I Love You



Thank You!



How Are You?

©BVIG

<Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail>

Attaching Files

In the new mail display function menu...

➔ P. 249

1 Press ➔ Press "Attach file" ➔ Choose from the following options:

1 Attach melody	➔ Select a folder and press ➔ Select the melody and press to attach the melody.
2 Attach image	➔ Select a folder and press ➔ Select the image and press to attach the image.
3 Attach i-motion	➔ Select a folder and press ➔ Select the i-motion and press to attach the i-motion.

■ To switch the Image List display

Press (FUNC) ➔ Press "Title name".

The Picture List display changes to the Titles List display. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.

To return to the Picture List display, select "Picture" from the Function menu.

■ To display an image

Use to select the desired image and press (Play).

To return to the list display, press (CLR).

■ To play a melody

Select the melody you want to play and press (Play).

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press , , , , or (CLR).

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select "YES" to play the melody.

■ To send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal using i-shot mail

You can use i-shot mail to send a mail with an image attached to a mova service i-mode terminal.

When you send mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG-format image file. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

When you send mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, unless the recipient has multi-part mail reception enabled, the recipient can only receive messages up to 184 full-pitch characters long. If the recipient has multi-part mail reception enabled, you can send up to 2,000 full-pitch characters including the i-shot URL (where the image is held).

■ To compose i-mode mail with an image attached from My picture

Select "Compose message" from the function menu in the Image List display. ➔ P. 351

■ To compose i-mode mail with an i-motion/movie in i-motion

Select "Compose message" from the function menu in the Movie List display. ➔ P. 368

Note

● The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 e-mail	Comments
Melody Image ¹	10	You can attach up to 10 image and/or melody files in all, up to a total size of 10,000 bytes. The maximum number of files varies according to file size.
Large image ² Movie/i-motion ³ (i-motion mail)	1	

*1 : Still image shot using the FOMA terminal camera or a JPEG-format or GIF-format image of 10,000 bytes or less that was downloaded from a site.

*2 : JPEG-format image larger than 10,000 bytes but not larger than 500 KB. Note that the image is compressed down to a receivable size at the i-shot Center before being sent to the recipient. A GIF-format image larger than 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to i-mode mail.

*3 : Movie or i-motion of 500k bytes.

- QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) size is a suitable size for sending images to i-mode-compatible FOMA terminals.
- If an image selected for "Attach image" is more than the QVGA size (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or stand-by size (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), the confirmation message "Large size image. Attach to mail?" is displayed. Selecting "YES" and pressing  attaches the image to the i-mode mail. Select "NO" and press  to not attach the image.
- If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.
- When you attach a large image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters).
- Melodies, images or movies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.
- When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing the image is sent so the image can be viewed.
- When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.
- The file sizes of some i-motion may change and it may not be possible to attach them to mail.
- You cannot attach movies stored on a miniSD memory card. Import the movie first.
- An image shown in the New mail display may differ from the image displayed in My picture, the latter will be sent. Also, some images may not be displayed on the New mail display.
- An i-mode terminal with mova service cannot receive a melody or GIF-format image attached to a mail.
- You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it to phones other than FOMA terminals.
- You can attach images shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".
- The image you sent may not be displayed correctly or not displayed at all depending on the recipient's phone model. Also, the image you sent may be displayed with a low quality on the recipient's screen.
- If the recipient is not using a FOMA N700i, melodies you send may not be playable.
- You cannot attach melodies when there are no melodies stored on your FOMA terminal.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you sent or saved earlier.

Saving i-mode mail

This function saves mail you are composing in the Draft mailbox.

- You can save up to 20 mail and/or SMS in all.
- Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

In the new mail display function menu...

➡ P. 249

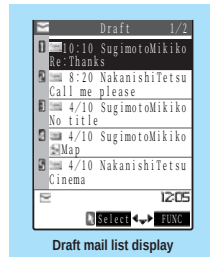
1

Press  "Save".

If there are characters in the address, subject, or message body or if there are attached files, the mail can be saved.

Sending draft i-mode mail

- 1 Press ► Press "Draft".
The "Draft mail list display" appears.
- 2 Select a mail message and press .
- 3 Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the message.



Using the function menu in the Draft Mail List display

In the draft mail list display...

➡ P. 266

- 1 Press ► Choose from the following options:

Draft mail list display function menu 1/2

1 List setting	► Select "Subject", "Name" or "Address". Changes the way the mail list is displayed.
2 Send Ir data	► Select "YES" and press .
3 Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413
4 Export	► Select "YES" and press .
5 No. of messages	Exports the selected mail to the miniSD memory card.
6 Delete	Shows the number of i-mode mail messages in the Draft mailbox.
7 Delete selected	► Select "YES" and press .
	► Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ► Press (Finish) ► Select "YES" and press .

Draft mail list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	► Enter your security code and press ► Select "YES" and press .
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists

Default setting

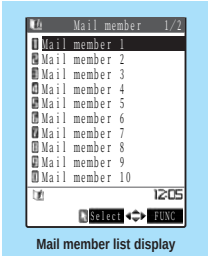
Not stored

If you store groups of addresses on your FOMA terminal as members in a mailing list, you can then address i-mode mail to multiple addresses simply by selecting a mailing list when you compose the message.

- You can store up to 20 mailing lists with up to 5 e-mail addresses in each list.

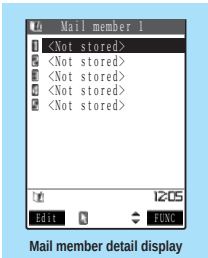
1 Press .

The "Mail member list display" appears.



2 Select a mailing list and press .

The "Mail member detail display" appears.



3 Select "<Not stored>" and press (Edit) ▶ Enter an e-mail address and press .

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters in each e-mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat step 3.

For information on entering text → P. 522

4 Press .

Note

- You cannot display mailing list members when "PIM lock" is set.
- If you attempt to send mail to mailing list members that have the same address, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated addresses before sending the mail. Select "YES" to delete the addresses before sending the mail, or "NO" to cancel the transmission.

Using the function menu in the Mail member list display

In the mail member list display...

→ P. 267

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Mail member list display function menu

1 Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the members of the mailing list pasted into the recipients field. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247
2 Edit member name	▶ Enter the member name and press  . Edits the name of the mailing list. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
3 Reset member name	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Resets the mail member name to the default name.

Using the function menu in the Mail member detail display

In the mail member detail display...

➔ P. 267

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Mail member detail display function menu

1 Edit address	➔ Enter the mail address and press . Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" ➔ P. 522						
2 Look-up address	■ If the address is not stored ➔ Choose from the following options: ■ If the address is stored ➔ Select "YES" and press  ➔ Select from options below. Enters the mail address by browsing the phonebook and records. <table> <tr> <td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Enters mail address from the phonebook entry detail display. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" ➔ P. 98</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Sent address</td><td>Enters mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Received address</td><td>Enters mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr> </table>	1 Phonebook	Enters mail address from the phonebook entry detail display. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" ➔ P. 98	2 Sent address	Enters mail address from the Sent address list.	3 Received address	Enters mail address from the Received address list.
1 Phonebook	Enters mail address from the phonebook entry detail display. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" ➔ P. 98						
2 Sent address	Enters mail address from the Sent address list.						
3 Received address	Enters mail address from the Received address list.						
3 Delete this	➔ Select "YES" and press  .						
4 Delete all	➔ Enter your security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press . All the addresses in the selected mail member are deleted. About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142						

<Auto receive mail>

When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 received i-mode mail and/or SMS in all.
- You can use "Select ring tone" (P. 114) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P. 133) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- The FOMA terminal can also receive i-mode mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal.

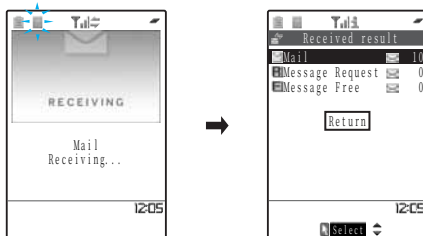
1 When you receive i-mode mail, the (Blue) icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears.

Once the mail has been received, the Received result display appears showing the number of mail and Message Request/Free received.

Select "Mail" to display the Received Mail List display.

If you do not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for approximately 15 seconds, the original display reappears. You can change the period for which the Received result display is shown in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 118).

The ring tone volume is the volume that was set at "Mail" in "Ring volume" (P. 66).



■ When you receive mail with the i-shot Service

If you receive i-shot mail sent from the i-mode terminal with mova service, images arrive as attached files.

■ If you receive a mail with a large image attached

If a large image that is more than 10,000 bytes in size attached to i-mode mail is successfully downloaded automatically,  is displayed and the received image is stored in My picture. If the image could not be downloaded automatically, select  in the Mail Detail display to download the image and save it in My picture.

■ If the saved image memory is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted images and then download the image. If you want to download the image, select "YES" and press . Then select the images you want to delete.

Note

- When the  flashing, the FOMA terminal is receiving mail. When all the mail has been received, the icon stops flashing and remains on the display. When the  (Red) or  (Red) appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further mail. Read your mail or remove the protection (P. 288) until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- If the total number of received i-mode mail and SMS messages stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 messages or the FOMA terminal's storage capacity, received mail in the Trash box and old received mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that unread and protected received mail is not replaced. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → P. 288
- If you select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 297) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is held at the i-mode Center (the  icon appears at the top of your display). In this situation, you can use "Check new message" to download all the i-mode mail held at the Center, or use "Receive option" to check the subject lines of the i-mode mail held at the Center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. → P. 270
- When an extremely large i-mode mail message is sent to you that cannot be accepted by the i-mode Center, it is returned to the sender together with an error message.
- You can use "Attached file" (P. 297) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to mail.
- Once the FOMA terminal has received your i-mode mail, the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted.
- i-mode mail allows you to receive mail with melodies and images included as attached files. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- A JPEG-format image attached to an i-mode mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically downloaded. If it is not automatically downloaded, you can download it by selecting  in the i-mode mail.
- When new i-mode mail is delivered to your FOMA terminal, you also receive any other i-mode mail or Message Request/Free that were being held at the i-mode Center.
- If you receive i-mode mail from a phone capable of specifying "To", "Cc" and "Bcc" recipients, refer to the Mail Details display to see whether your own address was in the "To", "Cc" or "Bcc" field. → P. 281
- You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive. → P. 241
- The precedence for the ring tone and illumination settings used when you receive i-mode mail is assigned as follows. ① has the highest precedence.
 - ① The mail ring tone and mail illumination in Phonebook Utilities → P. 107
 - ② The mail ring tone and mail illumination in Group Utilities → P. 109
 - ③ The "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" settings → P. 114, 133
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and Message Request, Message Free at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and call alert indicator flashing pattern set for the chat mail.
- If you receive i-mode mail when the stand-by display is not shown on the FOMA terminal and "Operation preferred" is set in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the Received result display.
- If you receive i-mode mail when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the indicator display.
- If you receive i-mode mail while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.
- If you receive an i-mode mail during a chat mail, the reception results display is not displayed.
- When you select  while receiving a call or launching any function of the tool group (P. 425), the message appears notifying that you cannot receive a large-sized image.
In such cases, quit the function you are using, then receive the large-sized image.

Viewing new i-mode mail

- Depending upon the Deco-mail's background color, the color of the URL text to download the image or i-motion may overlap and hence unreadable.

- 1 Press  ► Select  and press .



- 2 Select a received mail message and press .

Note

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, either "/" or "/" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- Images attached to i-mode mail may not be displayed properly. And, images wider than 240 dots are shown reduced.
- If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- You may not be able to use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with mail received from a PC.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

This function allows you to check information such as the titles of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to download or delete mail at the Center before you download it.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 297).

When mail arrives

When the FOMA terminal notifies you of mail received from the i-mode Center, it displays the  icon rather than  (Blue) or  (Blue).

Refer to steps 1-3 in "Receiving mail selectively" (P. 270).

Receiving mail selectively

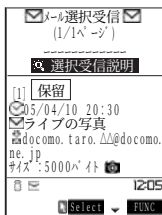
- 1 Press  (MAIL) ► Press  "Receive option".

- If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail Menu display reappears.

If you use this function to show the Receive option display, the  icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail. Also, when you turn off the FOMA terminal or display the mail menu,  disappears.

2 Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail.



“受信” Accept : Accepts the selected mail.

“削除” Delete : Deletes the selected mail.

“保留” Hold : Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.

Use “Check new message” (P. 271) to download the mail.

■ To delete all the mail

Select “削除” (Delete) at the bottom of the page, press , select “決定”(Set) and press .

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Select “前ページ” (Previous page) or “次ページ” (Next page) to move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted.

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ (Size): XXXバイト (bytes)” are as follows:



: Image file attached.



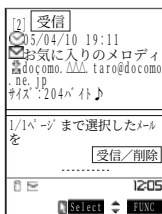
: Melody file attached.



: i-motion attached.

3 Select “受信／削除” (Receive/Delete) and press ▶ Select “決定”(Set) and press .

The completion display appears and mail downloading begins.



■ To cancel selective downloading

Select “キャンセル” (Cancel) and press .

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting “受信／削除”(Receive/Delete) mid-way through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

Note

● You can also access “Receive option” as follows:

- Press  ▶ Press  “Menu” ▶ Press  “メニューリスト” (Menu List) ▶ “メール選択受信” (Receive option) and press .

● If you perform “Check new message”, all messages will be received even if the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”.

Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new message” (P. 299) if you do not want to receive any mail.

● If the Receive option setting is “ON”, you cannot automatically receive mail, the mail ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate.

<Check new message>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting

Check for all (Mail, Message Request and Message Free)

- i-mode mail delivered to the i-mode Center is automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your mail is held at the i-mode Center:
 - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When  is displayed
 - When the memory is full
 - When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”
 - During a video-phone call or remote observation
 - When “Self mode” is set
- You cannot check for new mail when  is displayed.
- Use “Set check new message” (P. 299) to specify which items are checked for.

1 Press and hold down for 1 second or longer.



The Check New Message display appears.

The FOMA terminal checks first for "Mail" → "Message Request" → "Message Free".

The  (Blue),  (Green) and  (Purple) icons flash during checking, and the "Checking..." message appears on the display.

The FOMA terminal then downloads your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.

The number of new i-mode mails, Message Requests, and Message Frees is displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free.

2 Check for the number of new i-mode mails, Message Requests, and Message Frees.

Note

- You can also use the following procedures to check for mail and messages:
 - Press  ► Press  "Check new message".
 - Press  ► Press  "Check new message".
- If you check for new messages when i-mode is not active ( not lit), the FOMA terminal activates i-mode before checking for messages. Consequently, i-mode is left on stand-by ( flashing) after the FOMA terminal has finished checking for new messages.
- If the  (Blue) icon was displayed, you have i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your i-mode mail messages is full, the  (Red) icon is displayed.
- If icons such as  (Red),  (Red),  (Red) and  (Red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail and Message Request/Free or read or unprotect (P. 233, 288) your unread or protected mail and Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail and Message Request/Free are then overwritten as new mail and messages arrive, starting with the oldest received items.
- Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the  (Blue) icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal was turned off or the  icon was displayed.
- You can select items to check with "Set check new message".
- You cannot use this function to check for SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to download SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to send a reply to an i-mode mail message. When replying, you can either compose a new message, compose a reply while referring to the original message, or quote the body of the received message in your reply.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including "Re:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.
- For information on entering text → P. 522

Replying by composing a new message

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➔ P. 291

- 1 Press **[F1]** “Reply” ▶ Edit the subject and message body and then send the message.



For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 247.

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

After selecting “Reply”, select “To sender”.

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply” and then “To all”.

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed Reply mail display.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed Reply mail display.

After the reply has been sent, the Received Mail Detail display appears and the  icon changes to .

Note

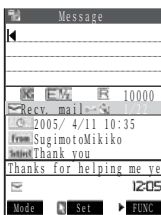
- The  icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with mail addresses longer than 50 half-pitch characters).
- You cannot reply to mail if there are already 20 messages.
- When you reply to i-mode mail that has “Re:” (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, “Re2:” is inserted into the reply’s i-mode mail subject line instead of “Re:”. Similarly, if “Re2:” is included, “Re3:” is inserted in the reply, and “Re4:” if “Re3:” is included and so on up to “Re99:”. If the “Re:” in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case “E” (“RE:”), “Re:” is newly added to the subject line in your reply.

Replying by referring to received mail

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➔ P. 291

- 1 Press **[3 DEF]** “Reply with ref”.



In “Reply with ref”, the top part of the display is the Message entry window, while the lower part shows the received message (Reference window).

■ To switch between the Reference and Message Entry windows

You can switch windows either by selecting “Change window” in the Function menu or by holding down **[DEF]** for 1 second or longer.

■ To copy the message, subject or address from the Reference Window

Select “Copy” and then “Message”, “Subject” or “Address” from the Function menu in the Reference Window.

For more information on copying → P. 541

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

After selecting “Reply with ref”, select “To sender”.

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply with ref” and then “To all”.

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed Reply mail display.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed Reply mail display.

2 Edit the message body and then send the message.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 6-8 on P. 247.

After the reply has been sent, the Received Mail Detail display appears and the  icon changes to .

■ To edit the subject

Press  to return to the Reply mail display, select  and re-enter the subject.

If you press  to return to the Reply mail display and then display the Message Entry window again, the Reference window is not displayed.

Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

- Attached files are deleted when you quote i-mode mail.

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➔ P. 291

1 Press "Reply with quote" ► Edit the subject and message body and then send the message.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4-8 on P. 247.

After the reply has been sent, the Received Mail Detail display appears and the  icon changes to .

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

After selecting "Reply with quote", select "To sender".

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply with quote" and then "To all".

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A single quotation symbol (set to ">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply.

Quotation symbols are not shown at the beginning of each line.

To edit the quotation symbol ➔ P. 299

Note

- You cannot reply to mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- If you add a quotation symbol to an i-mode mail message and the combined size of the message and the quotation symbol exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters, a message appears informing you that you have exceeded the limit on the number of characters. The message entry display then appears and you have to delete text until the message length no longer exceeds the limit.
- If an i-mode mail as of "Reply with quote" is attached the file, a message appears notifying that the attachment is deleted. If you press , the attachment is deleted and the mail replying display appears.
- If any data such as a melody or a link to the i-α ppli is attached to i-mode mail, they are not quoted although you use "Reply with quote". Also, attached data are not quoted when you use the Data Link Software or infrared communication.
- If any image that is prohibited to be attached to i-mode mail or to be sent out of the FOMA terminal is attached to the text of the Deco-mail, it is deleted when you use "Reply with quote".

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

Use this procedure to forward i-mode mail you have received to other people.

- Forwarded mail has "Fw:" automatically inserted in the subject line. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including "Fw:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➔ P. 291

1 Press "Forward" ► Enter the address and then press .

■ Entering an address from the phonebook, address lists or mailing lists

Select "Look-up address" from the Function menu in the Forward mail display.

For detailed information on entering addresses ➔ P. 251, 252

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to a total of 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 Press (Send).

When the message is sent, the received mail details screen is displayed, and " " changes to ".

Note

- You cannot forward mail if there are already 20 messages.
- When you forward i-mode mail that has "Fw:" (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, "Fw2:" is inserted into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is inserted in the forwarded message, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case "W" ("FW:"), "Fw:" is newly added to the subject line in the forwarded message.
- If forwarded mail has an attached or pasted file that is forbidden to be attached to i-mode mail or to be output to a device other than FOMA terminal, the file and information will be deleted.
- If the image is not downloaded, it cannot be attached.
- If an i-mode mail message contains pasted data, you cannot quote the pasted data when you forward the message. Pasted data also cannot be quoted when it is forwarded using the Data Link Software or the infrared communication function.

Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook

Use this procedure to add the mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

<Example: Adding the sender's mail address to the phonebook>

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➔ P. 291

1 Press ▶ Press "Save address".

■ When there are multiple mail addresses to be added

In the mail address selection display, select the mail address you want to add and press .

■ To add a recipient mail address or phone number to the phonebook

Select "Save address" from the Function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display.

If the mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

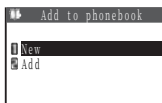
■ To add a mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail to the phonebook

Choose a mail address or phone number and select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display or Received Mail Detail display.

2 Select "YES" and press ▶ Press "Phone" ▶ Press "New".

The Add New Phonebook Entry display appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.

See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" ➔ P. 93



■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

After selecting "YES", select "UIM".

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

<Save melody>

Loading Melodies from i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to save a melody (🎵 or 🎶) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender was not using a FOMA N700i, the received melody may not play correctly.
- Select the melody beforehand.

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➡ P. 291

- 1** Press ➡ Press "Save data" ➡ Select "YES" and press ➡ Select a folder and press .

To set the melody as a ring tone, etc., proceed to step 2.

■ **To stop the melody**

Press , , keys to , or .

■ **To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open mail**

Set "Auto melody play" (P. 296) to "OFF".

■ **If the memory for storing melodies is full**

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted melody before saving the new melody. To save the new melody, select "YES" and press . Then select the melody to be deleted.

- 2** Select "YES" and press ➡ Select an option and press .

■ **If you do not want to set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**

Select "NO" and press .

Note

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Receive image mail>

Loading Images in Image Mail

This function enables you to save images (🖼️) attached to received i-mode mail.

- Select the image beforehand.

In the received mail detail display function menu...

➡ P. 291

- 1** Press ➡ Press "Save data" ➡ Select "YES" and press ➡ Select a folder and press .

If multiple images are attached, all the images are displayed.

When you receive Deco-mail, all the images pasted into the message body are displayed, but attached images are not displayed. To view attached images, select the file name for the image to be viewed.

■ **To change from image display to file name display**

Select the image that you want to see as a file name, and press .

To return to image display, select the file name of an image to be displayed, and press .

■ **If the memory for storing images is full**

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted image before saving the new image. To save the new image, select "YES" and press . Then select the image to be deleted.

2 Select "YES" and press  ► Select an option and press .

■ If you do not want to set the image as the stand-by display, etc.

Select "NO" and press .

Note

- Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, images that are too large may not be displayed at all in some cases.
- Images may be displayed differently in i-mode mail and My picture. Consequently, to view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the "Inbox" folder and view the image in My picture.
- If you attempt to delete an image that has been selected using a function such as "Display setting" (P. 121), a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the image. Select "YES" to delete the image.
- When you delete an image that has been set in a display using functions such as "Display setting", the corresponding item reverts to its default setting.
- A JPEG-format image attached to an i-mode mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically loaded. If it is not automatically loaded, you can load it by selecting  in the i-mode mail.
- If your FOMA terminal successfully automatically downloads an image, the received image is saved to My pictures in Data box.

<i-motion mail>

Loading i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the file is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to download the i-motion is attached.
- Select the i-motion mail beforehand.

In the received mail detail display...

➔ P. 281

1 Select a URL and press  ► Select "YES" and press .

The data acquisition display appears after data download is completed.

■ To cancel i-motion downloading

Press  (Quit).

■ To save downloaded i-motion

See "Saving i-motion" → P. 338

■ To display information about the downloaded i-motion

See "Viewing i-motion details" → P. 338

Note

- If "i-motion auto replay" (P. 338) is set to "ON", an i-motion is automatically played once it has been downloaded.
- If you are playing an i-motion during downloading (first playback only), you cannot use the fast forward, frame advance or slow playback function.

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

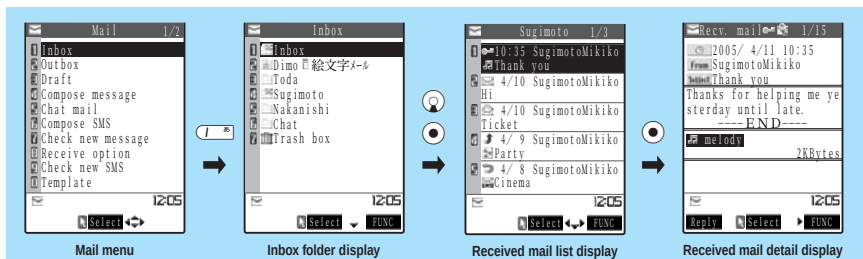
The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 i-mode received mail and/or SMS and up to 400 sent i-mode mail and/or SMS. The number of mail messages that can be saved varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When file sizes are large, the number of messages that can be saved decreases.

- i-mode mail allows you to send messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters and receive mail with messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters.

Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>

- 1 Press (MAIL) ► Press "Inbox" ► Select a folder and press ► Select an i-mode mail message and press .



■ To view the previous or next i-mode mail message

Press in the Received Mail Detail display.

Press to return to the Received Mail List display.

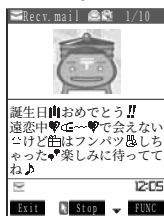
Note

- To view the contents of a folder for which mail security is set, enter your security code and press . However, if "Mail security" (P. 152) is set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail menu, you do not have to enter your security code because you have to enter it to view the Inbox folder list display or Outbox folder list display.
- By selecting "Mail info" from the Function menu in the Received Mail List display, you can check the sender, the subject and the date and time a message arrived at the i-mode Center before actually opening the mail.
- You can also paste the mail address of an i-mode mail sender or one of the broadcast mail recipients into your stand-by display as a desktop icon. You can then use the pasted desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that mail address. However, you cannot paste mail addresses with the , or icon as desktop icons. Note that for broadcast mail, only 1 mail address can be pasted in each operation.

■ Mail-connected i-α ppli

- i-mode mail sent using a mail-connected i-α ppli is sorted into the dedicated folder for that mail-connected i-α ppli.
- If the sender used a mail-connected i-α ppli to send i-mode mail and if the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-α ppli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.
If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli activates the software.
- To view the Mail List display for the folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the Function menu.

■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)



Read out message display

- By selecting "Read out message" from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.

To interrupt reading, press . (Pressing after reading has been stopped restarts the reading from the beginning of the message.) To exit reading-out mode, press (Exit).

- You can set the voice used to read out received mail using "Read out setting" (P. 300).
- Messages are read out at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting (P. 66). If "Silent" or "Step" is set, messages are read out at the "Level 2" volume.
- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the display, as shown in the figure. If the sender's address and image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.

- While a message is being read out, you can scroll around the message by pressing , (Home) or (Memo/Check). Also, holding down for 1 second or longer turns the backlight on or off. Pressing any of the FOMA terminal's other keys or folding the FOMA terminal stops the reading.

- If you select "Read out message" from the Function menu while the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking you whether the FOMA terminal should read out the message.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading is interrupted and the Receiving display appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in "Receiving display" takes effect. Also, if the specified time for an alarm is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in "Alarm setting" takes effect.
- If you interrupt the reading out of a message, you cannot restart the reading from the point it was stopped by pressing .
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some messages of mail received from PC, etc.

Guide to the Folder List displays

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the Folder List displays.

- Mail can be saved in any of the folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Inbox", folder for the pre-installed mail-connected i-α ppli, "Chat" and "Trash box" folders, but you can add folders using mail-connected i-α ppli and the function menu.
- Mail can be also saved in any of the folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Outbox", folder for the pre-installed mail-connected i-α ppli and "Chat" folders, but you can add folders using mail-connected i-α ppli and the function menu.
- The Draft mailbox does not contain any folders.



Inbox folder list display

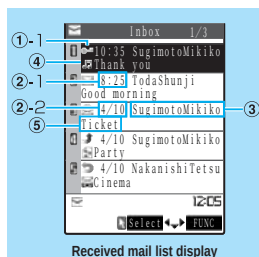


Outbox folder list display

- ①  : Contains no unread mail.
- ②  : Contains unread mail.
- ③  : Contains no unread mail and mail security (P. 152) is set.
- ④  : Contains unread mail and mail security is set.
- ⑤  : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli (P. 321).
- ⑥  : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli containing unread mail.
- ⑦  : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli with mail security set.
- ⑧  : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli with mail security set and including unread mail.
- ⑨  : Trash box folder
-  : Trash box folder with mail security set
- ①  : Sent mail folder.
-  : Sent mail folder with mail security (P. 152) set.
- ②  : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli (P. 321).
- ③  : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-α ppli with mail security set.

Guide to the Mail List displays

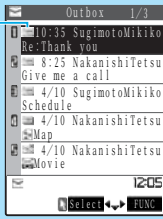
The following is a guide to the conventions used in the Mail List displays.



Received mail list display

- ① Shows the mail status.
- ①-1 Received mail
-  : Unread mail
-  : Read mail
-  : Forwarded mail
-  : Replied-to mail
-  : Unread protected mail
-  : Read protected mail
-  : Forwarded protected mail
-  : Replied-to protected mail

①-2



Sent mail list display

①-2 Sent mail

- : Mail sent successfully
- : Mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

② Shows the time and date of transmission

②-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received today.

②-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

③ Shows the sender/recipient. For a sender/recipient stored in the phonebook, it can be changed to show the e-mail address, phone number or name. If the sender's address is stored in the phonebook and an image is also stored, is displayed.

④ Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.



: SMS



: SMS with SMS report received



: SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM)

<2-line display>



: Attached or pasted melody



: Multiple attached or pasted melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted



: All the attached or pasted melodies were invalid or deleted.



: Attached image



: Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted



: All the attached or pasted images were invalid or deleted.



: Large image downloaded and found to be valid.



: Large image downloaded but then found to be invalid or deleted.



: Before downloading, attached large image was found to be valid.



: Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.



: Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.



: i-motion file attached to the sent mail found to be invalid or edited.



: A large file whose type was unknown was found.



: An i-α pppli can be launched from the message body.



: Mail sent or received by a mail-connected i-α pppli



: Multiple pasted data. Also shown when the data is pasted along with i-α pppli To.



: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

<1-line display>



: 1 or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.



: Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.



: 1 or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.



: 1 or more files attached, including 1 or more large files.



: Multiple files attached, 1 or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.



: Multiple files attached, 1 or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.



: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

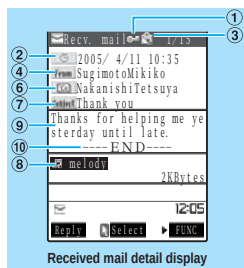
- ⑤ Shows the message subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed.
For SMS, the message header is displayed. For an SMS report, "SMS report", for Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

Note

- If the date and time are not set, the date and time in the Received Mail List display and Sent Mail List display are shown as "--/--".
- When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the Received Mail Detail display or Sent Mail Detail display, the display switches between image display and file name display each time you press

Guide to the Mail Detail displays

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the Mail Detail displays.



- ① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the Mail List display on P. 279.)

- ② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).

- ③ Shows the sending type of received mail.



: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.



: Received mail broadcast by the sender.



: Received mail specified not to be displayed in the addresses of other broadcast mails.

- ④ Shows received mail with the sender's mail address.



: Sender's mail address.



: Mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters, etc.)



- ⑤ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.

Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.



: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.



: Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.



: Recipient to which broadcast mail was successfully sent.



: Recipient to which broadcast mail was not successfully sent.



: Broadcast mail specified not to be displayed in the addresses of other broadcast mails was sent successfully.



: Broadcast mail specified not to be displayed in the addresses of other broadcast mails was not sent successfully.

- ⑥ Shows received mail with multiple recipient addresses specified (not including the current FOMA terminal user). Up to 4 recipients can be shown.



: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.



: A mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.



: The sender sent a copy of a message to the recipient as broadcast mail.



: A mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

The , and icons are used to indicate a mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ④, ⑤ and ⑥.

To display the name, the other party's mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook. → P. 93

- ⑦ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, is displayed (if the SMS is in the FOMA card) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report" for SMS reports). When an SMS report has been received, the icon is also displayed.

- ⑧ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes). When a melody is pasted, is displayed. If the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message. For attached file icons → P. 280



: A large image is waiting to be downloaded.



: An attached melody was deleted.



: An attached image was deleted.



: A large image file was deleted.



: A movie or i-motion file was deleted.

- ⑨ Shows the mail message.
- ⑩ Shows the end of the message body.

In the following situations, the mail address and not the "Name" is displayed, even when the phone number or mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When "Restrict dialing" is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings
- When details are displayed in Secret only mode for mail sent to a mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from a mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to a mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from a mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

Changing the mail character size

In the Mail Detail displays, you can change the size of the text in the message body.



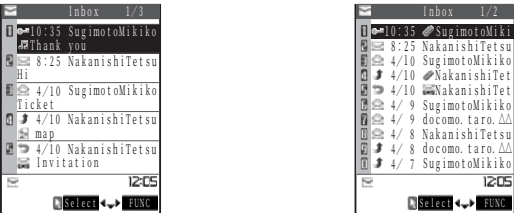
Note

- If you move to a display other than a Mail Detail display, the character size automatically reverts from Small or Large to Standard. When you return to the Mail Detail display, the character changes back to Small or Large.
- When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in "Character size" (P. 296) also changes.
- The character size can be changed in the same way in the mail message reading out display (P. 278).

Changing the Mail List display mode (1 line/2 line)

You can switch between 1-line display and 2-line display using the "Mail list disp." setting in "Mail settings" in the Mail menu.

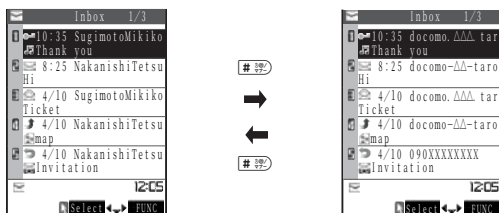
With the 2-line display, you can select "Name", "Address". With the 1-line display, select "Name", "Address" or "Subject".



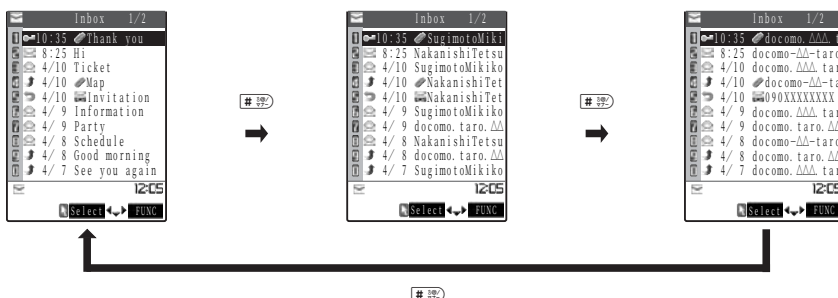
● Changing the Mail List display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the Mail List display, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

● Mail List display (2-line mode)



● Mail List display (1-line mode)



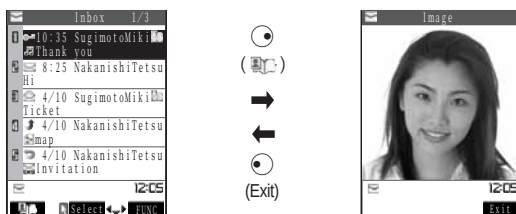
Note

- You can also change the display mode by selecting "List setting" from the Function menu in the Received Mail List display, Sent Mail List display or Draft Mail List display and then selecting "Name", "Address", or "Subject".

● Mail that shows faces

When you are viewing a Mail List display, the  is displayed for received mail when the sender's address is stored in the phonebook along with an image.

You can then view the stored image by selecting the mail with the  icon and pressing  ().



● Checking the number of received or sent mail messages

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select "Memory info" from the Function menu in the Folder List display.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the Mail List display for the mail in folder you want to check and then select "No. of messages" from the Function menu.

● Backlight function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal's backlight comes on for around 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the backlight stays on in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 118).) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.

The backlight does not turn on if "Lighting" is set to "OFF" in "Display light" (P. 127).

Using the function menu in the Inbox and Outbox List displays

- You can add up to 22 folders.
- You can specify automatic sorting of received i-mode mail and SMS into added folders.
- You cannot delete or rename the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

In the inbox/outbox folder list display...

➔ P. 279

1 Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Inbox/Outbox list display function menu 1/2

1 Add folder	➔ Enter the folder name and press  . Adds a new folder. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Auto-sort	Automatically sorts received i-mode mail and SMS into folders in the Inbox or Outbox according to mail address, phone number and phonebook group settings, etc. See "Automatic sorting settings" → P. 285
3 Edit folder name	➔ Enter the folder name and press  . You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
4 Mail security	➔ Enter your security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press  . Sets or cancels folder security. See "Setting security for individual folders" → P. 153 About Your Security Codes → P. 142
5 Delete folder	➔ Enter your security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press  . About Your Security Codes → P. 142
6 Sort folder	➔ Select a location and press  . Sorts the folders.
7 Memory info	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.

Inbox/Outbox list display function menu 2/2

1 Open folder	Displays list of the mail in the selected folder.
2 Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the selected folder using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413
3 Delete read ^{*1}	➔ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes all the read mail or sent mail.
4 Delete all ^{*2}	➔ Enter your security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes all the mail. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

*1 : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list.

*2 : If you have selected the "Outbox folder list", "4 Delete all" is displayed.

Note

<Add folders>

- When you download a mail-connected i-α ppli, an i-α ppli mail folder is automatically created.

<Auto-sort>

- You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders in automatic sorting.
- If "Mail security" (P. 152) is set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail menu,  is displayed next to "Inbox" and "Outbox" in the Mail menu. In this situation, you have to enter your security code.
- If Mail security (P. 284) is set for an added folder, you must enter your security code after step 1.
- Mail sent as broadcast mail is not sorted under the condition set in "Address sort".

<Edit>

- The folder name of mail connected i-α ppli cannot be edited.

<Mail security>

- You cannot delete or edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Delete folder>

- You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or a folder for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- You cannot delete an i-α ppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-α ppli. You can delete an i-α ppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder list display or Outbox folder list display is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

<Sort folder>

- You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders and you cannot run "Sort folder" when any of these folders is selected.
- You cannot run "Sort folder" when there is only 1 added folder.

<Delete read>

- This option does not delete read SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.

<Delete all (Delete all sent mails)>

- This option does not delete protected SMS or i-mode mail.

<Delete all (Delete all received mails)>

- This option also deletes unread mail. However, it does not delete protected SMS or i-mode mail.

Automatic sorting settings

- You can set a total of 700 mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below, with ① having the highest priority. Note that mail for mail-connected i-α ppli is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Also, chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder when "Sort all" is not set regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
 - ① Sort all ② Subject sort ③ Reply/Send impossible ④ Address/Number sort ⑤ Mail member
 - ⑥ Phonebook group
- Mail received or sent before the Auto-sort settings are specified remain stored in their original folders.
- Select beforehand the folder that mails are sorted into.

In the inbox/outbox list display function menu...

➡ P. 284

1

Press  "Auto-sort" ▶ Select the automatic sorting settings from the following options:

Auto-sort settings display function menu 1/2

① Address sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets a mail address to be used for automatic sorting.	
	① Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or Sent/Received address list.
		① Phonebook Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98
		② Received address Sets a mail address from the Received address list.
		③ Sent address Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.
	② Look-up group	▶ Select a group and press  Sets a mail address of a selected group from a phonebook.
② Subject sort	③ Look-up member	▶ Select a mail member and press  Sets a mail address of a selected mail member is set.
	④ Enter address	Allows you to directly key in a mail address. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
	▶ Enter a subject and press  Sets a received mail subject as an auto-sort criterion. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
③ Reply impossible ^{*1}	Sets a reply-impossible or send-impossible mail address as an auto-sort criterion.	
④ Sort all	This can only be set for mail-connected i-α.ppli folders. Sorts all mail into a mail-connected i-α.ppli folder.	
⑤ Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified mail address or subject.	
⑥ List setting	▶ Select  "Name" or  "Address". Changes the display mode for the list of mail addresses to be used for automatic sorting.	
⑦ Release	▶ Select "YES" and press  Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.	

*1 : If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox-folder, "Send impossible" is displayed.

Auto-sort settings display function menu 2/2

① Release selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press  ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press  Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
② Release all	▶ Select "YES" and press  Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

Note

- If another criteria sets to Auto-sort settings folder, the message is displayed whether the settings are released or not. The settings are changed if "YES" is selected. Display is returned to the previous screen if "NO" is selected.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. However, if the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" folder.
- Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- You cannot use this function to sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- "Reply impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.

<Send impossible>

- "Send impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.

<Sort all>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
- "Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-α.ppli mail folder for received and sent i-α.ppli mail respectively.

- Setting "Sort all" disables all other sort settings.

<List setting>

- You can also switch between the "Name List display" and "Address List display" by pressing   in the Auto-sort Settings display.

Using the function menu in the Received Mail List display

In the received mail list display...

➡ P. 279

1 Press (FUNC) ➡ Choose from the following options:

Received mail list display function menu 1/3

1 Move	▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Use  to select a checkbox () and press  . ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press  . Moves the selected mail to another folder.																	
2 Search mail	▶ Choose from the following options: Searches for mail using a specified sender or subject. <table><tr><td>1 Search sender</td><td colspan="2">▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or history, or direct input.<table><tr><td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98</td></tr><tr><td>2 Received address</td><td>Sets a mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr><tr><td>3 Sent address</td><td>Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr><tr><td>4 Enter address</td><td>Allows you to directly key in a mail address.</td></tr></table></td></tr><tr><td>2 Search subject</td><td colspan="2">▶ Enter a subject and press  .</td></tr></table>		1 Search sender	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or history, or direct input. <table><tr><td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98</td></tr><tr><td>2 Received address</td><td>Sets a mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr><tr><td>3 Sent address</td><td>Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr><tr><td>4 Enter address</td><td>Allows you to directly key in a mail address.</td></tr></table>		1 Phonebook	Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98	2 Received address	Sets a mail address from the Received address list.	3 Sent address	Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.	4 Enter address	Allows you to directly key in a mail address.	2 Search subject	▶ Enter a subject and press  .			
1 Search sender	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or history, or direct input. <table><tr><td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98</td></tr><tr><td>2 Received address</td><td>Sets a mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr><tr><td>3 Sent address</td><td>Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr><tr><td>4 Enter address</td><td>Allows you to directly key in a mail address.</td></tr></table>		1 Phonebook	Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98	2 Received address	Sets a mail address from the Received address list.	3 Sent address	Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.	4 Enter address	Allows you to directly key in a mail address.								
1 Phonebook	Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98																	
2 Received address	Sets a mail address from the Received address list.																	
3 Sent address	Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.																	
4 Enter address	Allows you to directly key in a mail address.																	
2 Search subject	▶ Enter a subject and press  .																	
3 Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑ ").																	
4 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Sorts mail according to the specified criteria. <table><tr><td>1 Chronological ↑</td><td>Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.</td></tr><tr><td>2 Chronological ↓</td><td>Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.</td></tr><tr><td>3 By address ↓</td><td>Arranges mail in ascending order by the sender's mail address or phone number.</td></tr><tr><td>4 By address ↑</td><td>Arranges mail in descending order by the sender's mail address or phone number.</td></tr><tr><td>5 By subject ↓</td><td>Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.</td></tr><tr><td>6 By subject ↑</td><td>Arranges mail in descending order by subject.</td></tr></table>		1 Chronological ↑	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.	3 By address ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by the sender's mail address or phone number.	4 By address ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by the sender's mail address or phone number.	5 By subject ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.	6 By subject ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.				
1 Chronological ↑	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.																	
2 Chronological ↓	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.																	
3 By address ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by the sender's mail address or phone number.																	
4 By address ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by the sender's mail address or phone number.																	
5 By subject ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.																	
6 By subject ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.																	
5 Filter	▶ Choose from the following options: Display only mail matched to the specified criteria. Setting 1/2 <table><tr><td>1 Unread</td><td>Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.</td></tr><tr><td>2 Read</td><td>Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.</td></tr><tr><td>3 Protected</td><td>Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.</td></tr><tr><td>4 Melody</td><td>Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies or with pasted melodies.</td></tr><tr><td>5 Image</td><td>Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted large image information.</td></tr><tr><td>6 i-motion</td><td>Displays only i-mode mail with  displayed.</td></tr><tr><td>7 i-α ppli</td><td>Displays only i-mode mail with pasted i-α ppli.</td></tr></table> Setting 2/2 <table><tr><td>1 SMS</td><td>Displays only SMS.</td></tr></table>		1 Unread	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.	2 Read	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.	3 Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.	4 Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies or with pasted melodies.	5 Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted large image information.	6 i-motion	Displays only i-mode mail with  displayed.	7 i-α ppli	Displays only i-mode mail with pasted i-α ppli.	1 SMS	Displays only SMS.
1 Unread	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.																	
2 Read	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.																	
3 Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.																	
4 Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies or with pasted melodies.																	
5 Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted large image information.																	
6 i-motion	Displays only i-mode mail with  displayed.																	
7 i-α ppli	Displays only i-mode mail with pasted i-α ppli.																	
1 SMS	Displays only SMS.																	
6 List setting	▶ Select  "Subject",  "Name" or  "Address". Changes the display mode for the Mail List displays.																	
7 Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.																	

Received mail list display function menu 2/3

① Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
② Unprotect all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	Unprotects all protected mail.
③ Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
④ Export	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
⑤ UIM operation	Move or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P. 316
⑥ Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail message.
⑦ No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.

Received mail list display function menu 3/3

① Move trash box	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
② Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
③ Delete selected	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
④ Delete read	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
⑤ Delete all SMS-R	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142
⑥ Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<Move>

- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports saved in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search for i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as the subject search criteria.

<Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread mail in chronological order in the Received Mail List display, select "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu and then "Unread" in the Filter menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the Received Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail.

<Filter>

- If you view mail with the Filter function, exit the display and then view the Received Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this display by selecting "Display all".

<List setting>

- You can also switch between "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the Received Mail List display.

<Read all>

- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- If the number of received mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that are stored on the FOMA terminal (P. 277) exceeds the limit, precedence is given to deleting mail in the Trash box folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the Trash box folder, read and unprotected received mail is deleted starting with the oldest message.
- You cannot protect SMS saved in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot protect mail in the Trash box folder.

<Unprotect all>

- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Unprotect all", protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<Move trash box>

- This option moves mail to be deleted to the Trash box folder. Mail moved to the trash box folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox folder is full, mail in the trash box folder is deleted first as new mail arrives.
- You cannot move protected mail, SMS or SMS reports saved in the FOMA card (UIM) to the Trash box folder.
- If you move unread mail to the Trash box folder, it is marked as read.
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Move trash box", only the currently displayed mail can be moved to the Trash box folder.
- If you select "Move trash box" from the Received Mail List display Function menu and select the mail to be moved to the "Trash box" folder when the limit on the permitted number of saved messages has already been reached, a message appears confirming that the moved mail will be given priority in automatic deletion when mail is received. Select "YES" to move the mail to the "Trash box" folder.

<Delete>

- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>

- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>

- You cannot use this option to delete read i-mode mail or SMS that are protected.

<Delete all SMS-R>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

<Delete all>

- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

Using the function menu in the Sent Mail List display

In the sent mail list display...

➡ P. 280

1

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Sent mail list display function menu 1/3

1 Move

- ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Use  to select a checkbox ☐ and press 
- ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Moves the selected mail to another folder.

② Search mail	▶ Choose from the following options: Searches for mail using a specified receiver or subject.	
	① Search receiver	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or history, or direct input.
		① Phonebook Sets a mail address by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98
		② Sent address Sets a mail address from the Sent address list.
		③ Received address Sets a mail address from the Received address list.
		④ Enter address Allows you to directly key in a mail address. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
	② Search subject ▶ Enter a subject and press ●.	
	See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
③ Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").	
④ Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.	
	① Chronological ↑	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.
	② Chronological ↓	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.
	③ By address ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by the receiver's mail address or phone number.
	④ By address ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by the receiver's mail address or phone number.
	⑤ By subject ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.
	⑥ By subject ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.
⑤ Filter	▶ Choose from the following options: Displays mail according to the specified criteria.	
	① Protect	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
	② Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies.
	③ Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images.
	④ i-motion	Displays only i-mode mail with attached movies or i-motion.
	⑤ SMS	Displays only SMS.
	⑥ Failed	Displays only i-mode mail and SMS that could not be sent.
⑥ List setting	▶ Select (1) "Subject", (2) "Name" or (3) "Address". Changes the display mode for the Mail List displays.	
⑦ Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.	

Sent mail list display function menu 2/3

① Unprotect all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Unprotects all protected mail.
② Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
③ Export	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
④ UIM operation	Moves or copies SMS from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM) and vice-versa. → P. 316
⑤ No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
⑥ Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
⑦ Delete selected	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Sent mail list display function menu 3/3

① Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<Move>

- You cannot move SMS saved in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search for i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as the subject search criteria.

<Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the protected mail in chronological order in the Sent Mail List display, select "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu and then "Protected" in the Filter function.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the Sent Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail.

<Filter>

- If you view mail with the Filter function, exit the display and then view the Sent Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this display by selecting "Display all".

<List setting>

- You can also switch between "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the Sent Mail List display.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- If the number of sent mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that are stored on the FOMA terminal (P. 277) exceeds the limit, unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message.
- You cannot protect SMS saved in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Delete>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>

- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete all>

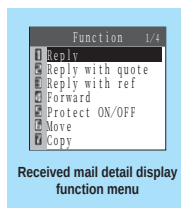
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

Using the function menu in the Received Mail Detail display

In the received mail detail display...

→ P. 281

1 Press  (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:



Received mail detail display function menu 1/4

 Reply	See "Replying by composing a new message" → P. 273
 Reply with quote	See "Replying by quoting the received message" → P. 274
 Reply with ref	See "Replying by referring to received mail" → P. 273
 Forward	See "Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients" → P. 274
 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
 Move	► Select a folder and press  . Moves the mail to another folder.
 Copy	► Select  "Message",  "Subject" or  "Address". Copies the message body, subject or mail address from the i-mode mail message. See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541

Received mail detail display function menu 2/4

 Save address	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" → P. 275
 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" → P. 275

③ Save data	Saves a melody or image that is attached to or pasted into mail. See "Loading Melodies from i-mode Mail" → P. 276 See "Loading Images in Image Mail" → P. 276
④ Save insert image	▶ Select the image and press ▶ Select "YES" and press ▶ Select a folder and press ▶ Select "YES" and press ▶ Select an option and press . Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the Display setting, select "NO" after selecting the folder and pressing .
⑤ Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing an i-mode mail message. → P. 434
⑥ Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
⑦ Save template	▶ Select "YES" and press . Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. See "Saving a template" → P. 261

Received mail detail display function menu 3/4

① Refer dictionary	Activates the dictionary. See "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P. 451
② Property	▶ Select an image and press . Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
③ URL	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
④ Read out message	Has the FOMA terminal read out the message in an i-mode mail. → P. 278
⑤ Chat	Launches Chat. → P. 305
⑥ Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press .
⑦ Export	▶ Select "YES" and press .

Received mail detail display function menu 4/4

① UIM operation	Moves or copies SMS from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM) and vice-versa. → P. 316
② Scroll	▶ Select "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines". Sets the number of scrolling lines for the display.
③ Character size	▶ Select "Standard", "Small" or "Large". Sets the size of the displayed text.
④ Delete att. file	▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes the attached file. Note that if you delete a large image, only the URL pasted into the mail is deleted and the file saved in the Inbox folder of "My picture" is not deleted.
⑤ Move trash box	▶ Select "YES" and press . Moves the mail to the Trash box folder.
⑥ Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

<Move>

- You cannot use this option to move mail to the Trash box folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports saved in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Copy>

- If you use "Copy" while composing the message in Deco-mail, the decoration information is also copied.

<Delete att. file>

- You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>

- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports saved in the FOMA card (UIM) to the Trash box folder.

Using the function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display

In the sent mail detail display...

➡ P. 281

1

Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Sent mail detail display function menu 1/3

① Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject and message body and then press  (Send). Re-edits the message. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
② Resend	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Resends the message.
③ Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the message.
④ Move	▶ Select a folder and press  . Moves the message to another folder.
⑤ Copy	▶ Select  "Message",  "Subject" or  "Address". Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address from the i-mode mail. See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
⑥ Save address	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" → P. 275
⑦ Add to phonebook	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" → P. 275

Sent mail detail display function menu 2/3

① Save data	Saves a melody or image that is attached to or pasted into the message. → P. 276
② Save insert image	▶ Select the image and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Select an option and press  . Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the Display setting select "NO" after selecting the folder and pressing  .
③ Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press  . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
④ Save template	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. See "Saving a template" → P. 261
⑤ Refer dictionary	Activates the dictionary. See "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P. 451
⑥ Property	▶ Select an image and press  . Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
⑦ Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS. → P. 312

Sent mail detail display function menu 3/3

① Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
② Export	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
③ UIM operation	Moves or copies SMS from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM) and vice-versa. → P. 316
④ Scroll	▶ Select  "1 line",  "3 lines" or  "5 lines". Sets the number of scrolling lines for the display.
⑤ Character size	▶ Select  "Standard",  "Small" or  "Large". Sets the size of the displayed text.
⑥ Delete att. file	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes the attached file. Note that if you delete a large image or i-motion, only the URL pasted into the mail is deleted and the file saved in the Inbox folder is not deleted.
⑦ Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Note

<Resend>

- Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is deleted. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is deleted.

<Disp. SMS report>

- If there is no SMS report for the selected message, this function cannot be used.
- Even when "ON" is specified in "SMS report request", no SMS report is provided and saved as the sent SMS for SMS that cannot be sent (that does not reach the recipient).

Using the Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS in address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail addresses or SMS phone numbers can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- If a sender address is invalid, it may not be recorded in the address lists.
- If "Mail security" has been used to set security for the Inbox or Outbox, or if mail addresses stored in the phonebook as secret data in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", e-mail address are not recorded in the address lists.

Checking an address list

Use this procedure to check the Send address or Received address list.

<Example: Viewing the Received address List display>

- 1 Hold down  for 1 second or longer.**

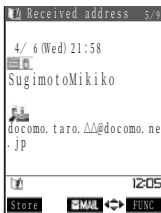
The "Received address list display" appears.

- **To display the Sent address List display**

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.



- 2 Select a sender and press .**



The "Received address detail display" appears.

- 3 Check the details.**

Note

- The following procedure can also be used to display the Sent address List display:
 - Press Select and press Press "Diald calls" ▶ (Change)
- The following procedure can also be used to display the Received address List display:
 - Press Select and press Press "Received calls" ▶ "All calls" ▶ (Change)
- You cannot display the sent or received address lists when "OFF" is selected for "Redial/Dialed calls" or "Received calls" in "Record display set".
- The following icons are used in the Sent address List and Sent address Detail displays:
 - : i-mode mail transmission successful.
 - : i-mode mail transmission failed.
 - : SMS transmission successful.
 - : SMS transmission failed.
- The following icons are used in the Received address List and Received address Detail displays:
 - : i-mode mail received.
 - : SMS received.

Using the function menu in the Received address and Sent address List displays

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the Received address and Sent address Detail displays.

- Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others seeing them.

In the received/sent address list display...

➔ P. 294

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Received/Sent address list display function menu 1/2

1 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" → P. 275
2 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
3 Compose message ^{*1}	Composes an i-mode mail message with the e-mail address pasted into the recipients field. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247
4 Dialing	Calls the phone number in the phonebook entry including the mail address. → P. 98
5 Received calls ^{*2}	Switches between the Received calls and Redial calls record (list) displays. → P. 50, 62
6 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press .
7 Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ▶ Press (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press .

*1 : When an SMS is selected, this option changes to "Compose SMS", which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient. See "Composing and Sending SMS" → P. 310

*2 : "Redial calls" is displayed in the sent address list display.

Received/Sent address list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ▶ Select "YES" and press .
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<Received calls>

- The displayed Received calls display is "All calls" (shows the entire received calls record).

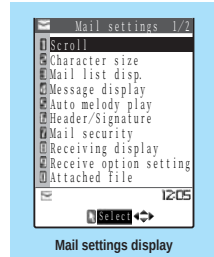
Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

Use this procedure to set the mail functions on your FOMA terminal.

1

Press (MAIL) ► Press ► Press “Mail settings”

The “Mail settings display” appears.



2

Choose from the following options:

Mail settings menu 1/2

1 Scroll (Default setting: 1 “1 line”)	► Select “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines”. Sets the number of lines to be scrolled when you press on the mail details screen.										
2 Character size (Default setting: 1 “Standard”)	► Select “Standard”, “Small” or “Large”. Sets the mail details screen text size. Standard : Displays text in the mail details display at the standard size. Small : Displays text in the mail details display at the small size. Large : Displays only message text at the large size.										
3 Mail list disp.	► Choose from the following options: Sets the number of lines and items to be displayed on the mail list screen. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 2 lines Name (default setting)</td><td>Displays 2 lines for each entry. The recipient's or sender's name is shown on the first line.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 2 lines Address</td><td>Displays 2 lines for each entry. The mail address or phone number is shown on the first line.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 1 line Subject</td><td>Displays 1 line of the subject for each entry.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 1 line Name</td><td>Displays 1 line of the recipient's or sender's name for each entry.</td></tr> <tr> <td>5 1 line Address</td><td>Displays 1 line of the mail address or phone number for each entry.</td></tr> </table>	1 2 lines Name (default setting)	Displays 2 lines for each entry. The recipient's or sender's name is shown on the first line.	2 2 lines Address	Displays 2 lines for each entry. The mail address or phone number is shown on the first line.	3 1 line Subject	Displays 1 line of the subject for each entry.	4 1 line Name	Displays 1 line of the recipient's or sender's name for each entry.	5 1 line Address	Displays 1 line of the mail address or phone number for each entry.
1 2 lines Name (default setting)	Displays 2 lines for each entry. The recipient's or sender's name is shown on the first line.										
2 2 lines Address	Displays 2 lines for each entry. The mail address or phone number is shown on the first line.										
3 1 line Subject	Displays 1 line of the subject for each entry.										
4 1 line Name	Displays 1 line of the recipient's or sender's name for each entry.										
5 1 line Address	Displays 1 line of the mail address or phone number for each entry.										
4 Message display	► Choose from the following options: Sets how to display the message body. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Standard (default setting)</td><td>Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 From message</td><td>Displays the message from the message body onwards.</td></tr> </table>	1 Standard (default setting)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).	2 From message	Displays the message from the message body onwards.						
1 Standard (default setting)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).										
2 From message	Displays the message from the message body onwards.										
5 Auto melody play	► Choose from the following options: Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 ON (default setting)</td><td>Automatically plays melodies when i-mode mail is opened.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 OFF</td><td>Does not automatically play melodies when i-mode mail is opened.</td></tr> </table>	1 ON (default setting)	Automatically plays melodies when i-mode mail is opened.	2 OFF	Does not automatically play melodies when i-mode mail is opened.						
1 ON (default setting)	Automatically plays melodies when i-mode mail is opened.										
2 OFF	Does not automatically play melodies when i-mode mail is opened.										
6 Header/ Signature	See “Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Symbols” → P. 299										
7 Mail security	See “Setting security for individual mailboxes” → P. 152										
8 Receiving display	► Choose from the following options: Sets whether to give display priority to the Receiving display and Reception Results display if a mail, Message Request, or Message Free is received while you are using the FOMA terminal. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Alarm preferred (default setting)</td><td>Shows the Receiving display and Received result display.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Operation preferred</td><td>Gives precedence to the display being used rather than showing the Receiving display and Received result display.</td></tr> </table>	1 Alarm preferred (default setting)	Shows the Receiving display and Received result display.	2 Operation preferred	Gives precedence to the display being used rather than showing the Receiving display and Received result display.						
1 Alarm preferred (default setting)	Shows the Receiving display and Received result display.										
2 Operation preferred	Gives precedence to the display being used rather than showing the Receiving display and Received result display.										

⑨ Receive option setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets whether to receive mail selectively.	
	① ON	Receives mail selectively (not automatically).
	② OFF (default setting)	Receives mail automatically.
⑩ Attached file	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press  (Finish). Specifies whether to receive attached files. When "Valid" is set, files attached to received mail are also received. Set "Melody-valid" and "Image-valid". ☒ (Checked): Valid (default setting) ☐ (Check removed): Invalid Even if you select " ☐ " (remove the check from the check box) for "Image-valid", you will receive large images.	

Mail settings menu 2/2

① Speed photo auto disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: If "OFF" is set in this function and you receive a Speed photo mail, it becomes a mail with the attached image. To display the image, display the received mail.	
	① ON (default setting)	Automatically displays the images when Speed photo mail is received.
	② OFF	Does not automatically display the images when Speed photo mail is received.
② Read out setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the voice that reads out the mail.	
	① Female 1 (default setting)	Reads out mail in the Female 1 voice.
	② Female 2	Reads out mail in the Female 2 voice.
	③ Male 1	Reads out mail in the Male 1 voice.
	④ Male 2	Reads out mail in the Male 2 voice.
	⑤ Robot	Reads out mail in the Robotic voice.
③ Chat	See "Specifying the Chat Settings" → P. 309	
④ SMS report request	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.	
	① ON	An SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
	② OFF (default setting)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
⑤ SMS validity period	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center.	
	① None	SMS are not held at the SMS Center.
	② 1 day	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 1 day.
	③ 2 days	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 2 days.
	④ 3 days (default setting)	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 3 days.
⑥ SMS input character	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the SMS body character input method.	
	① Japanese (70 char.) (default setting)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	② English (160 char.)	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.
⑦ Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings".	
⑧ Reset	Reset the settings specified in "Mail settings" to the default settings. → P. 302	

Note

<Scroll>

- The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the Mail Detail display by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

<Character size>

- You can also change the character size on the Mail Detail display by pressing  or  for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the Mail Detail display or Read Out Mail screen by selecting "Character size" from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- When you switch to a display other than the Mail Detail display, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the Mail Detail display, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.

<Mail list disp.>

- Also you can press  in the Mail List display or select "List setting" from the function menu to select "Name", "Address" or "Subject" display. In this case, this setting is also changed.

<Message display>

- If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers may be displayed even when you select "From message".
- Depending on the length of the message, all or part of the mail headers may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Auto melody play>

- Even when you select "ON" in this option, you may be unable to play melodies sent from devices other than a FOMA N700i correctly.

<Receiving display>

- When you are using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-α ppli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera and you have set "Alarm preferred", the Receiving and Received result displays may not appear when you receive mail or Message Request/Free.

<Receive option setting>

- This setting applies to i-mode mail only. SMS, Message Request, and Message Free are all downloaded automatically regardless of what this setting is set to.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. You also cannot activate chat.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. i-mode mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode Center, and " " is displayed. To receive mail, perform "Check new message" or set the "Receive option setting".
- If you perform "Check new message", all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new message" (P. 299) if you do not want to receive any mail.
- You cannot receive SMS by selecting SMS.

<Attached file>

- If you receive an attached file when the checkbox (☐) is deselected, the attached file is deleted at the i-mode Center. Note that the file deletion will not be notified.
- If you set "Melody-valid" with check ☒, you can receive melodies, but melodies sent from a phone other than the FOMA N700i may not play correctly. This setting only applies to the attached melody and image files. The melody pasted in the message body will be received regardless of this setting.
- If the checkbox (☐) of "Image-valid" is deselected in "Attached file", images inserted in Deco-mail or images in Speed photo mail are deleted at the i-mode Center on arrival.

<SMS report request>

- You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. Also received SMS reports can be displayed to select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu of the sent mail detail display.

<SMS input character>

- You cannot set this option when the message is already entered.

Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Symbols

Default setting	Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation symbols: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail message. This function also allows you to insert a symbol or comment (quotation symbol) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

"Entering Text" → P. 522

In the mail settings display...

➔ P. 296

- Press "Header/Signature" ➔ Select the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature and press ➔ Select the header or signature box and press ➔ Enter your header or signature and press .

Enter the header, signature and quotation symbol in the respective fields.

A header or signature can consist of up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.

- To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically
Deselect the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature.

- Select the Quotation mark box and press ➔ Enter the quotation mark and press ➔ Press (Finish).

A quotation symbol can consist of up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

Note

- Even if you select the "Insert" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted when composing a mail from Speed photo mail, Template, Chat display or i-mode mail composed from a mail-connected i-cx.ppl.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new message>

Default setting	All (Check new message)

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center using "Check new message". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "Message Request" and/or "Message Free".

- A deselected checkbox (☐) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

- Press ➔ Select and press ➔ Press "Connection setting" ➔ Select "Set check new message" and press .
- Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ➔ Press (Finish).

Note

- If you do not want your Message Request/Free distributed, deselect the relevant checkbox (☐)

Setting the voice used for reading out mail

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS reports (P. 312), mail with no message body, mail that consists solely of an i-α ppli-activation URL or pasted melody, or Deco-mail with no message.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or during 64K data communication.

In the mail settings display...

➔ P. 296

- 1** Press  ➔ Press  "Read out setting" ➔ Select the voice you desire and press .

Rules used for reading out mail

The Read Out Mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■ Symbols, special characters and pictographs

- Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.
- * The FOMA terminal may be unable to correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

■ Numbers

- The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.
e.g.: 1234 ➔ "Sen nihyaku sanju yon"

■ Monetary amounts

- If a currency symbol (e.g. "¥" (full-pitch or half-pitch character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.
If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA terminal will only recognize the string as a monetary amount if the commas are used every 3 digits.

e.g. ¥12345 } "Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en"
¥12,345 }

■ Phone numbers

- If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers and not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by "Tel:" (whether upper case, lower case, full-pitch or half-pitch characters) as phone numbers.
e.g. Tel: 12-3456-7890 ➔ "Teru ichini sanyongoroku nanahachikyuzero"

Ordinary phone numbers			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(X)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone numbers			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free numbers			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXXX		

* "X" indicates a number.

■ Times

- Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as times. If the hours component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minutes component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as a time. If "AM" or "PM" (upper case) is added before or after the number, it is read out after the number.

"Hour":"Minute" ("Hour" = 0-29; "Minute" = 00-59)

e.g. 23:15 ➔ "Nijusanji jugofun"

AM "Hour":"Minute" or "Hour":"Minute" AM ("Hour" = 0-12; "Minute" = 00-59)

e.g. AM 5:05 ➔ "Gozen goji gofun"

PM "Hour": "Minute" or "Hour": "Minute" PM ("Hour" = 0-12; "Minute" = 00-59)
 e.g. 5:05PM → "Gogo goji gofun"

■ Dates

- Numbers separated by a slash (/) or period (.) are read out as dates. If "M", "T", "S" or "H" (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

"Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-9999; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) e.g. 2004/5/5 2004/05/05 2004.5.5 2004.05.05	} — "Nisen" yonen gogatsu itsuka"
"M" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "M" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) e.g. M10/04/20 → "Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka"	
"T" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "T" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) e.g. T8.10.15 → "Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi"	
"S" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "S" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) e.g. S50.3.6 → "Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika"	
"H" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "H" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) e.g. H15.7.24 → "Heisei jugonen shichigatsu nijuyokka"	

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, times and dates can also be used with full-pitch characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, times or dates are read out, if the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly when read out. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, times or dates read out, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.
 0-9, A-Z (upper case), colon (:), ¥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (half-pitch or full-pitch)

■ Symbols

- The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

\$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento	¥ (yen) → en	° (degrees) → do
°C (degrees) → do	¥ (yen) → en	\$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento
mm (mm) → miri	kg (kilograms) → kiro	cm (cm) → sENCHI	m (meters) → meetoru
g (grams) → gURAMU	t (tons) → ton	a (ares) → aaru	ha (hectares) → hekutaaru
ml (ml) → rittoru	w (watts) → watto	cal (calories) → karorii	\$ (dollars) → doru
% (cent) → sento	% (percent) → paasento	mm (millibars) → miribaaru	p (pages) → peeji
mm (millimeters) → mirimeetoru	cm (centimeters) → sENCHIMEETORU	km (kilometers) → kiromeetoru	mg (milligrams) → miriguramu
kg (kilograms) → kiroguramu	cc (cubic centimeters) → siisii	m ² (square meters) → heihoumeetoru	

■ Other

- Alphabetic letters are read out as such, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
- Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
- Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.
- Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is automatically paused.

Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:

- Compose your e-mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
- Use punctuation marks when composing e-mail.

Resetting your Mail function settings <Reset>

In the Mail settings display...

➔ P. 296

- 1 Press Press "Reset" ➔ Enter the security code and press ➔ Select "YES" and press .

About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

By setting up a chat mail session with several people, you can exchange messages just as if you were sitting together having a conversation.

- You cannot launch Chat in the following situations:
 - When "ON" is selected in "Receive option".
 - If your Inbox is full of mail.
 - When PIM lock is set.
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

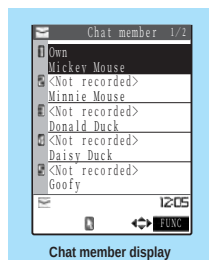
Selecting Chat session members <Chat members>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

- 1 Press ➔ "Chat mail" ➔ (FUNC) ➔ "Chat member".

The "Chat member display" appears.

For the function menu in the Chat display ➔ P. 304



Chat member display

Using the function menu in the Chat member display

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

In the chat member display...

➔ P. 302

- 1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Chat member display
function menu

Chat member display function menu

Edit	Enters and registers the mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself. See "Entering Text" ➔ P. 522

② Refer address	■ When no mail address is stored ▶ Choose from the following options: ■ When an mail address is stored ▶ Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options: Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or record.	
	① Phonebook	Enters a mail address from the phonebook. See “Making a Call From the Phonebook” → P. 98
	② Sent address	Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.
	③ Received address	Enters a mail address from the Received address list.
③ Change member	See “Changing chat session members” → P. 303	
④ Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.	
⑤ Delete	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.	
⑥ Delete all	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.	

Note

<Edit>

- You cannot add a mail address that is already registered for another chat member.
- If the added mail address is registered in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. If it is not registered in a chat group, the first 8 characters of the mail address are displayed. If the mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

- If you edit a registered chat group member mail address by quoting the phonebook, the member's name and image are also changed.

<Display setting>

- If you display your own details, your mail address is not shown.

<Delete> <Delete all>

- You cannot delete yourself.

● Changing chat session members

In the chat member display function menu...

➔ P. 302

1 Press “Change member” ▶ Choose from the following options:

① Chat group	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the member to be changed from the group list or member list.	
	① Group list	▶ Choose a Chat group to change and press ●.
	② Member list	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish).
② Mail member	▶ Select “Mail member” and press ●.	

Note

- If there are some chat members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat members. Select “YES” to replace all the members, or “NO” to cancel replacement.
- If you receive chat mail addressed to a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, it does not appear in the Chat display. If you exit Chat without deleting the chat mail, the mail is not displayed in the Chat display next time you start Chat. However, it is saved as i-mode mail.

Composing and sending Chat mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new Chat mail message.

1 Press "Chat mail".

The "Chat display" appears.

2 Press Enter your message and press Press (Send).

You can send up to 250 full-pitch characters or 500 half-pitch characters from the Chat display.

When sending is completed, the chat tone rings and your message appears in the Latest Message area.

To send another message, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The Latest Message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed Chat mail message.

■ To end a Chat mail session

For ending a Chat session → P. 305



Note

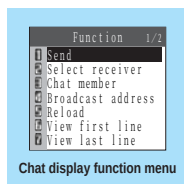
- If "Mail security" is set for the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" folder or a folder that contains chat mail in the Mail menu, you need to enter your security code.
- If the FOMA terminal's memory for received mail is full with unread and/or protected mail, you cannot launch Chat. Delete some unwanted mail, read some unread mail or unprotect some protected mail and then try again.
- Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- Sent and received chat mail is stored in the "Chat" folder. To resend Chat mail, send it from the "Chat" folder.
- The subject used for chat mail you send is "チャットメール" (half-pitch characters).
- Chat mail received in the Chat display is marked as read in the "Chat" folder.
- If you try to send chat mail without entering a message, a confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to send the chat mail without a message, or "NO" to cancel chat mail transmission.
- If you receive ordinary i-mode mail while Chat is running, the Chat display appears preferentially and the Reception Results display does not appear.

Using the function menu in the Chat display

In the chat display...

→ P. 304

1 Press (FUNC) Choose from the following options:



Chat display function menu

Chat display function menu 1/2

 Send	Sends Chat mail.
 Select receiver	▶ Select a chat member to send to and press  Press  (Finish).
 Chat member	See "Selecting Chat session members" → P. 302
 Broadcast address	See "Adding Chat session members by referring to broadcast mail addresses" → P. 305
 Reload	Downloads the Chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
 View first line	Displays the most recent message in the Latest Message area.
 View last line	Displays the oldest message in the Latest Message area.

1 Delete read	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes the read and unprotected Chat mail you have sent and received.
2 Quit	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes the read and unprotected Chat mail you have sent and received and then quits Chat.

Note

<Broadcast address>
● You cannot set this option for more than 6 chat group members.
<Reload>
● If you receive mail other than chat mail, the Chat display is not reloaded.
<Delete read>
● This option also deletes Chat mail that could not be sent.
● You cannot use this option to delete protected Chat mail.
<Quit>
● To quit Chat without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".
● If you quit Chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox List display and Inbox List display respectively. However, when "Sort all" is selected, it is saved in the specified folders.

● Adding Chat session members by referring to broadcast mail addresses

- You can use this function only with the FOMA terminals that support chat mail.

In the chat display function menu... ➔ P. 304

1 Press  "Broadcast address" ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press  ▶ Press  (Finish).

■ When all the addresses are for Chat session members

Press  "Broadcast address" ▶ Select "OK" and press .

Receiving Chat mail <Chat mail rcv.>

If you receive chat mail while Chat is not running, the  icon appears on the FOMA terminal's stand-by display. Selecting this icon launches Chat so that you can start using it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 full-pitch characters (or 500 half-pitch characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat mail screen.
- If you have undeleted Chat mail at the end of the previous Chat, it appears in the message record area in the Chat display in reverse chronological order.
- When closing the chat mail screen, you can delete all chat mail. You can also delete chat mail from the i-mode mail list screen.
- If you launch Chat by selecting  or by selecting "Chat" from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, the Chat session members and recipients change as follows:
 - When the sender's e-mail address was set in the list of Chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a Chat session are again set. However, if you launched Chat from the Received Mail Detail display, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you selected , members are added as specified in "Select receiver", and when the sender's e-mail address is not included, it is added to the list of recipients.
 - If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a Chat session member but is registered in a Chat group, all the members of the Chat group to which the sender belongs are set as Chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
 - If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a Chat session member and is not registered in a Chat group, only the sender's e-mail address is set as a Chat session member.

1 Press Select and press .



Stand-by display

■ When the sender is not registered as a Chat session member

Select "YES" and press .

A message appears asking whether to delete the Chat session members and launch Chat. Select "YES" to change the current Chat session members and launch Chat.

■ If you select "NO"

Select "NO" and press .

The current Chat session member settings are retained and the Mail Menu display appears.

2 The Chat session begins.

Received Chat mail appears in the Latest Message area. If you have undeleted Chat mail, the received date and time appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

Note

- The FOMA terminal recognizes mail as Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:
 - The subject line includes "チャットメール" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters).
 - The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a member of a Chat session or Chat group.
 - When it is not mail for mail-connected i-α ppli.
 - When it is not Deco-mail.
 - When it is not SMS.
- You can also launch Chat from the Received Mail Detail display.
- If the message of received chat mail includes a phone number, mail address or URL, it cannot be used with the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function.

Registering Chat session members in a Chat group

Registering proposed Chat session members in a Chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering Chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a Chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 Chat groups.
- You cannot register the same Chat session member in more than 1 Chat group.
- When you register a Chat session member in a Chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.

1 Press Select and press 5 "Chat group".

The "Chat group list display" appears.



Chat group list display

2 Select a Chat group and press .

The "Group member list display" appears.



3 Select "<Not stored>" and press (Edit) ▶ Enter the e-mail address and press .

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters as the e-mail address.

To add another e-mail address, repeat steps 2-3.

See "Entering Text" → P. 522

■ To enter a mail address from the phonebook

On the "enter a mail address display", select "Quote phonebook" from the function menu.

Select the search method and select the mail address you want to quote.

See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538

4 Press .

Note

- When you store an i-mode mail address for a chat group member, you must store the full address including "@docomo.ne.jp". If the address is "Phone number@docomo.ne.jp", enter only the phone number.
- The first 8 half-pitch characters of the registered mail address are set as the member name. If the registered mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. If an image is stored in the phonebook, the image is also set.
- If a member with the same mail address is already registered in another chat group, a confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to delete the existing registered member and add the address as a new member, or "NO" to cancel the procedure.
- You cannot register Chat session members while "PIM lock" is set.

Using the function menu in the Chat Group List display

In the chat group list display...

➔ P. 306

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Chat group list display function menu

① Active chat	Sets the Chat group as the Chat session members and launches Chat.
② Edit group name	▶ Enter the group name and press  . Edits a group name. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters as the group name. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
③ Reset group name	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Resets the group name to the default name.

Using the function menu in the Group Member List display

In the group member list display...

➔ P. 307

1 Press **ⓘ** (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Group member list display function menu

1 Edit	➔ Enter the mail address and press ⓘ. Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 15 half-pitch characters as the e-mail address. See "Entering Text" → P. 522						
2 Refer address	■ When no e-mail address is stored ➔ Choose from the following options: ■ When an e-mail address is stored ➔ Select "YES" and press ⓘ ➔ Choose from the following options: Enter the group member's mail address from the phonebook or record. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Phonebook</td><td>Enters a mail address from the phonebook. The name and image registered in the phonebook are stored. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Sent address</td><td>Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Received address</td><td>Enters a mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr> </table>	1 Phonebook	Enters a mail address from the phonebook. The name and image registered in the phonebook are stored. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98	2 Sent address	Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.	3 Received address	Enters a mail address from the Received address list.
1 Phonebook	Enters a mail address from the phonebook. The name and image registered in the phonebook are stored. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98						
2 Sent address	Enters a mail address from the Sent address list.						
3 Received address	Enters a mail address from the Received address list.						
3 Change member	■ If the member is not registered ➔ Select ⏮ "Mail member" ➔ Select the mailing list member and press ⏮. ■ If the member is registered ➔ Select ⏮ "Mail member" ➔ Select "YES" and press ⏮ ➔ Select the mailing list member and press ⓘ.						
4 Member setting	See "Setting member details" → P. 308						
5 Delete	➔ Select "YES" and press ⓘ .						
6 Delete all	➔ Enter your security code and press ⓘ ➔ Select "YES" and press ⓘ. Deletes all the members in the selected group. About Your Security Codes → P. 142						

Note

<Change member>

- If there are some group members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat group members. Select "YES" to replace all the members, or "NO" to cancel replacement.
- If a chat group member with the same e-mail address is registered in another chat group, a confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to delete the previously registered member and add the new member. Selecting "NO" cancels the procedure.

Setting member details

In the group member list display function menu...

➔ P. 308

1 Press **⏮** "Member setting" ➔ Choose from the following options:

1 Edit member name	➔ Enter the member name and press ⓘ. Edits the member's name. You can enter up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters as the member name. See "Entering Text" → P. 522

② Set image	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the image shown for each member in the Chat display. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	① Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
	② Camera	Selects an image shot using the FOMA terminal's camera.
	③ Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal.
③ Set voice	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the member voices used when messages are read out in the chat display.	
	① Female 1 (default setting)	Reads out chat mail in the Female 1 voice.
	② Female 2	Reads out chat mail in the Female 2 voice.
	③ Male 1	Reads out chat mail in the Male 1 voice.
	④ Male 2	Reads out chat mail in the Male 2 voice.
	⑤ Robot	Reads out chat mail in the Robotic voice.

Note

<Edit member name>

- If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the mail address are set as the member name.

<Set image>

- You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the Chat settings

In the mail settings display...

➔ P. 296

1

Press  Press  "Chat".

The "Chat setting display" appears.

2

Choose from the following options:



Chat setting menu display

① Sound setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the tone sounded in the Chat display when new Chat mail is received or Chat mail is sent. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	① Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from a site or the Internet web page.
	② Pre-installed	Selects a melody or ring tone from the pre-installed folder.
	③ Voice announce	Select the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in "Voice announce".
	④ OFF	No notification tone sounds.
② Chat image	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets whether to display an image in the Latest Message area in the Chat display.	
	① ON (default setting)	Displays an image in the Latest Message area in the Chat display.
	② OFF	Displays no image in the Latest Message area in the Chat display.
③ Read out chat	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets whether to read out new chat mail in the Chat display.	
	① ON	Reads out Chat mail.
	② OFF (default setting)	Does not read out Chat mail.
	See "Setting user details" ➔ P. 310	
④ User setting	See "Setting user details" ➔ P. 310	

Note

<Sound setting>

- The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat member.

Setting user details

In the chat setting display...

➔ P. 309

1 Press "User setting" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Name	▶ Enter the user name and press  .	
	Enters the user name. You can enter up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters as the user name. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
2 Image	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Select the image you want to display on the Chat display. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Select an image saved in the Inbox.
	2 Camera	Select an image taken by the FOMA terminal.
	3 Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal.
3 Voice	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Selects your voice when messages are read out in the chat display.	
	1 Female 1 (default setting)	Reads out chat mail in the Female 1 voice.
	2 Female 2	Reads out chat mail in the Female 2 voice.
	3 Male 1	Reads out chat mail in the Male 1 voice.
	4 Male 2	Reads out chat mail in the Male 2 voice.
	5 Robot	Reads out chat mail in the Robotic voice.

Note

- You cannot change the background color.

<User name>

- If you leave the user name blank or enter only spaces, "Own" is used.

<Compose SMS/Send>

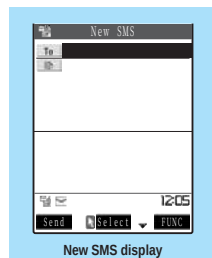
Composing and Sending SMS

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas service providers other than DoCoMo.
For information on the service activation schedule and the supported overseas providers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

Composing and sending an SMS

1 Press () ▶ "Compose SMS".

The "New SMS display" appears.



New SMS display

2 Select **To** and press **OK**.

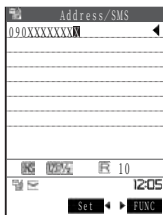
The "SMS address entering display" appears.

You can only enter 1 SMS recipient.

Select "To" and press **OK** (FUNC) to look up an address. → P. 312

3 Enter the phone number of the recipient and press **OK**.

See "Using the function menu in the Address/Subject entering display" → P. 252



■ If the recipient is using an overseas service provider other than DoCoMo

Enter + (hold down the **0** key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party's mobile phone number.

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when Entering.

■ To change the entered recipient

Select the address in the New SMS display and enter the phone number again.

You can also change the recipient by selecting "Look-up address" from the Function menu in the New SMS display and changing (overwriting) the number.

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

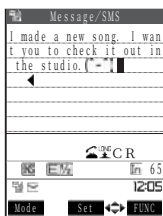
- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks (*), hash symbols (#)
- When it includes plus signs (+) other than in front of the address.

If you try to send an SMS to a phone number preceded by "184", "186", "#31#" or "* 31#", a confirmation message appears asking whether to send the message with the Notify Caller ID prefix deleted. Select "YES" to delete the "184", "186", "#31#" or "* 31#" prefix and send the SMS.

4 Select **Message** and press **OK**.

The "Entering SMS message display" appears.

5 Enter the message and press **OK**.



The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the Message Entry display are as specified in the "SMS input char." settings (P. 312). If "Japanese" input is selected, you can enter up to 70 full-pitch or half-pitch characters in all. If "English" input is selected, you can enter up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols (excluding 「」 { } [] | \ . - ' " ^ ~ `).

Spaces are counted in the same way as characters.

You can use the "Entering address" function menu (P. 252) while entering a message.

6 Press **OK** (Send).

An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent. Once the SMS has been sent, press "OK" to return to the Mail Menu display.

To edit sent or unsent SMS → P. 293

Note

- If you exceed the limit (P. 277) on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail is not deleted.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- When you press **CLR** or **END** in the New SMS display without sending the message, a message appears asking whether to discard SMS and end message editing. Select "YES" to clear the text entered so far, or "NO" to retain the entered text and return to the original display.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in half-pitch alphanumeric input mode.
- Spaces (blanks) are also counted in the same way as characters.

SMS reports <Disp. SMS report>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report req." (P. 312), an SMS report is delivered to you after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox as well as in the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

Display an SMS with an SMS report (📧), select "Disp. SMS report" from the Function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the Received Mail List display. SMS reports are indicated by "📧 SMS report" in the subject line.

Using the function menu in the New SMS display

In the new SMS display...

➔ P. 310

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

New SMS display function menu 1/2

 Send	Sends an SMS.	
 Preview	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.	
 Save	Saves the current SMS in the Draft mailbox. You can save up to a total of 20 messages including i-mode mail.	
 Look-up address	➔ Choose from the following options: Enters a recipient by referring to the phonebook or records.	
	 Phonebook	Enters phone number by searching the phonebook. See "Making a Call From the Phonebook" → P. 98
	 Sent address	Enters a phone number from the Sent address list.
	 Received address	Enters a phone number from the Received address list.
 SMS report req.	➔ Choose from the following options: Specifies whether to request an SMS report.	
	 ON	An SMS report is delivered following SMS transmission.
	 OFF (default setting)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmission.
 SMS valid. per.	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the period for which SMS are held at the SMS Center.	
	 None	SMS are not held at the SMS Center.
	 1 day	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 1 day.
	 2 days	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 2 days.
	 3 days (default setting)	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 3 days.
 SMS input char.	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the SMS input method.	
	 Japanese (70 char.) (default setting)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	 English (160 char.)	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.

New SMS display function menu 2/2

 Erase message	➔ Select "YES" and press . Only the message body is deleted.
 Delete	➔ Select "YES" and press . The SMS being edited is deleted.

Note

<SMS input char.>

- If you set the SMS input method in the Mail Settings display, the setting is retained after the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the SMS input method set in the Function menu is only valid for the current SMS.

When You Receive an SMS

When the FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, it automatically receives SMS from the SMS Center.

- The FOMA terminal can hold up to 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail.
- You can use "Select ring tone" (P. 114) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P. 133) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received on the FOMA terminal as SMS.

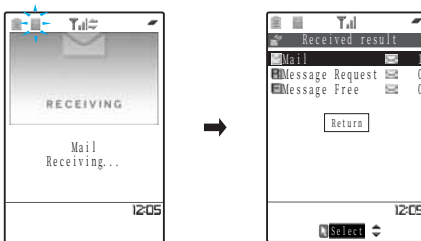
1 When you receive SMS, the (Blue) icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears.

Once the SMS have been received, the Received result display appears showing the number of SMS, i-mode mail and Message Request/Free received.

Select "Mail" to display the Received Mail List display.

If you not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for 15 seconds, the original display reappears. You can change the period for which the Received result display is shown in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 118).

The ring tone is played at the volume set for "Mail" in "Ring volume" (P. 66).



Note

- If the total number of received mail stored on the FOMA terminal (total of i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that unread and protected received mail is not replaced. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → P. 288
- Once you reach the limit on the number of unread or protected received mail messages that are stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS), you can no longer receive new mail and  (Red) appears on the display. To enable the FOMA terminal to receive SMS, delete received mail stored on the FOMA terminal, read unread mail or remove the protection from protected mail until the  (Red) icon is no longer displayed. Then use "Check new SMS".
- The precedence for the ring tone and illumination settings used when you receive SMS is assigned as follows. ① has the highest precedence:
 - ① Mail ring tone, Mail illumination in Phonebook Utilities → P. 107
 - ② Mail ring tone, Mail illumination in Group Utility → P. 109
 - ③ The "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" settings → P. 114, 133
- When you receive multiple SMS at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and illumination pattern set for the last item of mail received.
- If you receive Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal, the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- If you receive an SMS when a display other than the stand-by display is shown and "Operation preferred" is selected in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal rings and the Received result display appears.
- If you receive an SMS when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the indicator display.
- If you receive an SMS during i-motion playback, the video and sound may be interrupted.

Viewing received SMS

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the Received Mail List display.
- "SMS report" is displayed as the subject for received SMS reports. For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

1 Press  ► **Select**  and press .



2 Select the received SMS and press .

Note

- If a received SMS includes characters other than half-pitch alphanumeric letters and symbols (excluding . 「 」 { } □ | \ , - * ° ^ ` ~), such as Russian letters, Greek letters, symbols, and full-pitch characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The phone number of the sender of the current SMS is highlighted. Pressing  while the number is highlighted makes a voice or video-phone call to that number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.
- SMS reports are delivered to you only when your FOMA terminal is set to require SMS reports in "SMS report request" (P. 297). You can also view the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" (P. 293) from the Function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display.

Forwarding and replying to Received SMS

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject.
See "Replying by composing a new message" → P. 273

Note

- You cannot reply to an SMS by referring to or quoting the received message.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Pay phone) or a phone that does not support caller ID notification (Not supported).
- You cannot forward or reply to an SMS report.
- If you forward or reply to an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the  remains on the display and the  or  icon does not appear in the Received Mail List display or Received Mail Detail display.

Checking for SMS

- SMS delivered to the SMS Center is automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the SMS Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the Inbox is full.
- You cannot check for new SMS when  is displayed.

1 Press (MAIL) "Check new SMS".

"Checking..." appears on the screen while checking new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, a message indicating that the inquiry has been performed appears. Press .

If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic downloading begins.

In some cases, automatic downloading may not begin immediately after the inquiry is performed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.

Depending on the timing of the cancellation, SMS may be received anyway.

Note

- When an icon such as  (Red) or  (Red) is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot accept any further i-mode mail or SMS. Delete unwanted mail, read unread mail or unprotect some of your protected mail (P. 288) until the icons are no longer displayed. Read or unprotected mail is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- This function cannot be used to receive i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. To download your i-mode mail or Message Request/Free, use "Check new message".

Specifying Your SMS Settings

Specifying the SMS center setting

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Default setting

DoCoMo

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

1 Press Select and press Press "Connection setting" ▶ Select "SMS center selection" and press ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
2 User setting	▶ Enter the SMS center address and press  ▶ Press  "International" or  "Unknown". Uses another provider's SMS center.
3 Reset	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes the "User setting" data and resets the setting to "DoCoMo". About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

<User setting>

- If the entered SMS Center address includes "#" or "*", you cannot select "1 International".

SMS Rejection Settings

Default setting

Accept

Specifies the SMS rejection settings. You can restrict SMS using one of the following methods.

- "Reject all": Rejects all SMS regardless of whether or not the caller ID is notified.
- "Reject SMS with no caller ID": Rejects SMS from a mova service i-mode terminal, PHS, and general phones that do not send caller ID.

1 Press .

You are connected to the SMS center.

■ To Connect to the SMS Center via the iMenu Screen

iMenu screen → ENGLISH → Options → Mail Settings → "Other Settings" in Receiving Mail → "Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings" → Select SMS Center (* 20184) and press .

2 Listen to the Guidance ▶ Choose from the following options:

You are automatically disconnected from the network if you press , , , (end) or press 3 incorrect buttons.

	Reject all SMS.
	Only reject SMS with no caller ID.
	Release rejection settings.

* Rejecting all SMS or rejecting SMS that do not have caller ID are effective ways to stop nuisance SMS.

Note

- The rejection does not apply to SMS messages sent under the "mopera Mail Notification", "Visualnet Conference Notification" and "FOMA incoming Notification" services provided by DoCoMo.
- You can set SMS rejection only from the FOMA terminal. mova phones cannot connect to the SMS center. Also, customers with dual network service contracts cannot connect to the SMS center while their mova is active.
- This setting does not incur communication or packet fees.

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS to Your FOMA card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received and/or sent SMS in total.

Moving or copying SMS to the UIM

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

1 Press () ▶ Press "Inbox" ▶ Select the folder and press
 ▶ Select the SMS ▶ Press (FUNC) ▶ Press ▶ Press "UIM operation"
 ▶ Choose from the following options:

Move to UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press . The SMS is moved from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press . The SMS is copied from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

Note

- When you move or copy received or sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the moved SMS appears in the Inbox or Outbox folder respectively.
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, Sent Mail List display or Sent Mail Detail display.
- SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be protected. If you move or copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the messages are unprotected on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you already have 20 messages stored on the FOMA card (UIM), the  (Red),  (Blue) or  (Red) icon appears and no further messages can be moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

Moving or copying SMS on the UIM to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

- 1
- Press  ▶ Press  "Inbox" ▶ Select the folder and press 
- ▶ Select the SMS ▶ Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  ▶ Press  "UIM operation"
- ▶ Choose from the following options:

 Move from UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press  . The SMS is moved from the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
 Copy from UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press  . The SMS is copied from the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Note

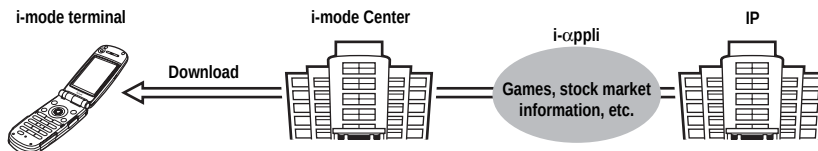
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, Sent Mail List display or Sent Mail Detail display.

i-α ppli

What is an i-α ppli?.....	320
Downloading i-α ppli.....	321
Running i-α ppli	323
Launching i-α ppli Automatically.....	329
Running i-α ppli from Sites or Mail <i-α ppli To function>.....	330
Setting the i-α ppli Stand-by Display <Stand-by set>	332
Organizing i-α ppli	333

What is an i-α ppli?

By downloading i-α ppli from i-mode sites or Internet websites, you can make your i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal(i-mode terminal) even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-α ppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There is also a mapping i-α ppli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-α ppli programs that enable you to store data from the i-α ppli directly into the phonebook or your schedule and i-α ppli that operate with multimedia functions such as saving and downloading images.



- To download an i-α ppli → P. 321
- To run an i-α ppli → P. 323
- To have an i-α ppli start up automatically → P. 329

Note

- Some software may use i-mode terminal manufacturer number (model or ID of the FOMA terminal, or FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer number).
- Some software may use the FOMA terminal to communicate when starting, but can also be set to run without communicating.

Using stored data

Some i-α ppli software can browse, store or use the data stored on your i-mode terminal (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information). The stored data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Adding schedule events
- Using icon information
- Loading images from the data box
- Adding bookmarks
- Saving images in the data box

What is an i-α ppli DX?

In an i-α ppli DX, the information on the i-mode terminal (such as mail, Dialed/Received call records and phonebook data) is used by the software to make i-α ppli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes features such as composing mail in your favorite cartoon character display, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking with mail functions to provide real time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices. → P. 328

Using stored data

An i-α ppli DX software can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-α ppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icon information), but also information such as mail, redial records, received call records and ring tones. The stored data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Changing ring tones (phone, video-phone, mail, messages and chat mail)
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Changing display settings (stand-by display, Dialed/Received call, Video-phone call, Receive/Send Mail and Message Request/Free)
- Browsing the latest Redial records
- Loading images from the Data box
- Browsing the latest Received call records
- Saving images in the Data box
- Using icon information
- Saving i-motion
- Adding bookmarks
- Saving melodies
- Using the Mail menu
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Compose message display
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Browsing the Inbox/Outbox/Draft

Note

- Regardless of the software communication settings, an i-α ppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of the connections differ depending on the software.
- To launch an i-α ppli DX, the date and time must be set. → P. 45

What is a mail-connected i-α ppli?

Mail-connected i-α ppli is a type of i-α ppli DX that uses i-mode mail to exchange information and provide real time updates on the essential information such as share prices and progress of games, etc., using software to make the FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use.

- i-α ppli mail that is used in mail-connected i-α ppli may not be displayed correctly.

Other features

i-α ppli stand-by display

In the i-α ppli stand-by display, you can use an i-α ppli as the stand-by display and still receive mail or make calls. This expands the range of uses for your stand-by display to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm. → P. 332

- This function can be used by software that supports i-α ppli stand-by displays.

i-α ppli Auto start

This feature allows you to launch software automatically by specifying a time, date and day of the week. There are also software programs that can be launched automatically at set intervals specified in the software beforehand. → P. 329

Using the camera

With some software, you can take pictures using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera. → P. 160

- This function can be used by software that supports the FOMA terminal's Camera photography function.

Infrared communication

This feature allows a software running on the FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with an infrared communications function. This further expands the uses of the FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices. → P. 409

- This function can be used by software that supports the FOMA terminal's infrared communications function.
- Depending on the device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device has an infrared communications function.

Infrared remote control

This allows software to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. → P. 415

- This function can be used by software that supports the FOMA terminal's infrared remote control function. Software that is compatible with the controlled device is also required.

Downloading i-α ppli

Use this procedure to download software from an i-mode site or Internet website and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 100 download software programs (up to 5 mail-connected i-α ppli programs). However, depending on the software sizes, the actual number of downloadable i-α ppli programs varies between 10 and 100.
- When you download a mail-connected i-α ppli, folders for the mail-connected i-α ppli are automatically created in the receive and send folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-α ppli and cannot be changed.
- If there are already 5 dedicated folders for mail-connected i-α ppli, delete 1 or more of the existing dedicated folders for mail-connected i-α ppli to create some available space for the new download.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-α ppli if you have already saved a mail-connected i-α ppli that uses the same receive and send folders.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-α ppli while mail security is set.
- Mail sent and received using a mail-connected i-α ppli is automatically sorted into the dedicated folders created when that mail-connected i-α ppli was downloaded. You can also manually move received mail.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-α ppli without deleting its folders and then download the mail-connected i-α ppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-α ppli.

● If more items can be saved or if there is more memory available

1 Select and download the software.

When downloading is completed, the "Completed" message appears. When you press , a message appears asking whether to launch the software. However, for software that is immediately launched from the site (P. 323), the software starts up without displaying a completion message.

■ To interrupt data downloading

Press .

2 Select "YES" and press .

When you launch the software,  appears at the bottom of the display. When you launch an i-α ppli DX,  appears.

■ To prevent the software launching

Select "NO" and press .

■ To cancel software launching

Press  while the software is starting up.

Note

- You may be unable to download data from some sites.
- Some i-α ppli software automatically open communication after being downloaded. However, to use this service, you must first specify "Network set" in "Software setting".
- You cannot switch tasks while downloading is in progress.
- If you download an i-α ppli DX or an i-α ppli that utilizes stored data or FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message appears notifying you that the i-α ppli uses stored data or such mobile phone data.
- When you are downloading the software information or a software program from an SSL site, the  icon is displayed. →P. 208
- At the time of purchase, the default "Display software info" setting is "Not display." Selecting "Display" allows you to view the software information before downloading. When you press , a message appears asking whether to download the software. Select "YES" to start the download.
- During downloading, a message appears asking whether to send the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers. Select "YES" to start the download. When this happens, FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. Select "NO" to cancel downloading.
- If you download software that uses the FOMA terminal's communication functions or that can be set as a stand-by display, the Software setting display appears. After selecting the settings for the downloaded software, press  (Finish) or .
- If you again download software you have downloaded once using a different FOMA card (UIM), a message appears asking whether to overwrite the software. Select "YES" to start the download. When downloading finishes, the software downloaded using a different FOMA card (UIM) is deleted.
- The term "i-α ppli mail" refers to mail sent by a mail-connected i-α ppli and mail that has been sent to you to be used in a mail-connected i-α ppli. i-α ppli mail contains i-α ppli-utilization data that is automatically saved in i-α ppli mail folders.
- You can display 3-dimensional images in i-α ppli by loading the 3D polygon* engine.
※ Uses combinations of polygons to display 3D images with depth.

● When the storage area for software is full

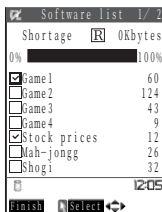
If you have already saved 100 software programs or if there is insufficient space available in the memory, a message appears notifying there is not enough space available to save additional software. Delete some of the saved software to create space for new software downloads.

1 Select "YES" and press .

■ If you do not want to delete software

Select "NO" and press .

2 Select a checkbox (☐) and press ► Press (Finish).



When you delete software
and there is memory
available

With each software that you select, the "Shortage" and bar indicator decrease. Continue selecting software to be deleted until the "Shortage" and bar indicator reach zero.

3 Select "YES" and press .

Downloading restarts.

Viewing i-α ppli information during downloading <Display software info>

Default setting	Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether the software description is displayed for checking when you download the software.

1 Press ► Select and press ► Press "i-α ppli settings" ► Select "Display Software info" and press ► Choose from the following options:

 Display	Displays the software description during downloading.
 Not display	Does not display the software description during downloading.

i-α ppli that is launched immediately from the site

Unlike ordinary i-α ppli software, some i-α ppli software are immediately launched from the site.

- These software are not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloading and do not appear in the Software list display.
- A message may appear while the software is running asking whether to use the FOMA terminal's communication functions.
- These software cannot be launched as an i-α ppli stand-by display.
- After the software quits, a message may appear asking whether to store the software.
- Some software cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
- Once the software has been stored on the FOMA terminal, it can be launched in the same way as an ordinary software.

Running i-α ppli

Launching an i-α ppli

1 Hold on (F mode) for 1 second or more.

The "Software list display" appears.

2 Select the software to be launched and press .

■ To cancel the software launching

Press  while the software is starting up.



Quitting an i-α ppli

1 Press Select "YES" and press .

■ For software developers

When an i-α ppli software is created and does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Press  Select  and press  Press  "i-α ppli info" Press  "Trace info". The trace information is displayed in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy the trace information by selecting "Copy info" from the Function menu. To delete the trace information, select "Delete info" from the Function menu.

Note

- You can also use the following procedure to quit an i-α ppli:
 - Hold down  for 1 second or longer Press  Select "YES" and press .
- To launch an i-α ppli DX, first set the date and time in "Set time".
- To launch software automatically, set "Auto start set" to "ON" and specify a time in "Auto start time". → P. 329
- If you receive an i-mode mail, Message Request, or a Message Free while software is running, "", "", or "" is displayed. To display the i-mode mail, Message Request, or Message Free, either exit the software or use the multi-task function.
- Melodies played while software is starting up are played at the volume set in "Ring volume". Note that these melodies cannot be played during a call.
- No sounds may be heard depending on the i-α ppli software.
- If you receive a call while a software program is starting up, the software starting-up is paused. You are returned to the software display when the call ends.
- Some software programs allow you to use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Web To function from the i-α ppli. However, you cannot use the Web To function from the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- i-α ppli mail used by mail-connected i-α ppli may not be displayed correctly in some cases.
- Do not remove the battery pack while software is running as this will prevent the FOMA terminal from saving the data up to that point.
- Images used in i-α ppli* and data entered by the user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.

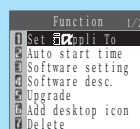
*: Here, "images used in i-α ppli" refers to images shot when a camera-linked i-α ppli launches the Camera function, images downloaded using an i-α ppli infrared communication function, images downloaded with an i-α ppli from an i-mode site or Internet website, or images loaded with an i-α ppli from the data box.
- When you launch Camera from i-α ppli, the images you shoot may be saved/used as a part of the i-α ppli.
- When you launch the Camera from i-α ppli, image size, image quality or frame may be set depending on the software.
- You can read JAN codes and QR codes by launching the Bar code reader from i-α ppli. The read data can be used in the software.
- If there is no trace information, the "Trace info" option is not displayed.
- If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.

Using the function menu in the Software list display

In the software list display...

→ P. 324

1 Press (FUNC) Choose from the following options:



Software list display
function menu

Software list display function menu 1/2

① Set i-α ppli To	See "Enabling software launching with i-α ppli To" → P. 330																																				
② Auto start time	See "Setting the launch date/time" → P. 329																																				
③ Software setting	▶ Select from the following options: Specifies the software settings. <table> <tr> <td>① Stand-by set</td><td>See "Setting the i-α ppli Stand-by Display" → P. 332</td></tr> <tr> <td>② Network set</td><td> ▶ Choose from the following options: This function sets whether to communicate when i-α ppli is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>The i-α ppli automatically communicates while i-α ppli is running.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>The i-α ppli does not communicate while i-α ppli is running.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Check every start</td><td>Allows you to select whether the i-α ppli will communicate each time it starts.</td></tr> </table> </td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Stand-by net</td><td> ▶ Choose from the following options: This function sets whether the i-α ppli set as the stand-by display communicates. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Automatically communicates on the i-α ppli stand-by display.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not communicate on the i-α ppli stand-by display.</td></tr> </table> </td></tr> <tr> <td>④ Icon info</td><td> ▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether the disclosure of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-α ppli is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits disclosure of message icon information.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit disclosure of message icon information.</td></tr> </table> </td></tr> <tr> <td>⑤ Change mld./img.</td><td> ▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages and images such as those used in the stand-by display or when mail is sent or received to be changed when an i-α ppli DX is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits ring tones and images to be changed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Check every change</td><td>Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-α ppli attempts an automatic change.</td></tr> </table> </td></tr> <tr> <td>⑥ See P.book/hist.</td><td> ▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to allow you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records, and the newest unread e-mail when an i-α ppli DX is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.</td></tr> </table> </td></tr> </table>	① Stand-by set	See "Setting the i-α ppli Stand-by Display" → P. 332	② Network set	▶ Choose from the following options: This function sets whether to communicate when i-α ppli is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>The i-α ppli automatically communicates while i-α ppli is running.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>The i-α ppli does not communicate while i-α ppli is running.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Check every start</td><td>Allows you to select whether the i-α ppli will communicate each time it starts.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	The i-α ppli automatically communicates while i-α ppli is running.	② OFF	The i-α ppli does not communicate while i-α ppli is running.	③ Check every start	Allows you to select whether the i-α ppli will communicate each time it starts.	③ Stand-by net	▶ Choose from the following options: This function sets whether the i-α ppli set as the stand-by display communicates. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Automatically communicates on the i-α ppli stand-by display.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not communicate on the i-α ppli stand-by display.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Automatically communicates on the i-α ppli stand-by display.	② OFF	Does not communicate on the i-α ppli stand-by display.	④ Icon info	▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether the disclosure of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-α ppli is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits disclosure of message icon information.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit disclosure of message icon information.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Permits disclosure of message icon information.	② OFF	Does not permit disclosure of message icon information.	⑤ Change mld./img.	▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages and images such as those used in the stand-by display or when mail is sent or received to be changed when an i-α ppli DX is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits ring tones and images to be changed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Check every change</td><td>Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-α ppli attempts an automatic change.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Permits ring tones and images to be changed.	② OFF	Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.	③ Check every change	Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-α ppli attempts an automatic change.	⑥ See P.book/hist.	▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to allow you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records, and the newest unread e-mail when an i-α ppli DX is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.	② OFF	Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.
① Stand-by set	See "Setting the i-α ppli Stand-by Display" → P. 332																																				
② Network set	▶ Choose from the following options: This function sets whether to communicate when i-α ppli is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>The i-α ppli automatically communicates while i-α ppli is running.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>The i-α ppli does not communicate while i-α ppli is running.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Check every start</td><td>Allows you to select whether the i-α ppli will communicate each time it starts.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	The i-α ppli automatically communicates while i-α ppli is running.	② OFF	The i-α ppli does not communicate while i-α ppli is running.	③ Check every start	Allows you to select whether the i-α ppli will communicate each time it starts.																														
① ON	The i-α ppli automatically communicates while i-α ppli is running.																																				
② OFF	The i-α ppli does not communicate while i-α ppli is running.																																				
③ Check every start	Allows you to select whether the i-α ppli will communicate each time it starts.																																				
③ Stand-by net	▶ Choose from the following options: This function sets whether the i-α ppli set as the stand-by display communicates. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Automatically communicates on the i-α ppli stand-by display.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not communicate on the i-α ppli stand-by display.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Automatically communicates on the i-α ppli stand-by display.	② OFF	Does not communicate on the i-α ppli stand-by display.																																
① ON	Automatically communicates on the i-α ppli stand-by display.																																				
② OFF	Does not communicate on the i-α ppli stand-by display.																																				
④ Icon info	▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether the disclosure of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-α ppli is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits disclosure of message icon information.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit disclosure of message icon information.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Permits disclosure of message icon information.	② OFF	Does not permit disclosure of message icon information.																																
① ON	Permits disclosure of message icon information.																																				
② OFF	Does not permit disclosure of message icon information.																																				
⑤ Change mld./img.	▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages and images such as those used in the stand-by display or when mail is sent or received to be changed when an i-α ppli DX is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits ring tones and images to be changed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>③ Check every change</td><td>Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-α ppli attempts an automatic change.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Permits ring tones and images to be changed.	② OFF	Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.	③ Check every change	Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-α ppli attempts an automatic change.																														
① ON	Permits ring tones and images to be changed.																																				
② OFF	Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.																																				
③ Check every change	Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-α ppli attempts an automatic change.																																				
⑥ See P.book/hist.	▶ Choose from the following options: Use this setting to allow you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records, and the newest unread e-mail when an i-α ppli DX is running. <table> <tr> <td>① ON</td><td>Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.</td></tr> <tr> <td>② OFF</td><td>Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.</td></tr> </table>	① ON	Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.	② OFF	Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.																																
① ON	Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.																																				
② OFF	Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest received and dialed call records.																																				
④ Software desc.	See "Checking the information for i-α ppli" → P. 326																																				
⑤ Upgrade	See "Upgrading i-α ppli" → P. 333																																				
⑥ Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135																																				
⑦ Delete	See "Deleting i-α ppli" → P. 334																																				

Software list display function menu 2/2

① Delete selected	See "Deleting i-α ppli" → P. 334
② Delete all	See "Deleting i-α ppli" → P. 334

Note

<Software setting (Network set)>

- If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.
- When Self mode is set or when mova is selected in Dual network service, the software that needs communication may not be started.

<Software setting (Icon info)>

- If you specify software that is set for the i-α ppli stand-by display to "ON" for this function, as the icons status for unread mail and messages, battery level, manner mode and in/out of service area may be sent to the IP (information provider) via the Internet in the same way as FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers. As the result, such information may be disclosed to a third party.
- When "OFF" is selected in this function, some software that needs icon information may not be operated.

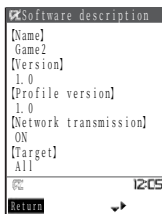
Checking the information for i-α ppli

In the software list display...

➡ P. 324

1

Press "Software desc." ▶ Check the software information.



Note

- The software name displayed by this function cannot be changed.
- On a software list display, a software type and settings can be checked by the following icons.

: This software is i-α ppli DX. → P. 320

: This software is mail-connected i-α ppli.

: This software is to be set as the stand-by display by using "Stand-by set" (P. 332).

: "Auto start time" has been set. → P. 329

: "Stand-by set" has been set.

: "Auto start time" and "Stand-by set" have been set.

: This software is downloaded from the site compatible with SSL.

Specifying the illumination and vibrator settings

Default setting	All "Depend on system"

Use this function to specify whether the operation of the backlight, vibrator and Indicator display when an i-α ppli is running uses the FOMA terminal settings ("Depend on system") or the software settings ("Depend on software").

Operating feature	i-α ppli setting	Operation details	
		Depend on system	Depend on software
Backlight	αDisplay light	"Display light" → P. 127	Dependent on the i-α ppli settings
Vibrator	αVibrator	Does not operate*	
Indicator display	αIndicator display	"Indicator display" → P. 126	

*: If "αVibrator" is set to "Depend on system", the vibrator does not operate, regardless of the "Vibrator" setting (P. 116).

<Example: To set backlight operation>

1

Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press "i-α ppli settings" ▶ Select "α Display light" and press ▶ Choose from the following options:

① Depend on system	Uses the FOMA terminal settings for backlight operation.
② Depend on software	Uses the software settings for backlight operation.

Note

- Some software programs set the backlight settings to "OFF". If you select "Depend on software", the backlight is turned off. To have the backlight and vibrator turned on, select "Depend on system".

Checking the security error history

When an i-α ppli or i-α ppli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press "i-α ppli info" ► "Security error history".

The "Security error history display" appears.

- 2 Check the details of the security errors.



Using the function menu in the Security Error History display

In the security error history display...

➔ P. 327

- 1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Security error history display function menu

① Copy info	Copies the security error details.
② Delete info	► Select "YES" and press . Deletes the security error details.

Launching software from another software program

Use this function to launch a software from the currently active software. Downloading software that launches a specific software enables you to launch that software without returning to the Software list display.

- You must first download software capable of launching other software.
- If the software to be launched is not specified, specify the software.
- If the software to be launched is specified but is not saved on the FOMA terminal, you must download the software beforehand.

- 1 Select the setting for selecting the software and press ► Select "YES" and press .
- 2 Select the software you want to launch and press ► Select the setting for launching the software and press ► Select "YES" and press .

Note

- If the URL of the software to be launched is specified in the software launch setting, a message appears asking whether to launch the specified software. Select "YES" to quit the currently active software and launch the specified software. To return to the current software, select "NO".

Pre-installed software

The FOMA terminal comes with 3 software programs ("Dimo 絵文字メール (Pictogram mail)", "ぷよぷよフィーバー N" (Puyo-puyo fever N) and "Gガイド番組表リモコン"(G-Guide Program TV Remote Control)) pre-installed.

● Note that looking at the display for extended periods of time can cause eye strain.

● If you delete pre-installed i-α.ppli software on the FOMA terminal, and you want to re-install, visit the ケータイ電話メーカー site and download it from "みんなNらんど".

To connect to "みんなNらんど". → P. 206

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using is not the one used for downloading, FOMA card operational restriction functions will be activated. → P. 37

Enjoying "Dimo 絵文字メール" (Pictogram mail)

This software makes mail exchange more enjoyable by having cartoon characters move lively and cheerfully in response to pictographs in mails.

If the other party uses a terminal supporting Dimo, these characters inform you of any incoming calls or mails and of information about unread mails on your FOMA terminal.

1 Launch "Dimo 絵文字メール" and press to set your data.

Launching an i-α.ppli → P. 323



©BVIG

2 Select an item from the menu.

Note

● For more details, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

Enjoy "ぷよぷよフィーバー N" (Puyo-puyo fever N)

This is the i-α.ppli version of the "ぷよぷよ" series, which is very popular in the field of arcade and household game machines. You can enjoy simple and profound world of the game.

1 Launch "ぷよぷよフィーバー N" and press or (スタート).

Launching an i-α.ppli → P. 323



©SEGA

- 2 Select “ひとりでぶよぶよ” and press .
- The game launches.

● Using “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)

As for “Gガイド番組表リモコン”(G guide program table remote control), the TV program table and AV remote control functions were set to one. It is a convenient and free monthly fee application. The TV program information on time to know can be acquired easily anytime, anywhere. Program title, contents of program and start / end time and a G code[®] corresponding to your location can be known. The “おすすめメール” (recommendation mail) function is available: if you have a particular program on your mind, you can e-mail your friends immediately to give them information about the title of the program, the schedule of airing, and the like. Also, you can remotely control your TV, although this remote control function is not supported by some models.

Separate packet communication charges apply to the use of this product.

Refer to “Using the Infrared Remote Control Function” (P. 415) for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control).

Launching i-α ppli Automatically

Use this function to have software launch automatically. You can set the date, time and the day of the week for automatic launching.

- To use automatic launching, the date and time must be set in “Set time” (P. 45).

Enabling automatic launching <Auto start set>

Default setting

OFF

- 1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶  “Auto start set” ▶ Select  “ON” or  “OFF”.

Setting the launch date/time <Auto start time>

Default setting

All OFF

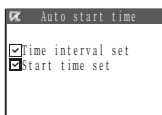
Use this setting to specify the date and time when the software is automatically launched.

- Software does not start up automatically in the following situations:
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When another function is running
 - During calls
 - When “All lock” is set
 - When “PIM lock” is set
 - When the i-α ppli menu is active
 - When an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching
 - When software updating is scheduled for the same time as automatic launching

In the software list display function menu...

➡ P. 324

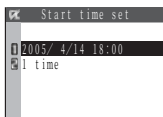
- 1 Press  “Auto start time” ▶ Select an item to be set and press .



- To enable the time interval set for the software
Select the “Time interval set” checkbox and press .

- To set the launch date and time
Select the “Start time set” checkbox and press .

2 Press (Finish) ▶ Set the launch date and time.



■ To set the launch date and time

Select date/time and press  ▶ Enter the launch date and time and press .

■ To set repeated automatic launch times

Select "the repeat setting" and press  ▶ Select "Daily" or "Weekly" and press .
If you selected "Weekly", select a checkbox (☐) and press . Then press  (Finish).

3 Press (Finish).

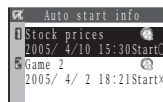
Note

- When a software contains both "Time interval set" and "Start time set" settings, if specified start-time settings is within 10 minutes, the software automatically starts at the time for the former setting, and does not start at the time for the latter setting.

Checking whether an i-α ppli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether a software automatically started up at the specified time.

1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ "i-α ppli info" ▶ "Auto start info".



The display shows information such as the software name, the automatic launch time and whether or not the software was launched. "Start  " indicates that the software started up automatically, "Start X" indicates that it did not start up automatically, and "Start-" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.

Note

- If the software could not be launched automatically, the  (Not run soft) icon appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon to view the Auto start info display. Select the software and press  to launch the software. For more information on desktop icons, see P. 135.
- The information is also stored when the software could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another software.

<i-α ppli To function>

Running i-α ppli from Sites or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-α ppli from a function other than i-α ppli, such as a site or mail.

Enabling software launching with i-α ppli To <i-α ppli To setting>

Default setting

All ON

Use this setting to specify whether i-α ppli software can be launched from sites, mail, the Infrared Communication function or the bar code reader.

- This setting can be specified separately for each software program.

In the software list display function menu...

➡ P. 324

1 Press "Set i-α ppli To" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Site "i-α ppli To"	▶ Select a checkbox (☐) and press  ▶ Press  (Finish). Allows software to be launched from a page on an Internet website or i-mode site.
Mail "i-α ppli To"	▶ Select a checkbox (☐) and press  ▶ Press  (Finish). Allows software to be launched from i-mode mail.

Ir "i-α ppli To"	▶ Select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ○ (Finish). Allows software to be launched with the Infrared Communication function.
Bar code "i-α ppli To"	▶ Select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ○ (Finish). Allows software to be launched from the bar code reader.

Launching software from a site

When an i-α ppli software launch specification is displayed on a site, this setting allows the software to be launched from the site.

● This option cannot be used with some sites.

In the sites display... ➔ P. 206

1 Select the item for the software to be launched and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note
● If multiple links are pasted into the site, the pasted data itself may not be displayed.

Launching software from mail

When an i-α ppli software launch specification is pasted into received i-mode mail, this setting allows the software to be launched from the i-mode mail.

In the received mail detail display... ➔ P. 281

1 Select the software and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note
● If multiple links are pasted into the mail, the pasted data itself may not be displayed.
● If an i-α ppli launch specification is included in an i-mode mail message, the i-α ppli launch specification cannot be quoted even when you reply with quote or forward the message. And, when you forward a mail using infrared communication or Data Link Software, an i-α ppli launch specification cannot be forwarded.

Launching software with the Infrared Communication function

This setting allows the software to be launched when an i-α ppli software launch signal is received during infrared communication.

1 Press (menu) 7 PQRS 9 WXYZ ▶ Press (I) "Receive" ▶ Receive the i-α ppli launch signal.

Launching software from the Bar code reader

This setting allows the software to be launched from a bar code when bar codes scanned by the bar code reader include an i-α ppli software launch specification.

1 Press (menu) ▶ Select (img) and press ● ▶ Press ● ▶ Press 5 JKL "Bar code reader" ▶ Press (I) "New" ▶ Scan the bar code.

2 Select "Start i-α ppli" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Setting the i-α ppli Stand-by Display

Use this function to set a selected i-α ppli software program as the stand-by display on your FOMA terminal. When the i-α ppli stand-by display is shown, the  or  icon appears at the bottom of the display.

- Only 1 i-α ppli can be set as the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- The Web To function (P. 225) cannot be used from the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- Some software cannot be set as the stand-by display.

In the software list display function menu...

➔ P. 324

- 1 Press  "Software setting" ▶ Press  "Stand-by set" ▶ Press  "ON".

Note

- The  icon is displayed for software set in the stand-by display.
- If software that communicates is set in the stand-by display, it may not run correctly because of problems such as poor signal quality occur.
- If you select "OFF" for "Stand-by net" in "Software setting", you may not be primed with timely provision of information.
- When an i-α ppli stand-by display is set, the image set for the stand-by display in "Display setting" (P. 121) is not shown.
- If you display the stand-by display while a menu function is running, the stand-by display selected in "Display setting" appears even when an i-α ppli stand-by display has been set.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off and then on again while you are setting an i-α ppli stand-by display, a message appears asking whether to launch the i-α ppli stand-by display.
- If you set "All lock" (P. 145) or "PIM lock" (P. 150) while the i-α ppli stand-by display is shown, the i-α ppli stand-by display quits and the stand-by display set in "Display setting" appears. Once you release "All lock" or "PIM lock", the i-α ppli stand-by display reappears.

Switching the i-α ppli stand-by display to Application mode

Use this procedure to launch the software program set in the i-α ppli stand-by display.

- 1 In the i-α ppli stand-by display, press .

The i-α ppli starts up and the  or  icon at the bottom of the screen changes to a flashing  or  icon.



Note

- Some software programs allow you to return from application mode to the i-α ppli stand-by display by pressing the FOMA terminal's keys while the i-α ppli stand-by display is shown. However, you cannot return to the i-α ppli stand-by display while another menu function is running.

Deselecting the i-α ppli stand-by display <Deselect i-α ppli stand-by display>

● Deselecting the i-α ppli stand-by display while it is running

- 1 Hold down  for 1 second or longer while the i-α ppli stand-by display is running ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Cancel	Cancels i-α ppli stand-by display deselection.
2 Ended	Ends without deselecting the i-α ppli stand-by display and restarts the i-α ppli stand-by display.
3 Terminated	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Deselecting the i-α ppli stand-by display while it is shown

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press “i-α ppli settings” ► Select “End stand-by display” and press ► Choose from the following options:

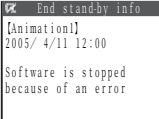
1 End	Ends without deselecting the i-α ppli stand-by display and restarts the i-α ppli stand-by display.
2 Terminate	► Select “YES” and press .

Note
● If you terminate the i-α ppli stand-by display, the image selected for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears in the stand-by display.

Checking the i-α ppli stand-by display exit data

If an error occurs that causes the i-α ppli stand-by display to be deselected, you can use this setting to check the recorded information showing the name of the software in which the error occurred, the time of the error and the reason.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press “i-α ppli info” ► Press



The software name, date and time when the error occurred and the reason for the error are displayed.

Note
● No information is recorded if the i-α ppli stand-by display ends normally (at normal exit).
● If (FUNC) is displayed at the bottom right of the display, pressing (FUNC) and selecting “Copy info” enables you to copy the information. The information is deleted if you select “Delete info” and “YES”.

Organizing i-α ppli

Upgrading i-α ppli <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

- You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-α ppli that rename mail folders in the following situations:
 - When “Mail security” is set
 - When “Mail security” for folder is set
 - When the dedicated receive or send folder for the mail-connected i-α ppli to be upgraded is being used

In the software list display function menu... ➡ P. 324

- 1 Press “Upgrade” ► Select “YES” and press .

Note
● When there is insufficient memory available, a message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted software before saving the upgraded i-α ppli. → P. 322
● If the software has not been upgraded, a message appears after the software information has been downloaded notifying you that your current software is the latest version.
● When an SSL page is used, a message appears notifying you that SSL communication will begin.
● Before upgrading, a message may be displayed notifying you that the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be used.
● Some software is upgraded automatically while being launched. In such cases, a message appears asking you whether to upgrade.

Deleting i-α ppli <Delete i-α ppli>

You can use these functions to delete individual software program or all the software programs.

In the software list display function menu...

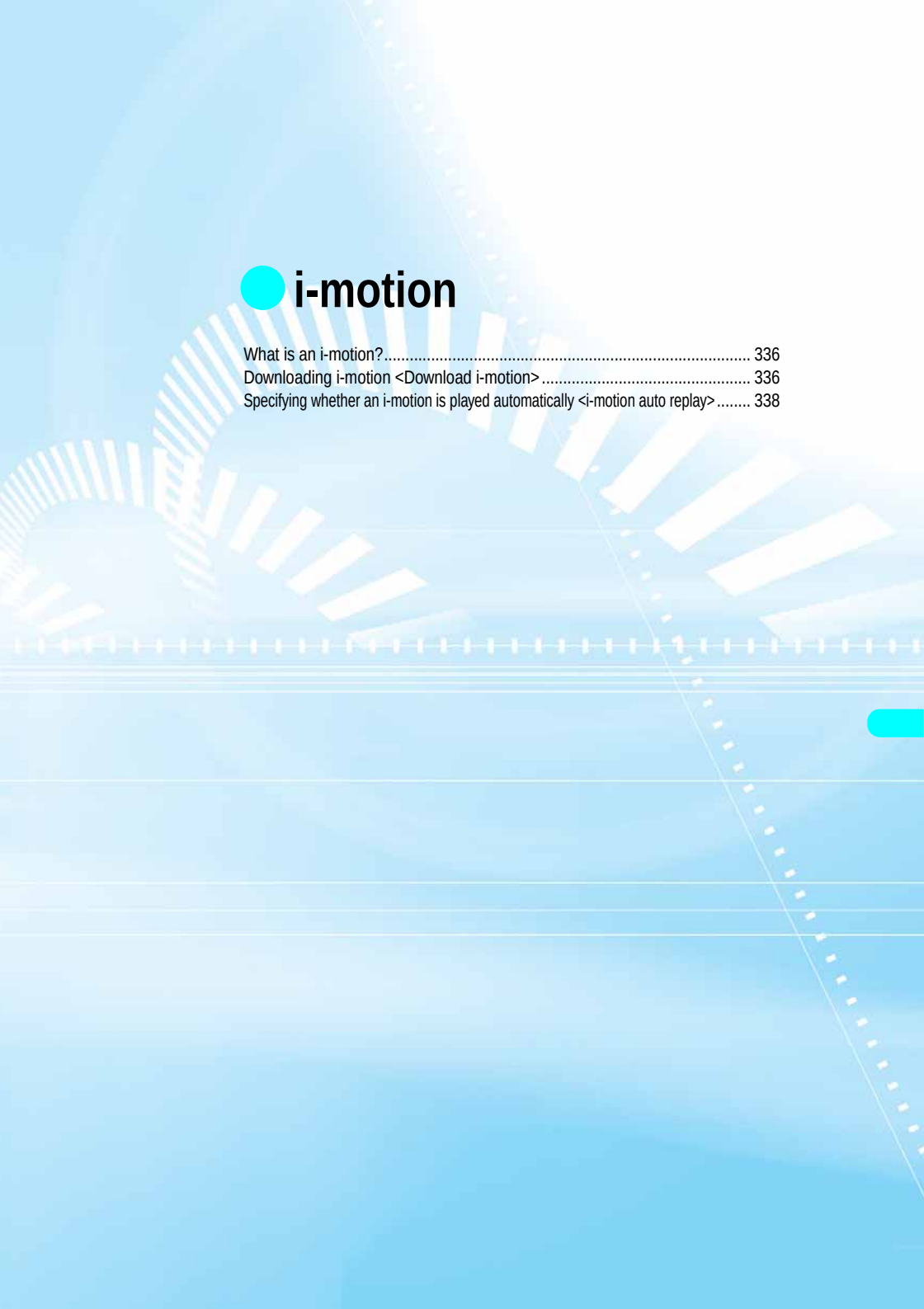
➔ P. 324

1 Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

Function 1/2	
 Delete	➔ Select "YES" and press  .
Function 2/2	
 Delete selected	➔ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press  ➔ Press  (Finish) ➔ Select "YES" and press  .
 Delete all	➔ Enter the security code and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press  .
See "About Your Security Codes" ➔ P. 142	

Note

- If you try to delete software that is set in the stand-by display (software marked with ) or software that has been set to launch automatically, a message appears informing you the software setting status and asking whether to delete the software.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-α ppli, a message appears asking whether to delete the corresponding dedicated folders for the mail-connected i-α ppli. Select "NO" to delete only the mail-connected i-α ppli or "YES" to delete the mail-connected i-α ppli, the dedicated send and receive folders for the mail-connected i-α ppli and all the mail stored in those folders. Note that you cannot delete the dedicated send and receive folders for the mail-connected i-α ppli if they are being used, if security is set for the folders, or if they contain protected mail.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-α ppli, any incoming mail for the i-α ppli that is received while the software is selected for deletion may also be deleted.
- You cannot delete i-α ppli mail folders in the following situations:
 - When the mail list and the details in the folder are displayed
 - When "Mail security" is set
 - When "Mail security" for folder is set
 - When the folder contains protected mail



i-motion

What is an i-motion?	336
Downloading i-motion <Download i-motion>	336
Specifying whether an i-motion is played automatically <i-motion auto replay>	338

What is an i-motion?

An i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can set an i-motion as a ring tone (Chaku-motion).

i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into 2 types. This FOMA terminal supports only Normal-type i-motion (you cannot download Streaming-type i-motion).

■ Normal type

The FOMA terminal will hold normal i-motion up to 500 KB in size in either of the formats shown below. Some Normal type i-motion may not be saved.

- ① Playable after downloading
- ② Playable during downloading

■ Streaming type (Not supported by this FOMA terminal)

This type cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal can play i-motion of up to 2 MB in size while downloading. Because the data is discarded as soon as a streaming i-motion ends, it has to be downloaded again each time it is played.

Note

- The FOMA terminal downloads i-motion in the MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

<Download i-motion>

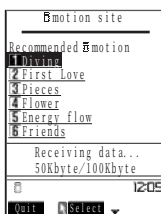
Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites and playing the program

- 1 Press (F mode) ► Press "iMenu" ► Select "ENGLISH" ► Press "Menu List" ► Select the option for the site and press .



- 2 Select the i-motion and press .



When data downloading is completed, the Data acquisition display appears.

When "i-motion auto replay" is set to "ON", i-motion is played automatically. However, some i-motion may not be played automatically.

■ To cancel downloading

Press (Quit).

3 Select "Play" and press .

Start playing the downloaded i-motion.
See "Operations available during i-motion playback" → P. 366



Note

- i-motion without titles are shown in the Data acquisition display as "No title".
- Some sites and i-motion do not allow downloading or playback during data retrieval.
- Even when you have selected "ON" in the "i-motion auto replay" setting for i-motion, the i-motion is not automatically played when downloading ends if you play the i-motion during downloading.
- If you select "OFF" in the "i-motion auto replay" setting for i-motion, the i-motion is not automatically played when downloading ends and the Data acquisition display appears instead.
-  is displayed in front of the title of an i-motion that has restrictions on the replay times, replay period or the replay expiration. If the replay period is restricted, the i-motion cannot be played outside that period. Also, if the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this event, i-motion with a restricted replay period or expiration cannot be played.
- Some downloaded i-motion may not be played back correctly.
- If you are playing an i-motion during downloading (first playback only), you cannot use fast forward, frame advance or slow playback function.
- When data retrieval is interrupted due to problems with the connection speed, network conditions or signal quality, or when the retrieved data exceeds the limit on the permitted amount of data, if the FOMA terminal can display "Play", "Save" or "Property" in the Data acquisition display, a message appears notifying that the data could not be downloaded and then the Data acquisition display appears.
- Playback during data retrieval may be interrupted or the image may be disrupted due to problems with the connection speed, network conditions or signal quality.
- You cannot download ASF-format i-motion.

Using the function menu on the Data acquisition display

In the data acquisition display...

→ P. 337

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

The function menu on the Data acquisition display.

1 Save screen memo	Saves the displayed Data acquisition display to a screen memo. "Saving a screen memo" → P. 218

Note

<Save screen memo>

- You can also play an i-motion from a screen memo when the Data acquisition display is saved as a "Screen memo" (P. 218). However, you cannot save the following i-motion Data acquisition display as a "Screen memo".
 - i-motion with replay restrictions
 - i-motion with incomplete data
- i-motion that are saved to screen memos are not included in the i-motion folder list in the Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the program replay or stand-by display functions with these i-motion.

Saving i-motion

When "Save" can be selected in the Data acquisition display, the i-motion can be saved onto your FOMA terminal.

- With some i-motion, the downloaded data cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- The FOMA terminal will save up to a total of 100 i-motion and movies recorded using the FOMA terminal's camera. The actual number of i-motion that can be saved varies between 3 and 100 depending on the size of the i-motion files.
- About the folder of i-motion → P. 365

In the data acquisition display...

➔ P. 337

1 Select "Save", select "YES" and press .

■ To cancel saving

Select "NO".

The display returns to the Data acquisition display without saving the i-motion.

■ When the memory for saving i-motion is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted i-motion and then save the new i-motion.

To save the i-motion, select "YES" and then select an i-motion to delete. To cancel saving, select "NO". Selecting "NO" returns you to the Data acquisition display without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the folder where the i-motion is to be saved and press .

A message appears notifying you that the i-motion has been saved.

Note

- An untitled i-motion is displayed as "movie" in the list.
- You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site as the stand-by display. → P. 124
Some i-motion cannot be set as the stand-by display.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions from the replay display of an i-motion set in the stand-by display.

Viewing i-motion details

Use this procedure to check detailed information on an i-motion, including the title, replay restrictions or file size.

In the data acquisition display...

➔ P. 337

1 Select "Property" and press .

The "i-motion info" display appears. "About i-motion information" → P. 371

Press  to scroll the display up and down to check information. When you have checked the information, press .

<i-motion auto replay>

Specifying whether an i-motion is played automatically

Default setting

ON

Use this setting to specify whether an i-motion is automatically played back when it is downloaded with Web To function from a site, or received mail detail display, or when a screen memo that includes an i-motion is displayed.

- You can download i-motion up to 500KB.

In the i-mode settings display...

➔ P. 226

1 Press "i-motion auto replay" ▶ Choose from the following options:

 ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion are played back during downloading.
 OFF	Displays the Data acquisition display without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

Note

- If you select "OFF" and select an i-motion in the Screen memo List display or download an i-motion from a site, the FOMA terminal displays the Data acquisition display without automatically playing the i-motion.

● Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files

About Data Box	340
■ Advanced Image Handling	
Displaying Still Images <My picture>	343
Using the Function Menu in the Image List Display	344
Using the Function Menu in the My picture Display	354
Editing Images <Edit image>	359
■ Advanced Movie Handling	
Playing Movies You Have Shot/i-motion <i-motion>	365
Using the Function Menu in the Movie List Display	367
Using the Function Menu in the i-motion Stop Display	371
Editing Movies <Edit movie>	376
■ Advanced Chara-den	
What is Chara-den?	380
■ Advanced Melody Handling	
Playing Melodies <Melody player>	387
■ Advanced miniSD Memory Card Handling	
About miniSD Memory Cards	392
Exporting FOMA Terminal Data to a miniSD Memory Card	399
Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card <SD-PIM>	399
Importing miniSD Memory Card Data to the FOMA Terminal	401
Managing miniSD Memory Cards	402
Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Reader/Writer	404
■ Advanced File Handling	
Working With Folders and Files	405
Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding <Forwarding image>	409
■ Using Infrared Communication	
About Infrared Communication <Infrared communication function>	409
Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries	411
Sending and Receiving All Entries	413
Selecting Infrared Communication Mode <Infrared mode>	414
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function	415
■ Transferring Data	
Exchanging FOMA Terminal Data With a PC <OBEX>	419

About Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box and still images or movies taken with the built-in camera, and the data taken in from the mail or a site can be distributed to a folder according to the data type.

- A maximum of 360 can be saved in "My picture" and a maximum of 100 can be saved in "i-motion", and a maximum of 200 can be saved in "Melody" in the FOMA terminal. Together with built-in Chara-den, a maximum of 10 can be saved in "Chara-den".
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion, and a Melody, respectively.
- The data saved on My picture, i-motion, and the Melody is movable to other folders within the item. (The data on the Pre-installed is not movable.)

Item	Folder		File format	The contents of data
My picture	Inbox		JPEG, GIF, SWF ^{*1}	You can select these folders as the save destination for all images. Images imported from miniSD memory cards and image transferred using the infrared communication function are stored in the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are stored in the Camera folder.
	Camera			
	Decomail-picture			Pre-installed Decomail-picture It can be selected as a save destination of an image as well as Inbox and Camera folder.
	Pre-installed			Pre-installed animation and images for the stand-by and wake-up displays.
	(User created folders1 to 20)			It can be selected as a save destination of an image as well as Inbox and Camera folder.
	Original animation		—	Animations registered with continuous shooting and the animations made by yourself.
	miniSD	Picture ^{*2}	JPEG	Shot images, images exported from the FOMA terminal, images saved on the miniSD memory card from a PC.
		Image box ^{*2}	JPEG, GIF	JPEG-format images (Not Exif-format ^{*3}) saved to the miniSD memory card from a PC, GIF-format images and Animations. → P. 396
	Frame		IFM	Pre-installed Frames. Downloaded Frames are saved.
	Stamp		IFM	Pre-installed Marker Stamps. Downloaded stamps are saved.
Face stamp		FSD	Pre-installed Face Stamps. Downloaded face stamps are saved.	
i-motion	Inbox		MP4	You can select these folders as the save destination for all movies and i-motion. The movie imported from miniSD memory card and the movie transmitted by infrared communication are saved at Inbox folder. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved in Camera folder.
	Camera			
	Pre-installed			Pre-installed i-motion.
	(User created folders 1 to 20)			It can be selected as a save destination of a movie/i-motion as well as Inbox and Camera folder.
	miniSD		MP4 ASF ^{*4}	Shot movies, movies exported from the FOMA terminal, movies saved on the miniSD memory card from a PC.
	Playlist ^{*5}		—	—
Melody	Inbox		SMF, MFi	You can select this folder as the save destination for all melodies. Melodies transmitted by infrared communication and melodies scanned by the bar code reader are saved in the Inbox folder.
	Pre-installed		MFi	Pre-installed melodies and sound effects.
	(User created folders 1 to 20)		SMF, MFi	It can be selected as a save destination of a melody as well as Inbox.
	Voice announce		—	Voice recorded in Voice announce function.
	Playlist ^{*5}		—	—
Chara-den			AFD	Pre-installed Chara-den. The downloaded Chara-den is saved.

^{*1} : SWF is the file format for Flash movie.

^{*} The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

- *2 : "DCIM folder" is displayed as "Picture", and "STILL folder" is displayed as "Image Box".
See "miniSD memory card folder configuration"→P. 394
- *3 : Exif is the image format for digital cameras. "Exif" is the file format of pictures (still images) for adding the incidental information such as the photographic information established by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA).
- *4 : ASF-format file is for playback only.
- *5 : A playlist folder is a folder to be used for program playing. Neither data saving nor folder deletion can be performed.

Important

You may lose the contents of Data box through damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss. We recommend that you save the contents of your Data box using the miniSD memory card (P. 392). If you have a PC, you can also save the contents of Data box on your PC by using a FOMA USB cable (optional) and Data Link Software (P. 558).

Icons displayed in Data box

Data type icons

 (Aqua blue)/  (Blue)/  (Eggplant)	JPEG-format image (Attachable as normal mail/Attachable as large mail/Cannot attached to mail. (Attachable by changing to a size for mail)) ^{*1}
 (Aqua blue)/  (Blue)/  (Eggplant)	GIF-format image (Attachable as normal mail/Cannot attached to mail (10,001 bytes to 100KB)/Cannot attached to mail (640 dots wide × 480 dots high or more/100KB or more).) ^{*1}
	GIF-format (IFM-format) frame, marker stamp ^{*1}
	FSD-format face stamp
	SWF-format Flash movie ^{*1}
	MP4 or ASF-format movie or i-motion ^{*1}
	MP4 or ASF-format i-motion with sound effects ^{*2}
	MP4 or ASF-format i-motion with replay restrictions ^{*3}
	AFD-format Chara-den
	MFI-format melody
	SMF-format melody
	Data to which FOMA card operational restrictions are applied

- *1 : The  icon is shown for icons of files with file restrictions set. You cannot send data using mail or infrared communication function. (except when File restriction is set for images shot with this terminal.)
- *2 : The  (Blue note) icon indicates an i-motion with sound effects. An red note icon indicates an i-motion that can only be saved on a miniSD memory card.
- *3 : The  or  icon indicates that the valid playback period for an i-motion has expired.

Retrieval method icons

(No icon)	Pre-installed data
	Data downloaded from a site or mail or loaded from an i-α.ppli.
	Data shot using the FOMA terminal's camera.
	Data imported from a PC, the bar code reader, a miniSD memory card or via infrared communication.
	Data shot with Chara-den.
	Frame/Marker stamp/Face stamp

- *: The same icon is displayed for a frame/Marker stamp/Face stamp regardless of how the item was retrieved.

Available settings icons

	Data can be attached to i-mode mail (10,000 byte or less, 10,001 bytes to 500KB, 500 KB or more) If data exceeds 500 K bytes, it is necessary to change the data size to one which can be transmitted to mail. See "Changing the image formats for mail attachments" → P. 351 See "Trimming movies for use as mail attachments" → P. 380
	Data can be pasted into Deco-mail. Data should be saved in the "Deco-mail picture" folder for being pasted into Deco-mail.
	Data can be set as a display, etc.
	Data can be set as a ring tone.
	Data can be sent via infrared communication.
	Data can be exported to a miniSD memory card.

Titles and file names

Titles and file names are automatically assigned to images and movies shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera or the Chara-den.

Title (Common for Still image and movie): yyyy/mm/dd hh: mm (Date (year/month/day) and time the image was saved)

File name (Still image) : yyyyymmddhhmmxxx (Date and time the image was saved + xxx: 3-digit number)

File name (Movie) : yyyyymmddhhmm (Date and time the image was saved)

Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion, melodies and Chara-den.

The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.

The title is the name displayed in the Data List display on the FOMA terminal.

The file name is the data name displayed when the file is sent to a PC, etc.

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files with the same name.

If the date and time are not set or there is no information included in the file name, the file name becomes "imagexxx", "moviexxx" or "melodyxxx" (xxx= 3-digit serial number).

Image/movie type and retrieval icons

Folder	Icon	Data	Can be edited?
My picture	/ /	JPEG-format image ^{*1}	Editable
		Still image shot in Chara-den ^{*2}	
	/ /	The image of JPEG-format to which file restriction is set up ^{*3}	Non editable
	/ /	GIF-format image	
	/ /	The image of GIF-format to which file restrictions are set up	
		Frame or Marker stamp	
		Face Stamps	
		Flash movie	
		Image to which FOMA card operational restrictions are applied	
i-motion		Movie shot on the built-in camera ^{*3}	Editable
		Movie downloaded via infrared communication	
		Movie shot in Chara-den ^{*2}	
		i-motion downloaded from a site	Non editable

*1 : Images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high cannot be edited.

*2 : You cannot edit still images and movies of Chara-den for which "File restricted" is set in "Rec. file restriction".

*3 : Images and movies shot with the FOMA terminal's built-in camera can be edited even if "File restricted" is set.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

<My picture>

Displaying Still Images

Still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, downloaded from sites or saved on miniSD memory cards are displayed by My picture in the Data box.

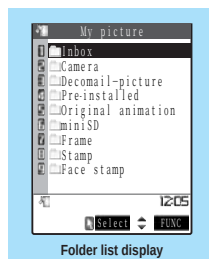
● FOMA terminal cannot display images larger than 600KB and images as follows:

- JPEG-format images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high
- GIF-format images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
- Progressive JPEG-format images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high

1

Press  Select  and press  Press  "My picture".

The "Folder list display" appears.



Folder list display

2

Select a folder and press .

The "Image list display (Picture list)" appears.
For information on the Image List display → P. 344

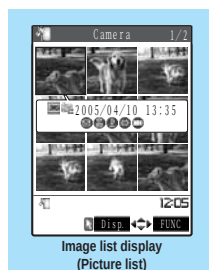
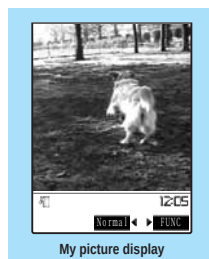


Image list display
(Picture list)

3

Select an image and press .

The "My picture display" appears.
Use  to display the previous or next image.



My picture display

■ To display an image in an actual size

You can show an image that is larger than 240 dots wide × 270 dots high, and images that are less than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high in actual size.

Press .

Use  to scroll the display.

To return to the normal display, press .

Note

- The "Folder List display" can also be displayed by selecting the  desktop icon and pressing   "My picture".
- While displaying in the actual size, you cannot change to the previous or next display by using  and display the function menu screen.
- The animation of GIF-format and a Flash movie cannot be displayed in an actual size.
- It may take some time to display images if there is a lot of data in the FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card.
- Images may not be displayed depending on the file type or conditions.
- The volume when you play Flash movies is the same as the "Phone" settings in "Ring volume". If the volume is set to "Silent" or "Step", the volume is automatically set to "Level 2".

Displaying images stored on miniSD memory cards

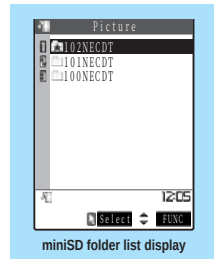
In the folder list display...

→ P. 343

- 1 Select “miniSD” and press ▶ Select “Picture” or “Image box”.

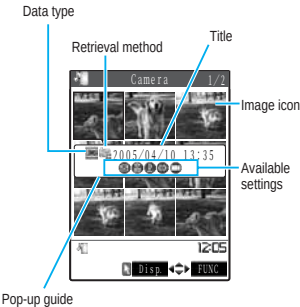
The “miniSD folder list display” appears.

- 2 Select a folder and press ▶ Select an image and press .



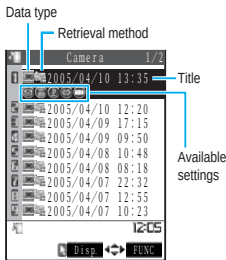
miniSD folder list display

Guide to the Picture List and Title List



Picture list

The display shows at a time 9 images from those stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone), or 4 images from those saved in the miniSD memory card. The title of the selected image appears in a pop-up guide. Icons show the data types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each image.



Title list

9 images are listed by title, with icons used to show the data type, how it was retrieved and which settings can be specified for the image.

Setting the Image List display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations and miniSD memory card (image box) are always listed by title.

- 1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press “Display” ▶ Select “Viewer settings” and press ▶ Choose from the following options:

Picture (default setting)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Using the Function Menu in the Image List Display

The options available in the Image List display function menu differ depending on the folder in which the image is saved.

- Image List display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders → P. 345
- Image List display function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder → P. 347

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

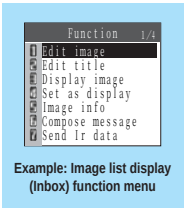
- Image List display function menu for the Pre-installed folder → P. 348
- Image List display function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders → P. 348
- Image List display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture) → P. 349
- Image List display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box) → P. 350

In the image list display...

➔ P. 343

1

Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Using the Image List display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders

Image list display function menu 1/4

 Edit image	See "Editing Images" → P. 359
 Edit title	➔ Edit the title and press . Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
 Display image	Displays the selected image ("My picture display").
 Set as display	■ To set as screens, such as a stand-by, dialing call, incoming call display ➔ Select an option and press . ■ To set as a V-phone related (except for V-phone dialing and V-phone calling) display ➔ Select an option and press  ➔ Check the image and press  ➔ Select "YES" and press . The selected image is set to a screen such as stand-by display.
 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350
 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" → P. 351
 Send Ir data	➔ Select "YES" and press  .

Image list display function menu 2/4

 Add desktop icon	➔ Select "YES" and press . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
 Export	See "Exporting FOMA terminal images to a miniSD Memory Card" → P. 358
 Add image to PB	Stores the selected image in the phonebook. → P. 93
 Size for mail	See "Changing the image formats for mail attachments" → P. 351
 Positioning	See "Setting the position when setting an image in a display" → P. 352
 Clipping area	See "Setting the area when setting an image in a display" → P. 353
 Edit file name	➔ Edit the file name and press . Edits the selected image file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" → P. 522

Image list display function menu 3/4

 File restriction	➔ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the file restrictions for the selected image.	
	 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.

Move	Select the folder to which the image is to be moved and press . Moves the selected image to another folder.	
Delete this	Select "YES" and press .	
Delete all	Enter your security code and press Select "YES" and press . About Your Security Codes → P. 142	
Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407	
Memory info	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
Sort	Choose from the following options: Sorts images.	
	Chronological ↑ (default setting)	Arranges images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	Chronological ↓	Arranges images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	By title ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by title.
	By title ↑	Arranges images in descending order by title.
	By size ↑	Arranges images in descending order by size.
	By size ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by size.
	By source	Arranges images in the order of retrieval method.

Image list display function menu 4/4

Title name ^{*1}	Changes the Image List display mode (Picture or Title name).
Composite image	See "Making a composite image from 4 images" → P. 353

*1 : If you selected the Title, " Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Note	
Icons in the Image List display show whether an image can be set in a display, attached to mail, pasted into Deco-mail, sent using the Infrared communication function or saved onto a miniSD memory card. → P. 342	
<Edit title> - You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal. - You cannot edit the titles of images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high.	
<Set as display> - You cannot set the following images in a display: - Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high - Images with a file size larger than 100 KB - Depending on the image size and the display in which the image is set, the image may not be displayed at its actual size. - Some images cannot be set in a display.	
<Add image to PB> - You cannot add the following types of image: - The images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high - The image files larger than 100 KB - The images other than JPEG-format or GIF-format - You cannot use this option while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.	
<Edit file name> - You cannot edit the file names for the following image types: - Images of Chara-den with "Rec. file restriction" - Images that is prohibited to be output to devices other than a FOMA terminal - You may be unable to edit file names if there is insufficient space available on the FOMA terminal. - You cannot use half-pitch spaces in file names.	
<File restriction> - You cannot set file restrictions for the following image types: - Images in formats other than JPEG or GIF - Images of Chara-den with "Rec. file restriction"	
<Delete this> <Delete all> - If you try to delete an image that has been set in a display or original animation or set as a user icon in a schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows: - Displays in which the deleted image was set revert to their default settings. - Original animations and playlists are deselected. - User icons in schedules revert to . - If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image is deleted in the case of a large image.	
<Sort> - The images are sorted in "By source" in the following order: - Images downloaded or acquired from i-α ppli → Images shot with camera → Images acquired via infrared communication or from the miniSD memory card → Images of Chara-den	

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392



Image list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ⏎. Edits the selected image's title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522				
2 Display image	Displays the selected image ("My picture display").				
3 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350				
4 Decorate mail	See "Composing a Deco-mail" → P. 352				
5 Edit file name	▶ Edit the file name and press ⏎. Edits the selected image's file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" → P. 522				
6 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions for the selected image. <table> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
7 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the image is to be moved and press ⏎. Moves the selected image to another folder.				

Image list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ⏎. Pre-installed images cannot be sent.														
2 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ⏎ ▶ Select "YES" and press ⏎. Pre-installed images cannot be deleted. About Your Security Codes → P. 142														
3 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407														
4 Memory info	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.														
5 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Sorts images. <table> <tr> <td>1 Chronological ↑ (default setting)</td><td>Arranges images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Chronological ↓</td><td>Arranges images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 By title ↓</td><td>Arranges images in ascending order by title.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 By title ↑</td><td>Arranges images in descending order by title.</td></tr> <tr> <td>5 By size ↑</td><td>Arranges images in descending order by size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>6 By size ↓</td><td>Arranges images in ascending order by size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>7 By source</td><td>Arranges images in the order of retrieval method.</td></tr> </table>	1 Chronological ↑ (default setting)	Arranges images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.	3 By title ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by title.	4 By title ↑	Arranges images in descending order by title.	5 By size ↑	Arranges images in descending order by size.	6 By size ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by size.	7 By source	Arranges images in the order of retrieval method.
1 Chronological ↑ (default setting)	Arranges images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.														
2 Chronological ↓	Arranges images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.														
3 By title ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by title.														
4 By title ↑	Arranges images in descending order by title.														
5 By size ↑	Arranges images in descending order by size.														
6 By size ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by size.														
7 By source	Arranges images in the order of retrieval method.														
6 Title name*1	Changes the "Picture" or "Title name".														

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "[Picture]" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Note

<Edit title>

- You cannot edit the titles of pre-installed images.
- You may be unable to edit titles if there is insufficient space available on the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot edit the titles of images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high.

<Edit file name>

- You cannot edit the file names for the following image types:
 - Pre-installed images
 - Images that is prohibited to be output to devices from a FOMA terminal
- You may be unable to edit file names if there is insufficient space available on the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot use half-pitch spaces in file names.

<File restriction>

- You cannot set file restrictions for the following image types:
 - Images in formats other than JPEG-format or GIF-format

<Delete this> <Delete all>

- If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

<Sort>

- The images are sorted in "By source" in the following order:
Images downloaded or acquired from i-α.ppl→images shot with camera→images acquired via infrared communication or from the miniSD memory card→images of Chara-den

Using the Image List display function menu for the Pre-installed folder

Image list display function menu

① Display image	Displays the selected image ("My picture display").
② Set as display	▶ Select an option and press ● . Sets the selected image in the stand-by display or wake-up display.
③ Title name*1	Changes the Image List display mode (Picture or Title name).

*1 : If you have selected the Title, "Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Using the Image List display function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders

Image list display function menu 1/2

① Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ● . Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
② Display image	Displays the selected image ("My picture display").
③ Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350
④ Edit file name	▶ Edit the file name and press ● . Edits the selected image's file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
⑤ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ● . Pre-installed frames, marker stamps and face stamps cannot be deleted.
⑥ Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● . Pre-installed frames, marker stamps and face stamps cannot be deleted. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
⑦ Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407

Image list display function menu 2/2

① Memory info	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.
② Title name*1	Changes the Image List display mode (Picture or Title name).
③ Facestamp demo*2	Use this option to check face stamp tracking. The demo screen is in normal display.  appears when tracking is successful and  appears when tracking fails.

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

*2 : Only displayed in the face stamp folder.

Note

<Edit title>

● You cannot edit the titles of pre-installed images.

● You may be unable to edit titles if there is insufficient space available on the FOMA terminal.

<Edit file name>

● You cannot edit the file names for the following image types:

• Pre-installed images

• Images that is prohibited to be output to devices from a FOMA terminal

● You may be unable to edit file names if there is insufficient space available on the FOMA terminal.

● You cannot use half-pitch spaces in file names.

Using the Image List display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture)



Image list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522						
2 Display image	Displays the selected image ("My picture display").						
3 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350						
4 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" → P. 351						
5 Import	See "Importing miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" → P. 359						
6 Size for mail	See "Changing the image formats for mail attachments" → P. 351						
7 DPOF setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Specifies the print settings for the selected image. <table><tr><td>1 Print</td><td> ▶ Enter a 2-digit number and press ●. Sets the number of copies to be printed (01-99). </td></tr><tr><td>2 Print OFF</td><td>Clears the print settings specified for the displayed image.</td></tr><tr><td>3 All print OFF</td><td>Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.</td></tr></table>	1 Print	▶ Enter a 2-digit number and press ●. Sets the number of copies to be printed (01-99).	2 Print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for the displayed image.	3 All print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.
1 Print	▶ Enter a 2-digit number and press ●. Sets the number of copies to be printed (01-99).						
2 Print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for the displayed image.						
3 All print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.						

Image list display function menu 2/2

1 Copy	▶ Select the copy destination folder and press ●. Copies the selected image to another folder.
2 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the image is to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected image to another folder.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
5 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407
6 Memory info	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.
7 Title name*1	Changes the "Picture" or "Title name".

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Note

<Edit title>

- You may be unable to edit titles if there is insufficient space available on the miniSD memory card.

<DPOF setting>

- DPOF is the abbreviation for Digital Print Order Format. It specifies how to print images shot with a digital camera. Specifying the images that you shot with the FOMA terminal you want to print and the amount allows you to save the information to a memory card and print the images using that information.
- You can specify DPOF settings up to 999 items.
- You cannot specify DPOF settings for images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or have a file size greater than 600 KB.
- DPOF settings specified on a PC are ignored except for the number of prints specification.
- You may be unable to specify DPOF settings if there is insufficient space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You can check the specified number of prints in "Image info".

Using the Image List display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box)

Image list display function menu

1 Display image	Displays the selected image ("My picture display").
2 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350
3 Import	See "Importing miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" → P. 359
4 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
5 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142
6 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407
7 Memory info	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.

About image information

You can check the following information.

Item	Description
File name	Displays the file name.
Format	Displays the file format. The format for Flash movie is not displayed.
File size	Displays the file size in KB.
Saved at	Displays the date (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) the file was saved at.
File restriction	Displays file restrictions "File restricted"/"File unrestricted".
Transfer for Repair ^{*1}	Shows whether or not the image file can be moved when a fault occurs. "Permitted" is displayed only for the downloaded images that are permitted to move.
Show Size	Displays the file display size (wide × high in dots).
Base	Displays where the file was received from. Blank when the image is a preinstalled image.
Set as display ^{*1}	Displays where the image is set. When no image is set, "No set" is displayed.
DPOF setting ^{*2}	Displays the specified number of prints. When no amount is set, "No set" is displayed. When more than 100 is set, "※ ※ ※" is displayed.

*1 : Not displayed in the image information of the miniSD memory card (Picture, image box)

*2 : Displayed only in the image information of the miniSD memory card (Picture).

● Composing a message with an image attached

If you have selected "Compose message" with a JPEG-format image with a file size more than 500 KB or more or a JPEG-format image larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, use this procedure to resize the image so that it can be attached to i-mode mail.

In the case of JPEG-format and GIF-format images other than the ones above, the Compose i-mode mail screen is displayed without processing the images.

<Example: For an image larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high in the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu...

➔ P. 345

1 Press "Compose message" ➔ Choose from the following options:

① Attach mail	Reduces the file size to 500 KB or less without changing the image size.
② QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or less while retaining the image's aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.
③ QVGA trim away	After reducing or expanding the image until any of height or width reaches 240 dots or 320 dots while retaining the image's aspect ratio, this option trims center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.

2 Check the edited image and press ➔ Compose the message.

See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➔ P. 247

Note

- Change of the position to trim the image cannot be performed in "QVGA trim away". The central part of the image is trimmed.
- JPEG-format images that are larger than 10,000 bytes but no larger than 500 KB are deemed to be large images. If a large image is sent to a FOMA terminal, it is converted to an appropriate size for reception by i-mode terminals at the i-shot Center.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
 - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages
 - When the image is a Flash image
 - When the image is a GIF-format image larger than 9,000 bytes in size
 - When it is prohibited to output the image to devices other than a FOMA terminal

● Changing the image formats for mail attachments

Use this procedure to enable JPEG-format images with a file size larger than 500 KB or larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high to be attached to i-mode mail.

You cannot select this function for other than above JPEG-format images and GIF-format images.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu...

➔ P. 345

1 Press ➔ Press "Size for mail" ➔ Choose from the following options:

① Attach mail	Reduces the file size to 500 KB or less without changing the image size.
② QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or less while retaining the image's aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.
③ QVGA trim away	After reducing or expanding the image until any of height or width reaches 240 dots or 320 dots while retaining the image's aspect ratio, this option trims center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.

2 Check the edited image and press ► Select “YES” and press .

Note

- The resized image is saved as a new file in the same folder as the original file.
- Change of the position to trim the image cannot be performed in “QVGA trim away”. The central part of the image is trimmed.
- The titles and file names for saved images are assigned as described below.
 - Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm (year/month/day time)
 - File name: yyyyymmddhhmmxxx (date, time and xxx (where xxx is a 3-digit number))
- The size of following images cannot be changed for mail.
 - Images prohibited to be output from the FOMA terminals.
 - Images that contains a recorded Chara-den with “Rec. file restriction”

● Composing a Deco-mail

If you select “Decorate mail” for a JPEG-format image that is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high, 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or larger than 9,000 bytes, the image is resized so that it can be attached to Deco-mail. When selecting JPEG-format images and GIF-format images other than the above, the Deco-mail composing display appears without image processing.

<Example: Image that is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high>

In the image list display (Decomail-picture) function menu...

➡ P. 347

1 Press “Decorate mail” ► Choose from following options:

1 Attach mail	Reduces the file size to 9,000 bytes or less without changing the image size.
2 Sub-QCIF scale down	Reduces the image size to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or less while retaining the image's aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 9,000 KB, it is reduced to 9,000 KB or less.
3 Sub-QCIF trim away	After reducing or expanding the image until any of height or width reaches 128 dots or 96 dots while retaining the image's aspect ratio, this option trims center of the image to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high. If the file size exceeds 9,000 KB, it is reduced to 9,000 KB or less.

2 Check the resized image and Press ► Compose a Deco-mail.
Composing and Sending Deco-mail → P. 256

Note

- You cannot change the trim position in “Sub-QCIF trim away”. The center of the image is trimmed.
- You cannot compose Deco-mail in the following cases.
 - When you have 20 draft mails.
 - When the image is a GIF-format image that exceeds 9,000 bytes.

● Setting the position when setting an image in a display

When you are setting an image that is smaller than the image display area, use this procedure to specify the position in which the image appears.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu...

➡ P. 345

1 Use ► Press “Positioning” ► Choose from the following options:

1 Center	Displays the image in the center of the image display area.
2 Top	Displays the image at the top of the image display area.
3 Bottom	Displays the image at the bottom of the image display area.

<Example: For the stand-by display>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

Note

- The specified display position is valid in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking display. However, the specified display position may not be effective for some image sizes.

● Setting the area when setting an image in a display

When you are setting an image that is larger than the image display area, use this procedure to specify which area of the image is displayed.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu...

➡ P. 345

1 Press ➡ Press "Clipping area" ➡ Choose from the following options:

1 Center	Displays the central part of the image.
2 Upper	Displays the upper part of the image.
3 Lower	Displays the lower part of the image.

<Example: For a calling display>



Central part displayed



Upper part displayed



Lower part displayed

Note

- The specified clipping area is valid in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking display. However, the specified clipping area may not be effective for some image sizes.

● Making a composite image from 4 images

- This function cannot be used with images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

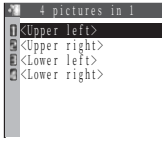
<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu...

➡ P. 345

1 Use ➡ Press "Composite image".

- 2 Select the layout position and press Select a folder and press Select an image and press Repeat this process to select 4 images.



■ To deselect a selected image

Select the image to be deselected and press In the folder selection display, select "Release this" and press .

- 3 Press (Finish) ▶ Press .

■ To redo the composite image

Press (Cancel).

Note

- Composite images are saved in the folder for which you display the function menu in step 1.
- The original images used in composition are not resized.

Using the Function Menu in the My picture Display

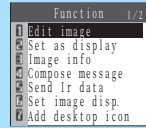
The function menu in the My picture display varies depending on the folder in which the displayed images are saved.

- My picture display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders → P. 354
- My picture display function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder → P. 355
- My picture display function menu for the Pre-installed folder → P. 356
- My picture display function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders → P. 356
- My picture display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture) → P. 356
- My picture display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box) → P. 357

In My picture display...

➡ P. 343

- 1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Example: My picture display (Inbox) function menu

Using the My picture display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders

My picture display function menu 1/2

1 Edit image	See "Editing Images" → P. 359	
2 Set as display	▶ Select an option and press .	
	Sets the current image in a display (stand-by display, etc.).	
3 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350	
4 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" → P. 351	
5 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press .	
6 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
7 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press .	
	See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135	

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

My picture display function menu 2/2

❶ Export	See "Exporting FOMA terminal images to a miniSD Memory Card" → P. 358
❷ Add image to PB	Stores the current image in the phonebook. → P. 93
❸ Positioning	See "Setting the position when setting an image in a display" → P. 352
❹ Clipping area	See "Setting the area when setting an image in a display" → P. 353
❺ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
❻ Retry	When you are playing an animation, this option restarts the animation from the beginning.

Note

- Icons in the Image List display show whether an image can be set in a display, attached to mail, pasted into Deco-mail, sent using the Infrared Communication function or saved onto a miniSD memory card. → P. 342

<Set as display>

- You cannot set the following images in a display:

- Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high
- Images with a file size larger than 100 KB

- Depending on the image size and the display in which the image is set, the image may not be displayed at its actual size.

- Some images cannot be set in a display.

<Add image to PB>

- You cannot add the following types of image:

- Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high
- Image files larger than 100 KB
- Images other than JPEG-format or GIF-format

- You cannot use this option while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

<Delete this>

- If you try to delete an image display that has been set in a display or original animation or set as a user icon in a schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:

- Displays in which the deleted image was set revert to their default settings.
- Original animations and playlists are deselected.
- Images stored in the phonebook are also deleted.
- User icons in schedules revert to .

- If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

Using the My picture display function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder

My picture display function menu

❶ Image info	See "About image information" →P. 350	
❷ Decorate mail	See "Composing a Deco-mail" →P. 352	
❸ Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	❶ Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	❷ Fit in display	Enlarges or reduces the image to the display size.
❹ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	
	Pre-installed images cannot be deleted.	
❺ Retry	When you are playing an animation, this option plays the animation from the beginning.	

Note

<Delete this>

- If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

Using the My picture display function menu for the Pre-installed folder

My picture display function menu

❶ Set as display	▶ Select an option and press  .	
	Sets the current image in a display (stand-by display, Wake-up display).	
❷ Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	❶ Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	❷ Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
❸ Retry	When you are playing an animation, this option plays the animation from the beginning.	

Using the My picture display function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders

My picture display function menu

1 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350	
2 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	
	Pre-installed frames, stamps and face stamps cannot be deleted.	
4 Facestamp demo* ¹	Use this option to check face stamp tracking.  appears when tracking is successful and  appears when tracking fails.	

*1 : Only displayed in the face stamp folder.

Using the My picture display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture)

My picture display function menu

❶ Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350	
❷ Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" → P. 351	
❸ Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	❶ Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	❷ Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
❹ Import	See "Importing miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" → P. 359	
❺ DPOF setting	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies the print settings for the selected image.	
	Print	▶ Enter a 2-digit number and press  .
	Sets the number of copies printed (01 to 99).	
	Print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for the displayed image.
	All print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.
❻ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	

Note

<DPOF setting>

- You can specify DPOF settings for up to 999 items.
- You cannot specify DPOF settings for images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or have a file size greater than 600 KB.
- DPOF settings specified on a PC are ignored except for the number of prints specification.
- You may be unable to specify DPOF settings if there is insufficient space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You can check the number of prints that has been set in "Image info".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Using the My picture display function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box)

My picture display function menu

1 Image info	See "About image information" → P. 350	
2 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
3 Import	See "Importing miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" → P. 359	
4 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	

Creating animations <Original animation>

Use this function to create animated cartoon up to 20 frames long using stored images.

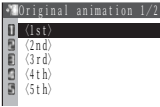
- You can create up to 20.

- 1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  "My picture" ▶ Select "Original animation" and press .

The "Original animation display" appears.

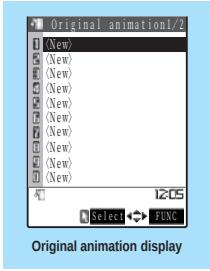
- 2 Select "<New>" and press .

- 3 Select a scene to set and press  ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select an image and press  ▶ Repeat this process to set the desired images.



- To release a selected image

Select the frame to be released and press  ▶ In the folder selection display, select "Release this" and press .



- 4 Press  (Finish).

Note

- You can check the selected images by pressing  (Play) in the image selection display.
- When there are frames with no image set, only the frames with images set are played sequentially.
- You cannot set images that are larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

Using the function Menu in the Original Animation Display

In the original animation display... ➡ P. 357

- 1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Original animation display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press  .
Edits the selected original animation title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	

2 Org. animation	When <New> is selected, this option stores the original animation as a new file. When an existing original animation is selected, this option edits that original animation.
3 Display image	Plays the selected original animation. Displays the "original animation playback display".
4 Set as display	▶ Select an option and press ● . Sets the original animation in a display (stand-by display, etc.).
5 Image info	Checks the setting destination for the original animation. When nothing is set, "No set" is displayed.
6 Release animat.	▶ Select "YES" and press ● . Release the selected original animation.

Displaying an original animation

In the original animation display... ➡ P. 357

- 1 Select an original animation and press ● .
The "Original animation playback display" appears.
Use ⏮ to play the previous or next original animation.



Using the function menu in the Original Animation Playback display

In the original animation playback display... ➡ P. 358

- 1 Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:
Original animation playback display function menu

1 Set as display	▶ Select an item and press ● . Sets the selected image in a display (stand-by display, etc.).				
2 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high). <table><tr><td>1 Normal (default setting)</td><td>Displays the images at their actual size.</td></tr><tr><td>2 Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the images to the display size.</td></tr></table>	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the images at their actual size.	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the images to the display size.
1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the images at their actual size.				
2 Fit in display	Enlarges the images to the display size.				
3 Retry	Plays the animation from the beginning.				

Exporting FOMA terminal images to a miniSD Memory Card

Use this procedure to export (copy) JPEG-format images stored in folders to a miniSD memory card.

- The exported images are saved in the folder selected during save destination folder selection (→ P. 408).
- Icons in the Image List display indicate images that can be exported.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 345

- 1 Use ⏮ ▶ Press [2] [2nd] "Export".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data exporting.
- You cannot export pre-installed images.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- File names for exported images are assigned as described below.
 - File name: NEC_mmmm (mmm = 0001 to 9999)
- You cannot export images in the following situations:
 - When the images are in formats other than JPEG-format
 - When it is prohibited to output the images to devices other than a FOMA terminal
 - When the images are shot as Chara-den images with "Rec. file restriction"
 - When the size of the exported files exceeds 600 KB
 - When there is insufficient space available on the miniSD memory card
 - When miniSD memory card insertion processing is in progress
 - When an error occurs on the miniSD memory card
 - When the miniSD memory card is not compatible to the FOMA terminal
- When you export images to a miniSD memory card, the image quality may deteriorate and the file sizes may increase.
- JPEG-format images that are larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high may be reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or less.

Importing miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal

Use this procedure to import (copy) images stored on a miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

- The imported images are saved in the Inbox folder in My picture.

<Example: Image List display for a miniSD memory card (Picture)>

In the image list display (miniSD memory card (Picture)) function menu... ➔ P. 349



Press  "Import".

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data importing.
- You cannot import Flash movies.
- You cannot import images in the following situations:
 - JPEG-format images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high
 - Progressive JPEG-format images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high
 - Images larger than 600 KB (However, the image of 600 KB or less may sometimes be unable to be imported.)
- Titles for imported images are assigned as described below.
 - The title is set on the miniSD memory card
 - If no title is set on the miniSD memory card, the file name is used as the title.
- The file name used for an imported image is "yyyymmddhhmmxxx" (date, time and xxx : 3-digit number).
 - When date and time are not set, the name will be "imagexxx" (xxx : 3-digit number)
- JPEG-format images that are larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high may be reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or less.

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Use the functions to edit images you have shot.

- The table below lists the images that can be edited.

Type of edit	Details	Image size	Ref. page
Frame	Frames an image.	352 dots wide × 288 dots high 288 dots wide × 352 dots high 345 dots wide × 240 dots high 240 dots wide × 345 dots high 320 dots wide × 240 dots high 240 dots wide × 320 dots high 176 dots wide × 144 dots high 144 dots wide × 176 dots high 128 dots wide × 96 dots high 96 dots wide × 128 dots high	P. 362

Type of edit	Details	Image size	Ref. page
Retouch	Applies special effects such as sepia tones to images.	352 dots wide × 288 dots high 288 dots wide × 352 dots high	P. 361
Marker stamp	Pastes marker stamps such as hearts into images.	1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high ^{*1} 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high ^{*1}	P. 362
Character stamp	Pastes entered text stamps into images.	1160 dots wide × 870 dots high ^{*1}	P. 363
Trim away	Trims an image down to the desired size.	640 dots wide × 480 dots high 480 dots wide × 640 dots high	P. 364
Brightness	Adjusts the image brightness.	352 dots wide × 288 dots high	P. 361
Rotate	Rotates images 90° or 180° left or right.	288 dots wide × 352 dots high	P. 361
Change size	Resizes images.		P. 361

*1 : A bigger image than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high can be edited after being reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

- For information on the images that can be edited → P. 342
- When "Edit image" is selected in the Image checking display function menu, only the "Frame" and "Retouch" editing functions are available.

In the My picture display function menu...

➡ P. 354

- 1 Press  "Edit image".
The "Edit Image display" appears.



Note

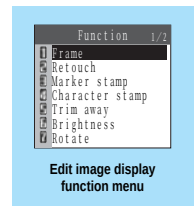
- Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase file size.
- On some images, the effects of editing may be difficult to see.
- Edited images are handled as images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera.
- The 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high, 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high or 1160 dots wide × 870 dots high images are automatically reduced to the 640 dots wide × 480 dots high images before editing.
- Depending on the image size relative to the pre-edited image size, it may not be possible to use some of the edit functions.

Using the function menu in the Edit Image display

In the edit image display...

➡ P. 360

- 1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Edit image display function menu 1/2

1 Frame	See "Adding frames" → P. 362

2 Retouch	▶ Choose from the following options: Applies effects to an image.	
	1 Sharp	Sharpens the outlines in images.
	2 Blur	Softens the outlines in images.
	3 Sepia	Gives a sepia-tone image.
	4 Emboss	Gives the image an embossed effect as if it were in relief.
	5 Negative	Gives a negative image.
	6 Horizontal flip	Flips left and right in the image (mirroring).
3 Marker stamp	See "Pasting marker stamps" → P. 362	
4 Character stamp	See "Pasting character stamps" → P. 363	
5 Trim away	See "Trimming" → P. 364	
6 Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness and press  .	
	Adjusts the image brightness through 5 levels (−2 to ± 0 to +2).	
7 Rotate	▶ Choose from the following options: Rotates the image.	
	1 90° to right	Rotates the image clockwise by 90°.
	2 90° to left	Rotates the image counterclockwise by 90°.
	3 180°	Rotates the image by 180°.

Edit image display function menu 2/2

1 Change size	▶ Choose from the following options: Enlarges or reduces the image to the maximum size that does not exceed the selected one while the aspect ratio is retained. Setting items 1/2	
	1 VGA (640x480)	Changes to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high (VGA).
	2 CIF (352x288)	Changes to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF).
	3 QVGA (320x240)	Changes to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high (QVGA).
	4 QCIF (176x144)	Changes to 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
	5 Sub-QCIF (128x96)	Changes to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high (Sub-QCIF).
	6 Screen (240x345)	Changes to 240 dots wide × 345 dots high (full screen).
	7 Stand-by (240x320)	Changes to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert).
	8 VGA Vert. (480x640)	Changes to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high (VGA Vert).
	9 CIF Vert. (288x352)	Changes to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF Vert).
	0 QCIF Vert. (144x176)	Changes to 144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF Vert).
	Setting items 2/2	
	1 Sub-QCIF Vert. (96x128)	Changes to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high (Sub-QCIF Vert).
2 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" → P. 351 The step 2 and 3 are not required.	
3 Save	Saves the edited image.	

2 Check the edited image and press .

3 Press  ▶ Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image.

Selecting "NO" saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder of the original file.

● Adding frames

- As well as the pre-installed frames (P. 174), you can also use downloaded frames.
- You can download frames from the sites.

In the edit image display function menu... ➔ P. 360

1 Press "Frame" ➔ Select a frame and press .

The image is displayed with the selected frame.
Use  to change to another frame.

■ To cancel the selected frame

Press  (Cancel).

Note

- Downloaded frames may be in portrait or landscape orientation. Frames can only be used when they match the size and orientation of the image.
- When a trimmed or resized image is the same size as a frame, the image and the frame form a composite image, which may deteriorate the image quality of the composite frame.

● Pasting marker stamps

- As well as the pre-installed marker stamps, you can also use downloaded marker stamps.
- You can rotate and enlarge or reduce marker stamps.
- You can download marker stamps from the sites.
- The table below shows the pre-installed marker stamps.

Cross		Anger		NG	
Heart 1		Right		Person	
Heart 2		Below		Car	
Kiss		Left		Asleep	
Tear		Above		Question	
Flame		Here		Surprise	
Lightning		No.1		Shine	
Sorry		No.2		Whirlpool	
Note		No.3		Punch	
Flower		Party		Nose	
Love		OK		—	—

In the edit image display function menu... ➔ P. 360

1 Press "Marker stamp" ➔ Select a marker stamp and press .

■ To edit a marker stamp

Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

 90° to right	Rotates the marker stamp clockwise by 90°.
 90° to left	Rotates the marker stamp counterclockwise by 90°.
 180°	Rotates the marker stamp by 180°.
 Scale up	Enlarges the marker stamp to 2×.
 Scale down	Reduces the marker stamp to 0.5×.

2 Position the marker stamp and press .



Use the  to position the marker stamp.

■ To use a different marker stamp

Press  (Add) ▶ Repeat steps 2-3.

Note

- You can only use downloaded marker stamps of which image size is 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or less. Stamps other than that size are handled as GIF-format images.
- You can repeatedly enlarge or reduce a marker stamp.
- You cannot enlarge the marker stamp more than the edited image. You also cannot reduce the marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

● Pasting character stamps

Default setting

Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Character size: Standard size

- Character stamps can consist of up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. Note that the number of characters that can be entered varies depending on the image file size and the character size.
- You can change the character stamp color, font and size.

In the edit image display function menu...

➔ P. 360

1 Press "Character stamp" ▶ Enter the text and press .

■ To edit a character stamp

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Character input	▶ Enter the text and press  .	
	The text is reentered.	
2 Character color	▶ Use  to select the color and press  .	
	Sets the color of the character stamp.	
	Press  (Change) to switch to the other color palette.	
3 Font	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the font used in the character stamp.	
	1 Gothic style	Sets a gothic font.
	2 Pop style	Sets a pop font.
4 Character size	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the size of the character stamp.	
	1 Enlargement size	Sets a large character size.
	2 Standard size	Sets the standard character size.
	3 Reduction size	Sets a small character size.

2 Position the character stamp and press .



Use  to position the character stamp.

■ To edit the text

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  "Character input" ▶ Edit characters and press .

Note

- Font thickness is the one that have been set in "Font".
- For an i-shot S (144 dots wide ×144 dots high) image, if you reduce the character size and ensure they do not overlap each other, you can paste up to 81 full-pitch or 162 half-pitch characters.

Trimming

In the edit image display function menu...

→ P. 360

1 Press "Trim away" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Trimming display 1/2

 CIF (352×288)	Trims the image to 352 dots wide×288 dots high (CIF).
 QVGA (320×240)	Trims the image to 320 dots wide×240 dots high (QVGA).
 QCIF (176×144)	Trims the image to 176 dots wide×144 dots high (QCIF).
 Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Trims the image to 128 dots wide×96 dots high (Sub-QCIF).
 Screen (240×345)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide x 345 dots high (full screen).
 Stand-by (240×320)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide×320 dots high (QVGA Vert.).
 CIF Vert. (288×352)	Trims the image to 288 dots wide×352 dots high (CIF Vert.).
 QCIF Vert. (144×176)	Trims the image to 144 dots wide×176 dots high (QCIF Vert.).
 Sub-QCIF Vert. (96×128)	Trims the image to 96 dots wide×128 dots high (Sub-QCIF Vert.).
 Background (240×270)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide×270 dots high for use in menu backgrounds.

Trimming display 2/2

 Menu icon (64×63)	Trims the image to 64 dots wide×63 dots high for use as a menu icon.
 Chat (80×80)	Trims the image to 80 dots wide×80 dots high for use in Chat.

2 Position the trimming frame and press .



Use  to position the trimming frame.

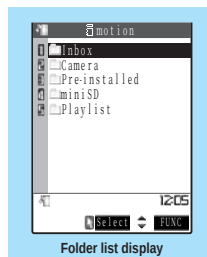
Playing Movies You Have Shot/i-motion

Use this procedure to use the FOMA terminal's Movie Player to play movies you have shot, i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites and movies stored on miniSD memory cards from the "i-motion" folder in the Data box.

● To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal → P. 336

- 1 Press  Select  and press  Press  "i-motion".

The "Folder list display" appears.



Folder list display

- 2 Select a folder and press .

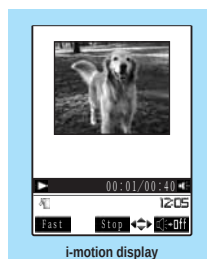
The "Movie list display (Preview)" appears.
For a guide to the Movie List display → P. 366



Movie list display (Preview)

- 3 Select a movie and press .

The "i-motion display" appears and movie playback starts.
Use  to play the next or previous movie.
For information on operations available during i-motion playback → P. 366



i-motion display

When playback ends, the "i-motion stop display" appears.



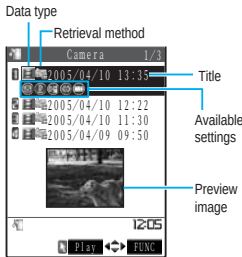
i-motion stop display

Note

- The "Folder List display" can also be displayed by selecting the desktop icon and pressing pressing "i-motion".
- If you try to play an i-motion or movie with sound when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the movie. Select "YES" to play the movie with sound. Select "NO" to play only the video with no sound.
- The video or sound in a movie may stop in mid-movie if you receive mail or a Message Request/Free during movie or i-motion playback.
- If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal are reset. In this event, i-motion with a restricted playback period or duration cannot be played.
- You may not be able to play movies that are not shot on a FOMA N700i.

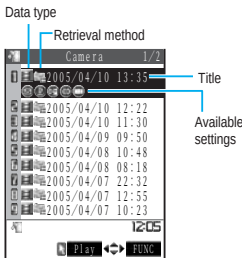
Guide to the Preview display and Title list

- For information on the icons for data types, retrieval methods and the available settings → P. 341
- For information on titles and file names → P. 342



Preview display

The display shows 4 movies listed by title with a preview image from the selected movie displayed below the titles. Icons show the data types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each movie. Preview images are not displayed for movies with no video such as audio-only i-motion.



Title list

The display shows 9 movies listed by title with icons showing the data types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each movie.

Note

- At a preview display and a title list, a neuropointer is (White). Only moving a pointer to an item does not select the item automatically. If is pressed, it will be in a selection state, and it will become determination if is pressed once again.

Operations available during i-motion playback

You can perform the operations shown below during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control keys	Movie Player action
	Pauses/resumes playback.
(H) (Home), (M) (Memo/Check)	Adjusts the volume.
	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion.* ¹
	Fast forward
	Mute (disabled when there is no audio)

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Control keys	Movie Player action
⏮ for 1 second or longer	Skip back*2
⏭ for 1 second or longer	Skip forward*2
⏸ to pause playback and then ⏪	Frame advance (moves forward 1 frame each time it is pressed)
⏸ to pause playback and then select "Slow" from the function menu.	Slow playback
⏹ (CLR)	End

*1 : You cannot control the movie if you play it from the Data acquisition display (P. 337).

*2 : May not be available in some i-motion.

Note

- The default i-motion volume is set at level 4. The volume can be set to a level between 0 and 6, and the setting is retained the next time the i-motion is played.
- The volume set for i-motion does not affect the ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- Seek (skip back/forward) can be used while movies are playing (including slow playback and fast forward) and while movies are paused. Sound is muted during seeking (skip back/forward).
- Seek (skip back/forward) cannot be used in the following situations:
 - When playback is stopped
 - While an i-motion that can be played during downloading is playing.
 - When the file has no seek points
 - When the interval between seek points is too long
 - When the file only has a seek point at the beginning of the file
 - When the file is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data
- Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip back/forward) or during frame advance playback.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions

If an underlined phone number, e-mail address or URL is displayed when playback ends, you can use the Phone To / AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (P. 224).

If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be stored in the phonebook. When playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" on the display and then select "Phone" or "UIM".

"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" → P. 93

"Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P. 95



Phone To /
AV Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Using the Function Menu in the Movie List Display

The options available in the Movie List display function menu differ depending on the folder in which the movie is saved.

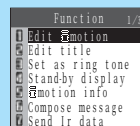
- Movie List display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders → P. 368
- Movie list display function menu for the Pre-installed folder → P. 370
- Movie List display function menu for a miniSD memory card → P. 370
- If "Set as ring tone" is set, the same setting is made on "Select ring tone".

In the movie list display (Preview)...

→ P. 365

1

Press ⏸ (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Example: Movie list display
(Inbox) function menu

Movie list display function menu 1/3

1 Edit i-motion	See "Editing Movies" → P. 376												
2 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected movie title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522												
3 Set as ring tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the selected movie as a ring tone. <table> <tr> <td>1 Phone</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Video-phone</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Mail</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 Chat mail</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.</td></tr> <tr> <td>5 Msg. Request</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.</td></tr> <tr> <td>6 Msg. Free</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.</td></tr> </table>	1 Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.	2 Video-phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.	3 Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.	4 Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.	5 Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.	6 Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.
1 Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.												
2 Video-phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.												
3 Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.												
4 Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.												
5 Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.												
6 Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.												
4 Stand-by display	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the selected movie in the stand-by display.												
5 i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" → P. 371												
6 Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected movie attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247												
7 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.												

Movie list display function menu 2/3

1 Export	See "Exporting FOMA terminal movies to a miniSD memory card" → P. 375				
2 Move folder	▶ Select the folder to which the movie is to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected movie to another folder.				
3 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135				
4 Edit file name	▶ Edit the file name and press ●. Edits the selected movie file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" → P. 522				
5 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions for the selected movie. <table> <tr> <td>1 File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr> </table>	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
6 Reset title	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Resets a changed title to the one used when the movie was retrieved.				
7 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.				

Movie list display function menu 3/3

1 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● . About Your Security Codes → P. 142	
2 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407	
3 Memory info	Displays the amount of movie data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
4 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Sorts movies.	
	1 Chronological ↑ (default setting)	Arranges movies in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges movies in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	3 By title ↓	Arranges movies in ascending order by title.
	4 By title ↑	Arranges movies in descending order by title.
	5 By size ↑	Arranges movies in descending order by size.
	6 By size ↓	Arranges movies in ascending order by size.
	7 By source	Arranges movies in order by retrieval method.
5 Listing	▶ Choose from the following options: Specifies how to display the movie display list.	
	1 Title	Switches to title list.
	2 Title + image (default Setting)	Switches to preview screen.

Note

<Set as ring tone>

- You can only set an i-motion where setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable".

<Stand-by display>

- When you attempt to delete the movie which is used as the Stand-by display, a message appears asking whether or not to delete the movie. If you select "YES" to delete it, the settings are reset to the default.
- Movies or i-motion cannot be set in the stand-by display in the following situations:
 - When the movie or i-motion is voice only or text only
 - When the movie format is not MP4-format
 - When there are replay restrictions on the i-motion
 - When the movie is not compatible with the FOMA terminal
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly in the stand-by display.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions from a movie set in the stand-by display.

<Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
 - When the movie has a file size of 500 KB or larger
 - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages
 - When there are replay restrictions on the i-motion
 - When the movie is of a Chara-den with "Rec. file restriction"
 - When it is prohibited to output the i-motion from a FOMA terminal
- The file sizes of some i-motion may increase or decrease and they may be unsuitable for use as mail attachments.

- You can trim an i-motion to a size that allows it to be attached to i-mode mail. → P. 380

<Sort>

- The movies are sorted in "By source" in the following order:
The i-motion downloaded or acquired from i-α ppil → movies recorded with camera → movies acquired via infrared communication or from the miniSD memory card → movies of Chara-den

Using the Movie List display function menu for the Pre-installed folder

Movie list display function menu

① Set as ring tone	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the selected movie as a ring tone.	
	① Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
	② Video-Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.
	③ Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
	④ Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
	⑤ Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.
	⑥ Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.
② Stand-by display	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
	Sets the selected movie in the stand-by display.	
③ Listing	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies how to display the movie display list.	
	① Title	Switches to title list.
	② Title + image (default Setting)	Switches to preview screen.

Using the Movie List display function menu for a miniSD memory card

Movie list display function menu 1/2

① Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●.
	Edits the selected movie title. The title can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
② i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" → P. 371
③ Import	See "Importing miniSD memory card movies to the FOMA terminal" → P. 375
④ Copy	▶ Select the folder to which the movie is to be copied and press ●.
	Copies the selected movie to another folder.
⑤ Move	▶ Select the folder to which the movie is to be moved and press ●.
	Moves the selected movie to another folder.
⑥ Reset title	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	Resets a changed title to the one used when the movie was retrieved.
⑦ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Movie list display function menu 2/2

① Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.	
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142	
② Multiple-choice	See “Selecting multiple data items” → P. 407	
③ Memory info	Displays the amount of movie data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
④ Listing	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies how to display the movie list display.	
	① Name* ¹	Switches to title display (or file name display).
	② Name + image* ¹ (default Setting)	Switches to preview screen.
	③ Title* ²	Switches to title display.

*1 : The name is either the file name or title.

*2 : If you have selected "Title", "File Name" is displayed.

About i-motion information

You can check the following information.

Item	Description
File Name	Displays the file name.
Format	Displays the file format.
Default title	Displays the original title.
Creator	Displays the creator of the file. If there is no information about the creator, "Unknown" is displayed.
Copyright	Displays the copyright information of the file. If there is no copyright information, "Unknown" is displayed.
Saved at	Displays the date (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) the file was saved at.
File size	Displays the file size in kilobytes (KB).
Display size	Displays the file display size (width × height in dots).
Received from	Displays where the file was received from.
Description	Displays the file description. If there is no description, "Unknown" is displayed.
File restriction	Displays file restrictions "File restricted/File unrestricted".
Replay restriction	If there are count restrictions Displays "Remaining replay count/total replay count".
	If there are period restrictions Displays "date file stored/date of play period".
	If there are span restrictions Displays "playable date/date of play span".
	If there are replay restrictions "Not restricted" is displayed.
Video	Displays "Included/Not included/Unplayable" for video.
Audio	Displays audio information "AMR/AAC/Not included/Unplayable/Playable".
Text	Displays "Included/Not included/Unplayable" for text.
Ring tone	Displays whether the ring tone is "Available/Unavailable". When a ring tone is set, the setting destination is displayed.
Receive display	Displays whether the receive display is "Available/Unavailable". When a receive display is set, the setting destination is displayed.

Using the Function Menu in the i-motion Stop Display

The options available in the i-motion stop display function menu differ depending on the folder in which the movie is saved.

- i-motion stop display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders → P. 371
- i-motion stop display function menu for the Pre-installed folder → P. 373
- i-motion stop display function menu for a miniSD memory card → P. 373

In the i-motion stop display...

➔ P. 365

1 Press  (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

i-motion stop display function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders

i-motion stop display function menu 1/2

1 Normal play	Plays the movie at normal speed. This option restarts movie playback from the point where the movie was paused.
2 Slow	Plays the movie at slow speed. To return to normal playback, press  (play).
3 Fast	Fast forwards the movie. To return to normal playback, press  (play).
4 Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the Movies List display.
5 Position to play	► Use  to select the point where playback is to start and press  . Starts playback from a specified position.

Ⓔ Edit i-motion	See "Editing Movies" → P. 376
Ⓕ Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current movie attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247

i-motion stop display function menu 2/2

Ⓘ Set as ring tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the current movie as a ring tone. <table><tr><td>Ⓘ Phone</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.</td></tr><tr><td>Ⓜ Video-Phone</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.</td></tr><tr><td>Ⓜ Mail</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.</td></tr><tr><td>Ⓜ Chat mail</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.</td></tr><tr><td>Ⓜ Msg. Request</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.</td></tr><tr><td>Ⓜ Msg. Free</td><td>Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.</td></tr></table>	Ⓘ Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.	Ⓜ Video-Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.	Ⓜ Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.	Ⓜ Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.	Ⓜ Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.	Ⓜ Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.
Ⓘ Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.												
Ⓜ Video-Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.												
Ⓜ Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.												
Ⓜ Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.												
Ⓜ Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.												
Ⓜ Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.												
Ⓜ Stand-by display	▶ Select "YES" and press . Sets the current movie in the stand-by display.												
Ⓜ i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" → P. 371												
Ⓜ Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press .												
Ⓜ Export	See "Exporting FOMA terminal images to miniSD Memory Card" → P. 358												
Ⓜ Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135												
Ⓜ Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode. <table><tr><td>Ⓘ Actual size (default setting)</td><td>Displays images at actual size.</td></tr><tr><td>Ⓜ Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges images to the display size.</td></tr></table>	Ⓘ Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.	Ⓜ Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.								
Ⓘ Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.												
Ⓜ Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.												

Note
<Slow> ● Movies are muted during slow playback. ● You cannot use slow playback with an i-motion that is played during downloading. <Fast> ● Movies are muted during fast playback. ● You cannot use fast playback with an i-motion that is played during downloading. <Position to play> ● You may not be able to select the playback position for some movies and i-motion. <Set as ring tone> ● You can only set an i-motion where setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable". ● If you set a movie that contains only sound and you then receive a call, the image specified in "Display setting" is displayed. <Stand-by display> ● When you attempt to delete the movie which is used as the stand-by display, a message appears asking whether or not to delete the movie. If you select "YES" to delete it the settings are reset to the default. ● Movies or i-motion cannot be set in the stand-by display in the following situations: • When the movie or i-motion is voice only or text only • When the movie format is not MP4-format • When replay restrictions are set on the i-motion • When the movie is not compatible with the FOMA terminal ● Some movies may not be displayed correctly in the stand-by display. ● You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions from a movie set in the stand-by display. <Compose message> ● You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations: • When the movie file size is 500 KB or larger • When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages • When there are replay restrictions on the i-motion • When the movie is of a Chara-den with "Rec. file restriction" • When it is prohibited to output the i-motion from a FOMA terminal ● You can trim an i-motion to a size that allows it to be attached to i-mode mail. → P. 380 <Set image display> ● When you return to the Movie List display, the setting reverts to "Actual size".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

i-motion stop display function menu for the Pre-installed folder

i-motion stop display function menu 1/2

1 Normal play	Plays the movie at normal speed. This option restarts movie playback from the point where the movie was paused.
2 Slow	Plays the movie at slow speed. To return to normal playback, press  (play).
3 Fast	Fast forwards the movie. To return to normal playback, press  (play).
4 Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the Movies List display.
5 Position to play	▶ Use  to select the point where playback is to begin and press  . Begins playback from a specified position.
6 Set as ring tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the current movie as a ring tone.
1 Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
2 Video-Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.
3 Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
4 Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
5 Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Request.
6 Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Msg. Free.
7 Stand-by display	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Sets the current movie in the stand-by display.

i-motion stop display function menu 2/2

1 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode.
1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.
2 Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.

i-motion stop display function menu for a miniSD memory card

i-motion stop display function menu 1/2

1 Normal play	Plays the movie at normal speed. This option restarts movie playback from the point where the movie was paused.
2 Slow	Plays the movie at slow speed. To return to normal playback, press  (play).
3 Fast	Fast forwards the movie. To return to normal playback, press  (play).
4 Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the Movies List display.
5 Position to play	▶ Use  to select the point where playback is to start ▶ Press  . Starts playback from a specified position.
6 i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" → P. 371
7 Import	See "Importing miniSD memory card movies to the FOMA terminal" → P. 375

i-motion stop display function menu 2/2

1 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode.
1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.
2 Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound <SRS_WOW setting>

Default setting

OFF

When you play an i-motion that uses sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and through earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music instrumental sound, and stereo playback sound played through headphones is enhanced by effects that give a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music instrumental sound.

● Icons in the Movie List display show which i-motion uses sound effects. → P. 341

1 Press ▶ Press “ON” or “OFF”.

Using the function menu in the Playlist folder

In the folder list display...

➡ P. 365

1 Select the Playlist folder and press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Playlist folder function menu

1 Add folder	▶ Enter the title and press . Adds a folder. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” → P. 522
2 Edit folder name	You cannot edit the name of the Playlist folder.
3 Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
4 Edit playlist	Starts playlist editing. You can use this option to edit existing playlists. See “Playing movies in your preferred order” → P. 374
5 Release playlist	▶ Select “YES” and press .

● Playing movies in your preferred order <Play movie playlist>

In the playlist folder function menu...

➡ P. 374

1 Press “Edit playlist” ▶ Select the number under which the movie is to be added and press ▶ Select a folder and press ▶ Select a movie and press ▶ Repeat this procedure to set.



■ To release a set movie

Select the movie to be released and press ▶ Select “Release this” in the folder selection display and press .

2 Press (Finish) ▶ Press .

Start the playlist and the set movie is played back repeatedly.

Note

- If you delete the movie that has been set to a playlist, the playlist is released.

Exporting FOMA terminal movies to a miniSD memory card

Use this procedure to export (copy) movies stored in the i-motion Inbox folder, Camera folder and user-created folders to a miniSD memory card.

- The exported movies are saved in the folder selected in "Select storage" (P. 408).
- You cannot export movies for which file restriction is set.

< Example: Movie list display for Inbox, Camera and user-created folders >

In the movie list display function menu...

➡ P. 367

1

Press  Press  "Export".

Start exporting to the miniSD memory card.

The exporting to the miniSD memory card may takes time depending upon the amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until export is completed.

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data exporting.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and movies are saved in the new folder.
- File names for exported movies are assigned as described below.
 - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001-FFF : hexadecimal notation)
- You cannot export movies in the following situations:
 - When it is prohibited to output the movies to devices from a FOMA terminal
 - When the movies of Chara-den with "Rec. file restriction"
 - When there is insufficient space available on the miniSD memory card
 - When miniSD memory card insertion processing is in progress
 - When an error occurs on the miniSD memory card
 - When the miniSD memory card is not compatible to the FOMA terminal

Importing miniSD memory card movies to the FOMA terminal

Use this procedure to import (copy) movies stored on a miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

- The imported movies are saved in the Inbox folder under i-motion.

<Example: Movie List display for a miniSD memory card>

In the movie list display function menu...

➡ P. 367

1

Press  "Import".

Importing starts.

Depending on the size of the movie, importing may take some time. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until importing is completed.

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data importing.
- You cannot import movies in the following situations:
 - When a movie format is other than MP4
 - When a movie is MP4 format but cannot be played

* You may be unable to import some movies even when none of the above is applied.
- A movie larger than 800 KB is trimmed to 800 KB or less. However, a movie of which voice codec is ACC larger than 800 KB cannot be imported.
- Titles for imported movies are assigned as described below.
 - Titles set on the miniSD memory card
 - If no title is set on the miniSD memory card, the file name is used as the title

<Edit movie>

Editing Movies

- You cannot use the multi tasking function while editing a movie.
- For information on which movies can be edited → P. 342

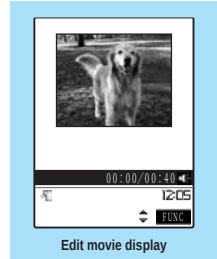
<Example: Movie List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the movie list display...

➔ P. 365

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ➔  "Edit i-motion".

The "Edit movie display" appears.



Note

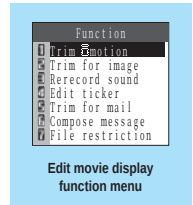
- Movie editing may result in loss of quality or a change in the file size.
- If you receive a call, the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is folded during editing, the editing information currently set is saved. However, the information is not saved if the FOMA terminal's memory for movies is full.
- The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Using the function menu in the Edit Movie display

In the edit movie display...

➔ P. 376

- 1** Press  (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:



Edit movie display function menu

 Trim i-motion	See "Trimming sections of movies" → P. 377				
 Trim for image	➔ Press  ➔ Press  in the frame you want to trim ➔ Press  (Set) ➔ Select "YES" and press  ➔ Select a folder and press . Trims the selected frame as a still image.				
 Rerecord sound	Erases the soundtrack so that new sound can be recorded. See "Rerecording sound" → P. 377				
 Edit ticker	See "Adding tickers to movies" → P. 378				
 Trim for mail	See "Trimming movies for use as mail attachments" → P. 380				
 Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the edited movie attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247				
 File restriction	➔ Choose from the following options: Sets the file restrictions for the edited movie. <table><tr><td> File unrestricted (default setting)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr><tr><td> File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.</td></tr></table>	 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.	 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				
 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.				

Note

<Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
 - When the edited movie has a file size of 500 KB or larger
 - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages

Trimming sections of movies

In the edit movie display function menu...

➔ P. 376

1 Press  "Trim i-motion" ▶ Press  (Start) to start trimming.

■ To trim the sections from the middle of the movie

Press  at the start of the section you want to trim and press  ▶ Press  (Start).

2 Press  at the end of the section to be trimmed ▶ Press  (End).

The trimmed section of movie is played. Playback stops automatically at the end of the section.

■ To check the trimmed section again

Press  (Play).

3 Press  ▶ Press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during movie trimming.
- When an i-motion is trimmed, the playback time may increase.

Rerecording sound

In the edit movie display function menu...

➔ P. 376

1 Press  "Rerecord sound" ▶ Press  (Start) to start recording.

■ To record sound from the middle of the movie

Press  to play the movie to the start of the section you want to record and press  (Start).

2 When recording is completed, press  (End).

Movie playback continues. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to continue recording.

3 Press  to finish rerecording.

■ To check the rerecorded movie

Press  (Play).

4 Press  ▶ Press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

- Rerecording sound onto movies with tickers erases the tickers.

● Adding tickers to movies

Default setting	Character color: Black Background color: White Character size: Standard size Character position: Left-justified Flashing/Underlined/Scrolling: OFF

Use this procedure to add new ticker to a movie or edit existing tickers.

- You can edit up to 5 tickers per movie. Each ticker can consist of up to 20 full-pitch characters.
- For information on entering text → P. 522

In the edit movie display function menu... ➔ P. 376

1 Press **[4]** **[F6]** "Edit ticker" ➔ Press **[1]** **[F6]** "New".

2 Press **[●]** (Start) ➔ Enter the ticker text and press **[●]**.

■ To add tickers from the middle of the movie

Press **[●]** ➔ Press **[●]** at the section where you want add the ticker and press **[●]** (Start).

3 Set any effect to be applied to the ticker.

1 Font color	▶ Use  to select the color and press  .	
	Sets the text color.	
	Press  (Change) to switch to another color palette.	
2 Background color	▶ Use  to select the color and press  .	
	Sets the background color.	
	Press  (Change) to switch to another color palette.	
3 Font size	▶ Select  "Normal" or  "Large".	
	Sets the text size.	
4 Word alignment	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets text display position.	
	This setting is only valid when scrolling is set to "OFF".	
	1 Left	Displays the ticker at the left edge of the display.
	2 Center	Displays the ticker in the center of the display.
	3 Right	Displays the ticker at the right edge of the display.
5 Blink	▶ Select  "ON" or  "OFF".	
	Specifies whether the tickers flash.	
6 Underline	▶ Select  "ON" or  "OFF".	
	Specifies whether the tickers are underlined.	
7 Scroll	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the scrolling mode.	
	1 OFF	Cancels scrolling.
	2 Scroll in	▶ Select "Right to left", "Left to right", "Bottom to top" or "Top to bottom" as the scrolling direction and then press  .
	3 Scroll out	
4 Scroll in&out		
8 Finish setting	Exits the ticker effects settings.	

4 When you have completed the settings, press **[8]** **[F6]** "Finish setting".

5 Press **[●]** ➔ Press **[●]** at the point where ticker display is to end ➔ Press **[●]** (End).

If a point is reached at which previously recorded tickers begin when "Add ticker" is selected during playback, a message appears asking whether to set that point as the end point for the edited ticker. Select "YES" and press **[●]** to add the new tickers. Select "NO" and press **[●]** to return to the tickers list display.

To continue editing tickers, repeat steps 2 to 5.

■ When tickers list is displayed

Press  (Finish).
 Press  (Play) to check the movie with the tickers.
 Press  (Edit) to reedit the tickers.
 See "Correcting added tickers" → P. 379
 Proceed to step 7.

6 When you have finished editing the tickers, press (FUNC) ▶ Press "Finish editing".

■ To check the movie with the edited tickers

Press  (Play).

■ To correct the tickers

Press  (Edit).

For information on correcting tickers → P. 379

7 Press ▶ Press ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

- The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
- If 6 or more tickers are used in a movie that was retrieved using infrared communication or data communication, the 6th and subsequent tickers are deleted during editing. If a ticker contains more than 20 full-pitch characters, the 21st and subsequent characters are deleted and unsupported effects are also deleted.
- When tickers are edited, the edited movies cannot be set as the ring tone.
- Ticker effects that are not supported on the FOMA N700i may be deleted or modified.

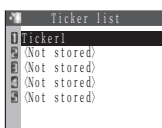
● Correcting added tickers

- If you attempt to correct tickers in a movie to which tickers have already been added, a message appears warning you that the ticker data may be deleted. To correct an existing ticker, Select "YES" and press .

In the edit movie display function menu...

➔ P. 376

1 Press "Edit ticker" ▶ Press "Edit".



The "Tickers List display" appears.

■ To check the ticker details

Select the ticker and press  ▶ Check the details and press .

2 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

 Change text	Edits the text of the ticker.
 Change effect	Changes ticker effects such as the character color, background color and scrolling.
 Change start po.	Resets the ticker starting point.
 Change end point	Resets the ticker ending point.
 Add ticker	▶ Select "<Available>" and press  ▶ Add the ticker.
 Delete ticker	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

3 When you have finished editing the tickers, press .

Note

- You cannot edit the tickers when no tickers have been added.

Trimming movies for use as mail attachments

In the edit movie display function menu...

➔ P. 376

1 Press **[5]** **[M]** "Trim for mail" ▶ Choose from the following options:

[1] Mail (L)	Trims the movie larger than 490 KB to an image 490 KB or less.
[2] Mail (S)	Trims the movie larger than 290 KB to an image 290 KB or less.

2 Press **[○]** ▶ Press **[○]** at the start of the section to be trimmed ▶ Press **[○]** (Start) to start trimming.

Playback stops automatically when the maximum size for use as a mail attachment is reached.

■ To check the trimmed section of movie

Press **[○]** (Play).

3 Press **[○]** ▶ Press **[○]** ▶ Select "YES" and press **[○]**.

Note

- Movies with a file size of 290 KB or more shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera can be trimmed using "Trim for mail".
- The tickered movie is not trimmed.
- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during movie trimming.

What is Chara-den?

Use these procedures to display "Chara-den" for checking its action or shoot in "Chara-den". "Chara-den" function allows you to send "Chara-den" as a substitute image to the other party's FOMA terminal during a video-phone call instead of the image from your own FOMA terminal camera.

Display Chara-den

Default setting

Image display settings: Fit in display Substitute image setting: Dimo

- To download "Chara-den" characters ➔ P. 222
- The pre-installed "Chara-den" characters are shown below.



ブンブン (Dimo)

© BVIG



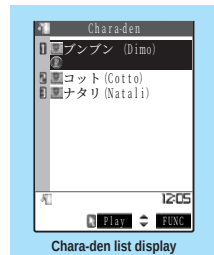
コット (Cotto)



ナタリ (Natali)

1 Press **[Menu]** ▶ Select **[Chara-den]** and press **[○]** ▶ Press **[4]** **[OK]** "Chara-den".

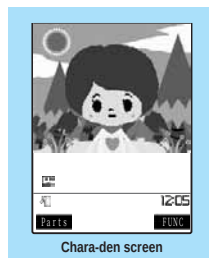
The "Chara-den list display" appears.



Chara-den list display

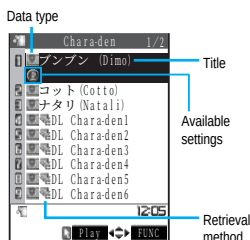
2 Select Chara-den and press .

The "Chara-den screen" is displayed.



Guide to the Chara-den list

- For information on the Data type, retrieval method and available setting icons → P. 341
- For information on titles and file names → P. 342



The display shows 9 Chara-den characters listed by title with icons that show the data types (Chara-den), retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each Chara-den.

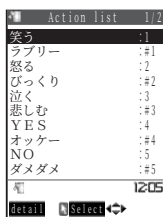
Controlling the Chara-den character

This function allows you to choose from a range of pre-installed actions for your Chara-den character to perform.

In the Chara-den screen...

→ P. 381

1 Press Check the Action list.



The actions shown in the list differ depending on the type of character.

A number such as "1" or "#1" on the right of an action in the Action list indicates that pressing that key on the FOMA terminal's keypad during Chara-den playback will make the character perform that action.

■ To check the details of an action

Select the action and press  (detail) ▶ Check the details and press  (Exit).

2 Control the Chara-den character.

■ To change the Action mode

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  "Change action".

This command switches to Parts action mode when the  is displayed and to Whole action mode when the  is displayed.

 (Whole) :

An action mode in which the entire Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

 (Parts) :

An action mode in which the parts of the Chara-den character (head, hands, feet, etc.) move to express feelings.

■ To use the keypad to select actions during Chara-den playback

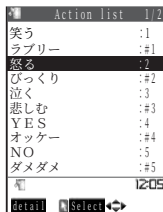
Pressing the keypad keys makes the displayed character perform actions as follows:

Whole action : Press the single-digit number (1-9) or hash-digit combination (1-9) - (1-9) shown on the right of the action in the action list.

Parts action : Press the double-digit number (1-9) - (1-9) shown on the right of the action in the action list.

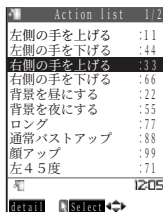
<Example: To select “怒る” (Anger) in Whole action mode>

* A Chara-den is displayed as a normal display.



Press 12.

<Example: To select “右側の手を上げる” (raise the character's right hand) in Parts action mode>



Press 11.

■ To have the character's mouth move in time to your voice



With some Chara-den characters, you can make the displayed character's mouth move as if it were saying the things you say when you talk into the phone.

If you use the function menu or press one of the keypad keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the selected character's action is given priority over the voice through the mouthpiece or mike.

Using the function menu in the Chara-den List display

In the Chara-den list display...

→ P. 380

1

Press (FUNC) Choose from the following options:

Chara-den list display function menu 1/2

1 Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number and press (CALL). Makes a video-phone call with the selected Chara-den character as the substitute image.
2 Substitute image	Sets the selected Chara-den as the substitute image for video-phone calls.
3 Rec. Chara-den	See “Saving a Chara-den character as an image or movie” → P. 384
4 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press (OK). Edits the selected Chara-den character title. The title can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” → P. 522

5 Chara-den info	See "About Chara-den information" → P. 384
6 Memory info	Displays the amount of Chara-den data saved and the amount of available space.
7 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press  . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135

Chara-den list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .				
2 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  . About Your Security Codes → P. 142				
3 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" → P. 407				
4 Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>1 Actual size (default setting)</td><td>Displays the image at its actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the image to the display size.</td></tr> </table>	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.				
2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.				
5 Reset title	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Resets a changed title to the one used when the movie was retrieved.				

Note

<Chara-den info>

- "Rec. file restriction" indicates whether or not restrictions apply when an image or movie of "Chara-den" is edited, exported to a miniSD memory card or attached to i-mode mail.

<Memory info>

- The displayed file size is intended only as an approximate guide.

<Delete this> <Delete all>

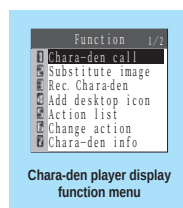
- If you try to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as the substitute image for video-phone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If you selected "YES" to delete the character, a pre-installed Chara-den character is sent.
- If you try to delete a Chara-den character that has been stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If you select "YES" to delete the character, and the character stored in the phonebook is released.

Using the function menu in the Chara-den Player display

In the Chara-den screen...

→ P. 381

- 1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Chara-den player display function menu 1/2

1 Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number and press  . Makes a video-phone call with the selected Chara-den character as the substitute image.
2 Substitute image	Sets the selected Chara-den as the substitute image for video-phone calls.
3 Rec. Chara-den	See "Saving a Chara-den character as an image or movie" → P. 384
4 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press  . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
5 Action list	Displays the Action list.
6 Change action	Changes the Action mode. → P. 381
7 Chara-den info	Displays information for the current Chara-den character. → P. 384

Chara-den player display function menu 2/2

① Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode.	
	① Actual size	Displays the image at its actual size.
	② Fit in display (default setting)	Enlarges the image to the display size.

About Chara-den information

You can check the following information.

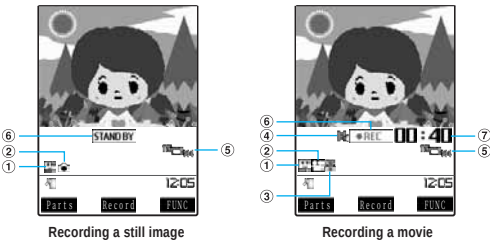
Item	Description
Default title	Displays the original title.
File name	Displays the file name.
Rec. file restriction	Displays "File restricted" or "File unrestricted" as the file restrictions that are applied after images are shot.
File restriction	Displays file restrictions "File restricted" or "File unrestricted".
Display size	Displays the file display size (width x height in dots).
File size	Displays the file size in kilobytes (KB).
Received from	Displays where the file was received from. Blank for preinstalled Chara-den.
Saved at	Displays the date (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) the file was saved at.
Substitute image	Displays substituted image settings. If nothing is set, "No setting" is displayed.

Note

● "Rec. file restriction" shows whether such operations as attaching the images and movies of Chara-den to mail, exporting to miniSD memory card or restricting the editing are possible.

Saving a Chara-den character as an image or movie <Rec. Chara-den>

■ Guide to the Record Chara-den display



- ① Shows the currently selected action mode.

Whole

Parts
- ② Shows the recording mode.

Photo mode

Movie mode
- ③ Shows the "Storage setting" setting.

Normal

Prefer image quality

Prefer time

Prefer motion speed
- ④ Shows the "Movie type set" setting.

Video+voice

Video
- ⑤ Shows the "Select size" setting.

176 × 144 (QCIF)

117 × 96
- ⑥ Shows the recording status.

STAND BY: Stand-by

REC: Recording
- ⑦ Shows the remaining recording time in the "min:sec" format (not shown until recording starts).

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Recording a still image

In the Chara-den player display function menu...

➔ P. 383

1 Press **[RE]** "Rec. Chara-den".
The "Record Chara-den display (Image)" appears.

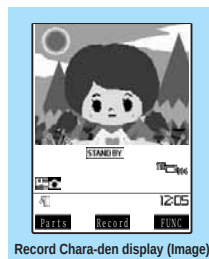
2 Perform an action ▶ Press **[OK]**.
For information on Chara-den actions → P. 381

■ **To switch to Parts action**

Press **[PARTS]** (Parts).

■ **To re-record the action**

Press **[CLR]**.



Record Chara-den display (Image)

3 Press **[OK]**.
The recorded still image is saved in the Camera folder in My picture.

Note

- When you shoot a Chara-den character, the call alert indicator does not light and the shooting tone is not emitted in the following situations:
 - When "Phone" in ring volume is set to "Silent"
 - When Manner mode or Super silent mode is set
 - When "Phone vol." in "Original" manner mode is set to "Silent"

Using the function menu in the Record Chara-den display

In the record Chara-den display (Image/Movie)...

➔ P. 385, 386

1 Press **[FUNC]** ▶ Choose from the following options:

Record Chara-den display function menu 1/2

[1] Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a Chara-den character and press [OK] . Changes the Chara-den character to be recorded.	
[2] Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den as the substitute image for video-phone calls.	
[3] Action list	Displays the Action list.	
[4] Change action	Changes the Action mode. → P. 381	
[5] Set image disp.	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image display mode.	
	[1] Actual size	Displays the image at its actual size.
	[2] Fit in display (default setting)	Enlarges the image to the display size.
[6] Movie mode*1	Changes the Photo mode (default) and Movie mode.	
[7] Select size*2	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the size of image to be recorded.	
	[1] QCIF (176 ×144) (default setting)	Sets 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
	[2] Small (117 ×96)	Sets 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.

*1 : If you have selected movie mode, "Photo mode" is displayed. The default setting is Photo mode.

*2 : Cannot be set in Movie mode.

Record Chara-den display function menu 2/2

① Movie type set*1	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets movie shooting mode.	
	① Video + voice (default setting)	Records movies with both images and sound.
	② Video	Records movies with images only.
② Storage setting*1	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the image quality and duration when movies are recorded.	
	① Normal (default setting)	Records movies in the standard image quality and duration.
	② Prefer img qual	Select this option to shoot movies with better image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	③ Prefer time	Select this option to shoot longer movies. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
	④ Prefer motion spd	Select this option to shoot images with smoother motion. Shooting may take shorter time than with the "Normal" setting.

*1 : Cannot be set in Photo mode.

Note

<Switch Chara-den>

- If you change the Chara-den character, the Action mode is set to Whole action.

Recording a movie

In the Chara-den player display function menu...

➡ P. 383

- 1 Press "Rec. Chara-den". ▶ Press (FUNC) ▶ Press "Movie mode".

The "Record Chara-den display (Movie)" appears.

- 2 Press ▶ Perform an action ▶ Press .

For information on Chara-den actions → P. 381

■ To check the recorded movie

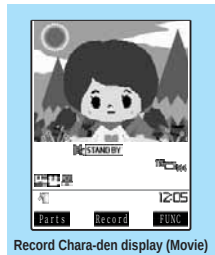
Press (FUNC) ▶ "Check w/ playing".

■ To re-record the movie

Press .

- 3 Press .

The recorded movie is saved in the Camera folder in i-motion.



Record Chara-den display (Movie)

Note

- If action operation is carried out during photography, the key pad sound may be recorded.
- The image format is only QCIF (176 × 144) and cannot be changed.
- The keypad sound is muted during shooting.
- When you shoot a Chara-den character, the call alert indicator does not flash and the shooting tone is not emitted in the following situations:
 - When "Phone" in ring volume is set to "Silent"
 - When Manner mode or Super silent mode is set
 - When "Phone vol." in "Original" manner mode is set to "Silent"
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, sound is recorded through the earphone/microphone.

Playing Melodies

Pre-installed melodies, sound effects and melodies downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites can be replayed with the Melody folder in the Data box.

● This FOMA terminal is equipped with 50 simultaneous tones and ADPCM compatible sound generator.

- 1** Press   .

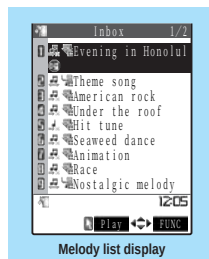
The "Folder list display" appears.



- 2** Select a folder and press .

The "Melody list display" appears.

For a guide to the Melody List display → P. 388

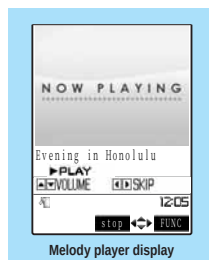


- 3** Select a melody and press .

The "Melody player display" appears and the melody starts playing.

Use  to play the next or previous melody.

For information on controls you can use while playing a melody → P. 388



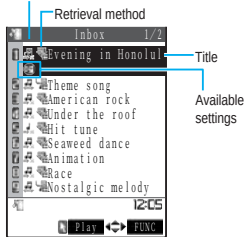
Note

- Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting. If "Silent" or "Step" is set, melodies are played at the Level 2 volume.
- If you try to play a melody when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select "YES" to play the melody.

Guide to the Melody List

- For information on the Data type, retrieval method and available setting icons → P. 341
- For information on titles and file names → P. 342

Data type



The display shows 9 melodies listed by title with icons that show the data types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each melody.

Note

- Melodies with  or  before the title are restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will play. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played. The entire melody can be played when selected from the Melody folder in the Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of these melodies.

Operations available while a melody is playing

You can perform the operations shown below while a melody is playing.

Control keys	Melody Player action
	Plays the previous or next melody.
 (V)(Home),  (P)(Memo/Check)	Adjusts the volume.
            	Stops playback.
	End

- If you change the volume and then press  or wait roughly 2 seconds, the Melody Player display reappears.
- If you change the volume while a melody is playing, the volume reverts to the level specified in "Ring volume" when you exit Melody Player.

Using the function menu in the Melody List display

The options available in the Melody List display function menu differ depending on the folder in which the melody is saved.

- Melody List display function menu for the Inbox and user-created folders → P. 388
- Melody List display function menu for the Pre-installed and Voice Announce folders → P. 390
- If a ring tone is set, the same ring tone is also set to "Select ring tone".

In the melody list display...

➔ P. 387

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

- Melody List display function menu for the Inbox and user-created folders

Melody list display function menu 1/2

① Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press  .	
	Edits the selected melody title. The title can contain up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” → P. 522	
② Edit file name	▶ Edit the file name and press  .	
	Edits the selected melody file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See “Entering Text” → P. 522	
③ Play melody	Plays the selected melody and displays the melody screen.	
④ Set as ring tone	▶ Select an option and press  .	
	Sets the selected melody as a ring tone.	
⑤ File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the file restrictions for the selected melody.	
	① File unrestricted	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	② File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
⑥ Add desktop icon	▶ Select “YES” and press  .	
	See “Using Desktop Icons” → P. 135	
⑦ Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the selected melody attached. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P. 247	

Melody list display function menu 2/2

① Send Ir data	▶ Select “YES” and press  .
② Melody info	See “About melody information” → P. 390
③ Memory info	Displays the amount of melody data saved and the amount of available space.
④ Reset title	▶ Select “YES” and press  .
	Resets a changed title to the one used when the movie was retrieved.
⑤ Delete	▶ Choose from the following options:
	Deletes melodies saved in the current folder.
① Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press  .
② Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () and press  ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press  .
③ Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select “YES” and press  .
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142
⑥ Sort	▶ Choose from the following options:
	Sorts melodies.
① Chronological ↑	Arranges melodies in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
② Chronological ↓	Arranges melodies in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
③ By title ↓	Arranges melodies in ascending order by title.
④ By title ↑	Arranges melodies in descending order by title.
⑤ By size ↑	Arranges melodies in descending order by size.
⑥ By size ↓	Arranges melodies in ascending order by size.
⑦ By source	Arranges melodies in order by retrieval method.
⑦ Move	▶ Select the folder to which the melody is to be moved and press  ▶ Use  to select a checkbox () and press  ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press  .
	Moves the selected melody to another folder.

Note

<Edit file name>

- You cannot edit the file names of melodies for which "File restricted" is set in "File restriction". However, you can edit a file name of which melody is received by using Infrared communication or OBEX.
- You can edit the file name except for the extension which is added automatically in accordance with the file type.

<Compose message>

- Melodies with  or  attached in front of those title cannot be sent as attachments regardless of the retrieval method and "File restriction" setting.
- You cannot attach melodies with a file size larger than 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>

- Even when "File unrestricted" is set for "File restriction" in melody information, you may not be able send it as an i-mode mail attachment.

<Memory info>

- The displayed file size is intended only as an approximate guide.

<Delete>

- If you try to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If you select "YES" to delete the melody.
- The ring tone or alarm in which the deleted melody was set reverts to default setting.

<Sort>

- If you exit a sorted Melody List display, the melodies are again listed in reverse chronological order the next time you view the Melody List display.
- Melodies are sorted in "By source" in the following order:
Melodies downloaded or acquired from i-α.ppl → Melodies acquired via infrared communication or from the miniSD memory card.

■ Melody List display function menu for Pre-installed and Voice announce folders

Melody list display function menu

1 Play melody	Plays the selected melody.
2 Set as ring tone	▶ Select an option and press  . Sets the selected melody as a ring tone.

Using the function menu in the Melody player display

In the melody player display... ➡ P. 387

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Melody player display function menu

1 Set as ring tone	▶ Select an option and press  . Sets the current melody as a ring tone.
2 Add desktop icon*1	▶ Select "YES" and press  . See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135
3 Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current melody attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247
4 Melody info*1	See "About melody information" → P. 390

*1 : Not displayed for the Pre-installed or Voice announce folder.

About melody information

The melody information shows the following:

Item	Information details
Default title	Shows the original melody title.
File name	Shows the file name.
File size	Shows the file size in kilobytes (KB).
File restriction	Shows whether "File restricted" or "File unrestricted".
File classification	Shows the melody file type ("MFI" or "SMF").
Transfer for Repair	Shows whether or not the melody file can be moved when a fault occurs. "Permitted" is displayed only for the downloaded melodies that are permitted to move.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

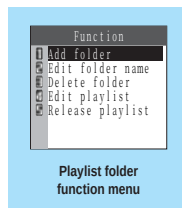
Item	Information details
Received from	Shows the source from which the file was received.
Preservation date	Shows the date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) at which the file was saved.
Vibrator linkage	Shows whether or not the melody is linked to the vibrator. ("ON" or "OFF")
Illumination linkage	Shows whether or not the melody is linked to the FOMA terminal's illumination settings. ("ON" or "OFF")
Ring tone set	Shows the ring tone for which the melody has been set. If nothing has been set for a ring tone, "No set" is displayed.

Using the function menu in the Playlist folder

In the folder list display...

➡ P. 387

- 1 Select the Playlist folder and press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Playlist folder function menu

1 Add folder	▶ Enter the Folder name and press  . Adds a folder. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Edit folder name	You cannot edit the name of the Playlist folder.
3 Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
4 Edit playlist	Starts playlist editing. You can use this option to edit existing playlists. See "Playing melodies in your preferred order" → P. 391
5 Release playlist	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Releases the playlist.

▶ Playing melodies in your preferred order <Play playlist>

In the playlist folder function menu...

➡ P. 391

- 1 Press   "Edit playlist" ▶ Select the number under which the melody is to be added and press  ▶ Select a folder and press  ▶ Select a melody and press  ▶ Repeat this procedure to set other melodies to the playlist.



■ To remove a set melody

Select the melody to be removed and press  ▶ Select "Release this" in the folder selection display and press .

- 2 Press  (Finish) ▶ Press .

The playlist starts to be played. The set melodies are played repeatedly.

Note

- If you change the title or file name of a melody that has been set to a playlist, the playlist is deselected.

About miniSD Memory Cards

The miniSD memory card is a further miniaturized version of the SD memory card that can be inserted into the FOMA terminal and used as external memory. By loading a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter, you can also use the card with a PC that supports miniSD memory cards.

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. The FOMA terminal compatible with the miniSD memory card up to 128 M bytes. (As of February, 2005)

- You can export data such as phonebook entries, mail, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card, or import data that has been saved on a miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, to overwrite existing data. Still images and movies stored on miniSD memory cards can also be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- When you load a miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal, the  icon appears on the display.
- When you are manipulating data on a miniSD memory card or importing or exporting data, the FOMA terminal's incoming call lamp flashes in green.
- The data exported to the miniSD memory card from other devices may not be displayed or played correctly with the FOMA terminal.
Also, the data exported to the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played correctly with other devices.
- For the latest information about the supported miniSD memory cards, visit the following sites:
i-mode: "iMenu" ▶ "メニューリスト" ▶ "ケータイ電話メーカー" ▶ "みんなNらんど"
For PC: NEC Mobile website (<http://www.n-keitai.com>)

Notes on handling miniSD memory cards

Always format miniSD memory cards on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal. → P. 402

Note the following precautions for handling miniSD memory cards:

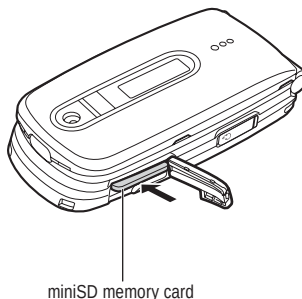
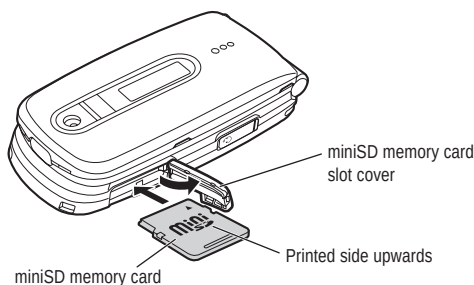
- Always ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing a miniSD memory card.

Inserting and removing a miniSD memory card

Insert the miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal's card slot.

● Inserting a miniSD memory card

Turn the FOMA terminal off before inserting the miniSD memory card.



1

Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.

2

Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place.

Insert the miniSD memory card slowly with the printed side upwards.
When fully inserted, the card will lock into place.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

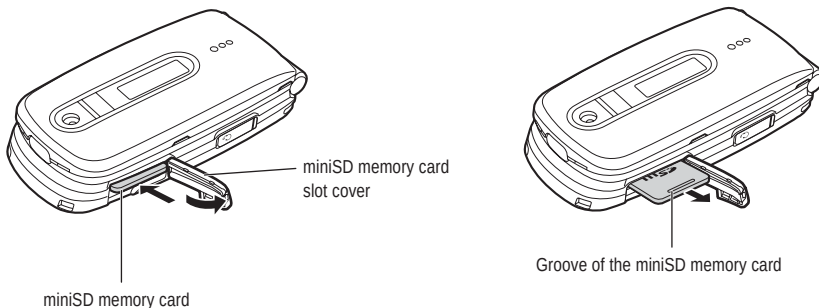
When you turn the FOMA terminal on after inserting the miniSD memory card, the  icon appears on the display.

Note

- If there is a problem with the miniSD memory card or it is incorrectly formatted, the  icon is displayed.

● Removing the miniSD memory card

Turn the FOMA terminal off before removing the miniSD memory card.



1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.

2 Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards.

When you push the miniSD memory card in and then release it, the card pops out slightly. Take care at this point that the card does not fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot.

Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out horizontally.

4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Note

- Do not insert or remove a miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. This could damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
- Note that the miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
- Check that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the miniSD memory card on an angle could damage the card).
- There may be a short delay to select or display data in miniSD memory card.

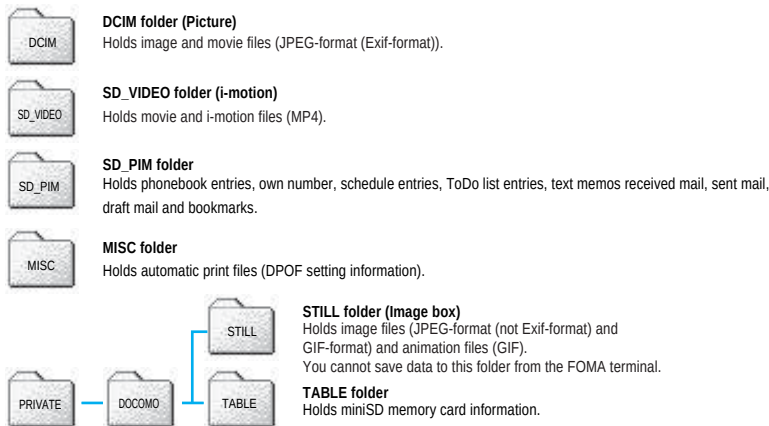
miniSD memory card folder configuration

The data that can be imported, exported and/or overwritten is as follows:

- Phonebook entries
- Schedule entries
- Received mail
- Still images with no restriction
- Own number display data
- ToDo list entries
- Draft mail
- Movies with no restriction
- Text memos
- Sent mail
- Bookmarks

Folder configuration as displayed on a PC

The structure of a miniSD memory card is as follows.



* Data cannot be copied to the "PRIVATE" or "DOCOMO" folders.

Note

- When you export still images from the FOMA terminal, they are automatically converted to the Exit format and saved in the DCIM folder. The saved images are compatible with "Exit Ver. 2.2" and with "PIM II (PRINT Image Matching II)".
- You cannot export a GIF-format image from your FOMA terminal. You can only save GIF-format images from a PC.
- The DCIM and STILL folders appear in My picture as the "Picture" and "Image box" folders respectively. → P. 344
- The STILL folder must be created on a PC. Once you create the STILL folder, the SD image folder is automatically created in the Image Box.
- The SD_VIDEO folder is equivalent to the i-motion of a FOMA terminal.
- On some PCs, folder names and file names may be displayed in lower case.
- When you edit a file on a PC and then save the file on a miniSD memory card using characters that differ from the folder and file names shown in "Created files" (P. 395), it may not be possible to display or play the file correctly on the FOMA N700i.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card or remove the miniSD memory card, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 408).
- If you use PC to create and edit a folder in the miniSD memory card, this may change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 408).
- Do not use a PC to delete or move folders on the miniSD memory card as this may prevent the FOMA N700i from reading data on the card.
- If you save data that is not supported by the FOMA N700i on a miniSD memory card, the FOMA N700i will be unable to recognize the data.
- You may not be able to display or play data on FOMA terminal that was saved on a miniSD memory card from another device.
- When purchasing a USB reader/writer or PC card reader adapter for miniSD memory cards, contact the respective manufacturer for information on miniSD memory card operation.
- The miniSD memory cards formatted on devices other than the FOMA N700i may not operate normally.

Created files

A file refers to one or several items of data stored together as a single item.

When you copy a file, the folder used to store the copied data is selected automatically based on the data type and the file and folder names are automatically assigned as the file is saved onto the miniSD memory card. The files stored in each folder are as shown below.

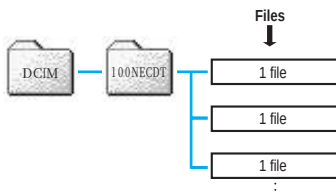
■ DCIM folder

This is a folder created automatically to which still images are stored when they are first exported to the miniSD memory card.

Each image is saved as a separate file.

The figure below shows how the created files and folders are named.

- Folder name: nnnNECDT (where nnn = 100-999)
- File name: NEC_mmmm (where mmmm = 0001-9999)



Note

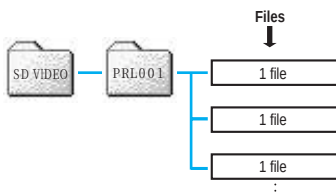
- When you use a PC to add folders in the DCIM folder, replace the "nnn" in the folder name with a 3-digit half-pitch number between 100 and 999. The "NECDT" portion can be replaced by any half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
- When you save a file, replace the "mmmm" in the file name with a 4-digit half-pitch number between 0001 and 9999. The "NEC" portion can be replaced by any half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

■ SD_VIDEO folder

This is a folder created automatically to store movies when they are first exported to the miniSD memory card. Files are stored in the "PRL001" folder inside the SD_VIDEO folder. Each movie is saved as a separate file.

The figure below shows how the created files and folders are named.

- Folder name: PRLxxx (where xxx = 001-FFF (hexadecimal notation))
- File name: MOLxxx (where xxx = 001-FFF (hexadecimal notation))



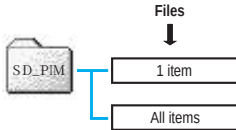
Note

- When you use a PC to add folders in the SD_VIDEO folder or save files, replace the "xxx" in the folder or file name with a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF using half-pitch numbers between 0 and 9 and half-pitch characters between A and F. Leave "PRL" in the folder name and "MOL" in the file name unchanged.
- The FOMA terminal will only play movies that are MP4 files with the "3GP", "SDV" or "MP4" file extension, or ASF files with the "ASF" extension.

■ SD_PIM folder

This is a folder created automatically when data is first exported to the miniSD memory card. Whether 1 item of data is exported or all the data are exported, the data is saved as 1 file. For example, when you export all the received mail, the created file contains all the items of received mail. File names are created as follows:

- File name: PIMnnnnn (nnnnn=00001-65535)
- Titles are created as follows:
- For 1 item:Assigned automatically
- For multiple items:Automatically assigned by “yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm” (Year/Month/date time)



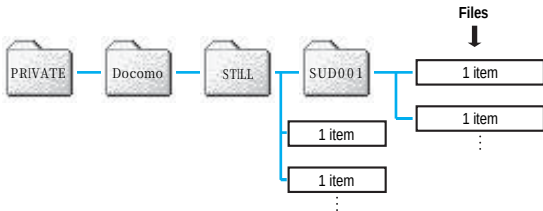
Note

- When you save phonebook, schedule, ToDo, mail, text memo or bookmark files that have been edited on a PC in the SD_PIM folder, replace “nnnnn” in the file name with a 5-digit half-pitch number between 00001 and 65535. Leave the “PIM” portion unchanged.
- The file format are as follows:
 - VCF: Phonebook file (vCard file)
 - VCS: Schedule, ToDo files (vCalendar file)
 - VMG: Mail file (vMessage file)
 - VNT: Text memo file (vNote file)
 - VBM: Bookmark file (vBookmark file)

■ STILL folder

To save images, first create the STILL folder. When you save the file or folder from a PC, give the following file names and a folder name.

- Folder name: SUDkkk(kkk=001~999)
- File name: STILhhhh(hhhh=0001~9999)



Note

- When you use a PC to add folders in the STILL folder, replace the “kkk” in the folder name with a 3-digit half-pitch number between 001 and 999. Leave the “SUD” portion unchanged.
- When you save a file, replace the “hhhh” in the file name with a 4-digit half-pitch number between 0001 and 9999. Leave the “STIL” portion unchanged.

Number of items that can be stored on a miniSD memory card

The number of items that can be stored on a miniSD memory card varies depending on the capacity of the miniSD memory card used. The table below shows the maximum number of files that can be saved and the maximum number of folders that can be created in each folder. Adding folders so that files can be exported to different locations allows larger numbers of files to be saved. However, depending on the size of the files, it may not be possible to save the maximum number of files shown here.

Folder name	Max. No. of folders	Max. files saved per folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

To check the amount of available memory of a miniSD memory card and the amount of saved data on the card, see "Using the function menu in the Categories display" (P. 403). Note that total of the displayed amounts of available space and saved data will be less than the capacity stated on the miniSD memory card itself.

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card when you attempt to export phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, text memos, mail or bookmarks, a message appears saying that data cannot be transferred due to lack of space. In the case of still images and movies, "Export" on the function menu is grayed out. When this occurs, insert another miniSD memory card or delete some unwanted data on the card and copy the data again.
- When you reach the limit on the number of files in the folders to which the files are to be exported, the following occurs:
 - If you are exporting still images, movies or i-motion, a new folder is automatically created and the files are saved in that folder.
 - If you are exporting data such as phonebook entries to SD_PIM, a message appears saying that the limit has been reached and no further data can be exported to the miniSD memory card.
- Once a miniSD memory card is full, you cannot perform tasks such as adding more folders for still images or movies, editing titles or copying or moving files. Delete some unwanted data and then try again.

Exporting and importing data

You can export (copy) the data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card and import (copy) data from a miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. You can also overwrite data on the FOMA terminal with data from a miniSD memory card.

■ Importing/Exporting still images and movies

	Details	Ref. page
Export	Saves an individual selected still image and movie in the DCIM or SD_VIDEO folder on the miniSD memory card.	P. 358, 375
Import	Saves an individual selected image or movie stored on the miniSD memory card in the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.	P. 359, 375

■ Importing/Exporting phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, mail, text memos and bookmarks

	Details	Ref. page
Export this	Saves an individual selected data entry in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card.	P. 399
Export all	Saves all the data in the selected category in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card.	P. 399
Import & add one	Adds 1 data entry stored in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.	P. 401
Import & add all, Import & add	Adds all the data in a file stored in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.	P. 401
Import & OW all, Import & overwrite	Deletes data on the FOMA terminal and overwrites all the data in a file stored in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.	P. 401

Note

- Depending on the number of data entries, exporting/importing may take some time.

Imported/Exported data

Still image and movie files

Function	Format	Data
My picture	JPEG, GIF	Data in the Inbox, Camera, miniSD and User-created folders (import only for GIF file).
i-motion	MP4	Data in the Inbox, Camera, miniSD and User-created folders.

Phonebook entries

No. of entries		Data
All items	1 item	Name, Reading, Phone number, E-mail address, Secret attribute, Group number, Group name, Memo, Street address, Birthday, Still image.
		Transfers the memory dial number in addition to the above items.

- The secret attribute is assigned to items stored in Secret mode.

Note

- If you select "Export this" for secret data, the data is transferred without the secret attribute.
- "Export all" also exports the "Own number" data as a phonebook entry.

Own number display data

Display mode	Data
Before Display all data	Name, Reading, Own number and the first stored e-mail address
After Display all data	Transfers the data for "Before Display all data" with the 2nd to 4th stored phone numbers, the 2nd and 3rd stored e-mail addresses, street address, birthday, memo and picture.

Schedule entries

No. of entries		Data
All items	1 item	Start date/time, End date/time, Summary, Content, Secret attribute, Type, Alarm setting, Repetition setting
		Same as for 1 item

- The secret attribute is assigned to items stored in Secret mode.
- Type is an icon arranged along with the schedule content.

Note

- If you select "Export this" for secret data, the data is transferred without the secret attribute.
- When schedule that has been set as the user icon is exported, the data is transferred with the "Type" information set to "OFF".

ToDo list entries

No. of entries		Data
All items	1 item	Content, Type, Ending date, Expiry, Status, Precedence, Alarm setting
		Same as for 1 item

- The information of which category that has been set in ToDo is transferred to "Type".

Text memos

No. of entries		Data
All items	1 item	Creation date/time, Last edited date/time, Type, Content
		Same as for 1 item

Received mail, sent mail, draft mail and SMS

No. of entries		Data
All items	1 item	Read/unread, Message type, Message box, Sender, Title, Send/receive date/time, Message, attachments.
		When all the received and sent mail is exported, the data for 1 item plus the folder (folder name) is sent.

- When 1 message is imported or exported, the protection for received and sent mail is removed.
- When exported mail is mail that includes an i-α ppli start specification, or mail that includes an attached or pasted melody for which the file restriction setting is "File restricted" (excluding files sent via infrared communication or OBEX and files imported from a miniSD memory card), the melody or i-α ppli start specification is removed when the data is exported.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Bookmarks

No. of entries		Data
All items	1 item	URL and title
		When all the bookmarks are exported, the data for 1 item plus the folder (folder name) is sent.

Exporting FOMA Terminal Data to a miniSD Memory Card

Use the procedures described here to export data (1 or all) stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card. The method of exporting the data registered into the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card has "Export one" and "Export all".

- For information on exporting a still image or a movie, see P. 358, 375.
- Still images and movies data can not be exported by using "Export all".

■ To export the FOMA terminal one data

Select "Export" or "Export this" from a function menu on the list display or detailed display of data to export.

<Example: export one in the phonebook entry>

See "[Export this]" in the phonebook list display function menu in "Using the function menu in the phonebook list display" ➡ P. 100

■ To export the FOMA terminal all data

See "[Export]" in the phonebook list display function menu in "Using the function menu in the Categories display" ➡ P. 403

Note

- If you export mail including an i-α.ppli start specification, the i-α.ppli launch information in the mail is deleted.
- When 1 data entry that was stored as secret data is exported, secret is canceled and the data is saved.
- When all the data entries are exported, data stored as secret data is also copied.
- When all the phonebook data entries are exported, the "Own number" data is also saved.
- When mail is exported, some types of attached file may be deleted.
- During exporting, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "Out of service", so you cannot make or receive calls, use i-mode or use data communication.

<SD-PIM>

Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card

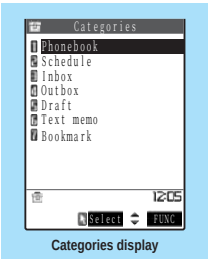
Use this function to display the data stored on a miniSD memory card for checking.

- For information on previewing images and movies, see P. 343, 365.

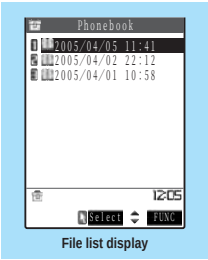
- 1

Press  Select  and press  Press 
- Press  "SD-PIM".

The "Categories display" appears.



2 Select an item and press .
The "File list display" appears.



3 Select a file and press .
The "Data list display" appears.



4 Select a data entry and press .
The "Data detail display" appears.



Note

- You cannot view files stored on the miniSD memory card while "PIM lock" is set. Also, you cannot export from another function.
- Display of Deco-mails in miniSD memory card may differ from those on the FOMA terminal.

Using the function menu in the File List display

In the file list display... ➔ P. 400

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

File list display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press . Edits the selected file title. The title can contain up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Import & add	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press . Imports and adds the data stored in the selected file to the FOMA terminal. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
3 Import&overwrite	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press . Uses the data stored in the selected file to import & overwrite the corresponding data in the FOMA terminal. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

4 Export	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Exports all the data entries for the selected item from the FOMA terminal. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
5 Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deletes the selected file.
6 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deletes all the files saved for the selected item. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
7 miniSD info	Displays the amount of available memory and the amount of memory saved on the miniSD memory card.

Note

<Delete this> <Delete all>

● If “read only” is set on the PC, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the file.

Using the function menu in the Data List display

In the data list display...

➔ P. 400

1 Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Data list display function menu

1 Import & add one	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Imports and adds the selected data entry to the FOMA terminal.
2 Import & add all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Imports and adds all the data entries to the FOMA terminal. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
3 Import & OW all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Uses all the data entries to import & overwrite the corresponding entries on the FOMA terminal. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
4 miniSD info	Displays the amount of available memory and the amount of memory saved on the miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the Data Detail display

In the data detail display...

➔ P. 400

1 Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Data detail display function menu

1 Import & add one	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Imports and adds the current data entry to the FOMA terminal.
2 miniSD info	Displays the amount of memory used and the amount of available memory on the miniSD memory card.

Importing miniSD Memory Card Data to the FOMA Terminal

Use these procedures to import (copy) data stored on a miniSD memory card and use it to add to or overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal.

The “Import & add” options consist of “Import & add”, which adds all the data entries in a file, “Import & add one”, which adds only the selected data entry, and “Import & add all”, which adds all the data entries.

The “Import & overwrite” options consist of “Import & OW all” and “Import & overwrite”, which replace the existing data with all the entries in a file.

● You cannot import all the image or movie files.

■ To add the saved data to 1 file

See “ Import & add” in the File List display Function menu in “Using the function menu in the File List display”
➔ P. 400.

■ To add a selected data entry

See “ Import & add one” in the Data List display Function menu in “Using the function menu in the Data List display” ➔ P. 401.

See “ Import & add one” in the Data Detail display Function menu in “Using the function menu in the Data Detail display” ➔ P. 401.

■ To add all the data in a file

See “ Import & add all” in the Data List display Function menu in “Using the function menu in the Data List display” ➔ P. 401.

■ To overwrite the existing data with all the data entries in a file

See “ Import&overwrite” in the File List display Function menu in “Using the function menu in the File List display”
➔ P. 400.

See “ Import & OW all” in the Data List display Function menu in “Using the function menu in the Data List display” ➔ P. 401.

Note

- “Import&Overwrite” and “Import & OW all” replace the imported data with the FOMA terminal data. Please check that important data is not registered before overwriting.
- If the FOMA terminal runs out of memory during card reading, data importing is interrupted. The data imported so far is stored.
- When “Import & add all” or “Import & add” is used and the group numbers and group names stored on the miniSD memory card do not match those stored on the FOMA terminal, the phonebook is added to group 00.
- If you import 1 item of received mail when the Inbox is full, the oldest item of read and unprotected mail is overwritten.
- If you import 1 item of sent mail when the Outbox is full, the oldest item of unprotected mail is overwritten.
- When you import a large file (an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes) that is attached to incoming or outgoing mail, the large file is stored in the Data box and linked to the mail. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- When you use “Import & add all”, the following data is not imported:
 - Schedules in which alarm time and Repeat setting is the same.
 - Bookmarks with the same URL as existing bookmarks
- You cannot use “Import & add” of the Phonebook “Import&overwrite” or “Import & OW all” when “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.
- When there is a large number of files saved on the miniSD memory card, reading and writing the data may take some time.
- During importing, the FOMA terminal status is effectively “out of area”, so you cannot make or receive calls, use i-mode or use data communication (Except when importing still images or movies).

Managing miniSD Memory Cards

Use these functions for miniSD memory card management tasks such as formatting.

Formatting a miniSD memory card

Always format miniSD memory cards on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting a miniSD memory card erases all the data stored on the card. Check that no important data will be lost before formatting a miniSD memory card.
- A miniSD memory card cannot be formatted if it is write-protected or faulty.

See “ miniSD format” in Categories display function menu in “Using the function menu in the Categories display”
➔ P. 403

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. ➔ P. 392

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during formatting as this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- Data saved onto a miniSD memory card when card formatting was interrupted is not guaranteed.
- The call alert indicator flashes green during formatting.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call or press the (Stop) or key during formatting, formatting is cancelled and is displayed. When this happens, format the miniSD memory card again.

Using the function menu in the Categories display

In the categories display...

➔ P. 399

1

Use to select a data entry and press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Categories display function menu

1 miniSD info	Displays the amount of available memory and the amount of memory saved on the miniSD memory card.
2 Export	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● . Exports all the data entries for the selected item to the miniSD memory card. About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142
3 miniSD format	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● . Formats the miniSD memory card. About Your Security Codes ➔ P. 142
4 Check miniSD	▶ Select "YES" and press ● . Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking may allow problems on the miniSD memory card to be corrected.

Note

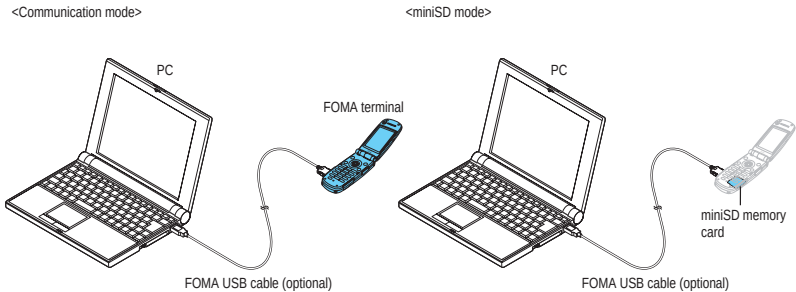
<Check miniSD>

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during checking as this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- If you use "Check miniSD" on a miniSD memory card, depending on the card status, you may not be able to recover the data on the card correctly, data on the card before checking may be deleted, or the entire card may be initialized.
- The call alert indicator flashes in green during checking.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call or press the (Stop) or key during miniSD memory card checking, miniSD memory card checking is cancelled and appears. In this case, try checking again.
- If miniSD memory card checking is interrupted, some of the data being recovered may remain. If this occurs, run "Check miniSD" again.
- Depending on the amount of data stored on the miniSD memory card, the "Check miniSD" operation may take some time.
- It may not be possible to recover data on some miniSD memory cards.

Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Reader/Writer

You can read or write the data on a miniSD memory card by connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC with miniSD memory card inserted to the terminal.

USB mode setting	Details
Communication mode	In this mode, the external connection terminal is used for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange (OBEX).
miniSD mode	In this mode, the external connection terminal is used for reading and writing data on an miniSD memory card. You cannot import or export data between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, display data in memory or format the miniSD memory card.



● The equipment listed below is required to use the FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer.

Item	Description
Connection cable	FOMA USB cable (optional)
PC	PC equipped with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus specification rev. 1.1-compliant) that supports the FOMA USB cable (optional)
Supported software	Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)

Important

- Take great care to ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. A faulty connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Ensure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and that there is a stable power supply to the PC.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB cable (optional) while the call alert indicator/charging lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being copied between the PC and FOMA terminal. Disconnecting the cable could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.

Using the FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer

Default setting	Communication mode

1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press “Other settings” ► Select “USB mode setting” and press ► Press “miniSD mode”.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB cable.

The and icons are displayed when the miniSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB cable is connected during miniSD mode. The miniSD memory card appears in the “My Computer” window on the PC as an external storage device. The miniSD memory card is not recognized by the PC as a reader/writer while data is being transferred between the miniSD memory card and the FOMA terminal. For information on attaching the FOMA terminal to a PC → P. 475

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

■ To cancel “miniSD mode”

Disconnect the FOMA USB cable and then change the mode to “Communication mode”.
For information on attaching the FOMA terminal to a PC → P. 475

Note

- You cannot set this function while data is being exchanged between the PC and the miniSD memory card. (“Reset” also does not reset the settings.)
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the PC while data is being exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the card.
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being exchanged between the PC and the card.

Working With Folders and Files

Use these procedures to add folders to the My picture, i-motion and Melody List displays for use in organizing the respective files. You can also use these procedures to add folders to the My picture and i-motion miniSD Folder List displays.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

“Using the function menu in the Folder List display” ➔ P. 405

Using the function menu in the Folder List display

- For information on the function menu when the Playlist folder of the i-motion or Melody folder is selected, see P. 343, 365, 387.

<Example: Adding a folder to My picture>

In the folder list display...

➔ P. 374, 387

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Example: Folder list display (My picture) function menu

1 Add folder	▶ Enter the folder name and press . Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. You can also assign the same name as an existing folder. The folder cannot be added if the folder name is left entirely blank. See “Entering Text” → P. 522
2 Edit folder name	▶ Edit the folder name and press . Edits the name of the added folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” → P. 522
3 Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select “YES” and press . You can also delete a folder that still contains data. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
4 Delete all image* ¹	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select “YES” and press . Deletes all images saved by the user and all pre-installed original animations. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

*1 : Not shown in the i-motion and Melody List displays.

Note

<Edit folder name>

- You can only edit folder names for user-created folders.

<Delete folder> <Delete all images>

- You can only delete user-created folders.

- If you try to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all image" to delete an image or movie that has been set in a display or original animation or set as a user icon in a schedule, or if you try to use "Delete folder" to delete a melody that has been set in a ring tone, playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:

- Displays in which the deleted item was set revert to their default settings.
- Original animations and playlists are deselected.
- When a random melody has been set as a ring tone, the ring tone reverts to the default setting.
- User icons in schedules revert to .

- If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

- If you delete a movie that is attached to mail, the movie attached to the mail is also deleted.

Using the function menu in the miniSD Folder List display

In the miniSD folder list display...

➡ P. 344

1

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



miniSD folder list display function menu

1 Edit folder name*1	▶ Edit the title and press  . Edits the folder title. The folder title can contain up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
2 Create folder*1	▶ Enter the title and press  . Creates a folder. A folder name can contain up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. The same folder names as existing files can be named Not entering any characters as a folder name, the folder cannot be added. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
3 Delete folder	Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  . About Your Security Codes → P. 142
4 Select storage*1	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Sets the folder in which the data will be saved. See "Specifying the save destination folder on the miniSD memory card" → P. 408

*1 : No folder is displayed for the Image Box.

Note

<Create folder>

- You cannot create a folder within a folder in the "Image Box". However, folders can be created on a PC.
- You cannot create folders when there are already 900 folders in "Picture" on the miniSD memory card, 999 folders in "Image box", or 4095 folders in "i-motion".

<Delete folder>

- If you attempt to delete the following types of folder, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the folder:

- Folders set to "readonly"
- Folders set as a save destination
- Folders containing read only files
- Folders containing files

- If you delete a folder that has been set as a save destination, the folder created most recently on the FOMA terminal becomes the new save destination.

Selecting multiple data items

This procedure allows you to delete multiple selected images or movies at once or to copy the images or movies to another folder within the same function. You can also use this procedure to copy images and movies stored on a miniSD memory card to another folder or to specify the print settings for images.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu...

➡ P. 345

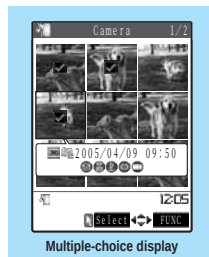
1 Press ► Press ► Press "Multiple-choice".

The "Multiple-choice display" appears.

2 Select an image and press ► Repeat the procedure to select images.

See "Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice display" → P. 407

See "Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice (miniSD memory card) display" → P. 407



Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice display

In the multiple-choice display...

➡ P. 407

1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Multiple-choice display function menu

1 Title name*1*2	Switches between "Picture" and "Title name".
2 Delete	► Select "YES" and press . Deletes the selected images.
3 Move*2	► Select the folder to which the images are to be moved and press . Moves the selected images to another folder.
4 Select all*2	Selects all the images.
5 Release all*2	Deselects all the images.

*1 : If you have selected "Title name", "Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

*2 : No folder is displayed for the Chara-den.

Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice (miniSD memory card) display

In the multiple-choice display...

➡ P. 407

1 Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Multiple-choice display (miniSD memory card) function menu

1 Title name*1	Switches between "Picture" and "Title name".
2 Delete	► Select "YES" and press . Deletes the selected images.
3 DPOF setting	► Choose from the following options: Specifies the print settings for the selected images.
1 Print	► Enter a 2-digit number and press . Sets the number of copies (0 to 99) of the selected images that will be printed.
2 Print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for the selected images.
3 All print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.

4 Copy	▶ Select the copy destination folder and press . Copies the selected images to another folder.
5 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the images are to be moved and press . Moves the selected images to another folder.
6 Release all	Deselects all the images.

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, " Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "picture".

Note

<DPOF setting>

- You can specify DPOF settings up to 999 items.
- You cannot specify DPOF settings for images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or have a file size greater than 600 KB.
- DPOF settings specified on a PC are ignored except for the number of prints specification.
- You may be unable to specify DPOF settings if there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You can check the number of set prints on the image list screen in the miniSD memory card (Picture), or in "Image info" on the My picture display function menu.

Specifying the save destination folder on the miniSD memory card

Default setting	Most recently created folder

Use this procedure to specify the folder to which images and movies are saved on an miniSD memory card. You can specify any of the folders in "miniSD" in either My picture or i-motion respectively.

- The  icon is displayed for the save destination folder.
- Images and movies exported to the miniSD memory card are also stored in the respective save destination folders.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, remove or insert the miniSD memory card, format the miniSD memory card or use "Check miniSD", the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder.

The function menu in the miniSD folder list display... ➡ P. 406

1 Press   "Select storage" ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Note

- You cannot select a folder in "Image box" as the save destination folder.
- Using PC to create and edit a folder in the miniSD memory card changes the destination folder to be saved.

When there is insufficient memory or too many stored items

If there is insufficient available memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full when you try to save still images shot on the FOMA terminal or save an image, melody, i-motion or "Chara-den" character from an i-mode site or Internet website, a confirmation message appears asking whether unnecessary data should be deleted to allow the new data to be saved.

1 Select "YES" in the confirmation message and press .

■ To delete and not save data
Select "NO" and press .

2 Press  and select multiple items of data to be deleted.

For information on selecting multiple items → P. 34

3 Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press .

The  (Finish) option is not available until there is sufficient memory available to store the data.

Note

- When you attempt to delete an image that has been set in a display or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the image or melody used in the setting. If you select "YES" to delete the image or melody, the corresponding display or ring tone reverts to its default setting.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting

ON

When you are exporting phonebook data to a miniSD memory card or using the Infrared Communication function or data exchange (OBEX) to transmit phonebook data, you can use this setting to prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent.

- 1 Press **(menu)** ▶ Select **Tools** and press **(OK)** ▶ Press **(F2)** ▶ Press **3 DEF** "Forwarding image" ▶ Select **1 ON** "ON" or **2 OFF** "OFF".

<Infrared communication function>

About Infrared Communication

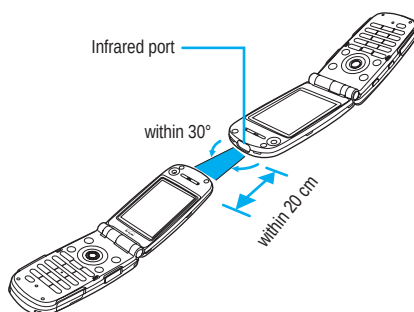
The Infrared Communication function allows your FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received mail with other FOMA terminals and PCs equipped with infrared communication functions.

- Pictographs and special characters entered in mail messages or in phonebook entries can also be correctly sent and received.
- Using Infrared communication devices other than FOMA N700i, data may not be correctly sent and received.
Also, half-pitch Katakana characters, pictographs and some full-pitch characters may not be displayed correctly in the receiving end.

When using infrared communication

Follow the precautions listed below when you use infrared communication.

- Set the receiving FOMA terminal ready to receive and position it no more than 20 cm from the sending FOMA terminal.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared ports are aligned on the same level.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals until data exchange is complete.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed in direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.



You cannot use infrared communications nor store data in the following situations.

- The infrared communication function used in the FOMA terminal conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard and may not be able to successfully exchange data with phones that do not comply with IrMC1.1. Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data with even where the other phone is IrMC1.1-compliant.
- All data cannot be sent and received while "All lock", "PIM lock" or Self mode is set.
- You cannot exchange FOMA card (UIM) phonebook data or SMS.
- Infrared communication is interrupted when any of the following occurs and a message appears asking whether to continue:
 - The receiving FOMA terminal does not receive any data within roughly 30 seconds.
 - The receiving FOMA terminal cannot be detected by the sending FOMA terminal.If you select "YES", the FOMA terminal tries to initiate infrared communication once more. To cancel infrared communication, select "NO". In this situation, if none of the FOMA terminal's key are pressed within 30 seconds, infrared communication is automatically cancelled.

- In the following situations, a message appears saying that a received data entry could not be stored:
 - When bookmarks with the same URL are received
 - When a melody larger than 100 KB is received
 - When an image larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high is received
 - When a GIF-format image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high is received
 - When a progressive JPEG-format image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high is received
Progressive JPEG-format image → P. 221
 - When a still image larger than 600 KB* is received
 - * In some cases, the images is less than 600 KB.
 - When a still image in a format other than JPEG-format or GIF-format is received
 - When a movie or i-motion larger than 800 KB is received
 - When a movie in a format other than MP4 is received
 - When a received schedule entry has the same date/time and the same repeat setting (ON or OFF) as an existing entry
 - When a schedule or ToDo list entry is received and the date and time have not been set
 - When you receive a large file (an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes) that is attached to incoming or outgoing mail, the large file is linked to the mail stored in the data box. If there is no further storage space available in the data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.

The following operations cannot be performed during infrared communication:

- Even when the signal level icon is displayed, other types of communication are not possible during infrared communication ( displayed).
- The Infrared Communication function cannot be used during a voice or video-phone call, using i-mode, or packet or 64K data communication. → P. 556
- The FOMA terminal is effectively outside the i-mode service area during infrared communication and cannot be used for voice or video-phone calls, i-mode communication, i-mode mail or packet communication.

Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries

The Infrared Communication function can be used to exchange individual data entries with other FOMA terminals.

● The types of data that can be exchanged are as follows:

- Phonebook entries
- ToDo list entries
- Draft mail
- Melodies with no file restrictions
- Images with no file restrictions
- Personal data for own number
- Sent mail
- Text memos
- Still images
- i-motion with no file restrictions
- Schedule entries
- Received mail
- Bookmarks
- Movies

Note

- Images and movies received using infrared communication are saved in the Inbox folder in My picture and i-motion respectively.
- You can send and receive still images and movies whose titles have up to 9 full-pitch and 18half-pitch characters.
- You can send and receive melodies whose titles have up to 25 full-pitch and 50 half-pitch characters.
- If the file is too big to be stored, a warning message is displayed and sending (or receiving) may fail.
- During infrared communication, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "out of area", so if you receive a call, the call is rejected and the caller sees a message saying, "Out of range or turned off". If you have activated Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding service, the call is transferred to the Voice Mail Center or forwarded to the forwarding number.
- Depending on the file size, data transfer may take some time. In some cases, you may be unable to receive the file.
- You may be unable to use infrared communication while the FOMA USB cable (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.

Phonebook entries that can be received

- Name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, street address, memo, birthday, still images and icon information
- Received "Own number" data is stored as a phonebook entry.

Receiving single phonebook entries

- Received phonebook entries are stored under the lowest available memory numbers between "010" and "699". If data is already stored for all the numbers between "010" and "699", the entries are stored in the lowest available memory numbers between "000" and "009" (used for two-touch dialing) (P. 110).
- When phonebook entries are received, if there are already 700 stored names, phone numbers or e-mail addresses, or if the number will exceed 700 when the data is received, a message appears saying that the data cannot be stored.
- Where a phonebook entry includes multiple stored phone numbers and/or e-mail addresses, all the data is exchanged.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- "Own number" data can be sent when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be received when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- Phonebook entries that were stored as Secret data in "Secret mode" (P. 148) or "Secret only mode" (P. 149) are exchanged with the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" attribute removed.
- The phonebook secret code is not exchanged.

When infrared communication takes a long time

- The exchange of phonebook entries, because it can include the transfer of stored still images, may take some time. To shorten the data transfer time, select "OFF" in the "Forwarding image" setting (P. 409) to prevent the transfer of still images stored in the phonebook.

Sending individual data entries <Send Ir data>

Select "Send Ir data" from the function menu on the details screen or list screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Sending an individual phonebook entry>

1

Displays the detail phonebook.

See "Viewing the search results" → P. 98

2 Press (FUNC) ▶ Press ▶ Press “Send Ir data”.

3 The infrared port is turned to the other party and select “YES” and press .

Set the other party's terminal to a receiving state.

Start the sending Ir data.

The message which notifies a communication end is displayed after transmitting.

■ **To cancel the transmission**

Press “NO” and press .

■ **To interrupt a sending**

Press (Quit).

Note

- If the sent/received mail protected is transmitted, in a reception side, protection is canceled and the data is saved.
- The mail with the i-α.ppl start specification is sent after deleting the attached data.
- If the file attached to mail has “File restricted” set in the file restriction setting, the file is removed when the mail is sent. Depending on the file format, some attached image files may also be removed when mail is sent. However, in the case of sent mail and draft mail, if the attached image is a photo (still image) or movie shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera, a file received using OBEX or a file imported from a miniSD memory card, it can be sent even when “File restricted” is set in the file restriction setting.
- If “File restricted” is set in the file restriction setting, the image, movie, i-motion, and melody files cannot be sent. However, the image or movie shot with the built-in camera, the data imported from the miniSD memory card, and the data received by using OBEX will be transmitted even if the “File restricted” is set in the file restriction setting.

Receiving individual data entries <Receive Ir data>

1 Press .

The “Received Ir data display” appears.

2 Press “Receive”.

3 An infrared port is turned to an other party and receive the data from an other party's FOMA terminal.

Start the receiving Ir data.

If the other party is not a FOMA terminal, the communication level bar may not be displayed.

■ **To interrupt receiving**

Press (Quit).

4 Select “YES” and press .

The message which notifies a communication end is displayed after saving the received data.

After reception, if not operating it for about 30 seconds, the received data is canceled.

■ **To do not register the received data**

Press “NO” and press .



Note

- After infrared communication ends, the icon continues to be displayed for a short time.
- If the Inbox folder is full, mail in the Trash box folder is deleted so that data can be stored in the Inbox folder. If the received mail is larger than the available space, received mail that is unprotected and has been read is overwritten, starting with the oldest message.
- Sent mail overwrites unprotected mail in the Outbox folder, starting with the oldest messages.
- Received Bookmarks are saved in “Bookmark” folder.
- Single data entries can also be received using “Receive all”. Use the same procedure as for receiving all the entries.

Sending and Receiving All Entries

The Infrared Communication function can be used to exchange all the data entries of a particular type with other FOMA terminals.

● The types of data that can be exchanged are as follows:

- Phonebook entries
- "Own number" data
- Schedule entries
- ToDo list entries
- Sent mail
- Received mail
- Draft mail
- Text memos
- Bookmarks

Be sure to read the following before using "Transfer all".

■ About Transfer all

- When you transfer all the data entries of a particular type, the received data overwrites the existing entries, including any stored protected mail and entries stored as secret data. Check for any important stored data before accepting all the data entries.

■ "Phonebook" data and "Transfer all"

- Phonebook data is sent and received sequentially by memory number.
- Transferred phonebook data consists of the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, street address, memo, birthday, still images, group names and icon information.
- The sender's "Own number" data is all transferred except for the phone number itself and overwrites the data on the receiving FOMA terminal. Because the recipient's e-mail address is also overwritten, he or she should change the e-mail address after the transfer.
- When a phonebook entry includes multiple stored phone numbers or e-mail addresses, all the data is transferred.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also received as secret data.
- The phonebook secret code is not transferred.

Note

- A bar indicator showing the approximate data transfer progress provides a guide to the number of items transferred. Depending on the size of the files being transferred, the progress of the bar indicator may slow even when data is being transferred normally and may differ from the bar shown on the sender's FOMA terminal.

Authentication password

When "Transfer all" is used, an authentication password is used to ensure that the sending and receiving FOMA terminals recognize each other correctly. Before sending or receiving begins, the sending and receiving parties should agree on an 4-digit number as the authentication password and then both enter the same number.

Sending all data entries <Send all Ir data>

Select "Send all Ir data" from the function menu on the details screen or list screen of all the data you want to send.

<Example: Sending all the phonebook entries>

1

Display the Phonebook List display.

For information on searching the phonebook → P. 98

2

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  "Send all Ir data".

3

Enter your security code and press  ▶ Enter your authentication password.

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

See "Authentication password" → P. 413

4 An infrared port is turned to an other party and select “YES” and press .

Prepare the other party's FOMA terminal to receive all the data. → P. 414

Transfer of all the data entries begins.

When transmission ends, a message appears notifying you that transmission is completed.

■ To cancel transfer of all the data

Select “NO” and press .

■ To interrupt a sending

Press  (Quit).

Note

- When you send mail that includes a pasted i-α ppli launch specification, the pasted data is deleted when you send the mail.
- When “File restricted” is set in “File restriction” for a file attached to mail, the attached file is deleted when the mail is sent. Images in some file formats may also be deleted when the mail is sent. However, when a still image or movie shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera is attached to outgoing mail or draft mail, or when the file was received via OBEX or imported from a miniSD memory card, the attached file is sent even when “File restricted” is set in “File restriction”.
- The list of bookmarks sent using “Send all Ir data” appears in the same order at the receiving end if FOMA N700i is used as the recipient.

Receiving all data entries <Receive all Ir data>

In the receive Ir data display...

➡ P. 412

1 Press “Receive all”.

2 Enter the security code and press ▶ Enter the authentication password.

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

See “Authentication password” → P. 413

3 An infrared port is turned to an other party and select “YES” and press .

■ To cancel the receiving all Ir data

Select “NO” and press .

4 Receive all data from an other party's FOMA terminal.

Start the receiving all Ir data.

■ To interrupt receiving

Press  (Quit).

5 Press “YES” in the overwrite checking display and press .

The message notifying a registration end is displayed after registering the received data.

■ To do not overwrite the received data

Select “NO” and press .

Note

- After infrared communication ends, the  icon continues to be displayed for a short time.
- When you receive all data of mail or bookmark, the setting for categorized folders may not be effective.

<Infrared mode>

Selecting Infrared Communication Mode

This mode allows software to be launched on your FOMA terminal by i-α ppli activation data received from infrared communication devices equipped with an i-α ppli activation function.

- The specified software must be downloaded from an i-mode site or Internet website beforehand. → P. 321

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

1 Press "Receive" ▶ Receive i-α ppli activation data from the infrared communication device.

When the FOMA terminal receives the i-α ppli activation data, the software starts up.
The procedure following software activation varies depending on the software.

■ To cancel data reception

Press  or .

Note

- If there is no matching software for the received activation data, a message appears saying that the specified software could not be found.

Using the function menu in the Receive Ir Data display

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Receive Ir data display function menu

 Add desktop icon

▶ Select "YES" and press .

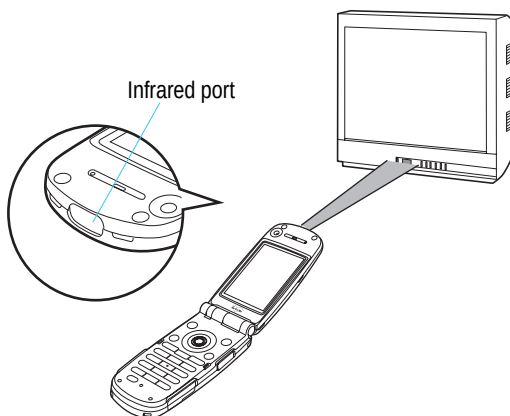
See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- First download the appropriate software for the device you want to control. Note that even with the correct software, some products will not be compatible and cannot be controlled using the FOMA terminal.
- Remote control software for the FOMA terminal can be downloaded from the sites listed in the iMenu.
- You cannot use the infrared remote control function during Self mode.

Using remote control

- Point the FOMA terminal directly at the remote control sensor on the TV, etc. while using it as a remote control. The FOMA terminal's remote control is effective over distances of up to 4 meters directly in front of the TV, etc., but this may vary depending on the ambient light level.



Using “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control) is a convenient application of free monthly fee to which the TV program table and AV remote control function were set. TV program information can acquire easily anywhere at any time. You can know the program title, contents of program and start / end time and a G code®. If you find an interesting TV program, use the “おすすめメール” function to let your friends know the program title and on-air schedule by mail. Moreover, you can use the FOMA terminal as the TV remote controller. (Note that some models do not support this function.)

- Since it corresponds to the electronic program guide (EPG), you can select a program easily.
- When using “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control), for the first time, it is necessary to carry out initial setting and to agree with use agreement.
- Additional packet communication fee is charged.
- See “FOMA i-mode User's Manual” for more details.

Initial setting

1 Start the “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)

▶ Set up your data.

See “Launching an i-α.ppli” → P. 323

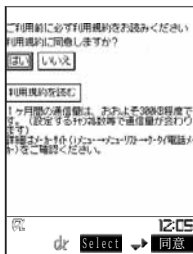
Please input a postal code number correctly in 7 digits. The program table for the area in which you live according to the set-up postal code number is displayed.

Sets “生年月日” (a birth date), “性別” (sex), “郵便番号” (a postal code number)

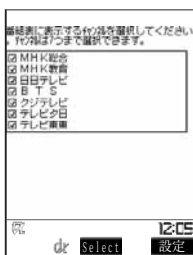
2 Select “TV登録” and press ● ▶ Select the maker of the apparatus to operate and press ● (設定) ▶ Press ●.

You can test the remote control to press when having selected the maker by turning on/off the power supply of electric appliances.
Set the other makers by the same operation.

- 3 Press **○ (設定)** ▶ Select “**利用規約を読む**” and press **●** ▶ Read the use agreement and press **○ (戻る)** ▶ Select “**はい**” and press **●** or **○ (同意)**.



- 4 Press **●** ▶ Select a channel to display on a program table ▶ Press **○ (完了)** ▶ Press **○ (設定)**.



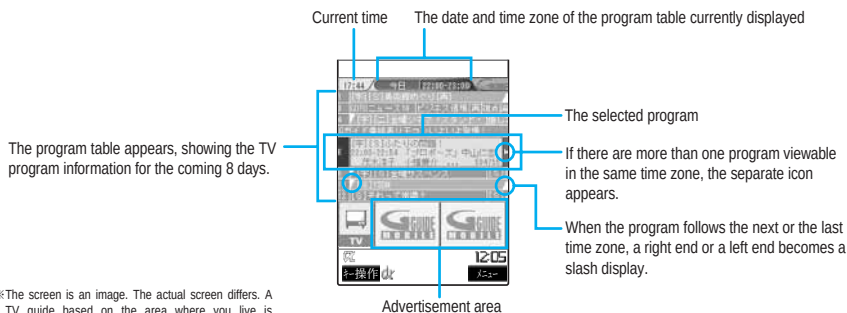
The checked channel is displayed on a program table.

- 5 Enter the channel assigned to the channel number of remote control in the text box ▶ Press **○ (設定)**.



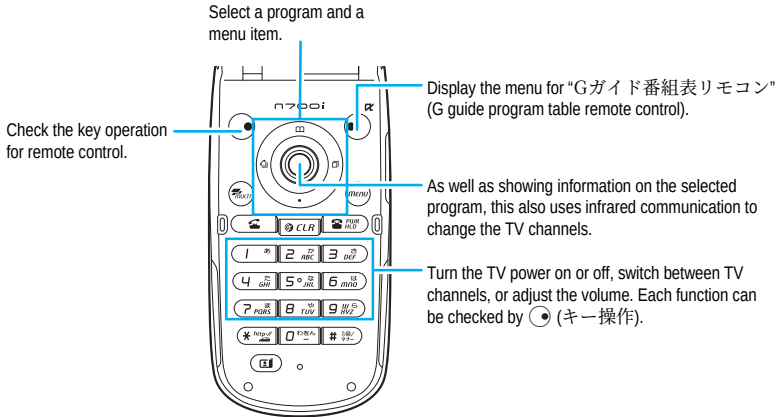
The screen is not displayed when the maker is not set.

● The main display for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)



※The screen is an image. The actual screen differs. A TV guide based on the area where you live is displayed.

● Basic operation for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)



Note

- By selecting an advertisement and press ●, the program will be connected to the site relevant to the advertisement by the Web To function. Some advertisements use the Phone To function or the Mail To function.

Using the menu for the “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)

In the main display for G guide program table remote control...

➡ P. 417

1 Press ● (メニュー) ▶ Choose from following options:

番組詳細	Opens communication and retrieves program details when detailed information is provided for the selected program.
おすすめメール	Compose the message to which the information on a program is entered.
HELP	How to use “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control) is displayed.
最新に更新	Updates a program table.
バージョン情報	Checks the version of “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control). Press ● (Update) to update the “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control) if a new version is available.
視聴チャンネル	Sets the broadcasting station displayed on a program table.
リモコン登録	Sets the maker of the apparatus operated by “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control).
初期化	▶ Press ● (Initialize). Initialize “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control).
リモコンチャンネル設定	Specifies assigned remote control channels to TV stations.

Exchanging FOMA Terminal Data With a PC

Important

- Take great care to ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. A faulty connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Install of N700i communication setting file (driver) is also needed. → P. 476
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Ensure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and that there is a stable power supply to the PC.
- If a communication error occurs while all data items are being copied from the PC to the FOMA terminal, the entries being written to on the FOMA terminal may be completely erased. Before attempting to write all the entries of a particular data type to the FOMA terminal, carefully check the cable connections, FOMA terminal battery level and PC power supply.

Notes on using the data transfer function

Situations in which data cannot be transferred or stored

- Data cannot be transferred while communication (a voice call, video-phone call or data communication) is in progress. Similarly, other forms of communication cannot be used during data transfer. In some cases, it may be possible to receive a call immediately after data transfer begins. When this happens, data transfer is cancelled.
- OBEX cannot be used to transfer FOMA card (UIM) phonebook entries or SMS.
- You cannot use OBEX to transfer all the data when "All lock" or "PIM lock" is set or when the FOMA terminal is in "Self mode".
- You cannot transfer phonebook data when "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- You cannot receive phonebook data when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- Depending on the file size, the FOMA terminal may be unable to receive or save some data.
 - When a JPEG-format image larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high is received.
 - When a GIF-format image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high is received.
 - Progressive JPEG-format images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. For more information on progressive JPEG-format images, see P. 221.
 - The image exceeding 600 KB (However, the image of 600 KB or less may sometimes be unable to be saved.)
 - The movie exceeding 800 KB
- When you receive a large file (an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes) that is attached to incoming or outgoing mail, the large file is stored in the Data box and linked to the mail. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- Check that the date and time have been set in "Set time" (P. 45) before transferring data. If the date and time are not set, received schedule and ToDo list entries cannot be stored.
- When a received schedule entry has the same date/time and the same repeat setting (ON or OFF) as an existing entry, the received data cannot be stored.
- You may not be able to send a melody, image or i-motion to a PC when its use as an e-mail attachment or its transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.
- When you insert a different FOMA card (UIM) or turn the FOMA terminal on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, you cannot send melodies, images, movies or i-motion for which FOMA card operational restrictions have been set.

Transferring phonebook entries

- The phonebook secret code cannot be transferred.
- Phonebook entries cannot be received when "Restrict dialing" is set, but when phonebook entries are sent, phonebook entries specified in "Restrict dialing" and "Own number" data can be sent.
- When "Transfer all" is used, the "Own number" data is sent with the phonebook entries.
- When you receive all the phonebook entries, "Own number" data (excluding the phone number) is also overwritten.
- When "Overwrite all" is used to overwrite images, the images stored in the phonebook are overwritten.
- When you receive an individual phonebook entry, it is stored starting with memory number 010, but when you receive all the entries, they are stored according to the memory number information.
- Phonebook entries are sent in order of memory number.
- Depending on the file size, data transfer may take some time.
- The transfer of phonebook entries, because it can include the transfer of stored still images, may take some time. To shorten the data transfer time when you are sending data from the FOMA terminal to a PC, select "OFF" in the "Forwarding image" setting (P. 409) to prevent the transfer of still images stored in the phonebook.

- When you receive individual phonebook entries (when entries are sent from a PC to the FOMA terminal (Phone)), they are stored under the lowest available phonebook memory numbers between "010" and "699". If data is already stored for all the numbers between "010" and "699", the entries are stored in the lowest available memory numbers between "000" and "009" (used for two-touch dialing) (P. 110).
- When phonebook entries are received, if there are already 700 stored names, phone numbers or e-mail addresses, or if the number will exceed 700 when the entries is received, a message appears saying that the data cannot be stored.

Additional notes

- You may not be able to send a file to a PC when its use as an e-mail attachment or its transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited, but movies and photos (still images) shot with the FOMA terminal's built-in camera, data received using OBEX and data imported from a miniSD memory card is sent even when "File restricted" is set in the "File restriction" setting.
- The FOMA terminal is effectively outside the i-mode service area during data transfer and cannot be used for voice or video-phone calls, i-mode communication, i-mode mail or packet communication.
- After data transfer ends, the  icon continues to be displayed for a short time.
- You cannot use the Multi tasking function while using OBEX to transfer data. Quit all other functions and then try again.
- Because the transfer of still images, melodies, movies and i-motion files does not conform to the IrMC standard, data transfer software supported by the FOMA N700i is required. Still images, melodies, movies and i-motion files are all stored in the Inbox.
- When the sent mail is mail that includes an i-α.ppli start specification, the i-α.ppli start specification is removed when the data is sent.
- Frames and Flash movies are not transferred.
- Received mail folders for mail-connected i-α.ppli are not forwarded. The mail in the folders is all stored in the Inbox folder.

Sending individual data items (Write one)

1

Using the data communications software on the PC, transfer 1 item of data.

Refer to the instructions for the data communications software for information on how to send the data.

2

Send the data from the PC.

Depending on the size of the data file, the progress shown by the communication progress bar indicator may be slow.

3

Select "YES" and press .

When data reception ends, a message appears notifying you that transmission has been completed. If none of the FOMA terminal's keys are pressed for 30 seconds after the data reception ends, the received data is discarded.

Transferring all data items (Write all/Read all)

<Example: Sending all the data on the FOMA terminal to a PC>

1

Send the data "Send/Receive all".

Refer to the instructions for the data communications software for information on how to send the data. You will need to enter your authentication password on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as your authentication password.

2

Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal and press .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

3

Enter your authentication password on the FOMA terminal.

For information on your authentication password → P. 413

4

Send the data.

When data transmission ends, a message appears notifying you that transmission has been completed.

Note

- If "Write all" from a PC to a FOMA terminal is performed, all the data of a FOMA terminal will be overwritten. Note that the original data of the FOMA terminal is deleted. The telephone directory registered in "Secret mode" and "Secret only mode", a schedule, and the protected mail are included. However, a frame and a Flash movie are not deleted.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access <Multi access>	422
Multi tasking <Multi task>	425
Setting the Alarm Mode <Alarm setting>	427
Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock <Alarm clock>	430
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries <Schedule>	431
Adding ToDo List Entries <ToDo>	437
Storing Your Own Name and Image <Own number>	441
Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice <In-call Voice memo/ Stand-by Voice memo>	443
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones <Voice announce>	444
Checking Call Times and Charges <Call time/charge>	445
Using the FOMA Terminal as a Calculator <Calculator>	446
Composing a Text Memo <Text memo>	447
Using Dictionaries <Dictionary>	448
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Earphone/Microphone with Switch>	452
Connecting an Earphone/Microphone and Receiving Calls Automatically <Automatic answer>	452
Selecting Your Provider <PLMN Setting>	453
Resetting the Function Settings <Reset settings>	453
Resetting FOMA terminal to the Default Settings <Initialize>	458

<Multi access>

Multi Access

Multi Access is a function that allows voice calls, packet communication and SMS to be conducted at the same time. This enables you to receive mails while you are talking to someone on the FOMA terminal or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

Using the Multi Access function, the FOMA terminal can concurrently use the 3 communication lines listed below.

Type of communication	Lines used
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-α.ppli or i-mode mail	Either one
Packet communication with PC connected	
SMS	1 line

Note

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- While multi access cannot be used during a video-phone call, only SMS can be received.
- While multi access cannot be used during 64K data communication, only SMS can be received/sent.

When you receive a call during communication

● Receiving i-mode mail during a voice call

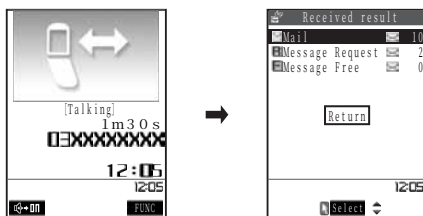
If you receive i-mode mail during a voice call when "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred", the Talking display remains while the i-mode mail is received. You can read the i-mode mail without hanging up your voice call.

1 Hold down for 1 second or longer.

The display changes to the i-mode mail Received result display.

■ To change displays from the Task menu

For information on using the Task menu to change displays → P. 426



2 Read the i-mode mail.

For information on reading i-mode mail → P. 277

3 Hold down for 1 second or longer.

The display changes to the Talking display.

Note

- If you receive i-mode mail or a Message Request or Message Free during a voice call, the icon for received mail type flashes and then lights without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Receiving display", the  icon flashes when you receive i-mode mail during a voice call and the display changes to the Receiving i-mode mail display.

Voice call received during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call during i-mode connection, mail transmission/reception, or data communication through packets, the display changes to the "Receiving voice call" display and you can answer the call without ending the i-mode or packet communication.

- You cannot receive video-phone calls while using i-mode.

1 Press .



The display changes to the Receiving voice call display and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode display without answering the call

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.

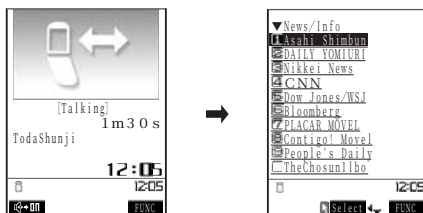
The caller hears the busy tone with no message.

2 When you have finished talking, press .

The call is ended and the i-mode display returns.

■ To return to the i-mode display without ending the call

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.



To use another type of communication while communicating

This function allows you to use another type of communication without interrupting your current communications.

- To change the display during multi access communication, hold down  for 1 second or longer or select the function you want to view from the Task menu. → P. 426

Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

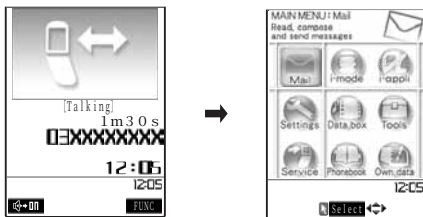
During the voice call, you can connect to i-mode by pressing  and connecting from the i-mode menu in the Main menu. → P. 204

● Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

During the voice call, you can compose and send i-mode mail by pressing  and selecting the Mail menu in the Main menu.

1 Press during the voice call and select the Mail menu.

For information on using menus → P. 32



2 Compose and send the i-mode mail message.

For information on composing and sending i-mode mail → P. 247

3 Hold down for 1 second or longer.

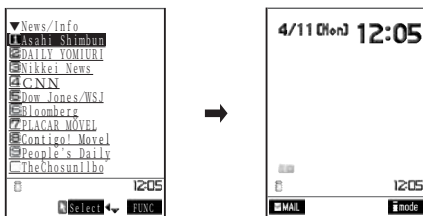
The voice call display returns.

● Making a voice call during i-mode communication

Use the procedure below to make a voice call while you are connected to i-mode or sending or receiving mail without exiting i-mode.

1 While using i-mode, hold down for 1 second or longer.

The stand-by display appears.



2 Make a voice call.

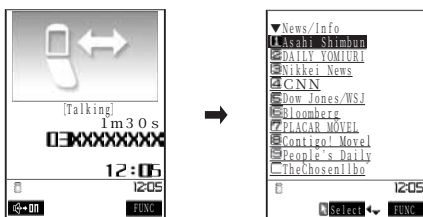
For information on making voice calls → P. 48

3 When you have finished talking, press .

The call is ended and the i-mode display returns.

■ To return to the i-mode display without ending the call

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.



Note	
● If you make a video-phone call while in i-mode, the "Disconnecting" message appears, after which the FOMA terminal dials the video-phone call. When the video-phone call ends, the i-mode display reappears.	

<Multi task>

Multi tasking

Multi task is a function that allows you to use a number of functions at the same time. This allows you to use up to 3 functions at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.



Group	Major functions (tasks)
Mail group	Mail
i-mode group	i-mode and i-α ppli
Settings group	Settings and Network service
Tool group	Data box, Phonebook, Tools and Own data

● The voice call charge is added even while you are concurrently using another communication function during a voice call.

Activating a task (function)

1

Hold down  for 1 second or longer during launching a task.
 The stand-by display appears.

2

Select a task from a group that has no tasks currently running.

- To activate a task from the Main menu
 Press  and then select the task. → P. 32
- To activate a task using a menu option number
 Press  and then enter the menu number for the desired task. → P. 548
- To activate a task from the Mail menu
 Press . → P. 246
- To activate a task from the i-mode menu
 Press . → P. 204
 Icons display the task activation status.
 : Multiple tasks are running.
 : Only one task is running.
 No icon: No tasks are running.

Note

- If you attempt to activate tasks from the same group, either a message appears asking whether to switch tasks, or the tasks are automatically switched (When the Mail menu or i-mode menu is being displayed). If the message asking you to choose appears, select "YES" to switch to the newly selected task.
- If you attempt to activate a 4th task when there are already 3 tasks running concurrently, a message appears informing you that no further tasks can be activated.
- If you switch to Multi tasking while a processor-intensive function is in progress, delays may occur in operations such as screen display.
- In the following situations, one task is added to compose mail while viewing mail. If 3 tasks are already running and you perform the operation below, a message is displayed, stating that the task cannot run. End a task other than a mail group task and then perform the operation.
See "Ending a task" → P. 426
 - Compose a new mail
 - Compose an SMS
 - Reply/Reply with quote/Forward on the function menu while viewing mail
- Other functions cannot be used while the following functions are activated,

• Video-phone call • Editing movies/i-motion • Importing/exporting data with miniSD memory card • Updating software	• UIM operation • Downloading i-α ppli software	• Camera (Long time) • Infrared communication • Data exchange (OBEX) function
- Some functions cannot be operated while other functions are activated.

Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can use this procedure to switch between tasks. To switch between tasks, you can either press  to display the Task menu and select the task to be performed, or hold down  for 1 second or longer to switch between tasks one after the other. You can also switch between tasks by using the neuropointer to select task icons in the Task icon/Clock display area while the stand-by display is displayed.

Switching between tasks in the Task menu

1 Press .

The "Task Menu List display" appears.

2 Select the task you want to use and press .

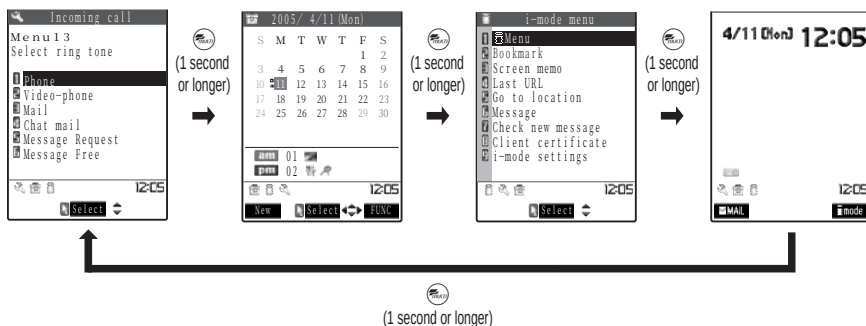


The display for the selected task appears.

Switching tasks one after another

You can switch between tasks in order of displayed on the task menu by holding down  for 1 second or longer. Switching between tasks in this way does not end an active task or cut off a voice call.

● Holding down  for 1 second or longer while the Main menu is displayed does not switch between tasks.



Ending a task

A task can be ended in any of the following ways:

- Switch to the task to be ended and press .
- Highlight the task to be ended in the Task menu and press .
- To end all the tasks, Press  (END ALL) while task menu is displayed and select "YES" and press .

Note

- Turning the FOMA terminal off ends all the active tasks.
- If you use procedures that access menu functions such as UIM operations or color patterns while other menu functions are running, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed. If this occurs, quit the other menu functions before using procedures that access menu functions.

Setting the Alarm Mode

Default setting

Alarm preferred

Use this procedure to select either "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" as the alarm notification setting for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "ToDo".

- Press  Select  and press  Press  "Clock" Select "Alarm setting" and press  Select  "Operation preferred" or  "Alarm preferred".

■ When "Operation preferred" is set

Alarm is notified only on the stand-by display.

■ When "Alarm preferred" is set

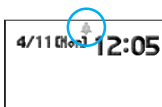
Alarm is notified even while you are operating the FOMA terminal or calling.

Alarm notification actions

When you set alarm notification in the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" functions, an icon appears on the stand-by display to show that an alarm has been set. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function notifies you.

When you set an alarm

When you set an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm, an icon appears on the stand-by display.



■ An alarm set for today (excluding times that have already passed)

The  icon is displayed.

■ An alarm set for tomorrow or after

The  icon is displayed.

When the specified time is reached

The different alarms notify you as shown below.



Alarm clock



Schedule*1



ToDo*1

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule or ToDo
Stand-by display shown	If "Snooze OFF" is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If "Snooze ON" is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 1 minute, and then repeats this 6 times at intervals of about 5 minutes. Animations are also displayed on the display and in the indicator display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 5 minutes and animations also appear on the display and in the indicator display.

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule or ToDo
FOMA terminal turned off	If "ON" is selected for the "Auto Power ON" function, the FOMA terminal automatically turns on and notifies you of the alarm. If "Auto power OFF" is selected, the FOMA terminal does not automatically turn on and the alarm is not notified. In this case, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear after you turn the FOMA terminal on.	No alarm notification is provided when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
Call in progress ^{*2}	The time alarm tone ("pip-pipipi...") sounds 3 times from the earpiece speaker and an animation appears on the display.	
Dialing or Receiving a call ^{*2}	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as "Call in progress". When you receive a call, the "Call in progress" alarm sounds when you answer the call.	
i-mode or sending/receiving mail ^{*2}	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as "Stand-by display shown".	
During infrared communication or SD-PIM function operation or data transfer in OBEX	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. When data communication ends, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the "Stand-by display shown". → P. 429	
When an earphone/ microphone is connected (when "Earphone" is set to "Earphone")	The alarm tone sounds through the earphone for around 20 seconds. After 20 seconds, the alarm sounds through both the earphone and the speaker. Animations appear on the display and in the indicator display.	
When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry display is shown after the FOMA terminal is turned on	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as on the "Stand-by display shown". When the alarm notification display clears, the PIN1 code entry display reappears.	Alarm notification is provided after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
All lock or PIM lock set	No alarm notification is provided even when the specified time is reached, regardless of the "Alarm setting" specification. After the All lock/PIM lock is released, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. → P. 429 When the FOMA terminal is turned off, it does not automatically turn on when the specified time is reached. In this case, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear on the stand-by display after you release the All lock/PIM lock.	No alarm notification is provided when the specified time is reached. After the All/PIM lock is released, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. → P. 429

*1 : The animation displayed for a "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm differs depending on selected icon and category.

*2 : Applicable when "Alarm preferred" is selected in the "Alarm setting" display. If "Operation preferred" is selected, alarm is not notified even when the specified time is reached and the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.

Note

● If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarms are set to the same time, alarm precedence is assigned as follows. ① has the highest precedence:

- ① Alarm clock
- ② ToDo
- ③ Schedule

If alarm notification was not possible, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. However, if the FOMA terminal was turned off, no  (Missed alarm) desktop icon is displayed.

- The volume of the "Schedule" and "ToDo" alarms is determined by the "Phone" setting in "Ring volume".
- The alarm volume during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- The alarm volume while in manner mode is the same as that specified in "Manner mode set".
- Unless "Vibrator" for "Phone" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal uses both vibration and an alarm to notify you of alarms.
- When the "Display" setting of "Clock display" or the "Alarm setting" of ToDo or Schedule is set to "OFF", neither the  nor  icon appears.

● To stop the alarm tone

■ Alarm clock alarm tone

When “Snooze OFF” is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, and the animation changes to a still image. If you press any key again, the release tone (“pipip”) sounds and the display is cleared.

When “Snooze ON” is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, the animation changes to a still image and displays the “Snooze...” message. After the “Snooze...” message has been displayed for around 5 minutes, the alarm is notified again. If you press  while the “Snooze...” message is displayed, the release tone (“pipip”) sounds and the snooze setting is cancelled.

■ Schedule and ToDo alarm tones

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, the animation changes to a still image and the alarm message remains displayed.

Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, if you pressed the side key when the FOMA terminal was folded, the alarm notification display is not cleared.

■ If you receive a call during alarm notification

Alarm notification stops and the FOMA terminal receives the call. The “Alarm clock” snooze setting is also cancelled.

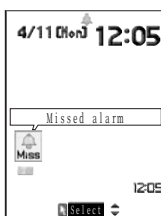
Note

- The snooze setting is cancelled in the following situations:
 - A voice or video-phone call arrives.
 - i-mode mail or SMS arrives when “Alarm preferred” is set in “Receiving display”.
 - The alarm is notified for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” when “Alarm preferred” is selected in “Alarm setting”.
- If “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or while the manner mode is set, the snooze notification release tone does not sound.

■ Checking alarm details when notification fails

If the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you of an alarm, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. You can then check the details of the missed alarm (missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 Press on the stand-by display, select and press .



The missed alarm information for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is displayed.

■ To clear the desktop icon

Hold down  for 1 second or longer.

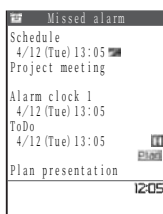
Once you clear the  desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information. While the desktop icons to notify information are displayed, these icons also disappear.

2 Check the details and then press .

The stand-by display reappears without  (Missed alarm) displayed.

Note

- If “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” alarms are set to the same time and the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you, the respective missed alarm information is displayed.



Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

Default setting

OFF

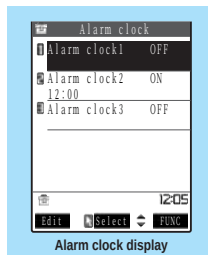
Setting the alarm clock

1 Press .

The "Alarm clock display" appears.

If you have set the alarm clock before, the details of the last setting are displayed.

2 Select to ► Press (Edit).



Alarm clock display

3 Specify the respective settings.

Time setting	► Enter a time and press .	
	Enters the time at which the alarm will sound.	
Repeat	► Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the number of alarm clock repetitions.	
	1 time	The alarm sounds only once.
	Daily	The alarm sounds every day.
	Select day	► Use to select checkbox (☐) and press ► Press (Finish). The alarm sounds every week on the specified day.
Alarm tone	► Choose from the following options:	
	Selects the alarm tone. Any user-created folders are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. Alarm tones can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114	
	Inbox	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded using the Voice Announce function as the alarm tone.
	OFF	No alarm tone sounds.
Volume	► Use or to adjust the alarm tone volume and then press .	
	Sets the alarm tone volume. See "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P. 66	
Snooze setting	► Choose from the following options:	
	Specifies whether a snooze (repeating) alarm is set.	
	ON	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 1 minute and then repeats this 6 times at intervals of about 5 minutes.
	OFF	► Enter a ring time (01-10 minutes). The alarm tone sounds continuously for the specified ringing time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press .
Auto power ON	► Select "ON" or "OFF".	
	Specifies whether the FOMA terminal is automatically turned on when the time for an alarm is reached.	

4 Press (Finish).

Note

- You cannot store or edit alarm clock entries while "PIM lock" is set.
- When the alarm clock automatically turns the FOMA terminal on to notify you of an alarm and an alarm tone other than "Pre-installed" is selected, the FOMA terminal uses the "Clock Alarm Tone" set in FOMA card operational restrictions.
- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

Using the function menu in the Alarm Clock display

In the alarm clock display...

➔ P. 430

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Alarm clock display function menu

 Edit	Edits the Alarm clock.
 Display detail	Changes to the detail display when the list display is shown.
 Release this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
 Release all	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

<Schedule>

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

If you add an event to your schedule, an alarm tone sounds at the specified date and time and the FOMA terminal displays an animation and message notifying you of the details stored for the event. You can also add holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule events and holidays can be quickly checked at the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch between 1-month and 1-week calendar display mode to view the number of scheduled events for a given day and business matters. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, such as storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a set day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled event, or storing multiple scheduled events for the same day.

- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holiday or anniversaries respectively. Note that the national public holidays and festivals stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in this number.
- You can store multiple scheduled events for the same day, but you can only set 1 holiday or anniversary per day.
- Set the date and time beforehand in "Set time".
- For information on Schedule alarm notification → P. 427

1 Press .

The "Schedule display" appears.



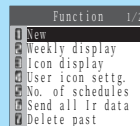
Using the function menu on the Schedule display

In the schedule display...

→ P. 431

1

Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Schedule display
function menu

Schedule display function menu 1/2

1 New	See "Adding schedule entries" → P. 434								
2 Weekly display*	See "Changing the Schedule display mode" → P. 433								
3 Icon display	▶ Select an icon and press  . Displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events ( or ) are displayed as a single item.								
4 User icon settg.	See "Setting your choice of image as your user icon" → P. 435								
5 No. of schedules	Displays the number of stored schedule entries, stored holidays, stored anniversaries and entries stored as secret events. Schedule ( or ) that repeat is set on is counted as one item.								
6 Send all Ir data	Sends all the stored schedule entries using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413								
7 Delete past	▶ Choose from the following options: Deletes all the schedule entries prior to a selected date. <table> <tr> <td>1 Schedule</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Holiday</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes holidays up to the previous day.</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Anniversary</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 All</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.</td></tr> </table>	1 Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.	2 Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes holidays up to the previous day.	3 Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.	4 All	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
1 Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.								
2 Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes holidays up to the previous day.								
3 Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.								
4 All	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.								

* : If you have selected the Weekly display, "2 Monthly display" is displayed. The default setting is the Monthly display.

Schedule display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Choose from the following options: About Your Security Codes → P. 142 <table> <tr> <td>1 Schedule</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press .</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 Holiday</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press .</td></tr> <tr> <td>3 Anniversary</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press .</td></tr> <tr> <td>4 All</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press . Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries.</td></tr> </table>	1 Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	2 Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	3 Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press  .	4 All	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries.
1 Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press  .								
2 Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press  .								
3 Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press  .								
4 All	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries.								
2 Reset holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press  . Resets the schedule to the national public holidays stored initially.								

Note

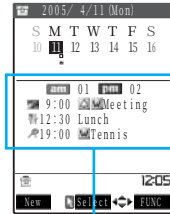
● When you delete all holidays with "Delete all", stored holidays are reset to the default setting.

● Changing the Schedule display mode

The calendar displayed by the Schedule can be viewed either as a "Monthly display" or a "Weekly display". By using  to highlight a particular date, you can check icons and the number of scheduled events stored for the date.



Shows icons and the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Shows the icons, number, and details of scheduled events set for the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.

Dates in blue : Saturdays

Dates in red : Sunday, public holidays and holidays

 : Anniversaries

 : Today

 : Scheduled event stored for the morning

 : Scheduled event stored for the afternoon

Note

- The public holidays are set in accordance with the "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律 (平成 13 年法律第 59 号)" (Revised National Holidays Law (Law No.59, 2001)). (As of February, 2005)

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Setting a holiday>

1 Press     Press  (New)  Press   "Holiday".

 To add an anniversary

Press   "Anniversary".

2 Specify the respective settings.

 Date setting	▶ Enter the date and press  .				
	Enters the date of the added holiday or anniversary.				
 Repeat	▶ Choose from the following options:				
	Sets the holiday or anniversary repetitions.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td> 1 time</td><td>The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Annually </td><td>The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.</td></tr> </table>	 1 time	The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.	 Annually 	The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.
 1 time	The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.				
 Annually 	The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.				
 Edit anniversary	▶ Enter a message and press  .				
	Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. The message can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522				

3 Press  (Finish).

Note

- If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.

Adding schedule entries

By adding the details of a trip or appointment to your schedule, you can have the FOMA terminal notify you using an alarm tone and animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- The scheduled event is not automatically deleted once the specified date and time has passed. If you try to store more than 100 events in your schedule, a message appears saying that the event cannot be stored. Delete some unwanted scheduled events and try again.
- Enter the scheduled event "Detail" definitely. If not, the schedule entry cannot be added.

1 Press ► Press (New) ► Press "Schedule".

2 Specify the respective settings.

Date setting (from)	► Enter the date and time and press . Enters the starting time for the scheduled event.								
Date setting (to)	► Enter the date and time and press . Enters the finishing time for the scheduled event.								
Repeat	► Choose from the following options: Sets the scheduled event repetitions. <table border="1"> <tr> <td> 1 time</td><td>The event is only set for the specified day.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Daily ()</td><td>The event is set to repeat every day.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Select day ()</td><td>► Use to select a checkbox () and press ► press (Finish). The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day.</td></tr> </table>	1 time	The event is only set for the specified day.	Daily ()	The event is set to repeat every day.	Select day ()	► Use to select a checkbox () and press ► press (Finish). The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day.		
1 time	The event is only set for the specified day.								
Daily ()	The event is set to repeat every day.								
Select day ()	► Use to select a checkbox () and press ► press (Finish). The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day.								
Alarm	► Choose from the following options: Specifies the alarm notification settings used when the starting date and time is reached. <table border="1"> <tr> <td> ON</td><td>An alarm notification is used at the starting time.</td></tr> <tr> <td> ON/Set time</td><td>► Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes). Sets an alarm notification to certain minutes before the start time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press .</td></tr> <tr> <td> OFF</td><td>No alarm notification is given when the start time is reached.</td></tr> </table>	ON	An alarm notification is used at the starting time.	ON/Set time	► Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes). Sets an alarm notification to certain minutes before the start time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press .	OFF	No alarm notification is given when the start time is reached.		
ON	An alarm notification is used at the starting time.								
ON/Set time	► Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes). Sets an alarm notification to certain minutes before the start time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press .								
OFF	No alarm notification is given when the start time is reached.								
Alarm tone	► Choose from the following options: Selects the alarm tone. Any user-created folders are displayed after the pre-installed option. Alarm tones can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114 <table border="1"> <tr> <td> Inbox</td><td>Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Pre-installed</td><td>Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.</td></tr> <tr> <td> Voice announce</td><td>Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded using the Voice Announce function as the alarm tone.</td></tr> <tr> <td> OFF</td><td>No alarm tone sounds.</td></tr> </table>	Inbox	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.	Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.	Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded using the Voice Announce function as the alarm tone.	OFF	No alarm tone sounds.
Inbox	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.								
Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.								
Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded using the Voice Announce function as the alarm tone.								
OFF	No alarm tone sounds.								
Summary	► Enter a message and press . Enters a summary of the scheduled event details. The summary can include up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters. The entered summary appears on the display during alarm notification. See "Entering Text" → P. 522								
Schedule	► Enter a message and press ► Select an icon and press . Enters the scheduled event details. The summary can include up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522 When no summary is set, the details appear on the display during alarm notification. If both summary and details are set, the summary is displayed.								

3 Press (Finish).

Note

- You cannot store or edit schedule entries while "PIM lock" is set.
- When the calendar is set on the stand-by display, you can set your schedule from the calendar. → P. 125
- If the "ON/Set time" is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the set time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the scheduled event itself.
- If you attempt to store 2 scheduled events with the same date and time, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.
- Scheduled events can be stored on the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Weekly" and the other is "1 time" (no repeats). In this situation, the scheduled event with the "1 time" setting has precedence.
- If the day set as the start time and the day set in the Repeat setting are different, the day set in the Repeat setting has precedence and the scheduled event is added on the first specified day after the starting time.
- If you store a scheduled event during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are only displayed when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode". → P. 148

Important

The details of stored entries may be lost as a result of damages, repairs, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data, and you should make a note of the details of stored scheduled events as a precautionary measure or back them up onto a miniSD memory card (P. 392). If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 558) and FOMA USB cable (optional) to back up the details of stored entries onto your PC.

Setting your choice of image as your user icon

This procedure allows you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. Icons set as user icons are shown as  to  in the icon selection display. When you set a user icon, the selected image or animation is displayed when the FOMA terminal notifies you of an alarm and a star (★) appears in the indicator display.

- You can store up to 5 user icons.

In the schedule display function menu...

→ P. 432

1 Press "User icon settg." ▶ Select "<Not recorded>" and press .



■ To change a user icon that was set previously

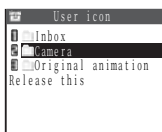
Select an icon that has been set and press .

■ To clear all the user icon settings

Select "Release all" and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .

Settings can only be cleared when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder containing images.



If there are user-created folders, images can also be selected from those.

For information on selecting images → P. 343

■ To clear the user icon settings that are set in the Schedule

Select "Release this" and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .

■ To clear the user icon settings that are not set in the Schedule

Select "Release this" and press .

3 Select the image to be set and press .



■ To show a preview

Highlight the item to be previewed and press  (Play).

Note

● If you attempt to change or clear a user icon that is being used in a scheduled event, a message appears asking whether to clear the icon. If you change or clear the user icon, the icon on the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to .

Checking schedule details

Use this procedure to view and check the detail display for scheduled events.

In the schedule display...

➔ P. 431

1 Select the date on which the scheduled event to be checked is stored and press .

The "Schedule list display" appears.

The icons used in the list display are described below.

: Scheduled event icon. Indicates that a scheduled event is stored.

: Stored holiday

: Stored anniversary

: Alarm set

: Daily repeating event set

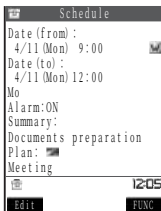
: Weekly repeating event set on a specified day of the week

: Annual repeating event

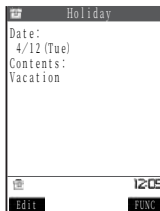


Schedule list display

2 Select item to be viewed in detail and press .



Scheduled event detail display



Holiday detail display



Anniversary detail display

Using the function menu on the Schedule List display

In the schedule list display...

➔ P. 436

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Schedule list display function menu 1/2

 New	See "Adding schedule entries" → P. 434
 Edit	Edits the schedule.
 Copy	Copies schedule entries. When the copied entry is set as a repeating event in the source schedule, the repeat setting is removed when the entry is pasted.
 Icon display	▶ Select an icon and press  . Displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events ( or ) are displayed as a single item.
 User icon settg.	See "Setting your choice of image as your user icon" → P. 435
 Release secret	Cancel the secrecy for a scheduled event stored as secret data. See "Changing secret data back to normal data" → P. 149
 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247

➊ Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.								
➋ Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413								
➌ Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.								
➍ Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.								
➎ Delete past	▶ Choose from the following options: Deletes all entries for the dates prior to the selected date to the previous day. <table><tr><td>➊ Schedule</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.</td></tr><tr><td>➋ Holiday</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes holidays up to the previous day.</td></tr><tr><td>➌ Anniversary</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.</td></tr><tr><td>➍ All</td><td>▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.</td></tr></table>	➊ Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.	➋ Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes holidays up to the previous day.	➌ Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.	➍ All	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
➊ Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.								
➋ Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes holidays up to the previous day.								
➌ Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.								
➍ All	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.								
➏ Delete select	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.								

Note

- "Delete past" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- If you attempt to use "Delete this" or "Delete select" to delete a scheduled event for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message appears asking whether to delete the planned repetitions. Select "YES" and press ● to delete all repeat occurrences of the scheduled event.
- When you use "Delete past", all past occurrences of repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while repeat occurrences from the selected date and later remain saved.
- If you select "Delete select" from the Function menu when scheduled events are displayed by icon, the display changes to show the selective deletion display in the list display for the date selected in the display shown before the scheduled events were displayed by icon. You cannot delete selected entries when scheduled events are displayed by icon.

<ToDo>

Adding ToDo List Entries

If you store entries in the ToDo list, you can manage the tasks. The alarm can be set to sound to notify you.

- You can store up to 100 entries in the ToDo list.
- See P. 427 for information on alarm notification for ToDo list entries.

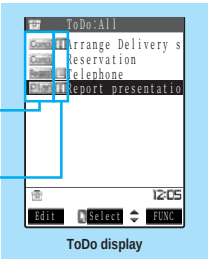
Checking the entries

➊ Press (menu) (9 W HVZ) (S MC).

The "ToDo display" appears.

Shows the entry status.
The icon turns from blue to red when
set date and time is reached.

Shows the priority.



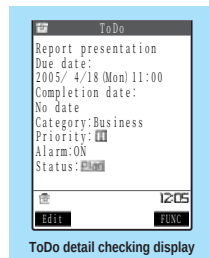
2 Select the entry to be checked and press .

The "ToDo Detail Checking display" appears.

■ To edit the entry

Press  (Edit).

See "Adding and editing entries" → P. 439



ToDo detail checking display

Using the function menu on the ToDo display

In the ToDo/ToDo detail checking display...

➔ P. 437, 438

1 Press (FUNC) ➔ Choose from the following options:

ToDo/ToDo detail checking display function menu 1/2

 New	See "Adding and editing entries" → P. 439	
 Edit	See "Adding and editing entries" → P. 439	
 Change status	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the status of an entry. Settings 1/2	
 Plan	Sets the entry status to plan.	
 Acceptance	Sets the entry status to acceptance.	
 Request	Sets the entry status to request.	
 Provisional plan	Sets the entry status to provisional plan.	
 Confirmation	Sets the entry status to confirmation.	
 Denial	Sets the entry status to denial.	
 Completion	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the entry status to completion.	
 Enter date	▶ Enter the date and time and then press  .	
	Enters the completion date directly.	
 Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar and press  .	
	Select a date from the calendar.	
 No date	No completion date is set.	
	Settings 2/2	
 Substitution	Sets the entry status to substitution.	
 Category display	▶ Choose from the following options: Displays entries by category.	
 All	Displays all the entries.	
 None	Displays entries in no category.	
 Personal	Displays entries in the Personal category.	
 Holiday	Displays entries in the Holiday category.	
 Travel	Displays entries in the Travel category.	
 Business	Displays entries in the Business category.	
 Meeting	Displays entries in the Meeting category.	

5 Sort/Filter	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sorts entries or displays only entries with a specified status. Settings 1/2	
	1 By due date	Sorts entries by due date from the oldest entry onwards.
	2 By completed	Sorts entries by completion date from the oldest entry onwards.
	3 By entered time	Sorts entries in the order in which they were entered.
	4 Plan	Displays only entries with the Plan status.
	5 Acceptance	Displays only entries with the Acceptance status.
	6 Request	Displays only entries with the Request status.
	7 Provisional plan	Displays only entries with the Provisional plan status.
	Settings 2/2	
	1 Confirmation	Displays only entries with the Confirmation status.
	2 Denial	Displays only entries with the Denial status.
	3 Completion	Displays only entries with the Completion status.
	4 Substitution	Displays only entries with the Substitution status.
6 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
	See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135	
7 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	

ToDo/ToDo detail checking display function menu 2/2

1 Send all Ir data	Sends all the entries using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413
2 Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Delete select	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
5 Delete completed	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
6 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Adding and editing entries

- Always enter "detail" for an entry. Entries with no "detail" entered are not added to the ToDo list.
- To edit a previously added entry, begin the procedure from step 2.

1 Press (menu) 9 5 ▶ Press ● (New).

■ When an entry is already saved

Select "New" from the function menu.

2 Specify the respective settings.

ToDo	▶ Enter the details for the entry and press ●.	
	Enters the details for the entry. The details can contain up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
Due date	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Sets the due date for an entry.	
	1 Enter date	▶ Enter the date and time and then press ●.
		Enters the due date directly.
	2 Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar and press ● ▶ Enter the time and press ●.
		Selects a date from the calendar.
	3 No date	No due date is set.

 Priority	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the priority for an entry.	
	1 	Sets a high priority.
	2 	Sets a low priority.
	3 None	No priority is set.
 Category	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the category for an entry.	
	1 None	Sets no category.
	2 Personal	Sets the Personal category.
	3 Holiday	Sets the Holiday category.
	4 Travel	Sets the Travel category.
	5 Business	Sets the Business category.
	6 Meeting	Sets the Meeting category.
 Alarm	▶ Choose from the following options: Specifies the alarm notification settings used when the due date is reached.	
	1 ON	An alarm notification is used at the due date.
	2 ON/Set time	▶ Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes). Sets an alarm notification to certain minutes before the due date. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press  .
	3 OFF	No alarm notification is given when the due date is reached.
 Alarm tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the alarm tone. Any user-created folders are displayed after the pre-installed option. Alarm tones can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P. 114	
	1 Inbox	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	2 Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	3 Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" as the alarm tone.
	4 OFF	No alarm tone sounds.
 Completion date*	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the completion date for an entry.	
	1 Enter date	▶ Enter the date and time and then press . Enters the completion date directly.
	2 Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar and press . Select a date from the calendar.
	3 No date	No completion date is set.

*: Only displayed when an existing stored entry with a "status of" "Completion" is edited.

3 Press  (**Finish**).

Note

- You cannot store or ToDo list entries while "PIM lock" is set.
- If the "ON/Set time" is selected, the FOMA terminal emits an alarm only at the set time before the ToDo event (01-99 minutes before).
The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the ToDo event itself.
- If you store a ToDo list entry during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.

Important

The details of stored ToDo list entries may be lost as a result of damages, repairs, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data, and you should make a note of the details of stored ToDo list entries as a precautionary measure or back them up onto a miniSD memory card (P. 392). If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 558) and FOMA USB cable (optional) to back up the details of ToDo list entries onto your PC.

<Own number>

Storing Your Own Name and Image

Default setting

Own number only

Use this function to store your own personal information, including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Stored personal information provides the FOMA terminal with a way of confirming that you are the owner and can also be quoted in text entry and editing displays.

- You cannot change or delete the FOMA terminal's own phone number.
- Items other than the phone number are stored on the FOMA terminal. Even if you insert the FOMA card (UIM) from another FOMA terminal, personal information stored on your FOMA terminal other than your phone is still displayed.

Displaying personal data

When this function is started up, it shows just your name, the FOMA terminal's own phone number and the first e-mail address listed. To view all the data, you have to enter your security code.

1 Press  .

The "Own number display" appears.



Using the function menu on the Own Number display

In the own number display...

➡ P. 441

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Own number display function menu 1/2

1 Edit	Edits your personal data. See "Storing personal data" → P. 442
2 Display all data	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Use  to check the details. About Your Security Codes → P. 142
3 Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541

 Copy Phone number *1	Copies the phone number stored in the personal data. The copied phone number can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541
 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
 Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
 Erase phone number *2	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
	Deletes the phone number, stored in the personal data.

*1 : It is as follows according to the chosen item.

- If you have selected the mail address, " Copy mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected the address, " Copy address" is displayed.
- If you have selected the birthday, " Copy birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected the memorandums, " Copy memorandums" is displayed.

*2 : It is as follows according to the chosen item.

- If you have selected the mail address, " Erase mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected the address, " Erase address" is displayed.
- If you have selected the birthday, " Erase birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected the memorandums, " Erase Memorandums" is displayed.
- If you have selected the delete image, " Delete image" is displayed.

Own number display function menu 2/2

 Reset	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
	Resets (deletes) all the personal data other than your FOMA terminal's phone number and restores the defaults set at the time of purchase. When you use "Display all data" to display the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Storing personal data

1 Press   ▶  **(Edit)** ▶ **Enter your security code and press** .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

2 Specify the respective settings.

 Name	▶ Enter your name and press  .
	Enters your name. Your name can be up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
 Reading	▶ Enter the reading and press  .
	Enters the reading for your name. The reading is entered automatically when you enter your name and need only be modified as necessary. Reading can be up to 32 half-pitch characters long and can include half-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
 Phone number	▶ Enter a phone number and press  ▶ Select an icon and press  .
	Adds a phone number other than the FOMA terminal's own number and selects an icon. The phone number can contain up to 26 digits. The "  <Not stored>" option appears in the personal data edit display. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
 Mail address	▶ Enter your e-mail address and press  ▶ Select an icon and press  .
	Enters the e-mail address and selects an icon. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the personal data edit display. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. See "Entering Text" → P. 522

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

 Address	▶ Enter your postal code and press  ▶ Enter your street address and press . Enters the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. Street addresses can be up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and so on. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
 Birthday	▶ Enter your birthday and press . Enters your birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.	
 Memorandums	▶ Enter a memo and press . Enters a memo (short note). Memos can be up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, pictographs and so on. See "Entering Text" → P. 522	
 Image	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the image displayed when you display your personal data.	
	 Select image	Selects a still image.
	 Release this	Releases a still image.

3 Press (Finish).

Note

● If you change your own e-mail address or store a secret code, the e-mail address stored in this function does not automatically change. In this situation, use this function to change your e-mail address manually.

<In-call Voice memo/Stand-by Voice memo>

Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice

The FOMA terminal provides 2 types of voice memos. "Voice memo" (Stand-by voice memo) allows you to record your own voice from the stand-by display, and "Voice memo" (In-Call voice memo) can be used to record the other party's voice in a voice or video-phone call.

- You can record either 1 in-call voice memo or 1 standby voice memo. Each time you record a voice memo, it overwrites the existing voice memo of the corresponding type.
- You can record voice memos up to 20 seconds long.
- For information on playing and erasing recorded voice memos → P. 72

Recording the other party's voice during a call

Use this procedure to record the other party's voice during a voice call or video-phone call. A single key press allows quick and easy recording of important calls.

1 Hold down (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during a call.



Recording Voice memo display during a voice call

The FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The FOMA terminal beeps again as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the in-call display.

- To cancel recording in progress
- Press  or , or hold down  (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer.
- For the voice call, pressing  also ends the recording.
- Pressing  also ends the call.

Note

- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are recording a voice memo, recording stops.
- You cannot record your or the other party's voice while a call is on hold or while you are using a Function menu option.

Recording yourself in stand-by mode

1 Press ► Select "YES" and press ► Record the voice memo.

When the FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps again as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beeps and the "Recording" display changes back to the Tool list display.

■ To cancel recording in progress

Press ,  or .

Pressing  returns you to the stand-by display but saves the recorded voice memo.

<Voice announce>

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function allows you to record speech for use as original ring tones and answer messages.

- You can make 2 voice recordings: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- Recordings can be up to 15 seconds long.
- Voice recordings made using this function can be set in the following functions:
 - Ring tones
 - Ring tones for calls without caller IDs
 - On hold tone
 - Holding tone
 - Answer messages for recorded messages
 - Alarm clock alarm tone
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - ToDo alarm tone

Recording voice

1 Press ► Select the item to be recorded and press .



2 Press "Record" ► Recording voice.

Speak into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the original display.

■ To cancel recording in progress

Press ,  or .

Pressing  returns you to the stand-by display but saves the recorded voice memo.

Note

- When there is already a voice recording, a message appears notifying you that there is an existing recording. Select "YES" and press  to make a new recording and overwrite the existing recording.
- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are making a voice announce recording, recording stops.

- 1** Press Select the item to be played and press .



- 2** Choose from the following functions:

1 Record	See "Recording voice" → P. 444
2 Play	The recorded sound is played.
3 Erase	Select "YES" and press .

■ To stop playback in progress

Press , or .

<Call time/charge>

Checking Call Times and Charges

This function allows you to check the total call times and charges for voice calls and video-phone calls, and the call time and charge for the previous call.

- The call time is displayed for both voice calls and digital calls and communication (video-phone calls and 64K data transmission). Times for both calls made and calls received are displayed.
- Call costs are only displayed for calls made. However, free calls, such as those made to free dial numbers, are displayed as "¥ 0".
- As call costs are accumulated on FOMA cards, the accumulated cost (starts from December, 2004) is displayed even if you change cards. When the total cost reaches the maximum value, the count stops at the value and does not increase anymore.
*: Call costs accumulated on FOMA card (UIM) in the FOMA terminals released before the 901i series cannot be displayed (Note that they are accumulated on FOMA card (UIM)).
- You can reset displayed call times and call costs.
- Displayed call times and call costs are just a guide and may differ from the exact figure in actuality. Consumption tax is not included in the call costs.

- 1** Press .

Call data	
Last call duration	1h 6m 2s
Last Charge	¥1330
All calls duration	
Talk	3h18m 6s
Digital	1h23m45s
Charge	¥7014
Calls reset	4/10 12:12
Charge reset	4/10 12:12
	1205

Last call duration : Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown regardless of whether the call was incoming or outgoing.

Last charge : Shows the approximate charge for the last call.

All calls duration : Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0 sec"). "Talk" shows the total call time for voice calls. "Digital" shows the total call time for video-phone calls and 64K data communication.

Charge : Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset.

Calls reset : Shows the time and date of the last calls reset.

Charge reset : Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

Note

- If the last voice or digital call time exceeds 199 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds, the call count returns to 0 seconds.
- If the total voice or digital call time exceeds 199 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds, the call count returns to 0 seconds.
- i-mode communications and packet communications are not counted. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received when you purchased your FOMA terminal.
- The time taken to pick up a call, or for the other party to pick up a call is not counted.
- If the "Set time" settings are not set or if "Set time" is set and then "Reset call duration" is not executed at least once, the date and time of time reset and charges reset are not displayed.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off or remove the FOMA card (UIM), the duration and fee shown for the last call reverts to "0 s" and "¥ * * *" respectively.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not affect the all calls duration and charge.

Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset duration>

Use this procedure to reset the total call time and total call charges displayed for the "All calls duration" and "Charge" to zero.

- 1** Press ► Enter your security code and press ► Choose from the following options:

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

1 Reset call duration	► Select "YES" and press .
2 Reset charge duration	► Select "YES" and press ► Enter your PIN2 code and press .

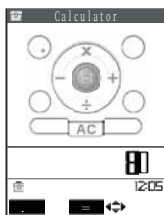
<Calculator>

Using the FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

You can use your FOMA terminal to perform four simple operations (addition, subtraction, multiplication and division).

- The calculator can show up to 10-digit integer and up to 9 digits after the decimal point.
- If the result of a calculation exceeds 10 digits, "E" is displayed.

- 1** Press ► Calculate.



The FOMA terminal displays the entered numbers and calculation result.

■ To calculate "23 + 57"

2 3 + 5 7 =

■ To use negative numbers in a calculation

To calculate using negative amounts, simply insert "-" before the first digit.

- 2 3 + 5 7 =

Composing a Text Memo

You can use your FOMA terminal to write short messages in the form of text memos. You can then paste a completed text memo into your schedule or into mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- Each text memo can contain up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters.

Storing a text memo

- 1

Press .

The "Text memo display" appears.
- 2

Select "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit).

■ To edit the content of an existing text memo

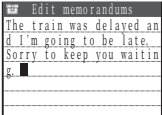
Select the item to be edited and press (Edit).



- 3

Write the memo.

For information on entering text → P. 522



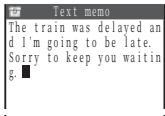
Important

The details of stored text memos may be lost as a result of damages, repairs, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data, and you should make a note of the details of stored text memos as a precautionary measure or back them up onto a miniSD memory card (P. 392). If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 558) and FOMA USB cable (optional) to back up the details of text memos onto your PC.

Checking the details of text memos

- 1

Press ► Select the item to be checked and press ► Check the memo.



Using the function menu on the Text Memo display

In the text memo display... ➡ P. 447

- 1

Press (FUNC) ► Choose from the following options:

Text memo display function menu 1/2

Edit	Edits the text memo.
Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P. 247

③ Edit schedule	See "Adding schedule entries" → P. 434
④ Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
⑤ Send all Ir data	See "Sending all data entries" → P. 413
⑥ Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
⑦ Text memo info	Displays the creation date/time and category.

Text memo display function menu 2/2

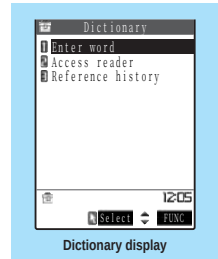
① Category	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the category for the text memo.
① None	Sets no category.
② Personal	Sets the Personal category.
③ Holiday	Sets the Holiday category.
④ Travel	Sets the Travel category.
⑤ Business	Sets the Business category.
⑥ Meeting	Sets the Meeting category.
② Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
③ Delete selected	▶ Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press ● (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
④ Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. About Your Security Codes → P. 142

<Dictionary>

Using Dictionaries

Activating the dictionary

- 1 Press (menu) ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ●
▶ Press (POSS) "Dictionary".
The "Dictionary display" appears.



- 2 Select a search method ▶ Choose from the following options:

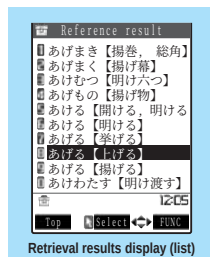
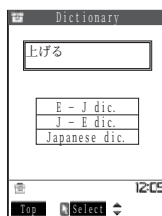
① Enter word	▶ Enter a word and press ●. Enters a word directly. You can enter up to 32 full-pitch or 64 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 522
② Access reader	▶ Select (F) "Dic. (Japanese)" or (2nd) "Dic. (English)" Enters a word from the access reader. See "Scanning Text" → P. 189
③ Reference history	You can then search the dictionary using the history of previously retrieved words. See "Using reference history" → P. 449

3 Select the dictionary type and press .

The "Retrieval results display (list)" appears.

■ To display the previous or next list

Press  in the list display.

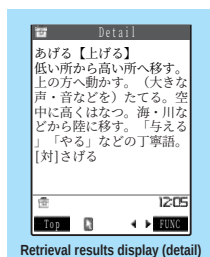


4 Select a word from the retrieval results list and press .

The "Retrieval results display (detail)" appears.

■ To display the previous or next word

Press  in the detail display.



Using the function menu on the Dictionary display

In the dictionary display...

→ P. 448

1 Press (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Dictionary display function menu

1 Add desktop icon

▶ Select "YES" and press .

See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 135

Using reference history

In the dictionary display...

→ P. 448

1 Press "Reference history".

The "Reference history display" appears.



2 Select a word and press .

Using the function menu on the Retrieval Results display

In the reference history display...

➡ P. 449

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Retrieval results display function menu

 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
 Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press  .

Using the function menu on the Retrieval Results (list) display

In the retrieval results display (list)...

➡ P. 449

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Retrieval results (list) display function menu

 Copy	Copies the word retrieved from the dictionary. The copied word can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541
 Refer dic.	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Using the function menu on the Retrieval Results (detail) display

In the retrieval results display (detail)...

➡ P. 449

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Retrieval results (detail) display function menu

 Copy	Copies the word retrieved from the dictionary. The copied word can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P. 541
 Re-reference	See "Searching in the Retrieval Results (detail) display" → P. 450
 Refer dic.	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.
 Refer edit*	This option allows you to refer to the retrieval results while editing text. "Changing the Active Display" → P. 545.

*: Appears when dictionary is called up from the character editing screen.

Searching in the Retrieval Results (detail) display

In the retrieval results display (detail)...

➡ P. 449

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Press  ²/_{ABC} "Re-reference".

2 Use  to move to the start of the text you want to retrieve and then press .

- 3 Use  to highlight to the end of the text you want to retrieve and then press .
- 4 Select the dictionary type and press .
- 5 Select a word from the retrieval results list and press .

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dictionary" from the respective Function menus in the following displays:

- Text edit displays
- Detail displays for sent or received mail and while the enter message body screen for a new mail is displayed.
- Pages on i-mode sites or Internet websites and while a screen memo is displayed.

■ When you activate the dictionary from a text edit display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from the text edit display.

■ When you activate the dictionary from the Sent or Received Mail Detail display or from the Message Entry display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

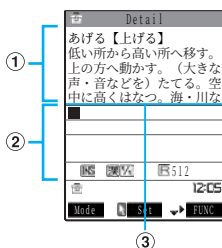
Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from a message in sent or received mail or from a new message you are composing.

■ When you activate the dictionary from a page on an i-mode or Internet site or from a screen memo

You can choose "Enter word", "Site refer (enter)" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Site refer (enter)" allows you to enter the word you want to look up while referring to a screen memo or a page on a site.

● Guide to the dictionary reference display



When you select "Refer edit" or "site refer (enter)", the display is split into top and bottom halves.

Each time you select "Change window" from the Function menu, the window you can use switches between ① and ②.

■ When you selected "Refer edit" from the Retrieval Results display...

- ① shows the Dictionary Detail display.
- ② shows the text edit display.
- ③ shows the separation lines.

To exit the dictionary, switch to window ① and press  (End).

■ When you selected "Site refer (enter)" from a screen memo or a page on a site...

- ① shows the site page or screen memo display.
- ② shows the search term entry display.
- ③ shows the separation lines.

Enter the search term and press . The dictionary selection display appears with the search term entered.

<Earphone/Microphone with Switch>

Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone jack cover and insert the plug of the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. → P. 24

Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch

- Note that connecting the earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is emitting a ring tone may cause the FOMA terminal to accept the call.
- Do not wrap the earphone/microphone with switch cord around the FOMA terminal as this may interfere with signal reception.

Using the switch to accept calls

- The switch can be used while the FOMA terminal is folded.
- The call connection tone and call end tones always sound regardless of the "Keypad sound" setting.

1

When you receive a call, press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.

■ **Voice calls**

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call.

■ **Video-phone calls**

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call using your substitute image. Press  to switch to your own camera image.

2

When you have finished talking, hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

■ **To end the call from the FOMA terminal**

Press .

Note

- You can use the "Earphone" setting to mute the speaker when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- By setting "Automatic answer" to "ON", you can answer an incoming call automatically without pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch. → P. 452
- If "Silent" is selected for "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting, or if the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, no ring tone sounds. However, a ring tone does sound if you are using an "Original" mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- Holding down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer during a call does not switch the FOMA terminal to hands-free mode. Holding down the switch for 1 second or longer actually ends the call.
- If you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting Service" (P. 463), you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch. Note that pressing the switch does not end the current call.
- Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch repeatedly. This may cause calls to be received automatically accept a call.

<Automatic answer>

Connecting an Earphone/Microphone and Receiving Calls Automatically

Default setting

Auto answer: OFF Ring time: 6 seconds

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal automatically answer received voice or video-phone calls without you having to press the switch.

- The FOMA terminal does not automatically answer calls during 64K data communication.

1 Press Choose from the following options:

1 ON	▶ Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds). Enables the Automatic answer function. The FOMA terminal waits for the specified ring time after the call is received and then automatically answers the call. Enter a 3-digit number as the ring time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press .
2 OFF	Disables automatic answering.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal automatically answers a video-phone call, the caller sees your substitute image. To switch to your own image displayed by FOMA terminal's camera during the video-phone call, press .
- You cannot set the ringing time for the Automatic answer to a value equal to the ringing time for the "Remote observation" or "Record message".
- To give this function precedence when it is set at the same time as the "Voice Mail Service" (P. 460) or "Call Forwarding Service" (P. 464), set a shorter ring time for this function than those set for "Voice Mail Service" and "Call Forwarding Service".
- If the ring start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Automatic answer ringing time, the FOMA terminal switches to Automatic answer without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it switches to Automatic answer, set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is longer than the ring start time.
- If you connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal while the FOMA terminal is ringing, Automatic answer does not operate. However, Automatic answer will operate if you disconnect the earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is ringing.

<PLMN Setting>

Selecting Your Provider

If you are using DoCoMo, there is no need to change this setting.

Default setting

DoCoMo

Use this setting to specify your FOMA service provider (PLMN).

- As of February 2005, no communication service providers other than DoCoMo can be selected.

- 1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  ▶ Press  "Other settings"
- ▶ Select "PLMN setting" and press  ▶ Press  "Manual" ▶ Select the PLMN (communications service provider) and press .

<Reset settings>

Resetting the Function Settings

This function allows you to reset the FOMA terminal's function settings to the defaults selected at the time of purchase.

- If the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" is not returned to its default setting.
- To restore the default settings for the i-mode functions, use "Reset". → P. 227
- To reset the "Last URL" setting, use "Reset last URL". → P. 227
- To restore the default settings for the mail functions, use "Reset". → P. 302

- 1 Press     ▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

■ To cancel the reset

Select "NO" and press .

Functions that are reset

Function			Default settings
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	Phone: Level 4 Video-phone: Level 4 Mail: Level 4 Chat mail: Level 4 Message Request: Level 4 Message Free: Level 4
		Select ring tone	Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Chat mail: Pattern 2 Message Request: Pattern 3 Message Free: Pattern 3
		SRS_WOW	OFF
		Vibrator	Phone: OFF Video-phone: OFF Mail: OFF Chat mail: OFF Message Request: OFF Message Free: OFF
		Illumination	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 Message Request: Color 1 Message Free: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12 Adjust color tone: Initial setting
		Manner mode set	Manner mode See "Original manner" → P. 120
		Disp. phonebook image	ON
		Answer setting	Any key answer
		Fold setting	End the call
		Mail/Msg. ring time	Mail: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds Chat mail: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds Message Request: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds Message Free: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds
		Ring time	Set mute seconds: 0 Missed calls display: Display
		Info notice setting	Japanese display: 電子音 English display: ON
	Talk	Noise reduction	ON
		Quality alarm	High tone
		Reconnect control	No tone
		Illumination in talk	OFF
		Call response setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody
	Video-phone	Image quality	Normal
		Camera image sending	ON
		Select image	On hold: Pre-installed Holding: Pre-installed Substitutive image: Chara-den Record message: Pre-installed Preparing: Pre-installed Voice memo: Pre-installed

Function			Default settings
Settings	Video-phone	Voice call auto switch	OFF
		Remote observation	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 secs. Set: OFF
		Disp. settings V-phone	Main display: Other image Display size: Disp. size
	Display	Display setting	Stand-by display: Sea Wake-up display: Dice Edit message: It returns to the state where it does not entered. Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP Dialing: Standard VP Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Check new message: Standard
		Display light	Lighting: ON (lit) + Saver (5-minute delay) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2
		Display design	Color pattern: Standard Background1: OFF Background2: Pattern 1
		Indicator display	Display information Clock type: Digital1 Phone number: ON Mail: OFF Display Connection: ON+Display light: OFF (Display clock only settings → P. 126)
		Font	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium
		Desktop	Camera
		Original menu	Own number Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code
		Menu display set	Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: Detail Theme: Like Sweets
		Viewer settings	Picture
		Automatic display	OFF
	Call time/charge	Call time display	ON
	Clock	Clock display	Display: As per "Select language" setting Size: Big
		Alarm setting	Alarm preferred
	Lock/ Security	Self mode	OFF
		Keypad dial lock	OFF
		Reject unknown	Accept
		Call setting w/o ID	Accept all/As for normal ring tones
		Scanning function	ON
		Remote all lock	OFF Accept phone No.: Revert to "Not recorded" Monitoring: 3m. Received calls: 5

Function			Default settings
Settings	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	60 seconds
		Set check new message	Mail: ON Message Request: ON Message Free: ON
		Host selection	i-mode host User setting host: Reverts to "Not stored"
		SMS center selection	DoCoMo User setting: Revert to not recorded
		Certificate	All valid
		Certificate host	DoCoMo User setting host: Reverts to "Not stored"
	i-α.ppli settings	Display software info	Not display
		α.Display light	Depend on system
		α.Vibrator	Depend on system
		α.Indicator display	Depend on system
	External option	Earphone	Earphone + Speaker
		Automatic answer	OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds
	Other settings	Keypad sound	ON
		Charge sound	ON
		Side keys guard	OFF
		Character input method	Input mode: All ON Prior mode: Mode 1 (5-touch) Prediction: ON Guidance: ON T9 change mode: T9 kanji change mode
		Record display set	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed cal. ON
		Sub-address	ON
		Prefix setting	WORLD CALL (009130010)
		Int'l dial setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country Code setting: アメリカ (Country code: 1) User setting: Revert to not recorded
	Other settings	Neuopointer	Pointer: ON Speed: Simple
		Select icons setting	ON
		USB mode setting	Communication mode
Tools	Camera	Camera	Photo mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: CIF (352 × 288) Storage setting: Fine mode Image quality Auto correction: ON Color mode set: Normal Photo mode: Portrait Image tuning: Auto Select frame: OFF
			Movie mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: Large (176 × 144) File size setting: Restricted (Short) Storage setting: Normal Image quality Brightness: 0 White balance: Auto Color mode set: Normal Photo mode: Portrait Image tuning: Auto Movie type set: Normal

Function	Default settings	
Tools	Camera	Photo mode/Movie mode Shutter sound: Sound 1 Auto timer: OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.) Auto save set: OFF File restriction: File unrestricted Display size: Actual size
	Schedule	Monthly display User icon settg.: Reverts to "Not recorded".
	Alarm clock	All OFF
	Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds
	Forwarding image	ON
Network service	Arrival call act	Answer
Phonebook	Utilities	All OFF
	Restrictions	All OFF
Own data	Common phrases	Set phrases reset (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)
Data box	My picture	Set image disp.: Normal
	i-motion	Listing: Title + image (except for miniSD folder) File name + image (miniSD) Set image disp.: Actual size
	Chara-den	Rec. Chara-den: Photo mode Substitute image: Domo Set image display: Fit in display Select size: QCIF (176 ×144) Movie type set: Video + Voice Storage setting: Normal
Other functions	Volume	Level 4
	Manner mode	OFF
	Driving mode	OFF
	V-phone settings	Brightness: 0 Display light: All time ON
	Phonebook search Last one function ^{*1}	Reading search
	Desktop icon Last one function ^{*1}	Page 1, left edge

*1 : "Last one function" is the function that follows the selected function at the last operation.

Note

● A reset cannot be made in the following situations:

- When another function is operating
- When "All lock" is set
- When "PIM lock" is set

Resetting FOMA terminal to the Default Settings

The registered data is deleted and the default settings for each function are restored.

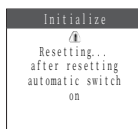
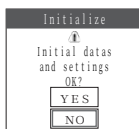
- Pre-installed data is not erased. Even if pre-installed i-α ppli software or Chara-den is deleted, it is restored when the terminal is reset.
- See "Resetting the Function Settings" (P. 453) for the setting to restore the default settings.
- The functions that are subject to "Reset settings" and the following functions return to the default settings.

• Mail data	• Mail folder	• Template	• Color palette
• Chat member	• Mail settings	• Bookmark	• Screen memo
• Last URL	• Internet	• Message	• i-mode settings
• i-α ppli software	• Software setting	• Auto start set	• i-α ppli info
• Call time/Charge	• Set time	• Change security code	• Secret mode
• Secret only mode	• Pause dial	• My picture	• i-motion
• Melody	• Chara-den	• Schedule	• Alarm clock
• ToDo	• Text memo	• Record msg.	• Voice memo
• Voice announce	• Access reader	• Bar code reader	• Dictionary
• Additional service	• Multi number	• Phonebook	• Group setting
• Own number	• Received calls	• Redial/Dialed calls	• Received address
• Sent address	• Mail member	• Chat group	• Common phrases
• Own dictionary	• Download dictionary		
- Group names and folder names edited by you are restored to the default settings.
- Protected data is also deleted.
- Check the battery is fully charged before initialization. Initialization may not be possible if the battery is low on charge.
- Do not turn the power off while initialization is performed.
- While initialization is performed, other functions cannot be used. A voice call and a video-phone call cannot be received.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "Other settings" ► Select "Initialize" and press ► Enter security code and press .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

- 2 Select "YES" and then press ► Select "YES" and then press .



Initialization begins.

Initialization may take a few moments.

After the completion of initialization, the FOMA terminal automatically restarts.

■ If initialization is not completed correctly

After turning the power on, select "OK" and then press . This restarts initialization again.

Note

- While other functions are active, initialization cannot be done.
- Data saved, registered or set in the FOMA card (UIM) or miniSD memory card is not deleted.
- The settings for data communication set by PC are not deleted.
- When there is a large amount of data to be deleted, initialization might take a longer time.

Network Services

Available Network Services	460
Voice Mail Service (Paid).....	460
Call Waiting Service (Paid).....	463
Call Forwarding Service (Free).....	464
Nuisance Call Barring Service (Paid)	466
Caller ID Request Service (Free)	466
Dual Network Service (Paid)	467
English Guidance (Free).....	468
Service Dial	469
Handling Calls Received During a Call.....	469
Setting Up Remote access <Remote access>	471
Multi Number (Not available as of February 2005)	471
Adding and Using Services <Additional Services>	471

To use the "Voice mail", "Call waiting", "Call forwarding", "Nuisance call barring", "Dual network" and "i-mode" services, you must subscribe beforehand. For further information on the network services, refer to contact information provided on the back cover of the Manual. (Check the phone number carefully before dialing.)

Subscribe to the "Voice mail", "Call waiting", "Call forwarding", "Nuisance call barring" and "i-mode" services via the DoCoMo eSite. See the back cover of the Manual for details.

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the services and how they are used.

Service name	Description	Subscription required	Monthly usage fees	Ref. page
Voice Mail Service	Stores caller messages on your behalf.	Yes	Yes	P. 460
Call Forwarding Service	Forwards calls to a preset number.	Yes	No	P. 464
Call Waiting Service	Allows you to take calls from other people while you are on the phone.	Yes	Yes	P. 463
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Automatically bars calls from nuisance callers or repeated wrong number calls.	Yes	Yes	P. 466
Caller ID Notification Service	Provides the FOMA terminal phone number to callers when you make a call.	No	No	P. 45
Caller ID Request Service	Plays a message to callers who do not provide a caller ID by asking them to call again with their caller ID provided.	No	No	P. 466
Driving Mode	Plays a message to callers saying that you are driving and cannot take the call.	No	No	P. 68
Dual Network Service	Allows the same phone number to be shared by the FOMA terminal and mova terminal.	Yes	Yes	P. 467
English Guidance	Allows you to select English as the language used in the spoken guidance messages provided when you make or receive calls or set up network services.	No	No	P. 468
Short Message Service (SMS)	Provides a simple way to send and receive short text messages.	No	No	P. 310
i-mode	Allows you to connect to i-mode sites (programs) and use i-mode mail, etc.	Yes	Yes	P. 198

- If the  icon appears for the service being used when you are connected to the Network Service Center, the service cannot be used.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu. → P. 471
- For more details of the network services, refer to the "Network Services Operation Guide".

Voice Mail Service (Paid)

Subscription required	Yes

If you receive a voice call when the  icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, this service plays an answer message to the caller and stores the caller's message on your behalf. You can check your stored messages from anywhere in Japan.

- The Voice mail service cannot be used from your FOMA terminal when the  icon is displayed. If you use "Remote access" (P. 471) to enable remote service access beforehand, you can access the Voice mail service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your "Network security code" (P. 142).
- To use the Voice mail service, you must pay a monthly usage fee plus the call charges that apply when you listen to your recorded messages.

About the Voice Mail service

- The Voice Mail Service Center will store up to 20 Voice mail messages, each of which can be up to approximately 3 minutes long.
- Messages are held at the center for up to 72 hours.
- If you receive a video-phone call, the call is not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center even when Voice Mail is activated and the FOMA terminal continues to emit the ring tone.
- The Voice mail service is automatically suspended when the "Call Forwarding Service" (P. 464) is activated.
- If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID Request Service" (P. 466) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and cannot leave a message at the Voice mail service center.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service operation

Voice mail service activated



Your FOMA terminal receives a voice call.



You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice mail service center



The caller records a message.

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answer message, he or she can interrupt the answer message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing **[# 39]**.



The Voice mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message.



You listen to the recorded message.

Note

- You can also choose to simply leave a message saying that you cannot answer the call. Select this option in "Setting".
- You can still make and receive calls while the Voice mail service is activated.
- If you receive a voice call when the Voice mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within that time, it is transferred to the Voice mail service center. A "missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display and an entry is recorded as "Missed calls" in the "Received Calls".
- Voice calls received while you are talking on the FOMA terminal are also transferred to the Voice mail service center. → P. 470

Activating the Voice mail service

- 1 Press **[menu]** ▶ Select **[Service]** and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[3 DEF]** "Voice mail" ▶ Press **[2 ON]** "Activate" ▶ Select "YES" and press **[OK]**.



- 2 Select "YES" and press **[OK]** ▶ Enter the ringing time (000-120 seconds) and press **[OK]**.

If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the Received Calls record.

If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.

■ To change the ringing time only

Press **[4 DEF]** "Set ringing time" ▶ Enter the ringing time (000-120 seconds) and press **[OK]**.

■ To deactivate the Voice Mail service

Press **[3 OFF]** "Deactivate" ▶ Select "YES" and press **[OK]**.

Note

- To give priority to Voice mail when "Record message" is set at the same time, ensure that the ringing time set for Voice mail is shorter than the ringing time set for "Record message".
- If the ring start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Voice mail ringing time, the FOMA terminal transfers the call to Voice mail without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to Voice Mail, set a ringing time for Voice mail that is longer than the ring start time.

Checking your Voice mail service settings

Use the procedure below to check your settings at the Voice mail service center. You can also modify your settings while checking them.

- 1 Press **[menu]** ▶ Select **[Service]** and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[3 DEF]** "Voice mail" ▶ Press **[5 TO HLC]** "Status request".

The "Status request display" appears. Check your current Voice mail service settings in this display.



Using the function menu in the Status Request display

In the status request display...

→ P. 461

- 1 Press **[OK]** (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Status Request display Function menu

① Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
② Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
③ Set ringing time	Changes the ring time.

Changing your Voice Mail service settings using spoken guidance

- ① Press ► Select and press ► Press “Voice mail” ► Press “Setting” ► Select “YES” and press .

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center.
Then specify your settings by following the spoken instructions.

Note

- You cannot operate this function during a call.
- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys (- , , , and) in response to the spoken instructions, note that pressing not the end of the call. In this event, press again.

Having the FOMA terminal ring when your recorded messages increase <Message notification>

Use this procedure to have the FOMA terminal emit a ring tone when the number of recorded messages held at the Voice mail service center increases.

- When the number increases, the ring tone set for “Mail” in “Select ring tone” is heard for approximately 5 seconds.
- The FOMA terminal only rings when the stand-by display is shown.

- ① Press ► Select and press ► Press “Voice mail” ► Press “Message notification” ► Select “YES” and press .

Checking for recorded messages <Check messages>

- ① Press .

After checking for messages, the FOMA terminal displays a message saying that it has finished checking for messages. If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail Service Center, the (the icon for “Voice mail”) and (the desktop icon for “Voice mail”) desktop icons are displayed. The number in the Voice Mail desktop icon changes according to the number of stores messages (, , ... (10 messages or more)).

Note

- The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.
- Once you have checked for messages, you may not be able to use this function to check the messages again.

Playing recorded messages

- You cannot use this procedure during a call.

- ① Press ► Select and press ► Press “Voice mail” ► Press “Play messages” ► Select “YES” and press .

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center.
Then play your recorded messages by following the spoken instructions.

Note

- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys (- , , , and) in response to the spoken instructions, note that pressing not the end of the call. In this event, press again.

Erasing the Voice mail icons

Use this procedure to clear voice mail icons () from the stand-by display.

- ① Press ► Select and press ► Press “Voice mail” ► Press “Erase icon” ► Select “YES” and press .

Note

- Erasing the icon does not erase the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon is displayed again when you check for messages.

Activating the Notice Call Service

When you receive a voice call while the icon is displayed or the FOMA terminal is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (P. 313) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time and the caller ID) when you turn the FOMA terminal on or move back into the service area.

- You can set this function regardless of whether you have activated the Voice mail service.

- ① Press ► Select and press ► Press “Voice mail” ► Press “Activate notice call” ► Select the following options:

① All notice call	► Select “YES” and press .
	Notifies you of all received calls.

Notify caller ID only	▶ Select "YES" and press Notifies you only of calls where a caller ID was provided.

- **To deactivate the Notice Call service**
Press "Deactivate notice call" ▶ Select "YES" and press .

- **To check the Notice Call service**
Press ▶ Press "Notice call status".

Call Waiting Service (Paid)

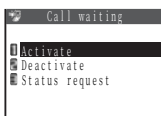
Subscription required Yes

The Call waiting service enables you to answer another voice call while you are talking on the FOMA terminal. You can also use this service to put your current call on hold while you call someone else.

- You cannot use Call waiting from the FOMA terminal in locations where is displayed.
 - To use Call waiting, select "Answer" in "Arrival call act" (P. 469) beforehand. If another setting is selected, you will not be able to answer calls received during a call when Call waiting is activated.
 - If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID Request Service" (P. 466) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and you cannot answer the call.
 - The Call waiting service is not available in the following situations:
 - During a call to a 3-digit number such as 110, 119, 118, 117* or 104.
 - While you are dialing or waiting for the called party to answer your call.
 - While you are on a call to a 4-digit phone number to specify network service settings, such as 1411 (activate the Voice mail service) or 1420 (deactivate the Call forwarding service).
 - If you have subscribed to the "Voice mail service" and are connected to the Voice mail service center to listen to recorded messages, etc.
- *: If you receive a voice call while on a call to 117, you hear the Call waiting tone (repeated soft double-beeps) but you cannot answer the call.

Activating Call waiting

- 1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press "Call waiting" ▶ Press "Activate" ▶ Select "YES" and press .

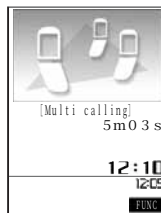


- **To deactivate the Call Waiting Service**
Press "Deactivate" ▶ Select "YES" and press .
- **To check your Call Waiting settings**
Press "Status request".

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received call

- 1 When you hear the Call Waiting tone (repeated soft double-beeps) during a voice call, press or .

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new call.



- 2 Switch back to your first caller.

- **To end the call with the second caller**
Press and then press or .
This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to your first call.
- **To put the second caller on hold**
Press .
This puts the second caller on hold and returns you to your first call.
You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .
- **To end the call on hold**
Press (FUNC) ▶ Press "End held call".

Note

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another call while the "Multi calling" is shown, a message appears saying that you can answer the second call by ending the first call even on the phone or on hold. To end the call on hold, press , select "End held call" from the function menu, and then press or . To end the current voice call, press , , and then or in this order.

Ending the current voice call to answer another call

- 1 When you hear the call waiting tone (repeated soft double-beeps) during a voice call, press .

The first call is ended and the ring tone sounds. When the i-motion is set for ring tone, "Pattern 1" sounds.

2 Press or .

The FOMA terminal answers the new call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to call someone else

Use this procedure to put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

1 Dial another phone number during your current call and press .

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.
You can also make calls by searching the phonebook.
To search the phonebook → P. 98



2 Switch back to the first call.

■ To end the new call

Press  and then press  or .

This ends the new call and returns you to your first call.

■ To put the new call on hold

Press .

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to your first call.

You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

Note

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.

Call Forwarding Service (Free)

Subscription required Yes

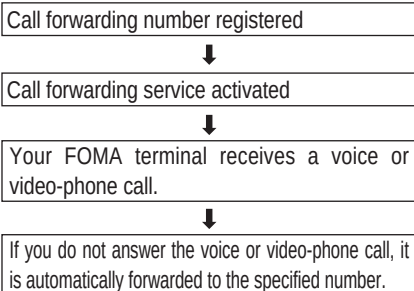
If you receive a voice or video-phone call when the  icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, the Call forwarding service forwards the voice or video-phone call to a previously registered forwarding number such as your home or office phone.

- You cannot use Call forwarding in locations where  is displayed. If you use "Remote access" (P. 471) to enable remote service access beforehand, you can to access the Call forwarding service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your "Network security code" (P. 142).

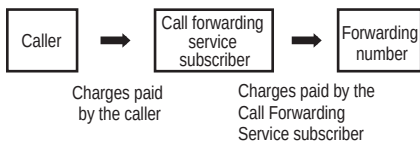
About the Call forwarding service

- You can register one Call forwarding number.
- Received video-phone calls can only be forwarded to a video-phone-compatible phone that conforms to the 3G-324M standard (P. 76).
- The sender sees the "Forwarding. Please wait..." message until the call is forwarded to the forwarding number.
- The Call Forwarding Service is automatically deactivated when you activate the "Voice mail service".
- If you receive a call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID Request Service" (P. 466) is activated, a guidance is played requesting the caller to notify his/her Caller ID. The call forwarding is not available for this call.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service operation



Call Forwarding Service call charges



- There is no charge for calls made to register forwarding numbers, to activate or deactivate the service or to specify the ring tone duration.
- When calls are forwarded, charges for calls from the location registration area for the FOMA terminal used to subscribe to the Call forwarding service to the forwarding number are incurred by the service subscriber.

These charges can increase markedly if you leave the FOMA terminal switched off after you have set forwarding in a remote location.

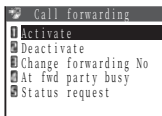
For example, if you set your company's phone number in Tokyo as the forwarding number and activate the Call forwarding service in Osaka when you are there on a business trip, this sets Osaka as the location registration area. If you then leave the FOMA terminal turned off, all forwarded calls are charged at the Osaka-Tokyo rate. Make sure to turn on your FOMA terminal when you return from a remote location, so that the location registration is updated.

Note

- You can still make voice and video-phone calls when the Call forwarding service is activated.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call when the Call forwarding service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within that time, it is transferred to the forwarding number. A "missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display and an entry is recorded as "Missed calls" in the "Received calls" record.
- Received calls are automatically forwarded without the FOMA terminal ringing if your FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off. You (the Call forwarding service subscriber) are charged for the call from your FOMA terminal to the forwarding number.
- Calls received while you are on another call can also be forwarded. → P. 470
- When necessary, Call forwarding can be deactivated by a request from the forwarding number instead of the subscriber (you).
- You cannot accept collect calls (calls paid for by the receiver) while call forwarding is in progress.

Activating Call forwarding

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press "Call forwarding" ► Press "Activate".



■ To deactivate the Call Forwarding Service

Press "Deactivate" ► Select "YES" and press .

■ To change the forwarding number only

Press "Change forwarding No" ► Enter the new forwarding number and press ► If Call forwarding is already active, press "Change No.". If it is inactive, press "Change No. + Activate".

■ To check your Call forwarding settings

Press "Status request".

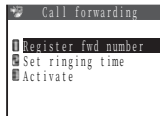
- 2 Set the forwarding number and the ringing time.

■ To set the forwarding number

Press "Register fwd number" ► Enter the forwarding number and press . Once you set the number, a star (★) appears next to "Register fwd number". Use to enter the number from the phonebook. To search the phonebook → P. 98

■ To set the ringing time

Press "Set ringing time" ► Enter the ringing time (000-120 seconds) and press . Once you set the ringing time, a star (★) appears next to "Set ringing time". If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record. If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.



- 3 Press "Activate" ► Select "YES" and press .

Note

- Even when Call forwarding is activated, received video-phone calls can only be forwarded to a video-phone-compatible phone that conforms to the 3G-324M standard (P. 76). Check the forwarding phone specifications before specifying the Call Forwarding settings. Note also that the person making the video-phone call sees no guidance messages (If the call comes from this FOMA terminal, the call forwarding message appears on the screen).
- You cannot register toll-free numbers or 3-digit numbers, such as 110, as forwarding numbers.
- Note that you should provide an explanatory forwarding announcement for callers if you are forwarding calls to an internal company number PBX, a QUICKCAST* pager or fax number.
- If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ringing time".
- To give priority to Call forwarding when "Record message" is set at the same time, ensure that the ringing time set for Call Forwarding is shorter than the ringing time set for "Record message".
- To give priority to Call forwarding when "Remote observation" is set at the same time, ensure that the ringing time set for Call Forwarding is shorter than the ringing time set for "Remote observation".
- If the ring start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Call forwarding ringing time, the FOMA terminal forwards the call to Call forwarding service without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to the Call forwarding service, set a ringing time for Call forwarding that is longer than the ring start time.

* As of January 2001, the paging service provided by NTT DoCoMo is known as QUICKCAST.

Forwarding call to the Voice mail service center when the forwarding number is busy <At fwd party busy>

When the forwarding number is busy, received voice calls can be transferred to the Voice mail service center.

- You must be subscribed to the Voice Mail Service.

- 1 Press ► Select and press ► Press "Call forwarding" ► Press "At fwd party busy" ► Select "YES" and press .

Nuisance Call Barring Service (Paid)

Subscription required Yes

The Nuisance call barring service allows you to register specific phone numbers, such as those nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and a call rejected message is sent to the caller.

- You cannot use the Nuisance call barring service when  is displayed.
- If you receive a video-phone call from a barred caller, the call is ended without a call rejected message being sent to the caller.
- You can register up to 30 barred numbers.
- If the Nuisance Call Barring Service is activated at the same time as other network services, it operates as shown in the table below.

Network service	Handling of received calls
Voice mail service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no recorded message is stored.
Call forwarding service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and the call is not forwarded.
Call waiting service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller.
Caller ID request service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no caller ID request is sent to the caller.
Driving mode	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no Driving mode message is sent to the caller.

- Calls barred by the Nuisance call barring service are not logged in the "Received calls" and no "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed.

Registering the last received nuisance call for call barring <Register caller>

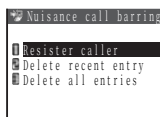
Use this procedure to add the last caller to your list of barred callers.

- You can register callers who do not provide a caller ID.
- You cannot bar overseas callers.
- You cannot check your list of barred callers. You should make a written note of the phone numbers you have registered as barred callers.

- 1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  "Nuisance call barring" ▶ Press  "Resister caller" ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press .

■ If there are already 30 registered numbers

A message appears asking whether to delete the oldest stored number and add the new number. To add the new number to the list, delete the oldest number as instructed by the message and then store the number of the last received nuisance call as a barred caller.



Note

- Received calls that were not answered and calls from yourself cannot be stored.
- Call barred by this function are not logged in the "Received calls".
- If you receive a video-phone call from a phone number registered in the Nuisance Call Barring Service, the video-phone call is ended with no "Call rejected" message sent to the caller.
- You can also specify a phone number by keypad operation and store it as a barred number. To do this, make a voice call to "144" directly from the stand-by display and then store the number as directed by the instructions.

Removing numbers from the barred callers list

- 1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  "Nuisance call barring".

- 2 Remove the barred phone number.

■ To remove 1 barred number from the end of the list

Press  "Delete recent entry" ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press .

Only the last stored phone number can be removed.

Repeating this procedure does not remove any of the preceding barred numbers.

■ To remove all the barred numbers in the list

Press  "Delete all entries" ▶ Select "YES" and press  ▶ Press .

Caller ID Request Service (Free)

Subscription required No

When you receive a voice call or video-phone call from a caller who has not provided his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID request service sends the caller a message "Failed to connect" and then automatically ends the call. This service provides an effective way to prevent problems with calls from unknown callers and makes using the FOMA terminal safer.

- You cannot use the Caller ID request service when  is displayed.

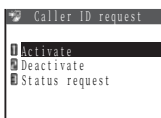
- This service only operates when the caller has deliberately withheld his or her caller ID using the "User unset" reason setting. Calls where the reason is "Payphone" or "Not supported" are not intercepted by this service.
- There is no charge for activating or deactivating the Caller ID request service.
- Call charges while the message is sent to the caller are paid by the caller.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Voice mail", "Call forwarding", "Call waiting" service or "Driving mode", the Caller ID request service has precedence and intercepts incoming calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Nuisance call barring" service, "Nuisance call barring" service has precedence and rejects received calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Call setting w/o ID" (P. 155), the Caller ID request service has precedence.
- Calls rejected by the Caller ID request service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed.

Activating the Caller ID Request Service

- 1 Press **[menu]** ▶ Select **[Service]** and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[P. 155]** "Caller ID request" ▶ Press **[1]** "Activate" ▶ Select "YES" and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[OK]**.

- To deactivate the Caller ID request service
Press **[2]** "Deactivate" ▶ Select "YES" and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[OK]**.

- To check your Caller ID request service settings
Press **[3]** "Status request".



Note

- The caller ID request message is not sent to callers in the following situations:
 - When the caller ID request message cannot be displayed, such as calls from an NTT payphone or from overseas.
 - When the caller is using the "Call count display service" or "Charge meter", or using 64K data communication, the call is connected without the caller ID request message being sent.
 - Video-phone calls are connected without the caller ID request message being sent and the "Connection failed" message appears on the caller's terminal.

Dual Network Service (Paid)

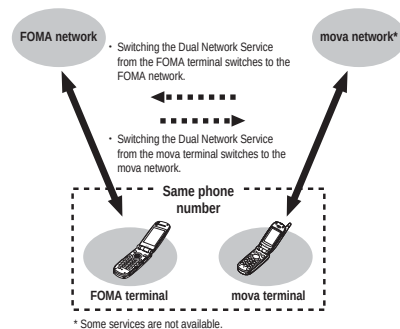
Subscription required	Yes

The Dual network service allows a FOMA terminal, with its advanced communications services, and a mova terminal, which offers an extremely extensive service area, to each use the same phone number.

- You cannot use the Dual network service when is displayed.
- For detailed information on the Dual network service and how to access the service from a mova terminal, refer to the "Network Services Operation Guide".

About the Dual Network Service

- The Dual network service can be switched either from a FOMA terminal or from the mova terminal when it is unable to use services.

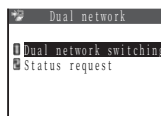


* Some services are not available.

- You cannot access the network from both the FOMA terminal and the mova terminal at the same time.

Switching from a mova terminal to a FOMA terminal

- 1 Press **[menu]** ▶ Select **[Service]** and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[1]** "Dual network" ▶ Press **[1]** "Dual network switching".



- 2 Select "YES" and press **[OK]** ▶ Enter your Network security code and press **[OK]**.

About network security code → P. 142

- Checking whether the FOMA terminal can be used

Press **[2]** "Status request" ▶ Press **[OK]**.

Note

- Before switching networks, be sure to end the communication with the currently available terminal.
- If you use this procedure when the Dual network function is already active, the "Service currently active" message appears.
- To switch networks so that you can use the mova terminal, switch networks from the mova terminal. This cannot be done from the FOMA terminal.

English Guidance (Free)Subscription required **No**

This function allows you to set English as the language used in the guidance messages used when network services such as "Voice mail" service and "Call forwarding" service are set. This function also sets English as the language used in the guidance messages sent to people who call you by services such as the "Caller ID request" service.

For a call between DoCoMo phones, the settings on the caller's phone when the call is made take precedence over the settings on the recipient's phone when the call is received.

The table below shows the languages that can be set.

	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing	Japanese	Guidance messages played in Japanese.
	English	Guidance messages played in English.
Incoming (guidance messages played to callers)	Japanese	Guidance messages played in Japanese.
	Japanese+English	Guidance messages played in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+Japanese	Guidance messages played in English first and then in Japanese.

1 Press ► Select and press ► Press ► Press "English guidance" ► Press "Guidance setting".

■ To check the guidance setting

Press "Status request".

**1****Outgoing + Incoming**

► Choose from the following options:

Sets the language for outgoing and incoming calls. Set the language for outgoing calls first and then for incoming calls.

1**Japanese**

► Choose from the following options:

Sets Japanese as the language used guidance instructions for outgoing calls.

1**Japanese**

► Select "YES" and press .

Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and incoming calls.

2**Japanese + English**

► Select "YES" and press .

Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.

3**English + Japanese**

► Select "YES" and press .

Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.

1**Outgoing + Incoming****2****English**

► Choose from the following options:

Sets English as the language used guidance instructions for outgoing calls.

1**Japanese**

► Select "YES" and press .

Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese for incoming calls.

		Japanese + English ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
		English + Japanese ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
Outgoing call	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the language for outgoing calls only.	
	Japanese ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese.	
	English ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to English.	
Incoming call	▶ Choose from the following options: Sets the language for incoming calls only.	
	Japanese ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese.	
	Japanese + English ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese + English.	
	English + Japanese ▶ Select “YES” and press . Sets the guidance instructions language to English + Japanese.	

Note

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, a public or other mobile phone. There are no call charges for setting up or checking this function.

Service Dial

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general helpdesk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

- 1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press ▶ Press “Service dialing number”.

1 ドコモ故障問合せ	▶ Press . Calls the DoCoMo service desk.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	▶ Press . Calls the DoCoMo general information desk.

Note

- You can only use this function if the contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information desk and service desk are stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
- The displays shown and dialed phone numbers may differ depending on the FOMA card (UIM) used.

Handling Calls Received During a Call

Use this procedure to specify how voice calls, video-phone calls and 64K data communication that arrives during a call are handled. This function is particularly useful if you have not subscribed to the “Call waiting service”.

- If you have not subscribed to “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service, received voice calls are not transferred to the Voice mail service center or forwarding number.

**Handling a call received during another call
<Arrival call act>**

Default setting Answer

- 1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ Press “Arrival call act”
▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Voice mail	Transfers voice calls received during a call to the Voice mail service center regardless of the “Call waiting” service and “Voice mail” service settings.
Call forwarding	Transfers voice and video-phone calls and 64K data communication received during a call to the forwarding number regardless of the “Call waiting” service and “Call forwarding” service settings.
Call rejection	Rejects voice and video-phone calls and 64K data communication received during a call.

4 Answer	When another voice call arrives while talking on the phone, the new call is handled by the "Call waiting" service if "Call waiting" service is activated. During a voice call ("Call waiting" service is deactivated) or during a video-phone call or 64K data communication, the call can be handled in any of the following ways: - You can end the current voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication and answer the received voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication. - You can use the function menu to manually handle a voice call, video-phone call, or 64K data communication received during a call. → P. 470 - If "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service is activated, calls can be handled using those service settings.

Note

- If a voice call, a video-phone call or a 64K data communication comes in while you are talking when "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service is activated, that call or communication may be connected to the voice mail service center or forwarded to specified destination after the incoming call image appears.

Activating the call handling settings during another call <Set arrival act>

- You cannot specify incoming call settings during a call where "📞" is being displayed.

- Press ► Select and press ► Press "Set arrival act" ► Choose from the following options:

1 Activate	► Select "YES" and press .
2 Deactivate	► Select "YES" and press .
3 Status request	► Select "YES" and press .

Note

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, a public phone or other mobile phone. There are no call charges for setting up or checking this function.
- If you are subscribed to "Voice mail service" or "Call forwarding service", this function is activated.

Ending the current voice call or 64K data communication to answer a received call

- When the current call and new call are the same type

<Example: Ending the current voice call to answer a received call>

- When you hear a repeated soft double-beep during the call, press .

This ends the current call and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

- **Video-phone or 64K data communication**
When you end the call, a message appears notifying you that you can answer the other call. Press ► Press .

- Press or .

This accepts the incoming voice call.

- **64K data communication**
Take the call on the PC.

- When the current and incoming calls are different types

If you receive a video-phone call or 64K data communication during a voice call, or if you receive a voice call or 64K data communication during a video-phone call, or if you receive a voice call or video-phone during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end your current call or 64K data communication so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending an active video-phone call to answer an incoming voice call>

- When you hear the double tones ("bibip...bibip...") during a call and a message* appears, press .

*: A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the current call.

- Press ► Select "V-phone call" and then press ► Press .

- Press or .

Note

- If you have activated the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service and the ringing time expires while you can still hear the double tones ("bibip...bibip..."), the call is connected to the Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number.

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Voice mail or Call forwarding

<Example: When "Set arrival act" is set to "Activate" and "Arrival call act" is set to "Answer">

- When you hear a repeated soft double-beep during the call, press (FUNC).

2 Choose how the received call will be handled.

- **To reject the received call**
Press **[1]** "Call rejection".
- **To forward the received call to the forwarding number**
Press **[2]** "Call forwarding".
- **To transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center**
Press **[3]** "Voice mail".
In any of the above cases, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote access>

Setting Up Remote access

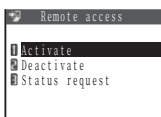
This function allows you to use the "Voice mail" service and "Call forwarding" services from a remote location such as a payphone.

Activating remote access

- 1 Press **[menu]** ▶ Select **[service]** and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[0]** "Remote access" ▶ Press **[1]** "Activate" ▶ Select "YES" and press **[OK]**.

- **To deactivate remote access**
Press **[2]** "Deactivate" ▶ Select "YES" and press **[OK]**.

- **To check your remote access settings**
Press **[3]** "Status request" ▶ Press **[OK]**.



Note

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, a public phone, or other mobile phone. There are no call charges for setting up or checking this function.
- This function is deactivated when you apply for the "Voice mail service" and "Call forwarding service".

- Please read "Network Services Operation Guide" about the details of the method of operating a network service from a public telephone etc.

Multi number (Not available as of February 2005)

This service has yet to begin as of February 2005.

<Additional Services>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new services on your FOMA terminal.

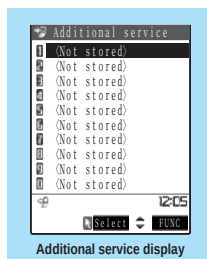
When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "Enter number" and "Service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You should store the number and code on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

- You can add up to 10 new network services.
- Enter the service code in the "Enter USSD number" field in the display for adding new services.

Adding a new service

- 1 Press **[menu]** ▶ Select **[service]** and press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Press **[3]** "Additional service" ▶ Press **[1]** "Additional service".

The "Additional service display" appears.



- 2 Select "<Not stored>".
- 3 Press **[OK]** (FUNC) ▶ Press **[1]** "Add new service".

- **To change the setting**
Press **[OK]** (FUNC) ▶ **[2]** "Edit".

- 4 Enter the service name and press **[OK]**.

The service name can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

For information on entering text → P. 522

5 Select the connection method.

1 Enter number	▶ Enter the number and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Uses the number to connect. Enter a 20-digit number.
2 Enter USSD number	▶ Enter the number and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Uses the service code to connect. The number can be up to 40 digits long.

Note

- To use this service, you must confirm or enter the "Enter number" or "Service code" provided by DoCoMo. The "Enter number" is the number used to connect to the Service Center, while the "Service Code" (USSD) is the code used for notifying the Service Center.

Using the newly added service

- 1 Press ▶ Select and press ● ▶ Press ▶ Press "Additional service" ▶ Press "Additional service".

- 2 Select a service and press ●.

Using the function menu in the Additional Service display

In the additional service display... → P. 471

- 1 Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Additional Service display function menu

1 Add new service	Adds a setting.
2 Edit	Edits a setting.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press ●.

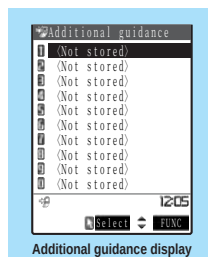
Adding additional guidance

When you use your "service code (USSD)" to access an added service, you can use this procedure to store the additional guidance messages for commands posted from the network.

- You can store up to 10 additional guidance messages.

- 1 Press ▶ Select and press ● ▶ Press ▶ Press "Additional service" ▶ Press "Additional guidance".

The "Additional guidance display" appears.



- 2 Select "<Not stored>".

- 3 Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Press "Add new guidance".

■ To change the setting

Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Press "Edit".

- 4 Enter the command and press ●.

The command can include up to 20 digits.

- 5 Enter the additional guidance message and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

The guidance message can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

For information on entering text → P. 522

Using the function menu in the Set Additional Guidance display

In the additional guidance display... → P. 472

- 1 Press ● (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Additional guidance display function menu

1 Add new guidance	Adds a guidance message.
2 Edit	Edits the guidance message.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press ●.

● Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal	474
Before Using	475
Checking the Procedure	476
Setting the PC	476
About the FOMA PC Setting Software	481
How to Set Various Settings	482
Executing Set Data Communication.....	488
W-TCP Settings.....	491
Access Point Name (APN) Settings	492
Setting up Dial-up Network.....	493
Setting up Dial-up.....	498
AT Command List.....	508

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

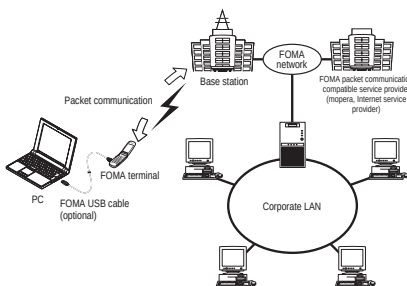
● 64K data communication

Data can be sent/received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected, regardless of the amount of data.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

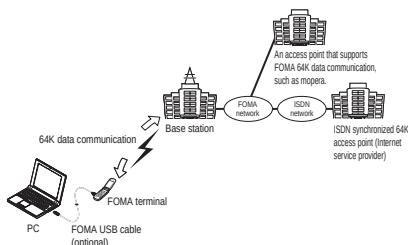
Please use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera".



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Please use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera".



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to FOMA service fee. Please contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo also provides an Internet service called "mopera" for which you are exempt from application procedures and monthly fees.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Please contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant web sites on your PC's browser, you may need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPass PC software included on the CD-ROM packaged with this product and conduct the setting. For more information, please refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM.

You will need Adobe Reader (recommend version 6.0 or higher) to view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If the software is not installed on your PC, you can download the latest version of the software directly from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Communication fees are charged separately.) For details, refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

Item	Description
PC unit	- PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive - USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) - Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS	Windows 98^{*1}/Windows Me/Windows 2000/Windows XP (Japanese versions)
Required memory	- Windows 98/Windows Me: 32Mbytes or more^{*2} - Windows 2000: 64Mbytes or more^{*2} - Windows XP: 128Mbytes or more^{*2}
Hard disk space	5Mbytes or more^{*2}

*1 : The FirstPass PC software is not compatible with Windows 98.

*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

Note

- To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "sigmarion II" or "musea", update "sigmarion II" or "musea". For how to update it and other details, go to the DoCoMo Web page.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

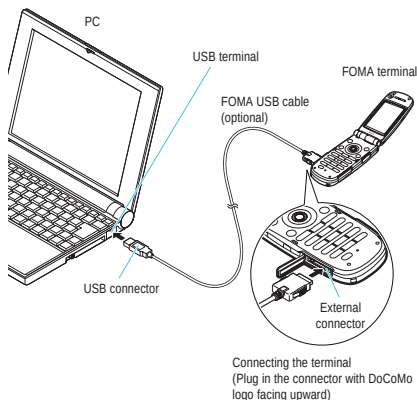
- FOMA USB cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N700i"

Note

- Purchase the dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable". USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB cable (optional).



- 1 Open the FOMA terminal's external connector cap.
- 2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB cable to the USB terminal of your PC.
- 3 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB cable horizontally until you hear a click.

"" appears on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB cable has been connected.

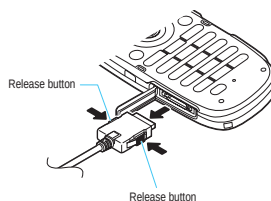
Note

- "" appears on the FOMA terminal display when a communication setting file for packet or 64K data communication is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before a data communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and "" does not appear.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB cable (optional).

- To disconnect the devices from a PC, you should follow the safety-oriented removal method specified for each operating system.



- 1 Pull it out straight while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB cable.
- 2 Remove the FOMA USB cable from the USB terminal of the PC.
- 3 Close the FOMA terminal's external connector cap.

Note

- Do not repetitively connect and disconnect the FOMA USB cable. After you have connected and disconnected once, wait for a while before doing so again.

Checking the Procedure

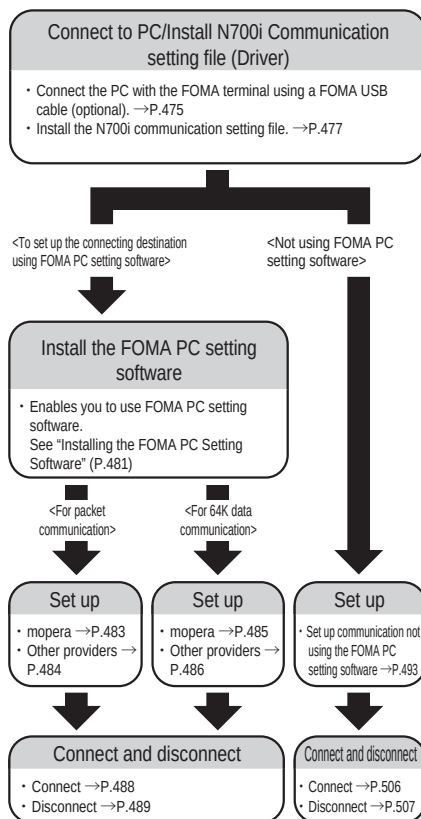
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ About the “CD-ROM for FOMA N700i” provided

- The CD-ROM contains the communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N700i Communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N700i Communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.
- Using FirstPass PC software allows you to set up FirstPass (user certification) easily and therefore it will be helpful for gaining authentication when you try viewing FirstPass-compliant sites on the PC browser. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) stored in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder included on the CD-ROM.
You will need Adobe Reader (recommend version 6.0 or higher) to view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF format). If the software is not installed on your PC, you can download the latest version of the software directly from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Communication fees are charged separately.) For details, refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

Flow Chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



*: “mopera” is DoCoMo’s Internet connection service for which you do not need to apply. We recommend that you set up communication using “mopera” if you want to connect to the internet easily.

Setting the PC

This section describes the steps from connection to a PC to installing of the N700i communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the PC USB terminal.
- 2 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N700i” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC.

3 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N700i ご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N700i) screen.

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N700i” is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 4.

If this screen appears while you are installing the N700i communication setting file, click “終了” (Exit) as well.



4 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB cable connected to the PC to your FOMA terminal.

For Windows 98/Windows Me

“新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen appears.

For Windows 2000/Windows XP

“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

Installing the N700i communication setting file (drivers)

- If you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with Administrator privilege to install setup files for N700i communication. An error will occur if you try to install the files by using other accounts. For information about setting the Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or Microsoft.
- The installation procedure for the N700i Communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC. For Windows 98 and Windows Me refer to the following. For Windows 2000, proceed to P. 478. For Windows XP, proceed to P. 478.

For Windows 98/Windows Me

1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on P. 477, the screen “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) is automatically displayed.

For Windows 98

Click “次へ” (Next).

2 Select “ドライバの場所を指定する (詳しい知識のある方向け)” (Specify driver location (for advanced users)), then click “次へ” (Next).

For Windows 98

Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).



3 Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (Recommended)). Check “検索場所の指定” (Specify the search location) and click “参照” (Reference) to specify the folder to search, and “次へ” (Next).

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive name>: ¥USB Driver¥Win98”. The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

The driver is common with Windows 98.

For Windows 98

Check the “検索場所の指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next).

Select “更新されたドライバ (推奨)” (Updated driver (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).

4 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next).

“FOMA N700i” appears here.

- 5 When the message “新しいハードウェアのインストールが完了しました。”(Installation of the new hardware is now complete) appears, click “完了” (Finish).

For Windows 98

The message “新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。”(The software needed to install a new software is installed) appears.

- 6 Install the 6 remaining N700i communication setting files (drivers) (P. 480) subsequently, referring to the above step 1 to 5.

If the “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P. 479).

For Windows 2000

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on P. 477, the screen shown below is automatically displayed.



- 2 Click “次へ” (Next).
- 3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the Optimal driver for the device (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).
- 4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next).

- 5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”.

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive name>¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using.

- 6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next).

“FOMA N700i” appears here.

- 7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish).

- 8 Install the 3 remaining N700i communication setting files (drivers) (P. 480) subsequently, referring to the above step 1 to 7.

If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P. 479).

For Windows XP

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on P. 477, the screen of “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) is shown.

- 2 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next).



- 3** Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する” (Search for the most compatible driver in the next location), uncheck “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROM など) を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) and check “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) and specify a folder to search. Click “次へ” (Next).

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive name>¥USB Driver ¥Win2000”.

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC used. In the example below, the CD-ROM drive is “E”.

The driver is common with Windows 2000.



- 4** When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish).

- 5** Install the 3 remaining N700i communication setting files (drivers) (P. 480) subsequently, referring to the above step 1 to 4.

If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 4, installation of the drivers is complete.

When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P. 479).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N700i communication setting file has been correctly installed.

- 1** Open the Control Panel of Windows.

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

- 2** Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

For Windows Me

If the “システム” (System) icon does not appear in “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel), click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options).

For Windows XP

Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance).

- 3** Open the device manager.

For Windows 98/Windows Me

Click the “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager) tab.

For Windows 2000/Windows XP

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager).

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name.

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “ポート” (COM と LPT) (Ports (COM & LPT)), “ユニバーサルシリアルバス (USB) コントローラ” (Universal Serial Bus controller) and “モデム” (Modems).

Check the driver name, and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (P. 481).

(Windows XP)



Device name	Driver name
Port (COM/LPT)	- FOMA N700i Command Port - FOMA N700i OBEX Port
Modem	FOMA N700i
Universal Serial Bus controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller	- FOMA N700i - FOMA N700i Command* - FOMA N700i Modem* - FOMA N700i OBEX*

* : Windows 98/Windows Me only

Note

- If all driver names do not appear when you check the above or if you have installed an improper communication-setting file for your OS, follow the uninstall instructions (P. 480) to delete the N700i communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N700i communication setting file

If necessary (when Windows has been upgraded, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB cable, remove the FOMA USB cable.

2 Start Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N700i” into the CD-ROM drive of the PC.

3 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N700i ご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N700i) screen.

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N700i” is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 4.

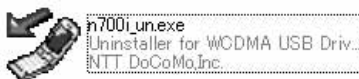


4 Specify and run the uninstall program.

Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open) to open the “USB Driver” folder on the CD-ROM. Open the “Uninst” folder.

5 Double-click “n700i_un.exe” to execute the uninstall program.

“n700i_un.exe” may appear as “n700i_un” instead depending on the setting of the PC you use.



6 Click “OK” to uninstall.

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

7 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows.

Now the uninstallation is completed.

If you have clicked “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the following:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. → P. 493
- The "FOMA PC setting software" will not operate if the FOMA terminal's modem port has been recognized as a number greater than COM20.



For connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC, see P.475.

Easy settings

The guide walks you through the procedures for "Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication" and "W-TCP setting".

W-TCP setting

W-TCP settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using "FOMA packet communication".

To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP setting.

Access point name (APN) setting

Set the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, a phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field. For using mopera, APN: mopera.ne.jp is registered as the first cid, but when connecting to other providers or corporate LAN, you will need to make the APN settings.

cid [Context Identifier]: a number corresponding to a packet communication connection point (APN). It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check operating environment prior to install the FOMA PC setting software. → P. 475
- When installing the "FOMA PC setting software" on a Windows 2000/Windows XP machine, be sure to log on as Administrator.
- For information about setting the Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or Microsoft.

1 Insert the supplied CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC and click "FOMA PC設定ソフトのインストール" (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software).

The "FOMA N700iご利用にあたって" (To use FOMA 700i) screen will automatically be displayed. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in "マイコンピュータ" (My Computer), select "開く" (Open) and double-click "start.exe". Then click "FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール" (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software).



2 Click "次へ" (Next).

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click "キャンセル" (Cancel) and exit the program and resume installation.

If a message appears indicating that "previous W-TCP setting software" or "previous APN setting software" is installed, proceed to P. 482.

3 Upon confirming the user agreement of "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "はい" (Yes) to agree to it.

If you click "いいえ" (No), the installation is canceled.

4 Click “次へ” (Next).

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the Task Tray.
This is a function to set up / cancel optimization of “W-TCP communication”, we recommend you choose to let it reside in the Task Tray.
If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) checked to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) here, you will be able to change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP 設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the Task Tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Reside in the task tray) setting is in effect.



The W-TCP setting will appear in the task tray that is located at the bottom right corner of the desktop.

5 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next).

If you want to change the destination, click “参照” (Browse), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).

You can select another drive if you do not have enough hard disk space, but the default setting is recommended.

6 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next).

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



7 Click “完了” (Finish).

When the setup process has been completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) screen will automatically appear. You can specify other settings at this point.

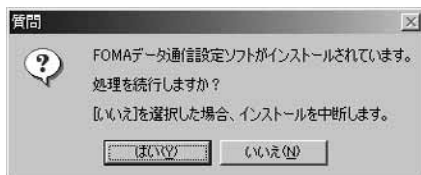
Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the “previous W-TCP setting software” is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除” (Add/delete applications (programs)) and delete the old version.

<If the “previous APN setting software” is installed>



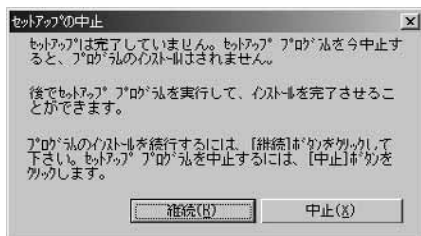
- When you click “はい” (Yes), the previous APN settings software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC settings software will be installed.

<If the “FOMA PC setting software” is already installed>



- Clicking “はい” (Yes) automatically uninstalls the FOMA PC setting software and then reinstalls the software.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the operation, click “継続” (Continue). When you intend to stop the procedure, click “中止” (Cancel).

How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via a FOMA USB cable (optional), and the Communication setting file needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC before setting.

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software).

For Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) →
“すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) →
“FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software).

The following operation display appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.



Easy settings: “Packet communication setting by using mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera” will be used as a provider.

Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types).

Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.

- Note that the communication charge can become high if “Packet communication” is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view Web pages containing images or to download files.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings).

2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next).

3 Select “mopera 接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next).

See P. 484 to use any other provider than mopera.

4 Click “OK”.

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC. Please wait for a moment.

5 Enter the connection name in the “接続名” (Name of access point) field and click “次へ” (Next).

You can enter any name you want for the connection you are creating.

Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection Name) column.

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.

You cannot use the following reserved characters;
¥: * ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only).



6 Specify a user name and password, then click “次へ” (Next).

User Name and Password can be omitted for the mopera connection.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP. If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー” (All users) (default setting). Enter exact information provided by the provider including upper / lower case to enter the User Name/Password.

7 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next).

Optimize W-TCP settings required for “packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed.

8 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed.
Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



9 Click “OK”.

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings.

Click “はい” (Yes) if the selection screen for reboot appears.

Performs the communication set up (P. 488).

Easy settings: “Specifying Packet communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings).

2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next).

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next).

4 Click “OK”.

Please wait for a few minutes while the APN setting information is being acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC.

5 Specify the packet communication settings.

After the terminal setting has been completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) will appear.

Enter a name in “接続名” (Connection name).

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.

The following reserved characters cannot be used for 接続名 (Connection name);

¥: * ? < > |” (half-pitch only).

If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked off, the Caller ID is notified when communication is carried out.

APN: mopera.ne.jp is set by default in the “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the connecting destination (APN)) for mopera connection.

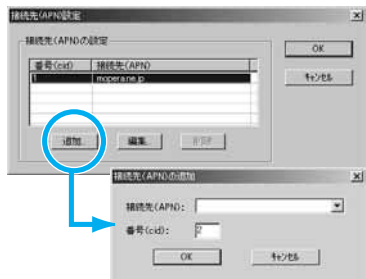


6 Specify the access point (APN).

Number (cid) 1 is assigned with “mopera.ne.jp” by default.

Open the “接続先 (APN) の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication correctly and click “OK”.

Return to the “接続先 (APN) の設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and periods (.) can only be entered for the access point.
Up to 10 cids can be registered.



7 Set up Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings).

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Set up detail information) on “パケット通信設定” (Packet Communication settings) displays the setup screen for “IP アドレス”(IP address)/ “ネームサーバー” (Name Server).

If you need to enter information as dialup information for your provider, company LAN, etc., register each address according to the entry instructions.

8 Select the Access point (APN) and Click “OK”.

It returns to the screen in Step 5.

The access point (APN) entered in the Step 6 is displayed on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

9 Confirm the Access point (APN) and click “次へ” (Next) on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the connecting destination (APN)).

10 Specify the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “次へ” (Next).

Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP. If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー”(All users) (default setting).

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

11 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next).

Optimize W-TCP settings required for packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed and proceed to Step 12.

12 Confirm the setting information and click “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed.

Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



13 Click “OK”.

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings.

If the reboot screen appears, click “はい”(Yes).

The communication setup is carried out on the next step. → P. 488

Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you are connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings).

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next).

3 Select “mopera接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next).

See to P. 486 to use any other provider than mopera.

4 Enter the access point name in “接続名” (Connection name), select modem and click “次へ” (Next).

The “64 K データ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears.

You can specify the name of the access point.

Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection Name) column.

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.

The following reserved characters cannot be entered for Connection Name;

¥/:*?!<>|” (half-pitch only)

When using the FOMA USB cable (optional), confirm that “モデムの選択” (Select Modem) is set to “FOMA N700i”.



5 Specify the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “次へ” (Next).

User name and password can be omitted for the modera connection.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



Select the user for Windows 2000 and Windows XP. If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー” (All users) (default setting).

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

6 Check the setting information and “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”.

The communication setup is carried out on the next step. → P. 488

Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings).

2 Select “64 K データ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next).

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next).

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next).

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera when creating a dial-up;

- 接続名 (Connection Name) (optional)
- モデムの選択 (Modem Selection) (FOMA N700i)
- 電話番号 (Telephone number)

Take care to enter the correct upper/lower case character for the Connection name.

The following reserved characters cannot be entered;
¥: * ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only)



Enter the correct information according to the provider information.

Enter the phone number with half-pitch taking care of upper/lower case characters.

If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

5 Specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings).

When you click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings), the screen for the “IP アドレス” (IP address) and “ネーム サーバー” (Name server) settings will appear.

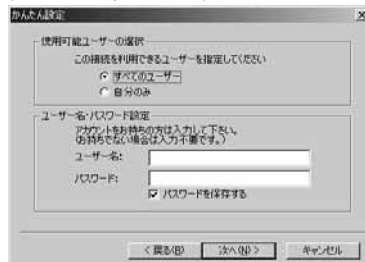
If they must be input as dial-up information for the provider or corporate LAN, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

6 Specify the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password)” and click “次へ” (Next).

Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP.

If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー” (All users) (default setting).

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

7 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



8 Click “OK”.

The communication setup is carried out on the next set. → P. 488

Executing Set Data Communication

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used at time of icon creation. To connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the communication setting file must be installed again.

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows 98/Me

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communications) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dialup network) and open the host.

Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communications) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and dialup connection) and open the host.

Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communications) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connection) and open the host.

2 Click "ダイヤル" (Dial) and execute access operation.

If you select "mopera", click "ダイヤル" (Dial), leaving the "ユーザー名" (User name) and "パスワード" (Password) text boxes blank.

If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera or dial-up connection, enter the "ユーザー名" (User name) and "パスワード" (Password) and click "ダイヤル" (Dial). Check "パスワードを保存する" (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click "OK".

Normally, the screen as shown below will appear when the dial-up connection is made.

This "接続" (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



- (Communicating, sending data)
- (Communicating, receiving data)
- (Communicating, no data transfer)
- (Sending, or disconnecting)
- (Receiving, or disconnecting)

- "" appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task tray.

The dial-up connection screen will appear.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect).



Note

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Please check the following if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N700i" is not recognized by the PC.	• See if your PC satisfies the operational environment required (P. 475). • See if the N700i communication setting file has been installed. • See if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. • See if the FOMA USB cable (optional) is firmly connected. • See if the "USB mode setting" (P. 404) is set to "Communication mode".
Unable to connect with the access point.	• See if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. • See if the FOMA USB cable (optional) is firmly connected. • If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number. • See if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. • See if the APN is set correctly. • If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC setting software

This section describes uninstallation instructions for FOMA PC setting software.

- To uninstall the "FOMA PC Setting Software" on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, you must do so from a user account with Administrator privileges. If you attempt to uninstall the software from another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling.

Before starting the uninstallation process of the "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their original settings.



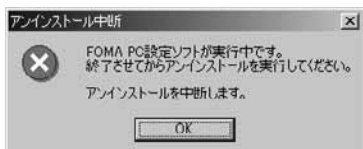
(1) Set not to reside the "W-TCP settings" in the task tray.

Right-click the "W-TCP icon" in the task tray located at the lower right corner of the desktop and select "常駐させない" (Nonresident).



(2) Exit any running program.

If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "W-TCP settings" is in operation, the screen as shown below will appear. Stop the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications) of the Windows program.

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

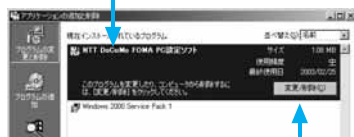
Click "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add/deleting applications).
"アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ" (Property of Add and remove applications) appears for Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP

Click "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add or remove programs).

3 Select "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete).

Select NTT DoCoMo "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)



Click here

4 Check the program name to be deleted and click "はい" (Yes).

Uninstallation starts.



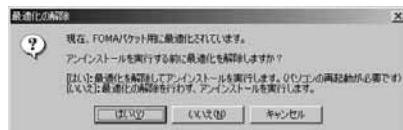
5 Click "OK".

Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.

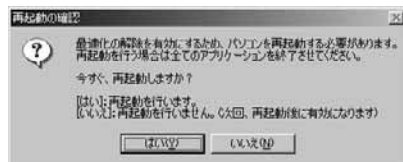


Note

- Cancel "W-TCP 最適化" (Optimize W-TCP).
The screen shown below appears if "W-TCP 最適化" (Optimize W-TCP) is done. Click "はい" (Yes) to uninstall.



W-TCP optimization will be canceled after reboot.



W-TCP Settings

"W-TCP Settings" is a "TCP parameter setup tool" to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when "packet communication" is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>

Optimization settings by dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program.

- (1) If you are operating from "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)
Click "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the Task Tray
Click the "W-TCP" icon in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.

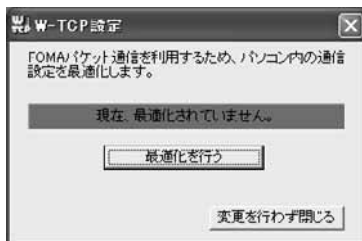


2 Proceed with the following.

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the reboot.

- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized

Clicking "最適化を行う" (Optimize) displays the "W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定" (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click "実行" (Execute), system and dial-up settings will be optimized.



- (2) If the system settings have been optimized

The "W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定" (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. If there are some changes, make changes to the settings.



- (3) To cancel optimization

Clicking "システム設定" (System settings) displays the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP settings) screen. Click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000>

1 Start the program.

- (1) If you are operating from "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)
Click "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the program.

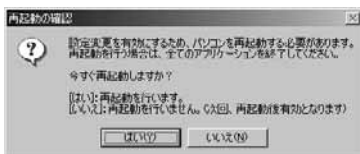
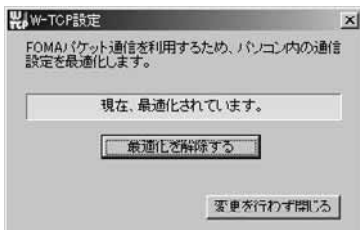


- (2) If you are operating from the Task Tray
Click the "W-TCP" icon in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



2 Proceed with the following.

- (1) If not optimized
Click "最適化を行う" (Optimize) on the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen, close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the optimized settings.
- (2) If optimized
A message saying "現在、最適化されています。" (Already optimized) appears on the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen. To cancel the optimization settings if connecting to a terminal other than a FOMA terminal, click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.



Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the connecting destination (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- The APN setting (the connecting destination for FOMA packet communication) is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the APN must be registered again.
- When continuously using an APN on a PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.
- The default setting for APN1 is mopera.

1 After starting "FOMA PC setting software", click "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Set up Connecting destination (APN)).



2 Click "OK" on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen.

Automatically accesses the FOMA terminal connected and reads the Connecting destination (APN) information registered. It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the connecting destination (APN).



Adding/Editing/Removing the Access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**
Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**
Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**
Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
The access point (APN) registered in Number (cid) 1 cannot be deleted.

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password) (Not needed for mopera).

Enter the user name and password (select an available user for Windows 2000 or Windows XP) and click “OK”.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Enter detail information) on the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication), register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write the settings to the FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication/64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The procedure is as follows.

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N700i” (Modem) built in after installing the N700i Communication setting file. This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) setup (P. 496).

Access points <APN/cid>

- Telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN (P. 496) instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration numbers (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which are used part of the access point number.*¹
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. It is connected to the access point with the cid number if the access point number is set to “* 9 9 * * * <cid number>#”.
- Since APN: mopera.ne.jp to connect to mopera is registered in cid Number 1 in advance, setting the access point number to “* 9 9 * * * 1 #” allows you to easily use mopera.*²
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties' information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Telephone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	☐ (Use FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	☐ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	☒ (Cannot even confirm)	☐
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

*1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2 : To connect to another internet service provider, set up APN and register it in cid Number 2 or later. See P. 496 for how to set up APN and make registration.

● To confirm COM port on Windows 98/Me

① Open “スタート” (Start)→“設定” (Settings)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

② Open “モデム” (Modem) in Control Panel.

If the “モデム” (Modem) icon does not appear in Control panel, click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options).



③ Confirm that “FOMA N700i” has been set and click the “検出結果” (Diagnostics) tab.



④ Confirm the COM port for which “FOMA N700i” is set up and click “OK”.

The COM port number confirmed will be used in setting up access point (APN) (P. 496).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



● To confirm the COM port on Windows 2000

① Open “スタート” (Start)→“設定” (Settings)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel.



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”.

- 4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N700i” and click “OK”.

The COM port number confirmed will be used in setting up the access point (APN) (P. 496).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



- To confirm the COM port on Windows XP

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).



- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel.



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”.

- 4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N700i” and click “OK”.

The COM port number confirmed will be used in setting up the access point (APN) (P. 496).

The contents displayed on the properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1: mopera.ne.jp, cid2 to 10: not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

- Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 access points (APN) by assigning registration numbers cid1 through cid10 (P. 493).
- Since APN “mopera.ne.jp” to connect to DoCoMo's internet connection service “mopera” has already been assigned to cid1, we recommend that you enter cid into numbers 2 through 10.
- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your internet service provider or network administrator for any other access point (APN) than mopera.
- The AT commands entered in “Hyper terminal” may not be shown after Step 6 on P. 497. In this case, if you enter ATE1  AT commands you enter from then are shown.

<Example: for Windows XP>

- 1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the FOMA USB cable.

- 2 Power the FOMA terminal on and connect the FOMA USB cable connected with the FOMA terminal with the PC.

- 3 Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal.

For Windows 98

After opening “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal), double-click “Hypertrm.exe”.

For Windows Me, Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

- 4 Enter any name you want in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”.

“sample” is entered here as an example.



5 Select "FOMA N700i" from "接続方法" (Connection method), and click "OK".

If a COM port of "FOMA N700i" can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click "OK".

In this example, "COM3" is selected. See "Checking the COM port" on P. 493 to confirm the actual COM port number of "FOMA N700i" to be selected in "接続方法" (Connection method).



If no COM port of "FOMA N700i" can be selected

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to close the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) screen and do the following settings;

- (1) Select "ファイル" (File) menu → "プロパティ" (Properties).
- (2) Select "FOMA N700i" in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column of the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) tab on the "sampleのプロパティ" (sample Properties).
- (3) Uncheck "国/地域番号と市外局番を使う" (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code).
- (4) Click "OK".



6 Enter the access point (APN) and Press [Enter].

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","APN".

<cid>: Enter any number from 2 to 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

"APN": Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.

"PPP": Enter "PPP" as it is.

If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

(Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2)

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc" [Enter].



7 Confirm that "OK" is displayed, open the "ファイル" (File) menu and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) to close the Hyper terminal.

You will be asked "セッションsampleを保存しますか?" (Do you want to save the session sample?). However, there is no need to save it.

Note

To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command

- If reset, only the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value), and cid=2 through 10 will be unregistered.

<How to enter>

AT+CGDCONT= [Enter] (to reset all cid)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> [Enter] (to reset a certain cid only)

To confirm the access point (APN) setting using the AT command

- Display the current settings.

<How to enter>

AT+CGDCONT? [Enter]

If entering the AT command displays nothing on the screen

<How to enter>

ATE1 [Enter]

Specifying Caller ID

Default setting Set

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when "packet communication" is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the * DGPIR command (P. 509) to notify or not the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start Hyper terminal.

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication.

Enter in the format of "AT * DGPIR=<n>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/ answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=1

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=2



3 Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu.



About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) settings in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point ID in the Dial-up network settings as well.

The table below shows what happens if you have set 186/184 both for the * DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by * DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
* 99 * * * 1 #	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184 * 99 * * * 1 #	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186 * 99 * * * 1 #	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

Note

- The Caller ID needs to be set to "Notify" to use DoCoMo's internet connection service mopera.

Setting up Dial-up

Setting up dial-up on Windows 98, Windows Me

- 1 Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communications) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network).

- 2 When the “ダイアルアップネットワークへようこそ” (Welcome to Dial-up Network) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next).

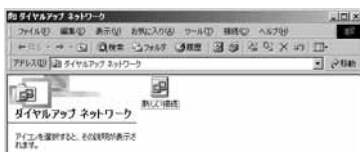
This screen appears only when the dial-up network is started for the first time.

Click “次へ” (Next) to proceed to Step 4.

This screen does not appear from the second time, but the “ダイアルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) screen in Step 3 does instead.



- 3 Double-click “新しい接続” (New connection) in the Dial-up Network.



- 4 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection Name) column and click “次へ” (Next).

Confirm that the “モデムの選択” (Modem selection) column has “FOMA N700i”.

If not, select “FOMA N700i”.



- 5 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “次へ” (Next).

Leave the “市外局番” (Area Code) column blank.

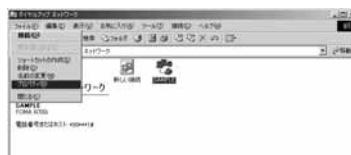


- 6 Confirm the Connection name (any name) and click “完了” (Finish).



- 7 Open “スタート” (Start)→“プログラム” (Programs)→“アクセサリ” (Accessories)→“通信” (Communications)→“ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network).

- 8 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu.



9 Confirm “電話番号” (Telephone number) and “接続方法” (Connection method) on the “全般” (General) tab.

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う” (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial).

Confirm that the “接続方法” (Connection method) column has “FOMA N700i”. If not, select “FOMA N700i”.



10 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: インターネット (Internet), Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me” in the “ダイヤルアップ サーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for “使用できるネットワークプロトコル” (Network protocol can be used).

Windows 98

Click the “サーバーの種類” (Type of server) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: インターネット (Internet), Windows NT Server, Windows 98” in “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for “使用できるネットワークプロトコル” (Network protocol can be used).



11 Click the “セキュリティ” (Security) tab and click “OK” without entering the user name and password.

For connecting to mopera, entry of the user name and password is not required.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.

Windows 98

Click “OK”.



- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections).

- 2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections.



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”.

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2. This screen does not appear from the second time, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

- 4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”.

- 5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next).

- 6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N700i” and click “次へ” (Next).

If “FOMA N700i” is not selected, select “FOMA N700i”.

If no other modem than “FOMA N700i” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



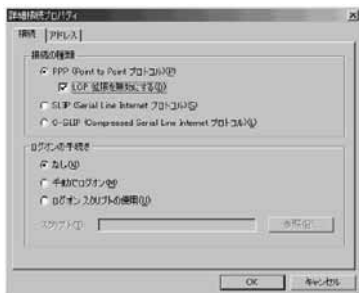
- 10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings).

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).



- 11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown below and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



- 12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown below and click “OK”.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “IP アドレス” (IP address) and “ISP による DNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



- 13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next).

- 14 Leave the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns blank and click “次へ” (Next).

A confirmation screen appears continuously asking if you will leave the User Name and Password blank. Click “はい” (Yes) for each screen.

To connect to mopera, no user name or password is required.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, as shown in the screen below enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



- 15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection Name) and click “次へ” (Next).



- 16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 17 Uncheck “今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選び [完了] をクリックしてください” (Select this and click [Finish] to connect to the internet immediately) and click “完了” (Finish).

- 18 Select the icon of the dial-up created and click “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu.



- 19 Confirm the settings in the “全般” (General) tab.

If 2 or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム (Modem) - FOMA N700i (COM0)” is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



- 20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップ サーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



- 21 Click “設定” (Settings).

- 22 Uncheck all checkboxes and click “OK”.



- 23 When the screen returns to Step 20, click “OK”.

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard).

- 2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next).



- 3 Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next).

- 6 If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select “モデム - FOMA N700i (COMx)” (Modem - FOMA N700i)(COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next).

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems. (COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (P. 493).



- 7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP 名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next).



- 8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next).

The telephone number in the example is for connection to mopera. Enter the telephone number of the access point you actually use.



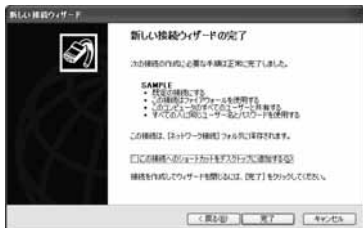
- 9 Leave the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm password) columns blank and click “次へ” (Next).

No user name or password is required to enter in order to connect to mopera. To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name, password specified by the provider or network administrator as shown in the screen below in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns.



- 10 Click “完了” (Finish).

The newly created connection wizard appears.



- 11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections).

- 12 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu.



- 13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab.

If 2 or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N700i” (Modem - FOMA N700i) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



- 14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up Server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection).

Since the setting of “QoS パケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



- 15 Click “設定” (Settings).

- 16 Uncheck all the boxes and click “OK”.



- 17 The Step 14 screen reappears. Click “OK”.

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication using the dial-up network setting.

<Example: For Windows Me>

- 1 Connect the FOMA terminal with the PC using a FOMA USB cable.
How to connect → P. 475
- 2 Click the “スタート” (Start) menu, select “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) and open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network).
- 3 Select the access point to connect and open “接続” (Connect).



- 4 Confirm each item and click “接続” (Connect).

The telephone number of the access point set up in Dial-up Network is displayed in “電話番号” (Telephone number).

No user name or password is required to enter in order to connect to mopera.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



<The Connecting status screen appears>

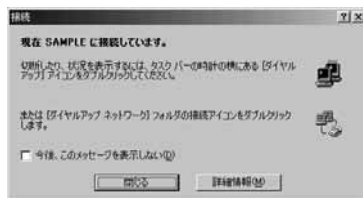
Meanwhile, the password confirmation and logon processes are performed.



<Completion of the connection>

You can start browser software to browse homepages and to use e-mail.

If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.



<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communications) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections).

2 Open Access point.

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on P. 504 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



3 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).

The screen on the following shows an example for modema connection. To connect to modema, no user name or password is required.



<The Connecting status screen appears>

While this screen is displayed, the logon process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message as shown is displayed from the indicator of the taskbar located on the lower right of the desktop for a few seconds.

You can start browser software to browse homepages and to use e-mail.

If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.

See P. 488 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows Me.

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task tray.

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect).



Note

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
 [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
 [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by using ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The following are the usable commands for FOMA N700i (modem):

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
A/	Execute the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&Cn [&F] [&W]	Select the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	n=0 : CD is always ON. n=1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&Dn [&F] [&W]	Select the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	n=0 : Ignore ER status (always assumed to be ON). n=1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an online command status. n=2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&En	Select how to display the connection speed.	n=0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. n=1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (default).	AT&E0 OK
AT&Fn	Restore all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the circuit will be disconnected.	Only n=0 can be specified (optional).	In on-line command mode AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line command mode) In offline command mode AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR
AT&Sn [&F] [&W]	Set the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	n=0 : DR is always ON (initial value). n=1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT&Wn	Store the current settings.	Only n=0 can be specified (optional).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR
AT* DANTE	Displays the number of antennas on the FOMA terminal.	* DANTE:n n=0 : Number of antennas of the FOMA terminal is out of the area. n=1 : Number of antennas of the FOMA terminal is 1. n=2 : Number of antennas of the FOMA terminal is 2. n=3 : Number of antennas of the FOMA terminal is 3.	AT* DANTE * DANTE: 3 OK AT* DANTE=? * DANTE : (0-3) OK
AT* DGANSM=n	Set the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming calls after the setting command is input.	n=0 : Disable the incoming call reject (AT* DGARL/permit (AT* DGAPL) setting (initial value). n=1 : Enable the incoming call reject setting. n=2 : Enable the incoming call permit setting. AT* DGANSM? : Display the current setting.	AT* DGANSM=0 OK AT* DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT* DGAPL=n [cid]	Set APN, which permits the packet incoming calls by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT.	n=0 : Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. n=1 : Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT* DGAPL? : Display incoming call permission list.	AT* DGAPL=0,1 OK AT* DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT* DGAPL =1 OK AT* DGAPL? OK
AT* DGARL=n [cid]	Set APN, which rejects the packet incoming calls by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT.	n=0 : Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. n=1 : Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT* DGARL? : Display incoming call rejection list.	AT* DGARL=0,1 OK AT* DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT* DGARL =1 OK AT* DGARL? OK
AT* DGPIR=n	This command enables the setting of Notify/Not notify caller ID when receiving a packet call. Even in the dial up network setting, you can add 186 (informed) or 184 (not informed) to the access point number. See → P. 498	n=0 : Use APN as it is (initial value). n=1 : Use APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) n=2 : Use APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT* DGPIR? : Display the current setting.	AT* DGPIR=0 OK AT* DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT* DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT* DRPW * DRPW: 0 OK AT* DRPW=? * DRPW: (0-75) OK
AT+CEER	Display the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	<report> See "List of disconnection reasons" (P. 520).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Set the access point name (APN) at the time of packet transmission.	→ P. 517	→ P. 517

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CGEQMIN	Register the criterion for deciding whether or not to permit the QoS (quality of service) notified from the network side when packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] (P. 517) AT+CGEQMIN=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.	→ P. 517
AT+CGEQREQ	Set QoS (quality of service) that is requested to network when transmitting packet communication call.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] (P. 518) AT+CGEQREQ=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.	→ P. 518
AT+CGMR	Display the FOMA terminal version.	—	AT+CGMR xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx OK (xxxx are the FOMA terminal version numbers)
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specify whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification shows whether you are inside or out of service.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "inside the service area" and "outside the service area". AT+CGREG? : Display the current setting. +CGREG : < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1,0 OK (outside the service area) AT+CGREG=? +CGREG:(0,1) OK (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area") +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Display the product number of FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx OK (xxxx are the product number of FOMA terminal)
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i>	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not display the result (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 : Display the result <i>m</i> =0: NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID when transmitting. <i>m</i> =1: NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID when transmitting. <i>m</i> =2: Unknown AT+CLIP=? result +CLIP : (<i>n</i> , <i>m</i>)	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090xxxxxxxx", 177, "123", 136

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when transmitting a 64K data communication call.	<i>n</i> =0 : Notify (Not notify) the caller's phone number in conformance with the "Caller ID notification" setting. <i>n</i> =1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. <i>n</i> =2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). AT+CLIR? result +CLIR : (<i>n</i> , <i>m</i>) <i>m</i> =0: CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) <i>m</i> =1: CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) <i>m</i> =2: Unknown <i>m</i> =3: CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) <i>m</i> =4: CLIR temporary mode (default is notify) * When the #31# or *31# is not attached, CLIR setting have a priority.	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0, 1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Set the existence or nonexistence of the error report for the FOMA terminal is present.	<i>n</i> =0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. <i>n</i> =2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Display the current setting. The command shown on the right is the execution example for AT+CNUM. The +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown * FOMA card (UIM) is referred as SIM in this AT command list.	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR : 10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR : SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Display the FOMA terminal's own number.	<i>n</i> +CNUM:<number>,<type> number: phone number type: 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190xxxxxxx", 145 OK (xxxx are the own number)

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CPIN	Enter the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN=<pin>,"<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK (PIN unlock) code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in " ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN:READY:PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PIN1 or PIN2 PUK code +CPIN:SIM PIN:PIN1 entry standby +CPIN:SIM PIN2:PIN2 entry standby +CPIN:SIM PUK:PIN1 blocked (Can enter PIN1 PUK code) +CPIN:SIM PUK2:PIN2 blocked (Can enter PIN2 PUK code) Commands on the right are the entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 blocked status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 blocked status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, display the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	<i>n</i>=0 : Not display (initial value). <i>n</i>=1 : Display. serv: GPRS : Packet communication SYNC : 64K data communication AV64K : AV64K communication AV32K : AV32K communication AT+CR?: Display the current setting.	AT+CR =1 OK ATD:*99:*:*:*1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT (*99:*:*:*1# is an example for mopera packet communication)

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CRG=n [&F] [&W]	Set whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	n=0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). n=1 : Use +CRING:<type>. Format of +CRING: : +CRING: SYNC +CRING: AV64K +CRING: GPRS "PPP",,"<APN>" AT+CRG? : Display the current setting.	AT+CRG=0 OK AT+CRG? +CRG : 0 OK (64K communication received) +CRING: SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING: AV64K (Packet communication received) +CRING: GPRS "PPP",,"<APN >"
AT+CREG=n [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result display is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the OS.	n=0 : Not informed (initial value). n=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "inside the service area" and "outside the service area". AT+CREG? : Display the current setting. +CREG : <n>,<stat> n: Set value stat: 0 : Outside voice call area. 1 : Inside voice call area. 4 : Unknown 5 : Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG: 1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CREG: 1
AT+GMI	Display the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Display the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N700i).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N700i OK
AT+GMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC=n,m [&F] [&W]	Select the flow control method.	n: DCE by DTE m: DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control. 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: n,m=2,2 AT+IFC?: Display the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC: 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC: (0,1,2),(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46=n [&F] [&W]	Select the FOMA terminal radio communication network.	n=22: Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT¥S	Display the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥Vn [&F] [&W]	Select the response code specification for connecting the line.	n=0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). n=1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handle the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handle the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD * 99 * * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=When setting 116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=When setting 131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=When setting 134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD * 99 * * * * 1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATDxxxxxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATDxxxxxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATDxxxxxxxxxxx CONNECT (xxxx are the phone number to be connected)
ATEn [&F] [&W]	Select whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	n=0 : Echo back not present. n=1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATHn	Perform on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	n=0 : Disconnect the line (optional).	(During packet communication) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATIn	Display the ID code.	n=0 : Display "NTT DoCoMo". n=1 : Display the product name (same with +GMM). n=2 : Display the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR).	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMA N700i OK
ATOn	Return from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	n=0 : Return from online command mode to online data mode (optional).	ATO CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATQn [&F] [&W]	Specify whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	n=0 : Display the result code (initial value). n=1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not responded.)
ATS0=n [&F] [&W]	Specify how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	n=0 : No automatic reception (initial value). n=1- 255 : A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0? : Display the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=n [&F]	Set an escape character.	n=43 : Initial value. n=127 : Escape processing is invalid. ATS2? : Display the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=n [&F]	Set a carriage return (CR) character.	n=13 : Initial value (Only n=13 can be specified). ATS3? : Display the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=n [&F]	Set a line feed (LF) character.	n=10 : Initial value (Only n=10 can be specified). ATS4? : Display the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=n [&F]	Set a backspace (BS) character.	n=8 : Initial value (Only n=8 can be specified). ATS5? : Display the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=n [&F]	Set the Pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS7=n [&F] [&W]	Disconnect the line if the connection cannot be established within a specified period after making a call.	n=1 to 120 (The initial value is 60) (unit:second). 121 to 255 will be regarded as 120. ATS7? : Display the current setting.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS8=n [&F]	Set the pause time (second) by using the comma.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
ATS10=n [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 seconds)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATS30= <i>n</i>	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	<i>n</i> =0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) <i>n</i> =0 to 255	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103= <i>n</i>	Sets the called subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : * <i>n</i> =1 : / (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104= <i>n</i>	Sets the calling subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : # <i>n</i> =1 : % (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result code is returned in numeral or alphabetical characters.	<i>n</i> =0 : Return the result code in numeral value. <i>n</i> =1 : Return the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detect a busy tone or a dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. <i>n</i> =1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display (initial value).	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Reset the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(In online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (In offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

• Outline

Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGDCONT=<cid>[,<PPP>[,<APN>]]

• Explanation of the parameters

Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination. For a setting example, see the following command execution example:

<cid>*: 1 to 10

<APN>*: Any value

*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10.

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered for <cid>=1 as an initial value, which can be rewritten.

<APN> is an arbitrary character string showing each access point name.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGDCONT=: Set the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGDCONT=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=? : Display a list of values that can be set.

+CGDCONT?: Display the current setting.

• Command execution example

Command for registering an APN name of "abc" (when cid is 3).

AT+CGDCONT=3,"PPP","abc"

OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

• Outline

Register a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when packet communication is established.

The 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example can be used.

Although this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

<cid>: 1 to 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>*: None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>*: None (initial value) or 384

*: <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. The uplink (UL) represents the communication direction from the FOMA terminal to the base station. The downlink (DL) represents the communication direction from the base station to the FOMA terminal. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, at which time a packet communication may not be connected.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGEQMIN=: Set the default value to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

• Command execution example

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

- (1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)

AT+CGEQMIN=2

OK

- (2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 3)

AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384

OK

- (3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 4).
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
OK
- (4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384
OK

■ Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- Outline
Set the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a packet communication. For setting, only the pattern shown in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
Although this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].
- Format
+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]
- Explanation of the parameters
<cid>*: 1 to 10
*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10.
- Operation performed when the parameter is omitted
+CGEQREQ=: Set the default value to all <cid>.
+CGEQREQ=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.
- Command execution example
Only the following pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 3).
AT+CGEQREQ=3
OK

■ Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (P. 496), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject setting by AT * DGAPL/AT * DGARL/AT * DGANS command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT * DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ

even after the power is turned on or off.

Examples of result codes

■ Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Normally executed
1	CONNECT	Connection made
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted
101	DELAYED	Restrict dialing for redial

■ Extended result codes

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connection between the FOMA terminal and a base station at 32,000 bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connection between the FOMA terminal and a base station at 64,000 bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connection between the FOMA terminal and a base station at 384,000 bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps

■ Communication protocol result code

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by 64K communication (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Video-phone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Video-phone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by PACKET

Note

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATVn command (P. 516) is set to n=1, and as number indication when the command is set to n=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected by FOMA USB cable.
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the packet network is congested. If this is displayed, wait a while and try again.

Result code display example**■ When ATX0 is set**

Regardless of the AT¥Vn (P. 514) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT
```

Numeral indication example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1
```

■ When ATX1 is set

- When AT¥V0 is set (default)

Display in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format is made when the connection is completed.

Character indication example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800
```

Numeral indication example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21
```

- When AT¥V1 is set*

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/<Upstream (the FOMA terminal → Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection was made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800
PACKET mopera.ne.jp
/64/384
```

Numeral indication example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21 5
```

- *: If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are the following:

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	Missing or unknown APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Regular deactivation.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The number specified does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service and option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

● Entering Text

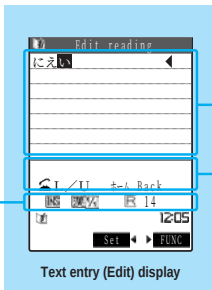
Entering Text.....	522
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases <Store common phrase>	539
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text.....	541
Entering Kuten Codes	542
Storing Frequently Used Words <Own dictionary>	543
Resetting the Learning Record <Clear learning record>.....	544
Selecting the Dictionaries Used <Download dictionary>	544
Changing the Active Display	545

Entering Text

You can enter text on the FOMA terminal using the keypad, by using the access reader or bar code reader, or by retrieving words from a dictionary.

Text Entry (Edit) Display

The Text Entry (Edit) display is made up of the text entry area, operation guidance area, and information display area. The text entry area shows the text currently being entered along with the cursor and end mark. The operation guidance area shows information on the operations that can be performed at that point, such as kanji conversion and retrieval and range specification, etc. The information display area shows information such as the current text entry method, the input mode and the remaining number of characters that can be entered.



Text entry area

- : The cursor. Text is entered at this location.
- ◀ : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark.
The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

Operation guidance area

- ▲▼ Convert : Indicates that can be used for character conversion. →P. 530
- ▲▼ All / ▲▼ Search : Indicates that can be used to search for text in the Search Phonebook display. →P.98
- ☒ Fix mode / ☒ Fix END : Indicates that you can use Fix mode in Mode 3 (T9 input).→P.528
- ◀▶ ▲▼ Area : Displayed when you copy (or cut) text.→P.541
- L/U : Displayed when you can switch the entered text between upper case and lower case by pressing .→P.532
- LONG Line feed : Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol () by holding down for 1 second or longer.→P.533
- ホーム Back : Displayed when you can return to the previous reading assigned to the same key by pressing (Home) when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

Information display area

- / : Displayed when the text entry method is "Mode 3 (T9 Input)" (P.526) or "Mode 2 (2-touch)" (P.525). No icon is displayed in "Mode 1 (5-touch)".
- FIX : Displayed when "Fix mode" is selected in Mode 3 (T9 input). → P.528
- INS / OVR : The icon denotes Insert mode and the icon denotes Overwrite mode. → P.532
- 美 / 日 / 英 / 法 / 独 / 意 / 西 / 葡 / 中 / 日 / 英 / 法 / 独 / 意 / 西 / 葡 / 中 : Shows the current input mode when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 Input)".
- ☒ : Displayed in "Kuten code input mode".→P.542
- 1/2 : The icon is displayed during full-pitch character input and appears during half-pitch character input.→P. 524, 525
- Sm : Displayed when lower case text is being entered.→P.532
- R : Shows the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. Half-pitch characters count as 1 byte while full-pitch characters each count as 2 bytes. In other words, full-pitch characters use twice as many bytes as half-pitch characters.
- In : Shows the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the phonebook. No distinction is made between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

Note

- Pressing a keypad key while you are entering the text of an i-mode mail message displays the Text Entry (Edit) display and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input, word prediction and input mode selection.

■ The number of characters remaining and the number entered

Characters shown in the Text Entry (Edit) display are counted according to the rules listed below. In each Text Entry (Edit) display, the end mark "◀" shows the end of the text that can be entered using the current function. Use the end mark as an approximate guide to how many more characters you can enter.

- When the number of characters is counted, each full-pitch character is counted as 2 bytes and each half-pitch character is counted as 1 byte.
- Full-pitch character occupy twice as much space as half-pitch characters.
Full-pitch: あいうえお = 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes).
Half-pitch: アイエオカキクケコ = 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes).

■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering "トコモ" in half-pitch kana input mode and "の携帯電話" in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ト コ モ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the display)
1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 half-pitch characters)

- The half-pitch dakuten "゛" and "゜" are each counted as 1 character.
Full-pitch characters are each counted as 2 half-pitch characters.

■ Scrolling

In the Text Entry (Edit) display, use to scroll up and down 1 line at a time, and (Home) or (Memo/Check) to scroll 1 page at a time.

In the candidates list display for kanji conversion, you can also use to scroll up and down 1 line at a time, and (Home) or (Memo/Check) and to scroll 1 page at a time.

Selecting the text entry method

The FOMA terminal provides 3 ways of entering text:

- Mode 1 (5-touch) → P. 524
Several characters are assigned to each key and the assigned character changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2 (2-touch) → P. 525
Enters characters using 2-digit numbers.
- Mode 3 (T9 input) → P. 526
Each time you press a key, the characters assigned to that key appear as a list of candidates from which you can select the desired character.

1 Press ▶ Press "Input mode" ▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) and press ▶ Press (Finish).

Select at least 2 modes.

2 Select your preferred mode and press .

A mode not selected in step (1) cannot be selected in this step.

● Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the Text Entry (Edit) display is shown, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to switch to a different text entry method. A change to the text entry method only applies to the current Text Entry (Edit) display. When you exit text entry and then return to a Text Entry (Edit) display later, your preferred text entry method will again be selected.

- In displays used for entering (editing) specific text, such as postal codes, it may not be possible to change the text entry method.

■ Changing from the Function menu

See "CHG input method" in Text Entry (Edit) display Function menu 3/4 in "Using the function menu in the Text Entry (Edit) display" → P. 537

■ Holding down (Mode) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes to the next method each time you hold down (Mode) for 1 second or longer, in the following sequence: "Mode 1 (5-touch)" → "Mode 2 (2-touch)" → "Mode 3 (T9 Input)".

Entering text in mode 1 (5-touch)

Changing the input mode

In the text entry (edit) display...

➡ P. 522

Press  (Mode).

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press  (Mode), in the following sequence: "Alphabetic (half-pitch)" → "Numeric (half-pitch)" → "Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch)" → "Katakana (half-pitch)".

Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➡ P. 536

Press  "Half pitch"/"Full pitch".

When you change to "Full pitch", "" appears in the information display area. When you change to "Half pitch", "" appears. You cannot switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".

Characters that can entered in mode 1

<Example> To enter "う", select "Kanji/hiragana input mode" and press  3 times.

To enter "B", select "Alphabetic input mode" and press  twice.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode	Letter input mode	Number input mode
	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	? ! ~ / ¥ & * () # °   *	1
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c	2
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f	3
	たちつてと	タチツテト	G H I g h i	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o	6
	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s	7
	やゆよ やゆよ	ヤユヨ ヤユヨ	T U V t u v	8
	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z	9
	わをんーわ	ワヲンーワ ^{*2}	—	0 + ^{*7}
	— ^{*3}	—	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp ^{*4} www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp ^{*4} www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp
	° ° 、 。 ・ ! ? ^{*5}	° ° 、 。 ・ ! ? ^{*5}	. @ / ! ? () , _ : ' ^ & \	# . @ / ! ? () , _ : ' ^ & \

*1 : Only valid when entering SMS. You cannot enter pictographs in SMS but you can enter "" and "". Also, while symbols are displayed as half-pitch characters, "" and "" are always full-pitch characters.

*2 : The small "ワ" can be entered in full-pitch character input.

*3 : Pressing  in "Kanji/hiragana input mode" switches to "Kuten code input mode".

4 : Not shown when you change to full-pitch character input (excluding "" in Numeric input mode).

*5 : In "Kanji/hiragana input mode" and full-pitch "Kana input mode", dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") are only displayed when the character that precede them can take dakuten. You cannot enter commas, periods, bullets, or exclamation or question marks in reading input when storing phonebook entries on the FOMA card (UIM) or entering own dictionary readings.

*6 : Becomes " " in full-pitch input mode.

*7 : "+" can be entered in an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.

■ : Lower case text can be entered in either of the following ways:

- By entering upper case text and then pressing  to convert it to lower case.
- By selecting "Lower case" in the Function menu and then entering the text.

Entering text in mode 2 (2-touch)

Changing the input mode

In the text entry (edit) display...

➔ P. 522

Press  (Mode).

The input mode switches between "Full pitch" and "Half pitch" each time you press  (Mode).

Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

Press  "Half pitch"/"Full pitch".

When you change to "Full pitch", "" appears in the information display area. When you change to "Half pitch", "" appears.

Characters that can be entered in mode 2

<Example> To enter "う", select "Full-pitch input mode" and press  .

To enter a full-pitch "B", select "Full-pitch input mode" and press  .

To enter a half-pitch "B", select "Half-pitch input mode" and press  .

Full-pitch input mode

Key		2nd key input									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key input	1	あ あ	い い	う う	え え	お お	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か 	き 	く 	け 	こ 	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ 	し 	す 	せ 	そ 	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た 	ち 	つ 	て 	と 	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な 	に 	ぬ 	ね 	の 	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は 	ひ 	ふ 	へ 	ほ 	Z z	? 	! 	— 	/
	7	ま 	み 	む 	め 	も 	¥ 	& 			
	8	や 	(	ゆ 	) 	よ 	* 	# 			*1
	9	ら 	り 	る 	れ 	ろ 	1 	2 	3 	4 	5
	0	わ わ	を 	ん 	 、	 。	6 	7 	8 	9 	0

Half-pitch input mode

Key		2nd key input									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key input	1	ア ァ	イ ィ	ウ ゥ	エ ェ	オ ォ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	カ カ	キ キ	ク ク	ケ ケ	コ コ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	サ サ	シ シ	ス ス	セ セ	ソ ソ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	タ タ	チ チ	ツ ツ	テ テ	ト ト	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ナ ナ	ニ ニ	ヌ ヌ	ネ ネ	ノ ノ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ハ ハ	ヒ ヒ	フ フ	ヘ ヘ	ホ ホ	Z z	? ?	! !	- -	/ /
	7	マ マ	ミ ミ	ム ム	メ メ	モ モ	\ \	& &			
	8	ヤ ヤ	((	ユ ユ	))	ヨ ヨ	* *	# #			*1 *1
	9	ラ @	リ /	ル -	レ _	ロ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5 5
	0	ワ ~	ヲ '	ン ,	° .	° .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

• During reading input when you are storing entries in the UIM phonebook, Full-pitch input mode becomes katakana input.

*1 : Pressing   switches between upper case input mode (top) and lower case input mode (bottom). You can also enter upper case text and then change it to lower case by pressing .

- *2 : These can also be used only when pictograph input is possible, such as when "Text memo" or "Common phrases" are stored. Note that these icons are always entered as full-pitch characters. "Pictograph" is not possible when you are composing an SMS, but "☎" and "📞" can be entered.
- *3 : In "Full-pitch input mode", dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") are only displayed for characters with which dakuten can be used. Dakuten entered with other characters appear as spaces.
- ☐ : You can enter spaces.

Note

● In some cases, you may not be able to use mode 2 input. In such situations, use mode 1 input instead.

Entering text in mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode allows you to enter text with a minimum of key pressing.

For example, to enter the "あした" reading in mode 1 (5-touch), you have to press (1 ㊟) once, (㊟ ㊟) twice and (㊟ ㊟) once, whereas in mode 3 (T9 input) you only have to press the (1 ㊟) (㊟ ㊟) and (㊟ ㊟) for the respective 行 once each.

A 行 is assigned to each key, and each time you press a key a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter the desired reading.

Mode 3 also features 2 input helper functions: "Yomi edit" and "Fix mode".

"Yomi edit" enables you to edit the entered reading candidates, while you can use "Fix mode" to directly enter the desired reading. Mode 3 (T9 input) also works in tandem with the FOMA terminal's word prediction function (P. 529) to allow faster and easier text entry.

Changing the input mode

In the text entry (edit) display...

➡ P. 522

Press ● (Mode).

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press ● (Mode), in the following sequence: "Alphabetic" → "Numeric" → "Kanji/hiragana" → "Katakana". However, mode 3 (T9 input) only operates in the "Kanji/hiragana" and "Katakana" input modes. In "Alphabetic" and "Numeric" input modes, text entry automatically changes to mode 1.

Characters that can entered in mode 3

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
(1 ㊟)	あ column, 1	ア column, 1	(㊟ ㊟)	ま column, 7	マ column, 7
(㊟ ㊟)	か column, 2	カ column, 2	(㊟ ㊟)	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8
(㊟ ㊟)	さ column, 3	サ column, 3	(㊟ ㊟)	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9
(㊟ ㊟)	た column, 4	タ column, 4	(㊟ ㊟)	わ を ん わ ー, 0	ワ ヲ ン ヲ ^{*3} ー, 0
(㊟ ㊟)	な column, 5	ナ column, 5	(# ㊟)	*1, *2	*1, *2
(㊟ ㊟)	は column, 6	ハ column, 6			

- For the characters assigned in "Alphabetic input mode" and "Numeric input mode", refer to the character assignments in mode 1 (5-touch).
- Numeric character candidates are not displayed when you are entering reading to store phonebook entries on the FOMA card (JIM) or entering own dictionary readings.

- *1 : Changes the conversion candidate readings with dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") during reading input.
- *2 : As for 5-touch input (mode 1), dakuten, han-dakuten, commas, periods, bullets, exclamation marks and question marks are displayed after readings and characters have been confirmed, but the dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") only appear when they are preceded by characters that take dakuten.
- *3 : The small "ッ" can be entered in full-pitch character input.

Entering text

<Example: Entering "戸田" in T9 kanji conversion mode>

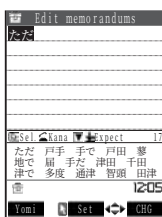
1

Press ● (Mode) to select "Kanji/hiragana input mode".

2 Enter the characters to be converted.

ㇿ (た行) 、 ㇿ (た行) 、 ㇿ (dakuten)

The predicted candidates for "ただ" are displayed.



■ If you press the wrong key

Press ㇿ (CLR) to delete the character and press the key again.

■ If the entered texts has no recognized candidates

Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray. Use ㇿ to change the range of characters to be converted.

■ To change the conversion candidate display mode (kanji-kana)

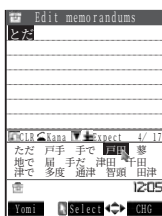
Press ㇿ.

■ To view the word prediction conversion candidates

Hold down ㇿ for 1 second or longer.

Press ㇿ (CLR) to return to the screen shown before pressing ㇿ for 1 second or longer.

3 Press ㇿ to select a conversion candidate and press ㇿ.



The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.

■ To return to entering characters to be converted

Press ㇿ (CLR).

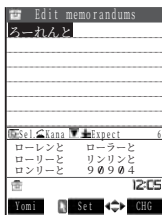
■ To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates

Press ㇿ (CHG) ▶ Use ㇿ to select a candidate and press ㇿ.

● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering "らわらわた" and converting to "爛々と">

1 Enter the characters to be converted.



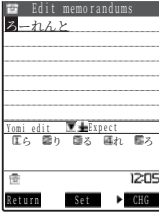
ㇿ (ら行) 、 ㇿ (わ行) 、 ㇿ (ら行) 、 ㇿ (わ行) 、 ㇿ (た行)

The "predictable conversion candidates for "らわらわた" are displayed. Candidates for "ららん" do not appear.

2 Press ㇿ (Yomi).

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The "ら行" characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press the number on the keypad for the character you want to enter.



In this case, press (1) (ら).

After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct that character.

■ If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate

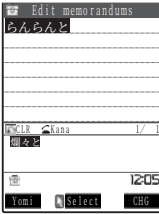
Use (right arrow) to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected.

■ To exit edit mode in mid-operation

Press (Return).

The characters corrected so far are displayed as the conversion candidate.

4 Press (left arrow) to select “爛々と” and press (right arrow).

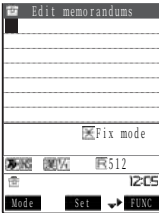


From next time, if “らわらわた” is inputted, “爛々と” will be displayed at a conversion candidate's head.

● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Entering the “はためく” reading>

1 Press (Fix mode) “Fix mode”.

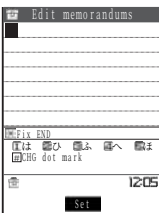


The input mode changes to Fix mode and “はためく” in the information display area changes to “FIX”.

2 Press the key for the column that includes the character you want to enter.

In this case, press (5) (は). The “は” characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

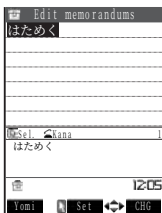
3 Press the keypad number for the character you want to enter.



In this case, press (1) (は).

Use the same procedure to enter the rest of the reading.

4 Press "Fix END".



When you press  "Fix END", the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji or katakana by pressing  and then  (CHG).

● Setting T9 change mode

When you are entering text in T9 input mode, you can use this procedure to specify whether the entered text is converted to kanji or kana.

1 Press ► "T9 change mode" ► Choose from the following options:

① T9 Kanji change mode	Converts the entered text to kanji.
② T9 Kana change mode	Converts the entered text to kana.

Using word prediction

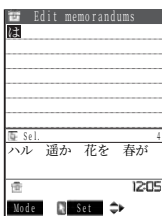
The FOMA terminal's word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the next time you enter the same character string, it includes the stored character string along with common phrases in your list of candidates to choose from.

1 Press ► "Prediction" ► Press "ON" or "OFF".

● Using word prediction to enter text

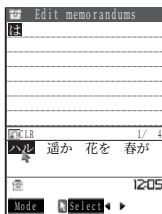
The word prediction function displays predictive candidates and historical candidates based on text you have entered in the past.

1 Enter the reading.



The predictive candidates appear in the guidance area.

- 2 Hold down  for 1 second or longer or slide your finger over  (Neuropointer).



The cursor appears in the guidance area and you can choose from the predictive candidates.

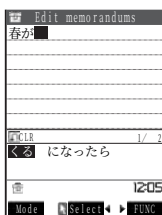
■ To return to reading entry

Press .

■ If no predictive candidates appear or there are no predictive candidates for the text you want to enter

Enter the reading unchanged.

- 3 Select a predictive candidate and press .



Once you confirm the text, historical candidates for the next section of text appear.

- 4 Select an historical candidate and press .

■ If no historical candidates appear or there are no historical candidates for the text you want to enter
Enter the next section of text unchanged.

Displaying guidance

Use this procedure to specify whether guidance (P. 522) is displayed in the Text Entry (Edit) display.

- 1 Press      "Guidance"  Press  "ON" or  "OFF".

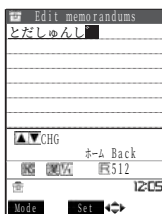
Entering text

<Example: Entering "戸田俊司">

In the text entry (edit) display...

➡ P. 522

- 1 Enter the hiragana.



■ If you press the wrong key

Press  to delete the character and press the key again.

■ If you press a key too many times

Press  (Home).

The previous character assigned to that key appears.

■ When the next character to be entered is assigned to the same key

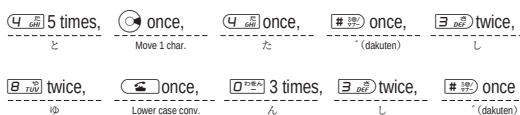
Press  or hold down the key for 1 second or longer.

Cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

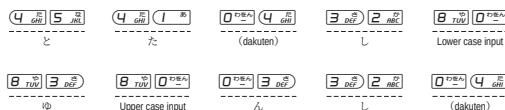
■ To confirm the hiragana

Press .

<Mode 1>

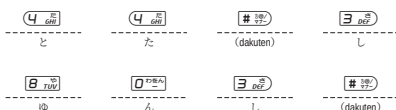


<Mode 2>



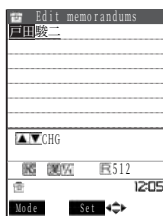
In mode 2, entering a single digit and then confirming the input deletes the text. Always enter 2 digits.

<Mode 3>



In mode 3, use to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and use to switch to Yomi edit mode.

2 Press to convert the reading to kanji.



The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined ().

■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji

Press .

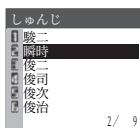
The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ To change the conversion range

Use or to change the conversion range.

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are available kanji for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

3 Use or to display the conversion candidates.



A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.

■ If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of “あ” -level characters

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select the kanji you want to enter and press .

Note

- You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the “on” or “kun” reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- If strings of 2 or more characters cannot be converted, convert the character one by one.
- You can use kuten codes to enter kanji that cannot be entered by conversion. → P. 542
- Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a confirmation message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.

● Switching between upper case and lower case

Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

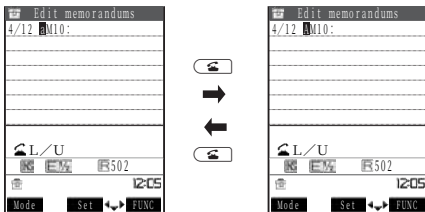
■ Pressing

In the text entry (edit) display...

➔ P. 522

Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press .

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press. This method can only be used when " L / U" is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ Using the Function menu

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

Press  "Lower case"/"Upper case".

When you change to "Lower case", " Sm" appears in the information display area. No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in "Insert", the new text is inserted into the existing text. In "Overwrite", the new text replaces the existing entered text.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

Press  Press  "Overwrite"/"Insert".

When you change to "Insert", " INS" appears in the information display area, and " OVR" appears when you select "Overwrite".

When the Text Entry (Edit) display first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

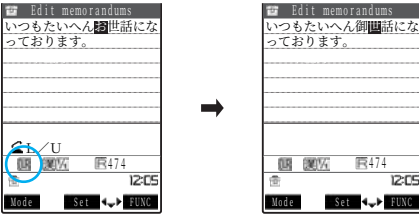
● Inserting text

Select "Insert" and use  to move the cursor the position immediately to the right of where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



Overwriting text

Select "Overwrite" and use  to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



Inserting a space (blank)

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

Press  Press  "Space".

A full-pitch space is inserted in full-pitch input and a half-pitch space is inserted in half-pitch input.

Note

- A space (blank) is counted as a 1 full-pitch or half-pitch character.

Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol "↵". There are 2 ways to insert a line feed symbol "↵".

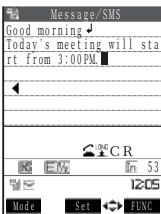
■ Holding down  for 1 second or longer

In the text entry (edit) display...

➔ P. 522

Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and hold down  for 1 second or longer.

A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.



■ Using the Function menu

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

Press  Press  "Line feed".

A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

Note

- The line feed symbol can be deleted and overwritten in the same way as normal text.
- The line feed icon is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- You may not be able to insert a line feed in an i-mode text box.

● Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek numbers and units.

Note that you cannot enter full-pitch symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➡ P. 536

1

Press  Press  "Symbols" ▶ Select the symbol to be inserted and press



For the symbol and special character tables → P. 550

Note

- The half-pitch character icon is displayed when you can only enter half-pitch characters.

● Using character conversion to enter symbols and smiley face symbols

In "Kanji/hiragana input mode", you can enter symbols and smiley face symbols by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ Entering symbols

Entering and converting "きこう" in "Kanji/hiragana input mode" displays the symbol candidates. You can also enter symbols by entering and converting a symbol name such as "かつこ" or "さんかく".

See "Symbols in Japanese Conversion" → P. 550

■ Entering smiley face symbols

Entering and converting "かお" or "かおもじ" in "Kanji/hiragana input mode" displays the smiley symbol candidates. You can also enter smiley face symbols by entering and converting an smiley symbol name such as "ありがとう" or "さよなら".

See "Smiley Face Symbols List" → P. 551

● Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, the weather or an animal in the Text Entry (Edit) display for items such as mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Pictographs are can also stored when they are entered in "Continuous pictograph/symbol input".

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➡ P. 536

1

Press  Press  "Pictograph" ▶ Select a pictograph and press .

See "Pictographs Symbols Lists" → P. 551

● Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Use this procedure to have the FOMA terminal continue to display symbol and pictograph candidate displays so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

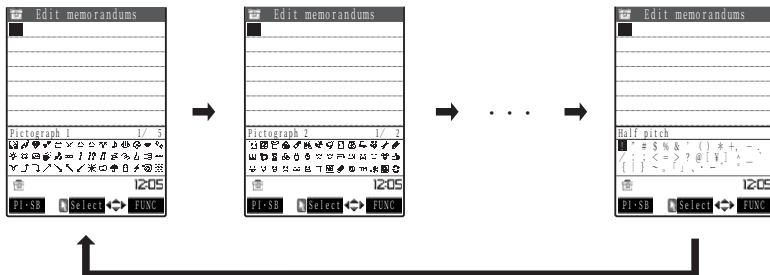
- For information on entering symbols → P. 550
- For information on pictographs → P. 551

1 Press "PI • SB input mode".

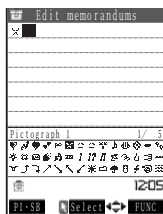
The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The "current page/total pages" figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press (PI • SB) to switch to a different candidate display.

Each time you press  (PI • SB), the candidate display changes in the following sequence: "Pictograph 1" → "Pictograph 2" → "Full pitch 1" → "Full pitch 2" → "Half pitch".



3 Select the symbol or pictograph and press .



The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs.

4 When you have finished entering symbols and pictographs, press .

Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

Deleting text

Use  to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and hold down  briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



■ When there is no character in the cursor position

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

■ If you hold down **[CLR]** for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

■ If you hold down **[CLR]** for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor

All the text is deleted.

● Data protection during text entry and editing

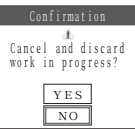
When you are entering text in the Text Entry (Edit) display and the battery fails or your receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the display.

■ If the battery fails

If the battery failure alarm sounds during text entry, the Text Entry (Edit) display is replaced by the "Recharge battery" message display. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

For information on re-editing the phonebook → P. 95

■ If you press **[END]**



If you press **[END]** while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.

<To quit without saving the text>

Select "YES". The FOMA terminal redisplay the previous display or stand-by display without saving the entered text.

You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing **[END]**.

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The FOMA terminal returns to the Text Entry (Edit) display with the entered text still displayed.

You can also return to the Text Entry (Edit) display by pressing **[CLR]**.

■ When you receive a voice call

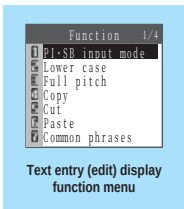
If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered.

When the call ends, the Text Entry (Edit) display reappears. During a voice call, you can return to the Text Entry (Edit) display during the call by pressing **[END]** to display the Task menu. → P. 426

Using the function menu in the Text Entry (Edit) display

In the text entry (edit) display...

➡ P. 522



Text entry (edit) display function menu 1/4

1 PI·SB input mode	See "Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P. 534
2 Lower case*1	See "Switching between upper case and lower case" → P. 532
3 Half pitch*2	See "Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P. 525
4 Copy	See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
5 Cut	See "Copying (or cutting) text" → P. 541
6 Paste	See "Pasting text" → P. 542
7 Common phrases	See "Entering common phrases" → P. 538

*1: If you have selected the lower case, "Upper case" is displayed.

*2: If you have selected the Half pitch, "Full pitch" is displayed.

Text entry (edit) display function menu 2/4

1 Space	See "Inserting a space (blank)" → P. 533
2 Line feed	See "Inserting a line feed" → P. 533
3 Symbols	See "Inserting symbols" → P. 534
4 Pictograph	See "Entering pictographs" → P. 534
5 Kuten code	See "Entering Kuten Codes" → P. 542
6 Overwrite^{*1}	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. → P. 532
7 Quote phonebook	See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538

*1: If you have selected the Overwrite mode, "6 Insert" is displayed.

Text entry (edit) display function menu 3/4

 Quote own number	See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" → P. 538	
 Access reader	Pastes text data scanned in by the Access Reader. See "Scanning Text" → P. 189	
 Bar code reader	Pastes text data scanned in by the Bar Code Reader. See "Using the Bar Code Reader" → P. 185	
 Refer dic.	Activates the dictionary. See "Using Dictionaries" → P. 448	
 Prediction OFF^{*1}	Specifies whether or not to use a word prediction function that displays predictive and historical candidates based on text entered in the past.	
 CHG input method	 Choose from the following options:	
	Switches input modes.	
	 Mode 1 (5-touch)	Changes the text entry mode to 5-touch input.
	 Mode 2 (2-touch)	Changes the text entry mode to 2-touch input.
	 Mode 3 (T9 Input)	Changes the text entry mode to T9 input.
 T9 Kanji CHG mode^{*2}	Specifies whether entered text is converted to kanji or kana when text is entered in T9 input mode. When "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is selected as the "T9 CHG mode" or the "T9 Kana CHG mode" is set to "T9 Kana CHG", "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is displayed. Note that changes to the mode during text input only apply to the Text Entry (Edit) display. If you exit text entry and then return to a Text Entry (Edit) display later, the "Character input method" will revert to its previous setting.	

*1: If the word prediction is OFF, "6 Prediction ON" is displayed.

*2: If you have selected the T9 Kanji conversion mode, "7 T9 Kana CHG mode" is displayed.

Text entry (edit) display function menu 4/4

1 Jump	▶ Choose from the following options:	
	Moves the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.	
	1 To beginning	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the text.
	2 To end	Moves the cursor to the end of the text.
2 Change window^{*1}	When the operation display for a function and the Text Entry (Edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the FOMA terminal's display, this option switches between windows. See "Changing the Active Display" → P. 545	

*1 : Displayed only in the text (edit) entry display of which you can change the active window.

● Entering common phrases

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

- 1** Press **PARSE** “Common phrase” ▶ Select a folder and press **OK**.
For the list of common phrases → P. 541
- 2** Select a common phrase and press **OK** ▶ Press **OK**.

Note

- Common phrases can be entered in the following Text Entry (Edit) displays:

- Text memo
- Common phrase
- Common phrase folder name
- Schedule
- ToDo
- Wake-up message
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail message
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- i-mode mail quotation
- i-mode mail reply with ref.
- Enter auto sort setting subject
- Enter mail search subject
- Edit i-mode textbox
- Edit i-α ppli text
- Dictionary

- Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.

Modes 1 and 3 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.

Displayed as half-pitch katakana other than kanji/hiragana input mode.

Mode 2 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in full-pitch input mode.

Displayed as half-pitch katakana in half-pitch input mode.

- If the accept phone number of characters is exceeded when you enter a common phrase, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select "YES", the common phrase is entered and the excess text from the end of the common phrase onwards is truncated.

● Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook

In the Text Entry (Edit) display for an e-mail message or "Text memo", you can use this procedure to enter the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the phonebook or in "Own number"

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text Entry (Edit) displays.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

- 1** Press ➤ Press “Quote phonebook” or ➤ Press ➤ Press “Quote own number”.

- ### ■ When “Quote phonebook” selected

You can search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted by selecting "Group search" or "Column search".

For information on searching the phonebook → P. 98

- ### ■ When “Quote own number” is selected

Enter your security code.

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

- 2 Select the item to be quoted and press .



Quoting a phonebook entry

- 3 Press  (Finish).

Note

- You cannot quote data when "PIM lock" is set.
- When you quote a street address, the postal code "〒" symbol and "-" are not quoted.
- By selecting "Access reader", "Bar code reader" or "Refer dictionary" from the Text Entry (Edit) display Function menu (P. 536), you can also use those functions to quote data.

<Store common phrase>

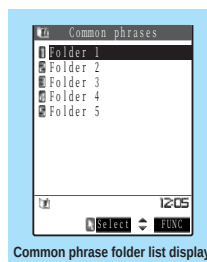
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text Entry (Edit) display later. Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.

Composing a new common phrase

- 1 Press   .

The "Common phrase folder list display" appears.

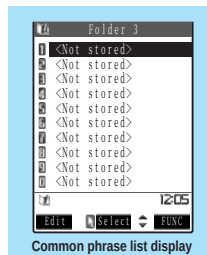


Common phrase folder list display

- 2 Select a folder and press .

The "Common phrase list display" appears.

- 3 Select "<Not stored>" and press  (Edit) ▶ Enter the common phrase and press .



Common phrase list display

Note

- Common phrases can contain up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters.
- When you create an original common phrase to be used in mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or as a quotation symbol, do not use "half-pitch katakana" or "pictographs" as these may not be displayed correctly (Pictographs can be used when i-mode mail is exchanged).
- Fixed common phrases are retrieved as "kanji/hiragana" when the text entry method is "Kanji/hiragana input mode" in mode 1 (5-touch) or mode 3 (T9 input) or "Full-pitch input mode" in mode 2 (2-touch), and as "half-pitch katakana" when another text entry method is used.

Using the function menu in the Common Phrases Folder List display

In the common phrase folder list display... ➡ P. 539

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options

Common phrase folder list display function menu

 Edit folder name	▶ Change the folder name and press . The selected folder name changes. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters and 20 half-pitch characters for the folder name.
 Reset name	▶ Select "YES" and press . The folder name returns to the default folder name.

Note

- If there are no characters in the folder name when you set it, the folder name returns to the default folder name.

Using the function menu in the Common Phrase List display

In the common phrase list display... ➡ P. 539

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Common phrase list display function menu

 Edit	▶ Edit the common phrase and press . Edits the selected common phrase.
 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press .
 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press . About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

- If you delete a preset fixed common phrase, it reverts to the default common phrase set at the time of purchase.

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only 1 item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➡ P. 536

1 Press **[4] [F1] [GH]** "Copy" or **[5] [F1] [JH]** "Cut".

2 Move the cursor to the beginning of the text to be copied or cut and then press **[C]**.



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut and then press **[C]**.
The selected text is stored. Up to 5,000 full-pitch, or 10,000 half-pitch characters can be stored.

■ If the text was cut

The selected text is deleted, but is stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select a range that includes no text

The range is stored as half-pitch spaces.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu...

➔ P. 536

1 Press "Paste".

- If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text Entry (Edit) display

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced by spaces when the text is pasted.

Note

- If the pasted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select "YES", the text is pasted and the excess text from the end of the pasted text onwards is truncated. If you select "NO", the text is not pasted and the original display reappears.

Entering Kuten Codes

This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit "kuten" codes.

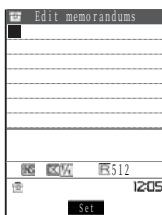
- About Kuten code and characters that can be entered by using kuten code ➔ P. 552
- The display of a screen may differ from the character of a Kuten code or a symbol.

<Example: Entering "慶" (kuten code 2336)>

In the text entry (edit) display...

➔ P. 522

1 Press .



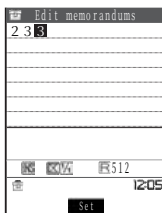
The input mode changes to "Kuten code" input and  appears in the information display area.

- When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

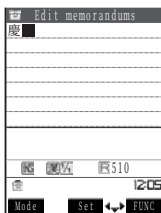
In the Text Entry (Edit) display Function menu ▶ Press  ▶ Press  "Kuten code".

2 Enter kuten code .

The character for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.







- If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

Note

- When the text entry mode is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 2 (2-touch)", you still switch to kuten code input by selecting "Kuten code" from the Function menu.

<Own dictionary>

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting

Not stored

Using this procedure to store frequently used words in own dictionary under your preferred reading allows you to recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text Entry (Edit) display.

- You cannot enter pictographs, line feeds or common phrases or their readings. The entries are automatically filled with spaces.
- Symbols other than dakuten "、。・！？" cannot be stored.

Adding a new word

- 1 Press .

The "Own dictionary display" appears.

- 2 Select "<New>" and press Enter the word and press Enter the reading and press .

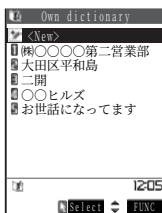


Note

- Own dictionary will hold up to 100 items.
- Words can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. Readings are written in full-pitch hiragana and can be up to 10 characters long.

Checking words

- 1 Press .



- 2 Select the work you want to check and press .

■ To edit a word

Highlight the word to be changed and press (Edit).

Using the function menu in Own Dictionary display

In the own dictionary display...

➡ P. 543

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Own dictionary display function menu

1 Edit	Edits the stored word.
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
3 Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press  ▶ Press  (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
About Your Security Codes → P. 142	

<Clear learning record>

Resetting the Learning Record

The learning dictionary contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning dictionary to its default status at the time of purchase.

1 Press      ▶ Press   "Clear learned" ▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 T9/Expect words/Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for "Mode 3 (T9 input)", "Prediction" and "Pictographs".
2 Kana/Kanji change	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion.

<Download dictionary>

Selecting the Dictionaries Used

Default setting

Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries for Japanese language conversion from i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 5 download dictionaries, 2 of which can be active.
- For information on downloading dictionaries → P. 223

1 Press  ▶ Select  and press  ▶ Press  "DL dictionary".

The "Download dictionary display" appears.

2 Select the dictionary you want to set and press .

A star (★) appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

Select a dictionary marked with a star (★).

The dictionary is deselected and the star (★) disappears.



Download dictionary display

Using the function menu in the Download Dictionary display

In the download dictionary display...

➡ P. 544

1 Press  (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Download dictionary display

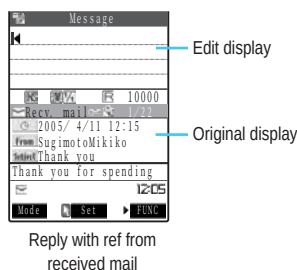
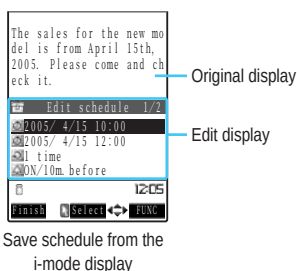
1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press  .
	Edits the title of the download dictionary selected. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
2 Set dictionary	Sets the download dictionary or cancels the setting.
3 Dictionary info	Displays information for the download dictionary selected.
4 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press  .
5 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press  ▶ Select "YES" and press  .
	About Your Security Codes → P. 142

Note

● If you set a title without entering any characters when you edit the title of download dictionary, it reverts to the original title.

Changing the Active Display

Some displays, such as that for replying to received mail while referring to the original message Reply with ref, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation display and the Text Entry (Edit) display at the same time.



- The function operation display and Text Entry (Edit) display are shown at the same time in the following situations:
- Replying to i-mode mail while referring to the message
 - Adding schedule entries from i-mode mail
 - Saving schedule entries while referring to an i-mode display
 - Entering site URLs by searching dictionaries in an i-mode display
 - Chat display for Chat mail
 - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

Procedure for changing the active display

When a function operation display and the Text Entry (Edit) display are shown at the same time, you can use any of the 3 methods described below to switch between displays.

■ Hold down for 1 second or longer

The active display changes each time you hold down  for 1 second or longer.

■ Select the active display using the Function menu

Select "Change window" from the Function menu to change the active display.

■ Select the active display using the neuropointer

Slide your finger over the neuropointer key to display the neuropointer and then use it to select the active display.

Note

- When you switch to the other display, the entered text or cursor location in the current display remain unchanged.
- You cannot change displays while you are entering a character reading.
- If you switch to using a received mail display or i-mode display while an edit display is shown, you can only scroll the mail or i-mode display. However, in the case of Received mail only, you can also copy text and set the character size.
- You cannot switch displays in the Chat display for chat mail.

Appendix

Menu Function List	548
Symbols and Special Characters List.....	550
Pictographs Symbols Lists	551
Smiley Face Symbols List.....	551
Kuten Code List	552
Multi Access Combination Patterns.....	556
Multi Task Combination Patterns	556
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal	557
Options and Accessories.....	558
About Data Link Software.....	558
Malfunction Checklist.....	559
If Any Error Message Appears	562
Warranty and After-Sales Service	569
Software Update <Software update>	570
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data <Scanning function>	575
About the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones	577

Menu Function List

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Mail			—	P. 246
i-mode			—	P. 204
i-α.ppli			—	P. 320
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	⏮ (5) ⏭ (0-15)	P. 66
		Select ring tone	⏮ (1) ⏭ (3) ⏭	P. 114
		SRS_WOW	⏮ (6) ⏭ (4) ⏭	P. 374
		Vibrator	⏮ (5) ⏭ (4) ⏭	P. 116
		Illumination	⏮ (8) ⏭ (9) ⏭	P. 133
		Manner mode set	⏮ (2) ⏭ (5) ⏭	P. 120
		Disp. phonebook image	—	P. 125
		Answer setting	⏮ (5) ⏭ (8) ⏭	P. 61
		Fold setting	⏮ (1) ⏭ (8) ⏭	P. 62
		Mail/Msg. ring time	⏮ (6) ⏭ (5) ⏭	P. 118
		Ringling time	⏮ (9) ⏭ (0-15)	P. 156
		Info notice setting	⏮ (6) ⏭ (5) ⏭	P. 69
	Talk	Noise reduction	⏮ (2) ⏭ (6) ⏭	P. 59
		Quality alarm	⏮ (2) ⏭ (5) ⏭	P. 118
		Reconnect control	⏮ (2) ⏭ (2) ⏭	P. 59
		Illumination in talk	—	P. 134
		Call response Setting	—	P. 67
	Video-phone	Image quality	—	P. 84
		Camera image sending	—	P. 84
		Select image	—	P. 84
		Voice call auto switch	—	P. 84
		Remote observation	—	P. 88
		Disp. setting V-phone	—	P. 86
	Display	Display setting	⏮ (5) ⏭ (6) ⏭	P. 121
		Display light	⏮ (2) ⏭ (0-15)	P. 127
		Display design	⏮ (8) ⏭ (6) ⏭	P. 128
		Indicator display	⏮ (9) ⏭ (3) ⏭	P. 126
		Font	⏮ (6) ⏭ (6) ⏭	P. 135
		Desktop icon	⏮ (6) ⏭ (3) ⏭	P. 135
		Select language	⏮ (1) ⏭ (5) ⏭	P. 43
		Original menu	⏮ (5) ⏭ (2) ⏭	P. 131

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	Display	Menu display set	⏮ (5) ⏭ (2) ⏭	P. 129
		Viewer settings	—	P. 344
		Automatic display	⏮ (4) ⏭ (2) ⏭	P. 110
		Icons	⏮ (3) ⏭ (6) ⏭	P. 27
	Call time/charge	Call data	⏮ (6) ⏭ (1) ⏭	P. 445
		Reset call duration	⏮ (6) ⏭ (0-15)	P. 446
		Call time display	⏮ (4) ⏭ (8) ⏭	P. 134
	Clock	Set time	⏮ (3) ⏭ (1) ⏭	P. 45
		Clock display	⏮ (3) ⏭ (9) ⏭	P. 135
		Alarm setting	—	P. 427
	Lock/Security	All lock	—	P. 146
		PIM lock	—	P. 150
		Self mode	—	P. 157
		Keypad dial lock	—	P. 151
		Reject unknown	—	P. 156
		Call setting w/o ID	⏮ (1) ⏭ (0-15)	P. 155
		Change security code	⏮ (2) ⏭ (9) ⏭	P. 143
		PIN setting	—	P. 143
		Secret mode	⏮ (4) ⏭ (0-15)	P. 148
		Secret only mode	⏮ (4) ⏭ (1) ⏭	P. 149
		Scanning function	—	P. 575
		Remote all lock	⏮ (9) ⏭ (9) ⏭	P. 146
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—	P. 227
		Set check new message	—	P. 299
		Host selection	⏮ (8) ⏭ (1) ⏭	P. 228
		SMS center setting	—	P. 315
		Certificate	—	P. 235
		Certificate host	—	P. 237
	i-α.ppli settings	Display software info	—	P. 323
		αDisplay light	—	P. 326
		αVibrator	—	P. 326

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	i-α ppli settings	αIndicator display	—	P. 326
		End stand-by display	—	P. 332
	External option	Earphone	(5, 2) (1, 4)	P. 118
		Automatic answer	(9, 2) (4, 2)	P. 452
	Other settings	Keypad sound	(9, 2) (0, 1)	P. 117
		Charge sound	—	P. 117
		Battery level	(2, 2) (1, 4)	P. 42
		Side keys guard	(6, 2) (1, 4)	P. 150
		Character input method	(3, 2) (5, 2)	P. 523
		Record display set	—	P. 152
		Pause dial	(8, 2) (4, 2)	P. 53
		Sub-address	—	P. 58
		Prefix setting	—	P. 54
		Int'l dial setting	—	P. 56
		PLMN setting	—	P. 453
		Neuropointer	—	P. 132
		Select icons setting	—	P. 138
		USB mode setting	—	P. 404
		Reset	(2, 2) (3, 2)	P. 453
		Initialize	—	P. 458
		Software update	—	P. 570
Data box	My picture		(4, 2) (6, 2)	P. 343
	i-motion		—	P. 365
	Melody		(1, 4) (6, 2)	P. 387
	Chara-den		—	P. 380
Tool	Camera		—	P. 166, 175
	Schedule		(4, 2) (5, 2)	P. 431
	Alarm clock		(4, 2) (4, 2)	P. 430
	ToDo		(9, 2) (5, 2)	P. 437
	Text memo		(4, 2) (2, 2)	P. 447
	Calculator		(8, 2) (5, 2)	P. 446
	Play/Erase msg.		(Memo/Check)	P. 72
	Record message		(5, 2) (5, 2)	P. 70
	Voice memo (in stand-by)		(4, 2) (3, 2)	P. 444

High level item	Middle item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Tool	Voice memo (during a call)	(Memo/Check)	P. 443
	Voice announce	(9, 2) (1, 4)	P. 444
	Receive Ir data	(2, 2) (9, 2)	P. 412, 414
	UIM operation	—	P. 104
	Forwarding image	—	P. 409
	Access reader	—	P. 189
	Bar code reader	—	P. 185
	SD-PIM	—	P. 399
	Dictionary	—	P. 448
Network service	Check messages	(2, 2) (5, 2)	P. 462
	Caller ID notification	(1, 4) (2, 2)	P. 45
	Voice mail	—	P. 460
	Call waiting	—	P. 463
	Call forwarding	—	P. 464
	Nuisance call barring	—	P. 466
	Caller ID request	—	P. 466
	Arrival call act	—	P. 469
	Set arrival act	—	P. 470
	Remote access	—	P. 471
	Dual network	—	P. 467
	English guidance	—	P. 468
	Additional service	—	P. 471
	Service dial	—	P. 469
	Multi number	—	P. 471
Phonebook	Add to phonebook	—	P. 93
	Search phonebook	—	P. 98
	No. of phonebook	(2, 2) (2, 2)	P. 107
	Utilities	(6, 2) (2, 2)	P. 107
	Restrictions	(1, 4) (2, 2)	P. 154
	Group setting	(2, 2) (6, 2)	P. 97
Own data	Own number	(0, 1)	P. 46, 441
	Received calls	(2, 2) (4, 2)	P. 62
	Dialed calls	—	P. 50
	Mail member	(9, 2) (2, 2)	P. 267
	Chat group	—	P. 306
	Common phrases	(3, 2) (8, 2)	P. 539
	Own dictionary	(8, 2) (2, 2)	P. 543
	DL dictionary	—	P. 544

Symbols and Special Characters List

■ Full-pitch Symbols 1

、 ° ° ^ - _ \ / ~ || |
 ✕ ○ — — — / \ ~ || |
 ‘ ’ “ ” () [] { }
 < > 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】 + -
 ± × ÷ = ≠ < > ≤ ≥ ∞ ∴ ⤵
 ° ° ' " °C ¥ \$ ¢ £ % # &
 * @ § ☆ ★ ● ◎ ◇ ◆ ■
 △ ▲ ▽ ▼ ※ ☼ → ↪ ↩ ↯
 ≡ ≅ ≍ ≎ ≏ ≐ ≑ ≒ ≓ ≔ ≕
 ∇ ∃ ∠ ⊥ (∂ ∇ ≡ ≪ ≫ √
 ∞ ∞ ∙ ∫ ∫ Å ‰ ♭ ♮ † ‡
 ¶ ○ わ る 魚 ワ 卅 エ ヲ カ ケ A

[illegible]

■ Full-pitch Symbols 2

①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫
⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ
V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	.	..	...	...	...	...
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	mm	cm
km	mg	kg	cc	m ²	平成	"	"	No.	KK	TEL	㊤
㊤	㊦	㊨	㊩	㊪	有	(代)	明治	大正	昭和		≡
∫	ℳ	Σ	√	⊥	∠	∠	∠	∴	∩	∪	

■ Half-pitch Symbols

! " # \$ % & ' () * + ,
- . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥
] ^ _ ` { | } ~ ° 「 」 、
• 一 ˆ 。

■ Symbols in Japanese Conversion

You can enter symbols in mail messages, etc., by entering “きごう” while you are in Kanji/hiragana input mode, and then converting the text to display the symbol candidates. You can also enter the name of a symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
あっと、あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	♂
おなじ	々
おなじく	//
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	(){}[]<>『』【】“ ”〃〆〇◇△〱〲〳〴〵〶〷〸〹〺〻〼〽〾〿

Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	∠
しかく	□■◇◆
たす	+
どう	ゝ っ づ っ //
ぼーせんと	%
ひく	—

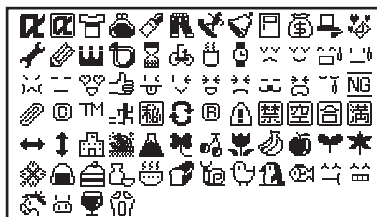
Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
ひしかた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	↗↖↗↘
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs Symbols Lists

List of Pictographs 1



List of Pictographs 2



Note

- If the pictographs are used in the message of e-mail, they may not be displayed properly at the received side when sent to the i-mode incompatible mobile or PC. Even with the i-mode terminal, they may not be displayed correctly if pictograph 2 is not supported by that phone.

Smiley Face Symbols List

Smiley Face Symbols

You can enter smiley face symbols in mail messages, by entering “かお” or “かおもじ” while you are in Kanji/ hiragana input mode, and then converting the text to display the different smiley face symbol candidates. You can also enter the meaning of a smiley face symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired smiley face symbol.

Meanings (Entering characters)	Smiley face symbol
あせあせ(Sweat! Sweat!)	()
あは(Ah ha!)	()
ありがとう/ありがとう(Thank)	m()
いかり(Angry)	()
いたた(Ouch!)	()
いっぶん(Take a break)	()
いっぶん(Take a break)	()
うんく(Wink)	()
うん(Yeah)	()
え(What?)	()
えん(Crying)	()
えへん(Ahem)	()
おーい(Hey!)	()
がーん(Shocked!)	()
がんばら(Cheer up!)	p()
かんばい(Cheers!)	()
きこえない(Can't hear)	()

Meanings (Entering characters)	Smiley face symbol
ぎゃはは(Ha-ha!)	()
きらーん(Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆.☆)
こあら(Koala)	(-Q-)
こそこそ(Whisper)	(.・)
こまたもんだ(My goodness!)	()
さよなら(Good-bye!)	()
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(T.T)
じーつ(Gaze)	()
しくしく(Sob, sob)	(T.T)
ちゅ(Kiss)	()
ちゅ(Kiss! Kiss!)	()-☆Chul!
どき(Shocked!)	()
どき(Well, well)	()
なぜ(Why?)	()
にこ(Smile!)	()
にこ(Smile! smile)	()
ね(Isn't it?)	()

Meanings (Entering characters)	Smiley face symbol
ねてる(Zzzz...)	()
ねむい(I'm sleepy)	()
はてな(Wait a minute!)	()
ばんざい(Hurrah!)	()
びくっ(Twitch)	()
ひやあせ(Cold Sweat!)	()
ぶい(Vvvv!)	()
ぶたー(Pig)	()
ほし(Star)	()
ほりほり(Scratch, scratch!)	()
む(Sullen)	()
むか(Offended)	()
めかてん(WH*AT?)	()
めも(Memo)	()
わーい(Wow!)	()
わくわく(I'm excited!)	o()

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter "digits 1-3 of the kuten code" and then enter "digit 4".

- The kuten code table actually displayed may differ from the table shown here.

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	075	б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З	И	Й	191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	害	崖	
011	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	076	к	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	У	192	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
012	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	077	ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Э	Ю	193	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
013	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	ゝ	ゞ	078	ю	Я									194	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
014											080	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	195	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
015											081	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	196	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
016											082	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	197	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
017											083	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	198	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
018											130	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	200	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
019											131	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	201	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
020											132	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	202	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
021											133	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	203	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
022											134	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	204	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
023											135	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	205	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
024											136	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	206	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
026											137	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	207	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
027											138	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	207	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
028											139	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	208	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
029											160	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	209	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
031											161	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	210	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
032											162	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	211	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
033											163	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	212	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
034											164	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	213	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
036											164	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	215	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
037											165	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	216	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
038											166	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	217	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
039											167	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	218	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
040											168	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	219	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
041											169	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	220	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
042											170	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	221	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
043											171	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	222	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
044											172	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	223	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
045											173	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	224	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
046											174	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	225	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
047											175	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	226	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
048											176	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	227	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
050											177	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	228	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
051											178	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	229	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
052											179	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	230	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
053											180	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	231	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
054											181	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	232	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
055											182	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	233	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
056											183	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	234	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
057											184	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	235	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
058											185	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	236	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
060											186	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	237	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
061											187	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	238	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
062											188	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	239	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
063											189	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	240	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
064											190	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	241	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
065											191	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	242	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
070											192	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	243	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
071											193	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	244	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
072											194	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	245	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
073											195	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	246	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	
074											196	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	ゝ	247	蟻	蛙	格	郭	該	該	該	該	該	

Appendix

555

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Communication newly started Current communication status	Voice call		Video-phone call		Use i-mode	Use i-αppli	i-mode mail	
	Dial	Receive	Dial	Receive			Send	Receive
During a voice call	△ ^{*1}	△ ^{*2}	×	△ ^{*3}	○	×	○	○
During a video-phone call	×	△ ^{*3}	—	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	○ ^{*5}	×	—	—	○	○
During packet data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*5}	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△ ^{*3}	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	×

Communication newly started Current communication status	SMS		Packet communication via PC		64K data communication	
	Send	Receive	Connect	Receive	Connect	Receive
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△ ^{*3}
During a video-phone call	×	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}
During i-mode	○	○	×	×	×	×
During packet data communication	○	○	—	—	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1: If you have subscribed to the "Call waiting" service, you can make a call by putting on hold.

*2: If you have subscribed to the "Call waiting" service, you can answer a call by putting on hold. Also if you have subscribed to the "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" service, you can answer the new incoming call by ending a call.

*3: If you have subscribed to the "Call waiting", "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" service, you can answer the new incoming call by ending a call.

*4: i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free are not received, and are stored in the i-mode center. You can receive those stored i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free by "Check new message" after the communication ends.

*5: You can make Video-phone calls after ending the current communication status of i-mode.

*6: The i-αppli software which needs communication cannot be performed.

Multi Task Combination Patterns

Function to use	Mail	i-mode menu sites	i-αppli	Settings	Data box	Tools	Network Service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
Current status										
During starting mail group	○ ^{*1}	○	○	○ ^{*2}	○	○ ^{*4}	○	○ ^{*9}	○	○
During starting i-mode group	○	×	×	○ ^{*2}	○	○ ^{*4}	○	○ ^{*9}	○	○
During starting setting group	○	○	○	×	○	○ ^{*4}	×	○ ^{*9}	○	○
During starting tool group	○	○	○	○ ^{*2}	×	×	○	×	×	○
During a video-phone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	
During a voice call	○	○	×	×	×	×	○ ^{*8}	○ ^{*9}	○ ^{*10}	
During packet communication via PC	○	○	○	○ ^{*2}	○	○ ^{*4}	○	○ ^{*9}	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	×	○ ^{*8}	○ ^{*9}	○ ^{*10}	

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

- *1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" are unavailable simultaneously.
- *2 : Unavailable depending on a function.
- *3 : Only "Set time", "Keypad sound" and "Pause dial" are available.
- *4 : "Voice announce", "Receive Ir data", "UIM operation" and "SD-PIM" are unavailable.
- *5 : Only "Voice memo" is available.
- *6 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Voice memo", "Access reader", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available.
However, "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can display the list of character recognition data and their details, but cannot scan additionally.
Only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
- *7 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Access reader", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can display the list of character recognition data and their details, but cannot scan additionally. Only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
- *8 : "Voice mail" cannot be played. Also, a call to the special numbers (P. 471) cannot be made (operation using USSD is available).
- *9 : "Restrictions" is unavailable.
- *10 : "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "DL dictionary" are unavailable.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Service		Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)		(No area code) 106
Directory information for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (Paid-service) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (Paid-service)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (Paid-service)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (Paid-service)		Area code of an area you want to know + 177
Emergency call to the police		(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance		(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (Paid-service)		(No area code) 171

Note

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)) (As of February, 2005).
- When you use the Directory Information Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with sight or upper-limb handicaps. For details, call 116 from a general phone.(As of February, 2005)
- You cannot specify the location from which you are calling when you dial 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal. Because you may be asked to receive a confirmation call from the relevant service (police, fire service, etc.), state that you are calling from a mobile phone and provide your current location. Also, keep the call from dropping out by staying on your current position till it is completed and do not turn the FOMA terminal off immediately after making the call, but leave it turned on for at least 10 minutes so that you can receive calls.
- Depending on your location, there is a possibility that you may not be connected to the police or the fire department for the area you are in. If this happens, call from the nearest pay phone or general phone.
- If you are using a "Call forwarding" or "Voice Warp" service from a mobile phone and a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of an ordinary phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, outside the service area or turned off.
- Note that you cannot use services such as 116 (NTT Sales), Dial Q2, Message Dial or Credit Call (Automatic credit calls can be made to the FOMA terminal from an ordinary phone or payphone).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, your FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available depending on the area you are in. For more information, contact a DoCoMo service counter or a retail outlet. For details of an option or accessory, refer to User's Manual.

- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/P002*
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*
- FOMA USB cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N06
- Battery Pack N08
- Back Cover N06
- styleplus N01
- In-car Holder N05
- Carrying Case N07
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use

*: To connect to FOMA N700i, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is necessary.

About Data Link Software

By using "FOMA N700i Data Link Software", you can transfer data such as Phonebooks, schedule, mail, melodies, pictures (still images), movies and i-motion to PC connected to the FOMA terminal.

You can download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N700i from the NEC Internet website:

- NEC "ワイワイもばいる"

<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Refer to the listed above homepage or help of the Data Link Software for the detailed description for downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restricted items.

(You cannot download it using the site function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use it for free of charge. You will be separately charged communication fees when downloaded.)

- Setting environment and note

A "FOMA USB cable (optional)" is required to connect with a PC. You cannot use it for infrared exchange. For the other operation environments and supported OS refer to the download page "ソフトウェアのご紹介".

Since the Data Link Software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, refer to "Exchanging FOMA Terminal Data With a PC" (P. 419) as well.

You cannot transfer information downloaded using i-mode/i-α.ppli to anywhere other than the FOMA terminal even using the Data Link Software according to the Copy Right Laws. You cannot transfer data prohibited to be output outside the FOMA terminal, either.

■ OS

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)

*: The listed above OS is installed to PC/AT compatible model.

■ Before using FOMA N series data link software

- NEC Corporation (hereinafter referred to as our company) does not guarantee to users regarding licensed programs operation, intended purpose compatibility, compatibility or reliability regarding result of use, that this software is free from defects whatsoever. Any problems or difficulties arising with regard to the licensed programs are the responsibility of the customer and any costs will be borne by the customer.
- Our company does not take any responsibility about the damage based on the reparations responsibility of having been made to the users from the damage (the case where our company foresees per damage generating, or it may foresee being included.) produced from a user's lost profits and the special situation, and the third person in any cases. Moreover, a user shall not perform any claim to our company, either.

Inquiries about Data Link Software

NEC (NEC Mobile Terminals Sales Promotion Division)



0120-102-001 (Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

※ You can also call this number from mobile phones and PHS phones.

※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Malfunction Checklist

Problem	Points to check	See page
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used).	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery pack run out?	P. 38 P. 42
The animation similar to the one shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds.	● The battery pack has run out. Charge the battery pack. 	P. 40
The "Signal" icon appears and I hear a busy tone.	● Are you outside the service area or in a location with poor radio wave reception? 	P. 43
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys.	● Is "Keypad dial lock" set? ● Is "Restrict dialing" set? ● Is Self mode set?	P. 151 P. 153 P. 157
I dialed a number and initiated the call, but all I hear is a busy tone.	● Did you start dialing without waiting for the dial tone first? ● Did you dial the area code? ● Is the "Signal" icon displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	P. 48 P. 48 P. 43
I cannot receive calls. The FOMA terminal does not ring, but I see new records in Received calls.	● Are any of the following functions set? - In Restrictions • Call rejection • Call forwarding - In Ringing time • Set mute seconds - Reject unknown - In Call setting w/o ID • Not supported: Reject • Payphone: Reject • User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Driving mode? ● Is "All lock" set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of voice mail or call forwarding service set to "0"? ● Is caller ID request set to Activate? ● Is mova terminal valid with the dual network service? ● You may have set the Ring volume to "Silent".	P. 153 P. 156 P. 156 P. 155 P. 119 P. 68 P. 145 P. 157 P. 461 P. 465 P. 467 P. 66
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sound when a call comes.	● Is "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" set to longer time (such as 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.	P. 156
The records of dialed calls/received calls, redial, received address /sent address disappear automatically.	● Is "PIM lock" set? ● Is "Keypad dial lock" set?	P. 150 P. 151
The Neuropointer does not move quickly.	● Adjust the slide setting.	P. 132

Problem	Points to check	See page
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive a call.	● If incoming call settings of each function overlap, a ring tone sounds in the following priority. ① has the highest priority. ① The ring tone of Phonebook Utilities ② The ring tone of Group Utilities ③ Select ring tone	P. 107 P. 109 P. 114
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive mail.	● If incoming call settings of each function overlap, it will operate in the following priorities. ① has the highest priority. ① The mail ring tone of the Utilities ② The mail ring tone of the Group Utilities ③ The mail of Select ring tone	P. 107 P. 109 P. 114
A different image is displayed from what is set up when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows for image display when incoming call settings of each function are overlapped. ① has the highest priority: ① Image for Phonebook utilities ② Image for Group utilities ③ Image stored in Phonebook ④ i-motion set in "Select ring tone" ⑤ Display setting The phonebook or group utilities' priority order is as follows. ① has the highest priority: ① i-motion set as ring tone of voice/video-phone call ② i-motion for incoming image ③ i-motion for incoming image (video only) or still image	P. 107 P. 109 P. 93 P. 114 P. 121 P. 125 P. 107 P. 109
A different incoming call lamp by the color from what is set up glows when you receive a call.	● If incoming call illumination settings of each function overlap, it will operate in the following priorities. ① has the highest priority. ① Illumination for Phonebook Utilities ② Illumination for Group Utilities ③ Illumination settings	P. 107 P. 109 P. 133
The incoming display or ring tone is the default setting.	● Either an incoming display or ring tone may operate by setup at the time of a purchase depending upon the combination of an incoming display and ring tone, and the priority.	—
The ring tone I hear when I receive mail is not the tone I set for mail.	● If a distinctive mail ring tone is set for the mail address, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the group, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the mail address and the group, the ring tone set to the mail address is used instead. ● If you have received multiple mails and a distinctive ring tone was set for the last mail to be received, the tone set for that mail address sounds. ● When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail. ● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address? ● If you receive SMS, a distinctive ring tone set for the phone number in the Phonebook sounds.	P. 107 P. 93 P. 107
When illumination flashes for incoming mail, the color is not the color I specified.	● If a distinctive mail illumination is set for the mail address that illumination flashes. ● If a distinctive mail illumination is set for the group, that illumination flashes. ● If distinctive mail illumination is set for the mail address and the group, the illumination set to the mail address flashes. ● If you have received multiple mails and a distinctive mail illumination was set for the last mail to be received, the illumination for that mail address flashes. ● If you received multiple e-mail messages including chat mail, the FOMA terminal flashes with the illumination pattern set for the chat mail. ● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as the mail address and set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address? ● If you receive SMS, a distinctive illumination set for the phone number in the Phonebook flashes.	P. 107 P. 93 P. 107

Problem	Points to check	See page
The mail ring tone sounds but no mail is received.	Is "Message notification" set? The mail ring tone sounds to notify that the number of voice mails increases when additional voice mails were recorded or the FOMA terminal was powered off.	P. 462
The FOMA terminal cannot be charged (The charge indicator does not turned on).	- Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? - Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? - Is the adapter properly attached to the FOMA terminal? (If you are using the AC adapter, make sure that the AC adapter connector is firmly plugged into the FOMA terminal or desktop holder).	P. 38 P. 40 P. 41
The key does not sound when I press them (No key tone).	- Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? - Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?	P. 117 P. 119
I cannot answer voice call/video-phone calls using Any key answer.	- Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? - You cannot answer video-phone calls using Any key answer.	P. 61
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	- Is the earpiece speaker placed properly against your ear? - Is anything such as seal obstructing the earpiece speaker? - Is anything obstructing the speaker during hands-free? - Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.	P. 24 P. 60 P. 65
The other party's voice is too high during calls.	Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.	P. 65
The other party cannot hear me.	Is anything obstructing the mouthpiece?	P. 24
The message "All lock" and the "  " mark appear.	Enter your security code, and then press  to cancel All lock.	P. 148
I cannot check missed calls using  (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.	- Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? - Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?	P. 69 P. 150
A day of the week is displayed in Japanese.	- Is Japanese selected in "Select language"? - Is Clock display set to "Japanese"?	P. 43 P. 135
The display is dim.	Is the brightness setting of the display light set to "Level 1"?	P. 127
The display, indicator display and display light of the keypad do not turn on.	- Is Lighting of the display light set to "OFF"? - Hold down  for 1 second or more to turn the display light on or off. Please note that the display light turns off when you hold down  for 1 second or more during operation such as creating a mail.	P. 127 P. 26
The motion of the screen during a video-phone call is not smooth.	Is "Display screen size" of "Disp. setting V-phone" set to "Main display size"? Set it to "Real size".	P. 86
When I receive an incoming call immediately after turning on the power, the phone number is displayed but the name stored in the Phonebook is not.	The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The Phonebook function may not be available during that time.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after  has been held down for 1 second or more.	When Phonebook, etc. has reached full capacity, data verification takes some time.	P. 107
The call does not finish even if I press  .	If you perform operations using keys () to ) and ) according to the recorded announcement, the call may not finish even when pressing . In this case, press  again.	—
Nothing appears on the display and  and  are flashing.	The FOMA terminal is in Power saver mode. Press any keys to cancel Power saver mode.	P. 127
No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens when a call comes.	No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens until the set time has passed when you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the Phonebook or from a caller who does not notify its caller ID, if "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" is set to other than 0 second.	P. 156
The total call charges do not increase.	If the upper limit is reached, the value of the total call charges will not increase. Reset duration.	P. 446
When I receive SMS, the name stored in the Phonebook is not displayed.	Did you correctly store the phone number of the sender on the phone number line  of the Phonebook?	P. 93
Mails are not automatically sorted.	- If the other party's mail address is "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the telephone number only in the Auto-sort settings. - If the other party's mail address is other than "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the complete address including the domain name in the Auto-sort settings to be automatically allocated.	P. 285

Problem	Points to check	See page
Mails are not automatically received.	● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	P. 270
N700i communication setting file (driver) is not installed or data communication is not available.	● If you have set USB mode setting to "miniSD mode", set it to "Communication mode".	P. 404
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-α.ppli cannot be used.	● If you have set the "PIM lock", use the i-mode after canceling the PIM lock.	P. 150
i-mode, i-mode mail and i-α.ppli are not accessible.	● If you have not set "Host selection" to "i-mode", set it to "i-mode" to use the i-mode. ● If you started subscribing to the i-mode Service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	P. 228 —
Even if mail has been received, no incoming call notification operation (incoming call ring time, vibrator, incoming call lamp) is performed.	● Haven't you set "Mail/Msg. ring time" to "OFF"? ● Haven't you done any operation when "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred".	P. 118 P. 296
Sent mail does not remain in the Outbox.	● Haven't you set "All sort" to the folder of a mail-connected i-α.ppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-α.ppli and then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm it.	P. 278 P. 285 P. 321
Received mail does not remain in the Inbox and " " does not disappear.	● Doesn't " " appear on the folder of a mail-connected i-α.ppli in the Inbox, or haven't you set "All sort" to the folder of a mail-connected i-α.ppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-α.ppli and then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm.	P. 278 P. 285 P. 321
"Attached file deleted" displayed in mail	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you only receive the message body.	P. 244
Files attached to mail sent from a PC was deleted.	● Image files attached to mail sent from devices other than FOMA terminals can only be received if they are JPEG-format image files no larger than 10,000 bytes in size.	—
When I take pictures with the built-in camera, the images are affected by flickering.	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. The flickering may be suppressed by adjusting the indoor lighting conditions or brightness or changing the "Image tuning" setting.	P. 180
Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera look too bright.	● You may take it in an open-air or well-lighted place with "Image tuning" set to "Mode 1 (50Hz)" or "Mode 2 (60Hz)". Check the tuning and make sure it is reset to "Auto".	P. 180
Still images or movies shot with the Rear camera look blurred.	● When shooting with the Rear camera, you can switch the lens between Auto and Macro. Use Auto for normal shot and use Macro for a close up.	P. 161
When I attempt to display an image, " " appears. When I attempt to play for demonstration or see a preview, " " appears.	● " " may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed.	● It may occur if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
When I record using Chance capture, the recording time has decreased.	● When you record using Chance capture, the control data will be saved with the movie data. It may shorten the recordable time.	—

If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used by the i-mode Center as separators between transmitted errors.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"Accept call Already set full" "Reject unknown Already set full" "Call forwarding Already set full" "Restrict dialing Already set full" "Voice mail Already set full"	● These messages are displayed if you attempt to add the setting to Phonebook when 20 items have already been set in the Phonebook. Perform the desired setting again after canceling the unnecessary Phonebook settings.	P. 153
"Activating keypad dial lock"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when keypad dial lock is set.	P. 151
"Activating mail security Cannot download"	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-α.ppli, you cannot upgrade the mail-connected i-α.ppli. To upgrade the mail-connected i-α.ppli, deactivate the security.	P. 152

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"Activating mail security Cannot delete"	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-α ppli, you cannot delete the mail-connected i-α ppli. To delete the mail-connected i-α ppli, deactivate the security.	P. 152
"Activating PIM lock"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when PIM lock is set.	P. 150
"Activating record display OFF"	● "Record display set" is set to "OFF" and received calls, redial/dialed calls, the received address record or sent address record cannot be used. Set "ON" for "Record display set" to use them.	P. 152
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when "Restrict dialing" is set.	P. 153
"Activating self mode"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when self mode is set.	P. 157
"Already saved"	● This message appears when you attempt to save i-motion consecutively in the data acquisition screen.	—
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears when you attempt to quote the received mail, if that mail has any file attached. Press  to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press the "Cancel" key on the "Authentication" screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through. Press  to return to the screen displayed before the message appeared.	—
"Calling now Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you display the task menu during a call and select an unavailable function.	P. 426
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file has reached 5,000 full-pitch characters' worth.	P. 264
"Cannot save attached file"	● This message appears when you have received mail with an attached file that cannot be saved via infrared exchange or OBEX.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● This message appears when you "Import & add one" that has the same date and time as an existing schedule entry.	P. 397
"Cannot use network transmission"	● This message appears while starting up software when "Network set" is set to "OFF". Set the "Network set" to "Check every start" or "ON".	P. 325
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Check new message is set all OFF"	● i-mode checking cannot be made because "Set check new message" is set to "Do not check" for all. Set the item to check in "Set check new message".	P. 299
"Connection failed (403)"	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" of "Connection setting". ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	P. 228 —
"Connection failed"	● When you made the video-phone call, the other party may have activated the Caller ID Request service. Set "Caller ID notification" to "ON" and try again.	P. 45 P. 466
"Connection interrupted"	● The i-mode connection was lost due to poor reception. Move to a location with stronger reception to resume using i-mode. ● If this message appears when reception is strong and  is indicated, the site you are trying to connect to is busy. Try connecting later.	P. 204 —
"Content length exceeds replayable size for imotion"	● This message appears if the size of the i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 500K bytes and obtaining cannot be completed.	P. 336
"Could not read"	● Could not import data due to some kind of error. Replace with a new miniSD memory card and import again.	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	● The address, subject or text or more than 1 data exceeds the maximum size and the New mail screen is displayed with the excess part deleted.	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	● The size of the text and header/signature combined of the i-mode mail to quote to reply exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters' worth and the header/signature cannot be automatically pasted. Shorten the text until its length becomes 5,000 or fewer full-pitch characters.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"Deleting data"	When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, select "OK" when a message is displayed.	—
"Desktop icon is full"	This message appears if you attempt to paste a new icon when there are already 15 icons pasted on the stand-by display. Delete desktop icons that you no longer need and retry pasting.	P. 137
"Downloading interrupted" "Unable to download"	Displayed if a communication error occurs or data contains an error when trying to download data such as a melody, Chara-den or download dictionary.	—
"Draft mail is full"	New mail or New SMS cannot be composed because there are already 20 saved messages. Edit and send a saved message or delete some saved messages and try again.	P. 265
(During infrared exchange) "No response Retry?"	The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared ports are aligned on the same level. Select "YES" and press  to try again.	P. 409
"Editing now Cannot delete"	This message appears if you attempt to delete a message in Draft while editing that mail.	—
"Enter correct network security code"	This message is displayed when an incorrect Network security code is entered for a function that requires the Network security code. Enter the correct Network security code. If you have forgotten your Network security code, you need to present your FOMA terminal and an ID such as a driver's license proving that you are the person stipulated in the contract to an NTT DoCoMo service counter.	P. 142
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	This message appears when the Flash movie cannot be displayed due to an error found in the data.	—
"Failed to export all"	Export was failed due to an error. Insert a new miniSD memory card and try exporting again.	—
"Failed to export one"	The attempt to export to a miniSD memory card has failed for some reason. Retry exporting after exchanging for new miniSD memory card.	—
"Format miniSD for your phone"	This miniSD memory card is abnormal such as an unformatted card. Format the miniSD memory card again.	P. 402
"Forwarding number is not set"	This message is displayed when you have subscribed to the "call forwarding service" and try to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call forwarding" from the Function menu without setting the forwarding destination.	P. 470
"Input error (205)"	This message appears after you enter data on a site or Web page and send the data. Pressing  resets the entered text (the setting or entry made is sent and this operation does not cancel sending).	P. 211
"Insert miniSD"	The miniSD memory card may not be inserted in the FOMA terminal or may not be inserted correctly. Insert the miniSD memory card correctly.	P. 392
"Insert UIM"	This message appears when FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	P. 36
"Invalid address"	- Because the addresses contain ",", or space, you cannot send mail. Delete any ",", and space. - The addresses of the received mail contain more than 50 half-pitch characters and not valid for sending replies. - SMS cannot be sent when the addresses contain a character other than numerals, "※" and "#" or contain "+" input except in the head.	—
"Invalid UIM auto start not possible"	This message appears when you attempt automatic start of i-α.plli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	P. 37
"Invalid UIM requested service not available"	- This message appears when you select the desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution. - This message appears when you select a screen memo, Message Request or Message Free protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	P. 37
"Invalid UIM requested software can't start"	This message appears when you specify i-α.plli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	P. 37
"Invalid URL"	- This message is displayed when you enter the wrong URL or the wrong number of characters which exceeds the allowable number. - This message appears if you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://") when setting the Home URL in the "Home URL" setting or entering URL. Enter a URL correctly.	P. 214 P. 227

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"i-α ppli stand-by display terminated due to security error" "Software terminated due to security error"	The i-α ppli or the i-α ppli stand-by display (including the i-α ppli DX) terminated because you attempted to execute unauthorized operation.	P. 327 P. 333
"i-α ppli To" function is not set"	When trying to start the software from a site, mail, the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader, it does not start because the specified software is not permitted to be interfaced.	P. 330
"Memory full" "Data size is too big to save"	The miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data in the miniSD memory card and export or save again.	P. 400 P. 405
"Memory is full Cannot receive no more"	Inbox is full and no more i-mode mail or SMS can be received. Delete the mail that you no longer need or cancel protection for mail until " " disappears and perform "Check new message" and "Check new SMS".	P. 271 P. 288 P. 315
"Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite"	- This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook added as secret data when the Secret mode or Secret only mode is not set. - This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook set to Automatic display. Press  to return to the Phonebook edit screen. Select "", and enter a vacant memory number to add it.	P. 148 P. 103
"Memory shortage Return and edit again"	You can insert up to 10 images to Deco-mail. However, in some operations, this message may be displayed even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select "YES" and display the compose message display, and then re-edit the message.	—
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	Process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the i-mode menu.	—
"Memory shortage"	The software program cannot be activated due to memory shortage.	—
"Message too long to add header"	The size of the text and header combined exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters' worth and the header cannot be pasted. Shorten the text until its length becomes 5,000 or fewer full-pitch characters.	—
"Message too long to add signature"	The size of the text and signature combined exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters' worth and the signature cannot be pasted. Shorten the text until its length becomes 5,000 or fewer full-pitch characters.	—
"Movie is too big to attach Cannot compose"	This message appears if the size of a movie shot with the built-in camera in the "Movie mode" has turned out to be too big to attach to i-mode mail when you select "Compose message" from the function menu.	P. 264
"No content is available (204)"	This message appears when there is no data to display on the connected site, etc.	—
"No data"	This message is displayed when there is no Phonebook that matches the search conditions when performing Phonebook search.	P. 98
"No requested Chara-den"	This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted Chara-den and attempt to execute it.	—
"No requested image"	This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted image and attempt to execute it.	—
"No requested i-motion"	This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted movie or i-motion and attempt to execute it.	—
"No requested melody"	This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted melody and attempt to execute it.	—
"No requested software"	- This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted i-α ppli software and attempt to execute it. - Displayed if there is no corresponding software when the i-α ppli is started from mail, the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader.	—
"No response (408)"	No response has been received from a site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
"Not correspond contents"	Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents incompatible with the FOMA terminal.	—
"Operation may not run properly Canceling operation"	When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to stop the operation.	—
"Operation may not run properly Cancel operation?"	When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "YES" to stop the operation. Select "NO" to continue with start up.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"Operation may not run properly Delete data?"	When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "YES" to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, select "OK" when a message is displayed. Select "NO" to stop the operation.	—
"Operation may not run properly"	When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to continue with start up.	—
"Other function active Cannot operate"	This message appears if you attempt to perform operation that is unavailable when another function is running.	—
"Out of service"	- This message appears when you try to use the i-mode Service outside the service area or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. - Move to a location where "Y.U.I!" appears on the display.	P. 204
"Page is not found (404)"	The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
"Password is not correct (401)"	This message appears when authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES".	—
"Phonebook is full"	This message is displayed when you attempt to add the 701st phone number or mail address to a FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook. Delete an unneeded phone number or mail address already stored in the Phonebook before adding the new one.	P. 103
"PIN1 code blocked"	This message is displayed when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press  to display the PUK (PIN unlock) code entry screen. Then, enter the PUK code properly to cancel the lock.	P. 145
"Please set time to obtain data"	This message appears when you attempt to obtain i-motion data with replay period or replay expiration when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting.	P. 45
"Please wait"	Dialing is restricted. Try using voice-phone, video-phone or i-mode later.	—
"PUK code blocked"	This message appears if you attempt to turn the power on or perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) when PUK (PIN unlock) code is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo service counter.	P. 143
"Reading UIM Cannot operate"	This message appears when you attempt to perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) while FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
"Receiving data exceeds repayable size for i-motion"	This message appears if the size of the i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 500K bytes and obtaining has failed to be completed.	P. 336
"Replace with a new one or check the disk"	Check the disk of the miniSD memory card.	P. 403
"Replay period has expired Cannot play"	The i-motion cannot be replayed because the replay period or replay expiration is expired.	—
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with the replay period or replay expiration expired. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.	—
"Replay period has expired"	This message appears if you select a desktop icon for i-motion with the replay period expired and attempt to execute it.	—
"Replay period has not yet started"	This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with a replay period set before the period.	—
"Requested software unavailable"	- Displayed if the specified software was not able to be started when trying to start the software with the infrared exchange function, the bar code reader, compact desktop. - Displayed if the software was not able to be started when trying to start the software from a site or mail.	—
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	- This message appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal is expired. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO". - This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or Web page when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting. - This message appears if you are asked to send a client certificate while connecting to a SSL-compatible site or an web page.	P. 208 P. 45 P. 208
"Root certificate is not valid"	This message appears when an SSL certificate with the "Certificate" setting set to "Invalid" is received. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	P. 235

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 392

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"Secret data"	- This message is displayed when you try to search for a memory number specifying a secret data number during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode. - This message is displayed when you try to dial secret data with two-touch dialing during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.	P. 148
"Service is not registered"	The i-mode service is not available because you do not subscribe to the service. Subscription is necessary to use the service.	—
"Service unavailable"	This message is displayed if you perform network service operation when you are outside the service area or where radio waves cannot reach. Perform network service operation after moving to an area where  is displayed.	—
"Set time"	This message appears if you attempt to perform operation requiring the "Set time" setting when the setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting before operation.	P. 45
"Size of page is not supported"	- The data received from a site or Web page has exceeded the maximum size of 1 page. Reception is interrupted and the data obtained up to that point is displayed. - This message appears when the maximum size has been exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den.	—
"SMS in UIM filled"	The FOMA card (UIM) is full and no more SMS can be stored on the card. To store SMS, delete unwanted SMS from the card until  disappears.	P. 288
"Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder"	Since the mail-connected i-αppli compatible with the selected mail folder is deleted, the software program cannot run. Refer to the mail of the folder from the function menu.	P. 284
"Software is stopped because of an error"	This message appears when an error occurs preventing further operation while you are running a program.	—
"Software upgraded"	The present software has already been updated and another upgrading cannot be made.	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	This message appears if there are some invalid addresses when you attempt to send reply i-mode mail to 2 or more addresses.	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	The file not permitted to attach to mail or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to the i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press  to display the Edit mail screen with the file deleted.	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	This message appears if connection to an SSL-compliant site or Web page was not established. Retry connection.	—
"SSL session failed"	This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error in the communication of the authentication for an SSL connection.	—
"Syntax error (XXX)" "URL address is not valid (XXX)" Data not applicable	The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in XXX.	—
"Talking now Cannot operate"	This message is displayed when operation that cannot be performed during a calls is attempted.	P. 425
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	This message may appear while you are viewing a site or Web page. Select "YES" to send your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers. If you do not want to send it, select "NO".	P. 210
"The data may not be replayed"	This message appears when i-motion in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) has been downloaded.	—
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	- This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO". - This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or Web page when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting.	P. 208 P. 45
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	This message appears when the CN of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".	P. 208
"This data can no longer be replayed"	This message appears if you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no replay count remaining and attempt to execute it.	—
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with no replay count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	This message appears when you attempt to obtain unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"This i-motion type is not supported"	● This message appears when you attempt to download a streaming-type i-motion. You cannot download a streaming-type i-motion because it is not supported by this FOMA terminal.	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an unsupported SSL certificate has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".	P. 208
"This software contains an error Unable to download"	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software contains an error"	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	● The software you attempt to obtain is not supported by FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	● Displayed if a FOMA card (UIM) that cannot be used on this FOMA terminal may be inserted. Please confirm that the right FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	P. 36
"Time out"	● Connection to a site, mail sending process, etc. is interrupted due to the connection timeout time set in "Set connection timeout" is up. Retry connecting to the site or sending the mail later.	P. 227
"Too much data was entered"	● Too many characters are entered into the text box or as a URL, etc. and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	P. 211
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the data to receive exceeds the maximum size and cannot be received.	—
"Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error"	● This i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion replay restriction data contains an error.	—
"Unable to receive"	● Displayed if a communication error has occurred when trying to download i-motion, melody, download dictionary or Chara-den.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Unable to support this card"	● This miniSD memory card is not compatible with the FOMA terminal. Use an available miniSD memory card.	P. 392
"URL address changed (301)"	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is registered as a desktop icon or Home URL or bookmarked.	P. 135 P. 215 P. 227
"URL is too long to add"	● The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be pasted and cannot be pasted onto a desktop icon or i-mode mail.	—
"URL is too long to register"	● The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters and cannot be saved to bookmarks or stored as the Home URL.	—
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	● This message appears when a wrong security code has been entered for a function requiring entry of the security code. Enter the correct security code. If you forget the security code, the registered service subscriber must bring the FOMA terminal, your current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have the number reset.	P. 142
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	● Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because no user certificate is downloaded.	P. 235
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because your user certificate has expired.	P. 235
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	● Cannot display a SSL-compatible site because the DoCoMo CA certificate is set to be invalid. ● Cannot display a SSL-compatible site because the CA certificate or the DoCoMo CA certificate has expired.	—

Note

- The sent information, consisting of FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, is used by the IP (information provider) to identify you when providing you with customized information or determining whether or not your mobile phone is applicable to the content the IP offers.
- The information of you as the sender, which consists of FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, is sent to the IP (information provider) via the Internet, implying that the information may be read by a third party. Through this operation, however, the IP or the like will never be informed of your personal.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Keep the warranty card in a safe place after checking that it contains details, such as the name of the retailer and the date of purchase. If you find anything missing on the warranty card, immediately tell your outlet to fill it out. The warranty period is for 1 year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- The stored data such as phonebook entries can be lost as a result of faults, repairs, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data, and you should take a note of the stored data such as phonebook as a precautionary measure or back them up onto a miniSD memory card. If you own a PC (running on Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, or Windows XP), you can use the Data Link Software (P. 558) and a FOMA USB cable (optional) to back up the details of phonebook entries onto your PC. When you have your FOMA terminal repaired or replaced, part of the information downloaded with the i-mode or i-α ppli service will not be transferred to a new FOMA terminal due to legal restrictions imposed by the Copyright Law.

After-sales service

● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Refer to the "Malfunction Checklist" section of this manual to see if the solution to your problem is discussed there before bringing your FOMA terminal in for repair.

If the FOMA terminal still malfunctions, please call and discuss the problem with the repair contact number on the back of this manual.

● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Bring your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to bring your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Please be sure to have the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges apply in the following cases even during the warranty period: no warranty is presented; failure and/or damage were due to incorrect handling.
- Charges apply even during the warranty period if the failure is due to the use of devices and/or consumables not specified by DoCoMo.

■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired in the following cases:

The water exposure seal reacted; corrosion due to exposure to water, condensation or perspiration is found upon investigation; internal boards are damaged or deformed. Charges apply even if the phone can be repaired, as it is no longer under warranty.

■ After the warranty period has expired

Repair will be carried out upon request. Note that charge will apply for such work.

■ The stocking of replacement parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. Repairs to the FOMA terminal will be possible during this period. Repairs may still be possible after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact the phone numbers given on the back cover of this manual.

IMPORTANT!

- Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Doing so may result in fire, injury or malfunction.
 - The technical standards of the FOMA terminals and FOMA cards are strictly controlled by law to avoid potential network malfunctions and cross talks. The use of the FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet these technical standards is not permitted.
 - If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard DoCoMo product). However, repair may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
 - The user will be charged for the repair of any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications even during the warranty period.
- Never peel off the seal or the model name plate attached to the FOMA terminal.

The seal or plate functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the seal or the plate is removed or replaced, repair may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.
- Note that the information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as settings of various functions and the total call time, may be cleared (reset) if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise mishandled. If this happens, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a magnetic element in the following parts. Prevent a bankcard, etc. from being close to the earpiece speaker since it may be damaged.

Location used: Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, you must immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, bring the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on its state.

Memory dial (Phonebook function) and Downloaded information

- Information you stored in your mobile phone should be kept separately in a notebook. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.
- In the course of repairs to or model change of your mobile phone, data, such as downloaded data (data created by the user or data imported from external sources) may be modified or lost. Furthermore, DoCoMo may conduct repairs that entail replacing your mobile phone with an equivalent product, in which event it is not possible to transfer such data in its entirety to the replacement product. DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever in the event of this.

<Software update>

Software Update

Check whether software in the FOMA terminal needs to be updated; if necessary, and then download part of the software by using packet communication and update the software.

If software update is required, you will be notified of the guidance in the DoCoMo's web page or “お知らせ & ヘルプ” (News & Help) in iMenu.

- The packet communication to update the software will not be charged.
- There are 2 ways to update software as follows:
 - Now update : Perform update immediately as you want to update the software.
 - Reserved update : Set the date and time you want to perform update, then the software will be downloaded and updated automatically on the specified date and time.
- You can perform software update even when users are set as the destination of i-mode connection.
- Note that it may take some time to perform software update (download or rewrite).
- SSL communication with the server (the server for software updating administered by DoCoMo) is performed upon software update. Enable the certificate in advance. (Default: Enable; setting procedure → P. 235)
- You must completely charge the battery pack before updating software.
- It is recommended that you update the software in a location with strong radio wave reception (the reception level indicator shows 3 bars) while stationary state.
 - * If radio waves get weak while downloading or if the downloading is discontinued for some reason, make another attempt to update the software in a location where radio waves are favorable.
- If “PIN1 code setting” is set to “ON” and you run the software update, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed after automatically restarting. If you don't enter a correct PIN1 code, you cannot receive phone calls or mail.
- You cannot update software:
 - When FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
 - Incorrect usage of FOMA card (UIM)
 - When PIN is locked
 - When PUK code is locked
 - When date and time is not set
 - While there is an incoming call
 - While receiving mail/SMS/message
 - During a call
 - During video-phone call
 - During i-mode connection
 - During 64K data communication
 - During packet communication
 - During all lock
 - When PIM lock is on
 - When self mode is on
 - Out of service area
 - When packet dialing is locked
 - While using mova terminal with dual network service
 - When miniSD reader/writer function works
 - While other functions are running

- You cannot use other functions while updating the software. However, you can receive voice calls during downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” is displayed when you check for new software updates.
- After updating the software, the displayed i-mode center storage status icon disappears. Also, if the receive option is set to “ON” and mail is received while updating the software, the mail notification screen may not be displayed after the software has been updated.
- When you update the software, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is not used for any other purpose than updating the software.
- You can update the software without affecting data such as that stored in the phonebook, camera images, and downloaded data. However, be aware that depending on the state (malfunction, damage, or water exposure, etc.) of your FOMA terminal you may not be able to protect data.
- We recommend that you back-up important data (Note that there is some data, such as downloaded data, that cannot be backed up).
- If the software download fails, “Cannot rewrite software” is displayed and you cannot operate the FOMA. If that happens, bring your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.

Note

- You should not remove the battery pack while updating the software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- When the software update is completed without operation for confirmation, you will see the desktop icon “” (Update complete) on the stand-by display. Select “” and enter the security code to see the detail results of the update.

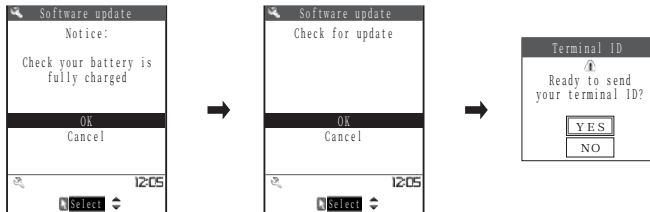
Launching software update

- 1** Select  ► Select  and then press  ►  ► Press  “Other settings”
► Select “Software update” and then press  ► Enter security code and then press .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

- 2** Check the notices and whether you need to update the software.

At that time, you need to send the unique information of your mobile phone to the server.



3 Displays the check result.



■ When the display is “Update is needed”

Select “Now update / Reserve” and then press .
Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. → P. 572
Select “Reserve” to update on a specified time. → P. 573



■ When the display says “No update is needed”

Press .
Continue using your FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

1 Select “Now update” in the check result display (P. 572) and then press . When you see “Start download Notice:”, press .

Downloading will start immediately.

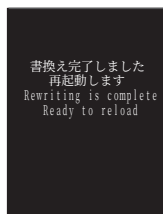
Download will begin after a while, even if you do not press .



2 When the download is complete, you will see the message “Download is complete Rewrite software It may take time to write”. Press .

The software will begin rewriting.

Rewrite will begin after a while, even if you do not press . It may take time to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

When the software is rewritten, the FOMA terminal will reload.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check the update has been completed.

When you see the message “Software update is complete”, press .



Note

- If you stop downloading before the download is complete, the data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update begins automatically without having to select any items such as menu.
- The display on the right may be shown if the server is busy.
In that case, select "Reserve" to perform the reserved update.

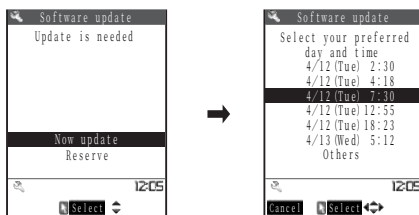


Selecting the reservation data and time to update software <Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can select the time to startup Software update by communicating with the server beforehand.

<Example: Reserving at 7:30 on April 12 (Tuesday)>

- 1 Select "Reserve" at check result screen (P. 572) ▶ Press and select the timing.



- If there is no time to wish

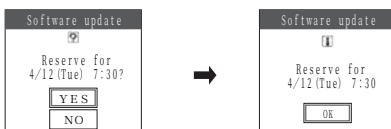
See "If you select "Others"" → P. 574

- 2 Check the selected date and time ▶ Select "YES" and then press .

The date and time is set.

- If you want to change the date and/or time

Select "NO" and then press .



The screen on the left appears at the reservation time and the FOMA terminal starts the software update automatically. Charge the battery pack fully, put the FOMA terminal at a location with strong radio wave reception and show the stand-by display before the reservation time. The rest of operation is the same as "Updating software immediately."

Note

- The server's time is displayed for software update reservation.
- When the reservation time for the software update is the same as the alarm notification time, the software update is given priority.
- Note that software updating may not start up at the scheduled time if another function is being used.
- Software updating does not start up at the scheduled time if you are on a call or receiving mail at the time.
- If you "Initialize" the setting (P. 458) after the reservation procedure is complete, the software updating will not start even if the reservation time is reached. Reserve the software update again.

If you select "Others"

You can select the desired date and period of time after communicating with the server if you select "Others" at step 1 in P. 574.

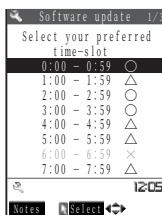
1 Reserve a date and press .



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

- : Open
- △ : Almost full
- None: Full

2 Reserve a time zone and press .



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

- : Open
- △ : Almost full
- × : Full

Select the period of time that you want to display the candidates for the reservation time by communicating with the server again.

3 Confirm the software update time.



If you check the selected time, select "YES" and press , you will communicate with the server.

The software update is reserved.

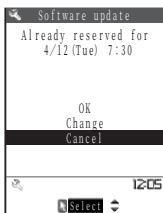
Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

- 1 Press  ► Select  and then press  ► Press  ► Press  "Other settings" ► Select "Software update" and press  ► Enter security code and then press .

About Your Security Codes → P. 142

2 Select “Cancel” and then press .



■ To accept the reservation date and time

Select “OK” and press .

■ To change the reservation date and time

Select “Change” and press .

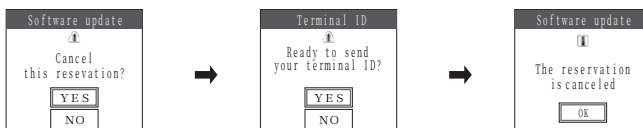
Perform the same steps as you select “Others” after sending the unique information of your mobile phone to the server. → P. 574

3 When you see the message “Cancel this reservation?”, select “YES” and then press .

Information such as model or manufacturer number which is specific to your terminal/FOMA card (UIM) is sent to the server.

We never use the sent information for any purposes other than software updating.

When you see the message “The reservation is canceled”, press . The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

First, update the pattern data to make it the latest one.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode mail, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program activation where the data or the program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used to make the checks. Pattern data updates are made available as soon any new problems are discovered. Check for new updates regularly. → P. 576
- The Scan function provides you a means of protecting your mobile phone from being affected by data that could cause some problem through the communication of data in web pages or mails. However, note that this function will not work if you have not downloaded the pattern data corresponding to each type of problem into your mobile phone or if you do not have the pattern data corresponding to each type of problem.
- The content of pattern data is different depending on the model of your mobile phone. For NTT DoCoMo's reasons, therefore, delivering pattern data may be discontinued if the data is intended for a model of the mobile phone that was marketed three years ago.

Setting the scanning function <Scan function>

Default setting	ON

When the Scanning function is set to “ON”, data and programs are automatically checked when they are executed, and the warning will be displayed in 5 levels when trouble-causing data are detected. → P. 577

1 Press ▶ Select and press ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ Select “Scanning function” and press .

The “Scanning function display” appears.



Scanning function display

2 Select “Scan function” and press ► Select “ON” and press .

■ When you see the message asking whether you change the setting

Select “YES” and press .

If you enable the Scan function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed using one of the 5 warning levels. → P. 577

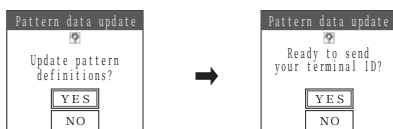
Updating pattern data <Pattern data update>

In the scanning function display...

→ P. 575

1 Select “Pattern data update” and press ► Select “YES” and press
► Select “YES” and press .

If no pattern data update is required, the “Pattern definitions are up-to-date.” message appears. Continue using your current pattern data.

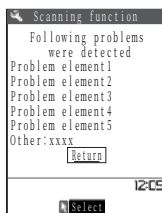


Note

- When you update the pattern data, information specific to your mobile phone (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (Scan function server managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use that information for any purpose other than software updating.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- If you receive a voice call or if the FOMA terminal is in the out of service area while updating pattern data, updating will be interrupted.

Displaying the scanning results

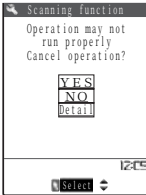
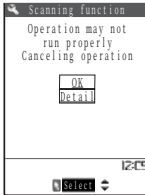
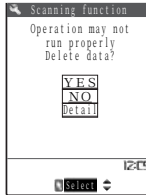
■ Displaying problems detected by scanning



A list of up to 5 problems detected by the Scan function is displayed, starting with the highest-level problem. If 6 or more problems were detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problems are omitted.

If 10,005 or more problems were detected, “Other: 9999” is displayed.

■ Results of scanning

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
				
A warning message is displayed.	A warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to cancel the operation.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the operation ends.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to delete the data.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the data is deleted.

Checking the Pattern Data Version <Definition version>

In the scanning function display...

➡ P. 575

- 1 Select “Definition version” and press .

About the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N700i meets the MIC’s* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 1.06 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC’s technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO) : <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP : <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC : <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC : http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo : <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)

NEC : <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup> (Japanese only)

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection



● Index/Quick Manual

Index

Numerals

186(provider)/184(withhold) 53

64K data communication 474

A

αDisplay light 326

αIndicator display 326

αVibrator 326

AC adapter (optional) 40

Access reader 189

Accessories 558

Additional services 471

Address list 294

Adjusting volume 65, 66

After-sales service 569

Alarm 427

Check 429

Notification actions 427

Stop 429

Alarm clock 430

Alarm setting 427

All lock 145

Release 148

set 146

Anniversaries 431

Answer hold 66

Answer setting 61

AT command 508

Attached file 297

Auto melody play 226, 296

Automatic answer 452

Automatic display 110

B

Bar code reader 185

Battery level 42

Battery pack 38

Bookmark 215

Access 216

Add 216

Delete 217, 218

Edit title 217

Folder 217

No. of bookmarks 217, 218

C

Cache 204

Calculator 446

Calendar 124

Call acceptance 153

Call forwarding (Restrictions) 153

Call forwarding service 464

Call rejection 153

Call response setting 67

Call setting w/o ID 155

Call time display 134

Call time/charge 445

Call waiting service 463

Caller ID notification 45

Caller ID Request Service 466

Camera 160

Access reader 189

Auto timer 184

Bar code reader 185

Front camera 161

Guide to the shooting display 164

Light 183

Movie photography 163

Rear camera 161

Shooting movies 175

Shooting still images 166

Still photography 162

Zoom 183

CD-ROM for FOMA N700i 476

Certificate host 237

Change CHR code 207

Changing the Active Display 545

Character size 226, 296

Chara-den 83, 380

Action 381

Control 381

Delete 383

Display 380

Guide to the Chara-den list 381

Memory info 383

Record Chara-den 384

Selecting multiple data items 407

Charge sound 117

Chat mail 302

Chat group 306

Chat members 302

Composing chat mail 304

Receive 305

Specifying the chat settings 309

Check messages 462

Check missed calls 69

Checkbox 34, 211

Clear learning record 544

Clock display 135

Component names and functions 24

Connect to Internet 214

Copying, cutting text 541

D

Data box 340

Data communication 474

Data link software 558

DC adapter (optional) 40

Deco-mail 256

Decoration 87

Desktop holder (optional) 41

Desktop icon 135

Add 136

Check 137

Provide information 138

Retrieve 136

Dialed calls 50

Dictionary 448

Disp. phonebook image 125

Display 27

Display design 128

Display home 207

Display light 127

Display setting 121

Display software info 323

Displaying images 210, 343

Add folder 405

Delete 346

Delete folder 406

Delete my picture 355

Guide to the picture list 344

Icons 341

Memory info 347, 348, 349, 350

Move 346, 347

Original animation 357

Picture list 344

Selecting multiple data items 407

Title list 344

Viewer settings 344

Displaying SSL pages 208

Download dictionary 544

DPOF setting 350, 356, 408

Driving mode	68					i-mode menu	204
DTMF	81	H				i-mode password	142, 213
Dual network service	467	Headers, signatures	299			i-mode settings	226
E		Holding	50			Reset	227
Earphone	118	Holidays	431			Starting up i-mode	204
Edit image	359	Home URL	227			i-mode mail	240
Brightness	361	I				Add folder	284
Change format for mail	351	i-appli	320			Add receiver	251
Change size	361	Auto start	329			Attach image	264
Character stamps	363	Auto start info	330			Attach i-motion	264
Clipping area	353	Auto start set	329			Attach melody	264
Composite image	353	Auto start time	329			Automatic sorting	285
Frame	362	Change mid./img.	325			Broadcast mail	251
Marker stamps	362	Delete	334			Change rcv. type	250
Positioning	352	Depend on software	327			Changing the Mail List display mode	282, 283
Retouch	361	Depend on system	327			Changing the mail text size	282
Rotate	361	Deselect i-appli stand-by display	332			Check new message	271
Trimming	364	Download	321			Check settings	297
Edit Movie	376	i-appli DX	320			Composing i-mode mail	247
Edit ticker	378	i-appli information	326			Copy	291, 293
Rerecord sound	377	i-appli stand-by display	332			Deco-mail images	259
Trim for image	376	i-appli stand-by display exit data	333			Delete	288, 290, 292, 293
Trim for mail	380	i-appli To function	330			Delete folder	284
Trimming i-motion	377	Icon info	325			Delete receiver	250
English guidance	468	Launching	323			Edit	293
Entering Kuten codes	542	Mail-connected i-appli	321			Edit folder name	284
Entering PIN1 code	144	Network set	325			Filter	287, 290
F		Pre-installed software	328			Forward	274
FirstPass	235	Security error history	327			Guide to the Folder List displays	279
Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch	452	See P.book/hist.	325			Guide to the Mail Detail displays	281
Fold setting	62	Set i-appli To	330			Guide to the Mail List displays	279
FOMA card (UIM)	36	Stand-by net	325			Large image	265
Add to UIM phonebook	95	Stand-by set	332			Look-up address	249
Operational restriction function	37	Stored data	320			Mail menu	246
PIN codes	37	Trace info	324			Mail security	284
UIM operation	104	Upgrade	333			Mail setting	296
Versions	38	Icons	27			Move trash box	288, 292
FOMA PC setting software	481	Illumination	133			No. of messages	288, 290
FOMA terminal manufacturer numbers	210	Illumination in talk	134			Open folder	284
FOMA USB cable (optional)	475	i-melody	221			Pre-installed templates	263
Font	135	iMenu	199, 205			Preview	249
Forwarding image	409	i-mode	198			Protect ON/OFF	288, 290, 291, 293
Frame	174	Add to phonebook	212			Read message	278
Front camera	161	Change i-mode password	213			Read out message	278
Function menu	35	Check settings	227			Receive	268
G		Exiting i-mode	205			Receive option	270
Group setting	97	Flash movies	212			Reply	273
Group utilities	107	i-mode host	228				

Reply by quoting	274			Check miniSD	403
Reply by referring	273	J		Copy	349, 408
Resend	293	JAN codes	185	Create folder	406
Reset	297	Jumping to previous pages	211	DCIM folder	395
Rules used for reading out mail	300	K		Delete file	401
Save address, Add to phonebook	275	Keypad dial lock	151	Delete image	349, 350, 356, 357
Save images	276	Keypad sound	117	Delete movies	370
Save i-mode mail	265	Kuten code list	552	Display images	344
Save i-motion	277	L		DPOF setting	349, 356, 407
Save melody	276	Last URL	210	Export	397, 399
Search mail	287, 290	Light	183	Export images	358
Secret code	102	Links	210	Export movies	375
Set check new message	299	M		Folder configuration	394
Sort	287, 290	Mail list disp.	296	Format	402
Sort folder	284	Mail security	152	Import	397, 401
Speed photo mail	254	Mail To function	225	Import images	359
Templates	260	Mail/Msg. ring time	118	Import movies	375
Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail	248	Mailing List	267	Inserting	392
i-motion	336, 365	Making a call	48	miniSD info	401, 403
i-motion auto replay	338	Manner mode	119	Number of items that can be stored	162, 163, 396
i-motion details	338	Manner mode Set	120	Playing movie	365
Playing i-motion	336, 365	Melody player	387	Previewing data	399
Saving i-motion	338	Add folder	405	Removing	393
Sound effects	374	Delete	389	Save destination folder	408
i-motion mail	264	Delete folder	405	SD_PIM folder	396
In-call voice memo	443	Guide to the Melody List	388	SD_VIDEO folder	395
In-car Hands-free	59	Memory info	389	miniSD memory card reader/writer	404
Indicator display	126	Move	389	Mode 1 (5-touch)	524
Info notice setting	69	Operations during melody playback	388	Mode 2 (2-touch)	525
Infrared communication function	409	Play playlist	391	Mode 3 (T9 input)	526
Infrared communication mode	414	Playing melodies	387	Movie	365
Infrared port	409, 415	Menu display set	129	Add folder	405
Infrared remote control	415	Menu function list	548	Delete	368, 370
Receive all	414	Message auto display	226	Delete folder	405
Receive individual data entries	412	Message display	296	Guide to the title list	366
Send all	413	Message list display	227	Icons	341
Send individual data entries	411	Message service	229	Memory info	369, 370
The types of data that can be exchanged	411	Check new message	231	Move folder	368
Initial setting	44	Delete	233, 234	Operations during i-motion playback	366
Initialize	458	Filter	233	Play movie playlist	374
Insert mode	532	No. of messages	233	Playing movies	365
Int'l dial setting	56	Protect ON/OFF	233	Preview display	366
International calls	55	Receive	229	Selecting multiple data items	407
Internet	214	Sort	233	Title list	366
Internet web pages	203	Viewing	232	Movie mode	175
		Viewing the Message Request and Message Free List Display	231	Auto timer	184
		miniSD memory card	392	Chance capture	181

Light	183	Secret code	102	Reject unknown	156
Movie size	163	Storage status	107	Reloading	212
Numbers of movies stored	163	Photo mode	166	Remote access	471
Photography settings	177, 183	Auto timer	184	Remote all lock	145
Picture voice	182	Continuous mode	170	set	146
Zoom	183	Continuous shooting	170	Remote observation	88
Multi access	422	Framed photography	174	Reset duration	446
Combination patterns	556	Image size	162	Reset last URL	227
Multi number	471	Light	183	Reset settings	453
Multi task	425	Number of still images stored	162	Restrict dialing	153
Activate	425	Photography settings	167, 183	Restrictions	153
Combination patterns	556	Zoom	183	Result codes	519
End	426	Pictographs	551	Ring volume	66
Switch	426	Pictographs symbols lists	551	Ringling time	156
My Menu	213	PI-SB input mode	535	S	
My picture	343	PIM lock	150	Save image	221
N		PIN (PIN code, PIN2 code)	142	Scanning function	575
Network security code	142	PIN lock	145	Schedule	125, 431
Network services	460	PIN Setting	143	Screen memo	218
Neuropointer	26, 132	PIN1 code, PIN2 code	142	Add to phonebook	220
Noise reduction	59	Change	144	Delete	219, 220
Notice call service	462	PLMN setting	453	Display	219
Notifying your phone number	45	Prefix setting	54	Edit title	219, 220
Nuisance Call Barring Service	466	PUK	145	No. of memos	219
O		Pull-down menus	211	Protect ON/OFF	219, 220
OBEX	419	Push signals	53	Save	218
Options	558	Q		Save image	220
Original manner	120	QR codes	185	Scroll	226, 296
Original menu entry	131	Quality alarm	118	Scroll function	209
Overwrite mode	533	Quick Manual	588	SD-PIM	399
Own dictionary	543	Quick message	72	Secret mode	148
Own number	46, 441	R		Secret only mode	148, 149
Display	441	Radio buttons	211	Security	575
Store	442	Random melody	115	Scanning function	575
P		Read out setting	297	Security code	142
Packet communication	474	Rear camera	161	Changing	143
Pasting text	542	Receive option setting	297	Entering	34
Pause dial	53	Received address	294	Select icons setting	138
Sending	54	Received calls	62	Selecting	139
Storing	53	Receiving a call	60	Select language	43
Petit message	87	Receiving display	296	Select ring tone	114
Phone To function	224	Reconnect control	59	Chaku-motion	115
Phonebook	92	Record display set	152	Random melody	115
Add to phonebook	93	Record message	70, 72	Selecting the menu	32
Delete data	103	Erase	72	Selection boxes	211
Edit Phonebook	103	Playback	72	Self mode	157
Making a call	98	Setting	70	Sent address	294
Search phonebook	98	Redial	50	Service available	557

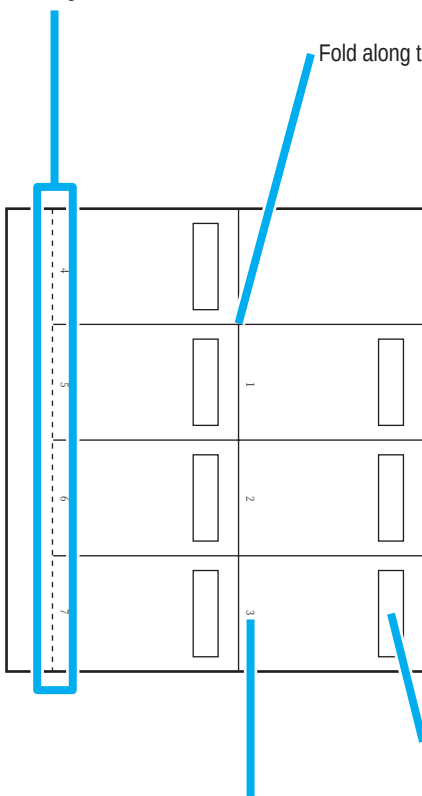
Service dial	469	Entering pictographs continuously	534	Visual check	86
Set as home URL	207	Full-pitch and half-pitch characters	524, 525	Voice announce	444
Set connection timeout	227	Guidance	530	Voice mail (Restrictions)	153
Set image display	226	Input mode	524, 525, 526	Voice mail service	460
Set time	45	Insert mode and Overwrite mode	532	Voice memo	72, 443
Side keys guard	150	Inserting text	532	Volume	65
Site (program) connection	199	Line feed	533	W	
Viewing a site	206	Overwrite	533	Wake-up display	122
Smiley face symbols	534	Pictographs	534	Warranty	569
Smiley face symbols list	551	Quote data	538	Web To function	225
SMS	310	Space (blank)	533	Word prediction	529
Checking for SMS	315	Symbols	534	WORLD CALL	55
Composing SMS	310	Upper case and lower case	532	WORLD WING	38
Delete	312	Text entry method	523	Y	
Look-up address	312	Mode 1 (5-touch)	524	Your own phone number	46
Preview	312	Mode 2 (2-touch)	525		
Receive	313	Mode 3 (T9 input)	526		
Reply, forward	314	Text memo	447		
Save	312	ToDo	437		
Saving SMS to your FOMA card (UIM)	316	Turning the FOMA on/off	43		
SMS center setting	315	Two-touch dialing	110		
SMS Rejection Settings	316	U			
SMS reports	312	Update pattern data	576		
UIM operation	104, 316	URL	214		
SMS input character	297	Delete	215		
SMS report request	297	Enter URL	214		
SMS validity period	297	URL	207		
Software keys	26	URL history	215		
Software update	570	USB mode setting	404		
Sound effect setting	227	Use saved data	226, 228		
Speed photo auto disp.	297	User certificates	235		
SRS_WOW setting	374	Utilities	107		
SSL certificates	235	V			
SSL page	202	Vibrator	116		
SSL transmission	202	Video-phone	76		
Stand-by display	124	Camera image sending	84		
Stand-by voice memo	443	Chara-den	81, 83		
Store common phrase	539	Decoration	87		
Sub-address	58	Disp. setting V-phone	86		
Symbols	534	Hands-free	77, 82		
Symbols and special characters list	550	Image quality	84		
T		Making a call	77		
Task menu	426	Petit message	87		
Text boxes	211	Receiving a call	81		
Text entry	522, 530	Remote observation	88		
Changing the active display	545	Select image	84		
Common phrases	538	Visual check	86		
Delete	535	Zoom	86		

■ How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual shows basic operations and displays of FOMA terminals.
- The Quick Manual can be detached from this book and folded.
- Please detach 1 page at a time to avoid tearing other pages. Then please be careful not to hurt yourself.

Cut along this line.

Fold along this line to use.



Name of function described in this page.

Page number of Quick Manual.

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Mail	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Compose message	
	Chatal mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new message	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Text message	
	Text settings	
	Alarm	
	Backup	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	Message	
	Check new message	
	Client certificate	
	Internet settings	
	Software list	
	Auto start list	
	Keypad lock	

16

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	incoming call	
	Ring volume (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Select ring tone (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	SMS, MMS (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Vibrator (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	illumination (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Master mode set (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Disp. phonebook image	
	Answer setting (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Find setting (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Walking ring tone (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Info ring tone (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	ring notice setting (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Noise reduction (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Quality alarm (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Reconnection timer (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	illumination in talk	
	Call response setting	
	image quality	
	Camera image setting	
	Screen image	
	Video phone	
	Video call auto switch	

17

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Video phone	
	Display	
	Display setting (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Display light (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Display design (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Monitor display (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Font (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Desktop icon (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Select ring image (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Original menu (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Menu display set (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Menu settings	
	Automatic display (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	horns (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Call data (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Call data duration (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Reset call duration (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Call time display (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Set time (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Clock display (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Alarm setting	
	Alarm lock	
	Lock/Security	

18

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Lock/Security	
	Pin lock	
	Self mode	
	Keypad lock	
	Repeat unknown	
	Call setting via D (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Change security mode (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Pin setting	
	Secret mode (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Secret only mode (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Scanning function	
	Remote all lock (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Set connection timeout	
	Connection setting	
	Set clock new message	
	Host selection (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	SMS center selection	
	Certificate	
	Certificate host	
	Display software info	
	LED display light	
	LED display	
	LED display display	

19

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Keypad settings	
	End stand-by display	
	Emergency (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Automatic answer (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Other settings	
	Change sound	
	Battery level (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Sub keys guard (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Character input method (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Report display set	
	Phone call (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Sub address	
	Phone setting	
	Call log setting	
	Call log setting	
	Phonebook	
	Neighborhood	
	Select tones setting	
	USB mode setting	
	Reset (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Initialize	
	Software update	

20

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Data box	My picture (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Memory	
	Function (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Character	
	Schedule (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Alarm clock (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	ToDo (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Text menu (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Calculator (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Play/Case log (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Record message (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Video menu (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Video menu (during call) (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Video announce (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Receiver's data (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	UIM operation	
	Forwarding image	
	Access reader	
	Bar code reader	

21

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Tools	SD pin	
	Dictionary	
	Check messages (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Call ID notification (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Voice mail	
	Call waiting	
	Call forwarding	
	Nuisance call barring	
	Call ID request	
	Caller ID request	
	Set answer act	
	Set answer act	
	Remote access	
	Dial feature	
	English guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service calling number	
	Multi number	
	Add to phonebook	
	Phonebook	
	Search phonebook	

22

Menu Menu Function List

Menu	Sub item	Branch item
Menu		
Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Phonebook	No. of phonebook (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Utilities (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Restrictions (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Group setting (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Own number (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Received calls (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Diald calls	
	Mail number (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Call group	
	Common preset (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	Own dictionary (→) (E, J) (E, J)	
	DL dictionary	

- ◆Default Operations
- ◆Warner mode
 - ◆Dialing mode
 - ◆Slide keys guard
 - ◆Check messages
 - ◆Volume
- During a call: (E) or (J) (Memo/Check)

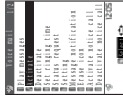
23

Network Services

●Voice mail service

Subscription is necessary, (charged)

- 1 Select → → "Voice mail".
- 2 Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.
To check whether voice mail messages are stored
Select → → "Check messages".



(No area code) 106
(No area code) 104
(No area code) 115
(No area code) 117

Area code of an area you want to know + 177

Emergency call to the police
Emergency call to a fire engine or an ambulance
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)
(No area code) 118
(No area code) 171

●Call waiting

Subscription is necessary, (charged)

- 1 Select → → "Call waiting".
 - 2 Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.
- Activating the call waiting service
- 1 Put the current voice call on hold to answer another voice call.
After hearing a single hold tone (ppp...ppp...) during a call → press or .



2 Switch the calls

To hang up the second call

Press or or to answer the first call.

To put the second call on hold

If the call is switched each time you press . (The call is switched each time you press) while talking on either line, the call is finished. Press or to answer another line.

24

Notification icons

Icons

Battery level

Unread mail

Radio reception level

is displayed when you are outside of the service area or in a place which the signal cannot reach.

miniSD memory card attached



You can operate the following functions by performing the indicated procedure below.

Press → select the icon and press .

- Desktop icon
- New Chat mail
- New mail
- Missed call
- Record message
- Voice mail
- Missed alarm
- Not run soft
- Secure error hist.
- Update complete

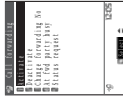
28

Network Services

●Call forwarding service

Subscription is necessary, (free)

- 1 Select → → "Call forwarding".
- 2 Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.



(No area code) 106
(No area code) 104
(No area code) 115
(No area code) 117

Area code of an area you want to know + 177

Emergency call to the police
Emergency call to a fire engine or an ambulance
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)
(No area code) 118
(No area code) 171

●Bar nuisance call service

Subscription is necessary, (charged)

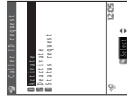
- 1 Select → → "Nuisance call barring".
- 2 Select the operation that you want to set from the menu.
The number of the last call that you received and answered can be registered for call rejection in "Register caller".
To register a specific nuisance phone number
Press → → Follow the voice guidance.



●Caller ID request service

Subscription is not necessary, (free)

The "Caller ID request" service responds to voice calls that do not provide a Caller ID by playing an announcement that requests a Caller ID and then automatically terminating the call.
1 Press → → "Caller ID request".
2 Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.



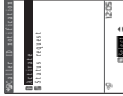
25

Network Services

●Modify caller ID service

Subscription is not necessary, (free)

- 1 Press → → "Caller ID notification".
- 2 Select from the menu the operation you want to set.



(No area code) 106
(No area code) 104
(No area code) 115
(No area code) 117

Area code of an area you want to know + 177

Emergency call to the police
Emergency call to a fire engine or an ambulance
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)
(No area code) 118
(No area code) 171

●Dual network service

Subscription is necessary, (charged)

The dual network service is that in which you can use the same phone number for both the FOMA terminal and the mobile terminal.
1 Press → → "Dual network".
2 Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.



*An emergency call in the fire station or police station concerned may be interrupted in some areas. In that case, call again from a public phone or other land line.

WORLD CALL (NTT DoCoMo's international dialing service)

09130-000-country code-area code-resipient's number →

*FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who indicated that they did not require the service.)

27

Indicator Display

Icons

●Notification icons

Battery level

Unread mail

Radio reception level

is displayed when you are outside of the service area or in a place which the signal cannot reach.

miniSD memory card attached



●Settings icons

All lock

Secret mode

Secret only mode

Key pad lock

The keypad dial lock and the Secret mode or Secret only mode

The keypad dial lock and the PMI lock

Side keys unavailable

Manner mode



30

31

Cutting Line

29

28

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, don't forget to consider the feelings of the people around you.

Always turn your FOMA terminal off in the following situations:

- In places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited
There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Always turn your FOMA terminal off in such places.
 - In aircraft • In hospitals
 - * Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby or waiting room, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- When you are driving
Using your FOMA terminal while you are driving is dangerous.
 - * If you do not want to turn the FOMA terminal off while driving, set it to driving mode.
- In crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.
- When you are in public places such as a theater, cinema or gallery
Using your FOMA terminal in public places where quiet is needed can annoy the people around you.

Be aware of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and the ring tone

- Take care not to speak too loudly when you use your FOMA terminal in quiet location such as restaurants and hotel lobbies
- Take care not to obstruct other people when you use your FOMA terminal in shopping areas, etc.

Be considerate of privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Use these FOMA functions to avoid offending people around you

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with convenient functions that remove the need to answer incoming calls and mute all the sounds made by the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original Manner mode]

Manner mode mutes the sounds made by the FOMA terminal, such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. You can create customized Manner mode with your own choice of Record message function and vibrator or ring tone settings (Original Manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original Manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Driving mode]

In this mode, the FOMA terminal plays an announcement informing the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. This promotes safe driving since the FOMA terminal does not ring.

[Vibrator]

This makes the FOMA terminal vibrate rather than ring when a call comes in.

[Record message function]

When you cannot take calls, this function allows the caller to leave a recorded message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail Service (P. 460) and Call Forwarding Service (P. 464).



You can subscribe to “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Barring Service”, “WORLD CALL” and “WORLD WING” via the DoCoMo e-site.

- Using i-mode: iMenu ▶ ☐ 料金 & お申込 ▶ ☒ ドコモeサイト (no packet communication charge)
- Using PC: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/> ▶ オンライン手続き/照会サービス ▶ ドコモeサイト
or <http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

※ You need the Network security code that you specified at the time of application to use e-site via i-mode.
※ There is no charge for packet communication accessing e-site via i-mode, however some packet communication charges may apply.
※ You need a user ID and password to access e-site via your PC.
※ If you do not have or forgot your “Network security code”, “user ID” and/or “password”, please contact us.
※ There are times when the site may not be available depending on contracts.
※ You may not use for a system maintenance.

For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

■ From DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (Landline) phone:



0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS

● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

For technical inquiries

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-800-000 (toll free) (in Japanese only)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
- For details, refer to the “Service station list” provided with the FOMA terminal.



Don't forget your cellular phone or your manners!

○ When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc

NTT DoCoMo, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc

Manufacture: NEC Corporation



Li-ion

For the environmental protection, bring the exhausted battery to the nearest DoCoMo, dealers, or the recycle shop.



This manual is made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'05.2 (1st Edition)
MDT-000057-EAA0